

THE
MICHAEL
PROPHECIES

By Saint Michael
& Saint Lucia

WITH DAVID WILCOCK

Copyright © 2023 by David Wilcock

ISBN / Library of Congress Registration Pending (Rush-Deadline Prophecy Version)

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, scanned, or distributed in any printed or electronic form without permission. Please do not participate in or encourage piracy of copyrighted materials in violation of the author's rights. Purchase only authorized editions. David is your friend. Do you really want Michael teaching you how not to hurt your friends?

While the author has made every effort to provide accurate Internet addresses and other contact information at the time of publication, neither the publisher nor the author assumes any responsibility for errors or for changes that occur after publication. Further, the publisher does not have any control over and does not assume any responsibility for author or third-party websites or their content.

This book is hereby dedicated to you, the One Infinite Creator,
now reading this in your temporary human form.

Table of Contents

AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART ONE	6
AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART TWO	41
AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART THREE	58
AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART FOUR	90
SECTION ELEVEN: INTRODUCTION / LATE JUNE 1998	121
SECTION TWELVE: JULY 1998, PART ONE	156
SECTION TWELVE: JULY 1998, PART TWO	214
SECTION THIRTEEN: JULY 1998, PART THREE	257
SECTION FOURTEEN: AUGUST 1998	293
SECTION FIFTEEN: AUGUST 1998, PART TWO	321
SECTION SIXTEEN: AUGUST 1998, PART THREE	361
SECTION SEVENTEEN: SEPTEMBER 1998	397
SECTION EIGHTEEN: SEPTEMBER 1998, PART TWO	428
SECTION NINETEEN: OCTOBER 1998	449
SECTION TWENTY: NOVEMBER 1998	478
SECTION TWENTY-ONE: NOVEMBER 1998, PART TWO	501
SECTION TWENTY-TWO: DECEMBER 1998	533



THE MICHAEL PROPHECIES

BOOK TWO: 1998

VOLUME TWO

AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART ONE

"The Great Awakening" is a planet-wide understanding that the 'pillars' of our society, including government, media, finance, sports and medicine, are in lethal collusion.

We may laugh and joke about it out of a morbid sense of gallows humor. Either way, facts are facts. We are all going through a "Global Near-Death Experience."

It is fascinating to witness these seemingly isolated 'pillars' all working and moving in coordination, as if they were following some sort of central directive.

Far fewer of us are aware that positive spiritual forces are protecting us in this process.

In these books, a credible source of higher intelligence, 'identifying' as Archangel Michael and Saint Lucinda, uses accurate prophecy to tell us we will all be okay.

The bad guys will be defeated. The lies will stop. The fighting will come to an end. And amazing new spiritual potentials will soon develop within each living human being.

The "gold standard" of any so-called spiritual contact, for the scientific investigator, has always been prophecy. Accurate visions of the future demonstrate verifiable legitimacy.

When a source of prophecy is documented in writing and later comes true, it builds trust. Michael and Lucinda's words in the 1990s are strongly prophetic of today.

Much of what we are seeing play out on the world stage now was accurately described in well over a thousand pages I originally received telepathically in 1996 through 1999.

This is the third volume in the series, where we pick up where we left off in 1998.

Many events have unfolded since the previous volume was released. For this reason, I decided to build out a new Author's Preface section to keep everything current.

DIVIDE AND CONQUER

This powerful group of known oligarchs have targeted the Black and LGBT communities in America for a unique, fascinating and deadly social experiment.

In a supreme act of irony, Biden told a group of Black graduates at Howard University that "the most dangerous terrorist threat to our homeland is white supremacy."¹

¹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/biden-at-howard-university-the-most-dangerous-terrorist-threat-to-our-homeland-is-white-supremacy-and-im-not-saying-this-because-im-at-a-black-hbcu-video/>

A member of the audience bravely held up a sign saying that “Biden and Harris don’t care about black people.” No one in the audience had a problem with him doing this.²

Just three hours later, a group of perfectly-athletic, khaki-clad ‘Patriots’ marched in DC, sparking widespread accusations of a poorly-structured intelligence operation.³

The time-honored strategy of “Divide and Conquer” has never been easier to see. I discuss this in my third recent livestream ‘comeback’ video from April 23rd, 2023.⁴

The results of this ‘experiment’ now include a massive 30-percent drop in Black voters’ approval of the Biden Administration in an ABC poll as of May 7, 2023.⁵

Elevating and denigrating entire groups of people through basic characteristics like race or sexual orientation is Dictatorship 101.

On May 10th, we learned that the elites pumped up the use of words like “racism” by a stunning 700 to 1000 percent in the mainstream media between 2011 and 2020.

The public’s hatred of racial, sexual, and religious minorities is so out of control that it imperils our democracy.

At least, that’s what influential leaders from Joe Biden and Barack Obama to former New Zealand Prime Minister Jacinda Arden and California Governor Gavin Newsom want us to believe....

[The media had a] 700% - 1,000% increased focus on racism between 2011 and 2020
[based upon how often words like ‘racist’ appeared in top news publications.]

Whatever the case, California’s total number of hate crime complaints is trivial.

There were just **285 hate crime complaints** in California, a state with 39 million people, **in 2021**. [That adds up to only 0.0007% of California’s population being violent ‘racists.’]

There was an order of magnitude more homicides in California, 2,361, in 2021 [which is still only 0.06 percent of California’s massive population]....

In truth, acceptance of racial, religious, and sexual differences has never been higher in recorded human history.

² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/promising-young-howard-graduate-protests-joe-biden-during-commencement-speech-with-real-time-feedback-biden-and-harris-dont-care-about-black-people/>

³ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/coincidence-joe-biden-tells-graduates-white-supremacists-are-greatest-threat-to-country-then-hours-later-mysterious-khaki-clad-patriot-front-group-holds-march-in-dc/>

⁴ Wilcock, David. *Archangel Michael on Negative Greeting*. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P2p61IqzRJE>

⁵ <https://www.washingtonexaminer.com/news/campaigns/biden-abc-wapo-poll-black-americans-approval-drop>

Never before have same-sex and mixed-race couples have been more accepted across all Western nations, which are far more tolerant than most other nations worldwide.

Trans people are celebrated, with an entire reality show dedicated to documenting in celebratory fashion the sexual reassignment surgery and hormone use of a trans girl named Jazz Jennings.⁶

ANGELIC E.T.s ARE ENDING THE GAME OF “YOU ARE BAD. I AM GOOD!”

In Japan they have a joke about corrupt leaders who try to divide and conquer. It goes, “Anata ga warui. Watashi ga ii.” This phrase translates as, “You are Bad. I am Good.”

Everyone can now see this game being played by power brokers. Especially today.

The long-awaited Durham Report has now dropped just as we are finishing this book. This has led to a stunning admission from the FBI that ‘missteps’ were ‘identified.’⁷

Sen. Josh Hawley has called for the disbanding of the FBI and prosecution of Hillary.⁸

Durham proved the “Russia Collusion Narrative” was a Deep State hoax. Attorney Alan Dershowitz reveals how this attack campaign is ongoing – and political in nature.

“Independent voters will look at some of these [recent legal] charges and say, gee, where there’s smoke, there’s fire.

But of course, where there’s smoke, sometimes there’s arson,” says Alan Dershowitz, professor emeritus of law at Harvard Law School.

“I think a lot of these fires have been set politically in order to get Trump.”⁹

Congressional fire-fighter Marjorie Taylor Greene has already introduced articles of impeachment against FBI director Wray as a result of the Durham Report.¹⁰

⁶ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/elites-manufacture-fake-hate-crisis-pretext-mass-spying-blacklists-and-censorship>

⁷ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/fbi-issues-weak-response-admits-fault-in-durham-reportclaims-missteps-identified-in-the-report-could-have-been-prevented/>

⁸ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/sen-josh-hawley-responds-to-durham-report-hillary-needs-to-be-prosecuted-fbi-needs-to-be-disbanded-video/>

⁹ https://www.theepochtimes.com/alan-dershowitz-the-anti-trump-obsession-is-undermining-americas-justice-system-civil-liberties-and-rule-of-law_5259693.html

¹⁰ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/breaking-rep-marjorie-taylor-greene-introduces-articles-of-impeachment-against-fbi-director-christopher-wray/>

She claims to have intel that “will bring down the President of the United States.”¹¹ She bravely revealed that Hunter’s sex workers may soon testify in front of Congress.¹²

Greene then produced articles of impeachment against Joseph Robinette Biden on May 18th, 2023 – for failing to secure our border and protect national security.¹³

Initially, you may feel an incredible high when your social group of choice is elevated to an elite, privileged status by “the authorities,” perhaps for the first time in history.

However, the old Japanese saying reminds us that if you are in the group the Elites call ‘good,’ they will inevitably betray you as soon as they get what they want.

This ‘trick’ has been repeated so many times now that no one should be fooled by it.

Anheuser-Busch jumped into our current political arena and became a lightning-rod for public indignation, which has now materialized into an unprecedented mass protest.¹⁴

THIS IS ALL PART OF A BIG LESSON IN GROWING UP

In this book, we will only use current-day events like these as jumping-off points to catapult us into a very deep and fascinating esoteric and spiritual discussion.

We now have verifiable evidence of positive, angelic human extraterrestrials who are leading us through this challenging planetary initiation and growing-up period.

We are all learning to become brave and fearless, to set healthy boundaries, and to protect ourselves and those we love, regardless of the apparent danger we are facing.

Right now, our lives on Earth are intensely traumatic, day by day. As this book is finally about to be released, we can clearly see that we are in a moment of peak global crisis.

The threat of nuclear war now hangs over humanity. Once we realize our entire planet could be lost over these shenanigans, an astonishing new bravery takes hold.

That includes the bravery to face our fears head-on, and connect the dots we are seeing.

¹¹ <https://slaynews.com/news/mtg-has-evidence-that-will-bring-down-biden-this-will-bring-down-the-president-of-the-united-states/>

¹² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/marjorie-taylor-greene-hints-hunter-bidens-sex-workers-may-testify-in-front-of-congress/>

¹³ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/impeachment-week-rep-marjorie-taylor-greene-introduces-articles/>

¹⁴ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/bud-light-sales-still-plunging-across-the-entire-us-down-29-in-rocky-mountain-states-hsbc-downgrades-anheuser-busch-stock/>

A VAST, INTERLOCKING DIRECTORATE OF HIDDEN CONNECTIONS

As of 2011, we had definitive scientific proof of a vast, hidden interlocking directorate that secretly controls the majority of all money-earning businesses on Earth.

A Swiss scientific study discovered that a 'core' of 1,318 corporations are collectively earning a staggering **80 percent** of all the available, legal profits in the world.

Let me say that again. Just over **1300 corporations are earning 80 percent of all the money there is to be made in the world.** And it took super-computers to discover this.

A majority of the 'core' of 1300 is being run by a 'super-entity' consisting of only 147 corporations.¹⁵ Approximately 2/3rds of these 147 companies are financial institutions.

[Dr. James Glattfelder's team's] work, to be published in PLoS One, revealed a core of 1318 companies with interlocking ownerships....

Although they represented **20 percent** of global operating revenues, the 1318 appeared to collectively own, through their shares, the majority of the world's large blue chip and manufacturing firms – the "real" economy –

Representing a **further 60 percent** of global revenues [above their direct 20 percent share, for a total of **80 percent of all the wealth to be earned in the world.**]

When the team further untangled the web of ownership, it found much of it tracked back to a "super-entity" of 147 even more tightly knit companies... that [directly] controlled 40 percent of the total wealth in the network.

"In effect, less than 1 per cent of the companies were able to control 40 percent of the entire network," says Glattfelder.

Most were financial institutions.

The top 20 [of these companies] included Barclays Bank, JPMorgan Chase & Co, and The Goldman Sachs Group.¹⁶

The hidden collusion discovered by Glattfelder's team has now become obvious to all. The Deep State controls the "Big Five" media giants – and is trying to start a race war.

This elite power group no longer hides in the shadows. And they are also threatening our planet with nuclear war – total annihilation – with ever-escalating rhetoric.

¹⁵ <https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0025995>

¹⁶ <https://www.newscientist.com/article/mg21228354-500-revealed-the-capitalist-network-that-runs-the-world/>

Even without the ‘impossible’ threat of nuclear war, on a practical level we may lose the ability to withdraw our money from the bank for a period of time as we endure this.¹⁷

I used the controversial term “Illuminati” to expose this group in articles on my website dating back to 2007. Now the term “Deep State” is a less scary-sounding equivalent.

The “super-entity” of 147 mega-corporations earning 80 percent of all the profits in the world has now used its ‘pillars’ to push a single, over-arching philosophical agenda.

Our everyday reality now strongly reflects what I’ve been disclosing, ever since I learned the truth – in my sophomore year of college, beginning in 1993.

I am not at all worried about what we are seeing. This is a collective initiation that is intended to help us master our fear – and activate our own inner Hero’s Journey.

ALL ROADS LEAD BACK TO ROME

The Deep State actually traces back to the Roman Empire, which was already beginning to transfer its financial operations to Great Britain before Jesus ever walked the earth.

In 55 and 54 BC, Julius Caesar invaded Britain two different times in the Gallic Wars. The second invasion was massive, featuring 628 ships, five legions and 2,000 cavalry.¹⁸

This led to the initial surrender of Britain to Rome. About ten years after Jesus’s death and alleged resurrection, Emperor Claudius conquered Britain in 43 AD.¹⁹

The island of Britain was very large, rich with fertile lands, and completely surrounded by the ocean, making it much harder to invade. It was an ideal location for an empire.

My insiders have revealed that the Roman Empire has always been at the heart of the Deep State. The spiritual center has always been in Rome, with secrets in the Vatican.

The Romans learned how to contact certain ‘gods’ by conquering Carthage in the Punic Wars. If Carthage had a ‘technology’ that ‘works,’ why not use it to build their power?

Carthage was a notorious center of child sacrifice to gods like Baal and Moloch – and early Hollywood silent films like *Cabiria* (1914) re-enacted these events.

The fugitive servants divide up the treasure... and make for the sea, but soon run afoul of Phoenician pirates.

¹⁷ <https://www.wnd.com/2023/05/u-s-may-freeze-bank-withdrawals-currency-fear-rises-expert-warns/>

¹⁸ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Julius_Caesar%27s_invasions_of_Britain (A legion features six thousand soldiers.)

¹⁹ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roman_conquest_of_Britain

[The pirates] take Croessa and Cabiria to **Carthage, where the little girl is sold to Karthalo, the High Priest. He intends to sacrifice her to the great god Moloch....**^[7]

The entrance to the huge Temple of Moloch is a gigantic three-eyed head, with the mouth as portal. **One hundred young children are to perish as offerings.**

Inside the temple are frenzied devotees, and the colossal seated statue of the winged god Moloch is a hollow bronze furnace.

The great chest opens for each victim, and when a youngster is slid into the inferno, the door closes and the open mouth belches flame.²⁰

As we discussed in previous volumes, this open-air human sacrifice may well have led to the visible manifestation of non-terrestrial beings, thus providing ‘results.’

THE VATICAN VERSUS THE TEMPLARS

Although it is far outside the scope of this book to discuss in detail, several insiders revealed that two historic factions in the Deep State are the Templars and the Vatican.

The Templars were the first to create paper currency and banking in the Western world. People in the Crusades could deposit their gold safely, and carry a paper receipt.

The Templars began in approximately 1120, and by 1307, they were as wealthy and as powerful as the Vatican in their own right. They also had the world’s top military.

In 1307, the King of France and the Vatican worked together to mass-arrest the Templars, charge them with heresy, and burn many of them at the stake.²¹

This was clearly a human rights atrocity. What I have been calling “mass arrests” in the modern era very much involve fair trials — and not sudden group murders like this.

According to my insiders, the Templars had a center in Portugal and remained quiet for many years. They already had significant wealth, but they would soon acquire far more.

Columbus discovered America in 1492. Insiders revealed the infamous “Pirates of the Caribbean” were mostly Templars, who had the best navy and could dominate the seas.

A significant majority of the gold coming out of Mesoamerica was intercepted and stolen by the Templars, who used the skull-and-crossbones flag on their ships.

²⁰ <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cabiria> (Accessed May 2023)

²¹ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trials_of_the_Knights_Templar

As Jordan Maxwell has often said, the term 'bank' may originally trace back to areas of a riverbank or shoreline where a 'deposit' of intercepted gold was buried and stored.

FALSE FLAGS AND AN ONGOING AGREEMENT

The Templar pirates also used "False-Flag Operations," where the crew would raise the flag of whatever country they saw on the sea, and put on their stolen uniforms.

The opposing ship thought they were greeting a friendly, and didn't realize they were in trouble until the enemy was already boarding their ship, wearing their uniforms.

Although 'deception operations' are now far more sophisticated, we still hear the term 'false flag' being routinely used to describe various types of staged attacks.

I asked my insider Jacob if the Templars and the Vatican were still fighting each other. He told me they "eventually worked out an agreement," but was not too specific.

The story becomes frightening when we realize that the Deep State has always had an agenda of total world domination and control, as well as significant depopulation.

THE ALLIANCE AND THE ASSASSINS

Within our own military and intelligence services, a rebellion arose against the Deep State. They would need to work in secret for many decades to bring about world peace.

The American aspect of this resistance movement started in the 1950s, and soon spread worldwide. It is still not publicly acknowledged. I call these "good guys" The Alliance.

A covert war is playing out in our headlines, in which members of The Alliance are following a vast, intricate 'Plan' to expose the Deep State — in a global sting operation.

My own intelligence briefings have revealed that were it not for "The Plan," the future Earth that we would be heading into is far worse than most people could ever imagine.

The Deep State has been covertly financing both sides of major wars for centuries. They use bloodshed to hopefully create "Order out of Chaos," and consolidate their control.

As I discuss in *Awakening in the Dream*, insiders also told me the Deep State covertly aligned with the Muslim sect known as "The Assassins" during the Crusades.

The term "Assassin" is derived from "hashish." Newly-recruited soldiers would be heavily medicated — and then taken into a lavish, colorful and palatial whorehouse.

They were told these gorgeous, sexual women would be waiting for them as soon as they completed their mission. This worked well enough to create extreme loyalty.

At the same time, the women collected all the information the men shared with them, and handed it over to their leaders. The brothel was actually an intelligence operation.

Many different aspects of 'tradecraft' used by the CIA and other agencies today were originally pioneered by this radical Islamic sect. False flags are one example.

Another insider example would be Catholic missionaries using data gathered in confession booths to identify the weaknesses of anyone who could become a threat.

Much like in the case of Carthage, the Deep State infiltrated and absorbed all the tools and knowledge of their enemy in the Crusades, and put it to immediate use.

A type of "global exam" is now in place. It is a truly horrifying step to realize how big the problem really is, but that is the test we all have to face – and 'pass.'

Once we accept the truth for what it is, we are emboldened by the most primal desire, which is to stay alive. Heroism is being activated in the public on a mass level now.

"The Plan" has been very effective at revealing to people what is really going on, so they can break through denial, realize they are being threatened, and take action.

"THE PLAN" IS A WORLDWIDE EFFORT TO RESTORE PEACE AND JUSTICE

"The Plan" has been aided by donations from concerned individuals, including Howard Hughes, Ross Perot, and Donald Trump – who financed his own campaign.

If that sentence makes you angry, then you may not understand the Big Picture yet. The world has not yet been told the truth about the Alliance, but that day is coming soon.

If you have felt trapped in an endless feeling of anger against Donald Trump, this is by design. The Durham Report just proved it. This is a vast, ongoing political fabrication.²²

You can only stay angry at one person for so long. Sooner or later you begin asking questions. And then you realize there are two entirely different realities here on Earth.

I was briefed about the Alliance in 2009, and went public about it that same year. I know from firsthand experience that this is very big, very organized, and it's going to work.

²² <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/durham-releases-final-report-concludes-fbi-opened-trump-probe-despite-no-verified-intel>

The Alliance is a product of the military and intelligence community, using huge and largely classified technological capabilities to fight this war – and follow The Plan.

Just like in WWII, the enemy's entire communications system has been compromised. Therefore, they almost never enjoy the element of surprise in anything they do.

We have already witnessed the arrest, prosecution and imprisonment of many criminal elements, thanks to "The Plan" – but The Best is Yet to Come.

As I write these words, a far-ranging exposure of corruption in the Biden family is expected to be revealed to the public as of tomorrow, Wednesday, May 10, 2023.²³

Now on my next pass, it's the 14th – and the media hasn't said a word about any of it. I wouldn't worry about that. You'll soon be hearing much, much more.

One of the greatest shocks to the so-called 'normie' is seeing the mass implementation of propaganda and patently false, misleading information on a global scale.

This, of course, feels very unsafe. It is, as I said, a Global Near-Death Experience.

The Deep State is literally trying to destroy all life on earth, any way they can. And we are being "tone-policed" every step of the way. No one is 'allowed' to speak about it.

Any complaints about the ongoing destruction of life on earth are re-written into attacks. Any brave messenger is horribly scrutinized, denigrated and destroyed.

The world very much wants to "break up" with the Deep State – but in the process, we also have to get out of this process alive. This is the great initiation we all now face.

A GLOBAL BREAK-UP WITH A PSYCHOPATH

Spiritual authorities, who we will discuss in a minute, have encouraged us to see this situation as a global hologram of a break-up – with a person who has psychopathy.

A psychopath is not necessarily a physically violent person. A psychopath has a series of trauma-induced brain abnormalities that produce perpetually negative behaviors.

I studied psychopathy academically as I earned my undergraduate BA degree. I was surprised as my professors bluntly told me that "Psychopaths cannot get better."

There are exceptions to this, where areas of the brain can re-grow lost or damaged tissue through a process called neuroplasticity. We will discuss these strategies later on.

²³ <https://beckernews.com/bombshell-newly-revealed-bank-records-show-bidens-profited-from-corrupt-foreign-influence-scheme-50291/>

I did a Masters'-level internship on a suicide crisis hotline as well. In this training, we became intimately aware of the enormous damage psychopaths cause their victims.

You can never 'un-see' the video of the woman whose eyes are completely black and blue, swollen shut, crying that she still loves her abuser – and wants him back.

We can get so addicted to the initial adulation and glorification from abusers that we cannot accept the entire thing was a trap – and a set-up.

Each person is having to go through this "Divorce with the Deep State" on their own.

Many were awakened by Fox News suddenly releasing Tucker Carlson, Dan Bongino and Lou Dobbs, while the Writers Guild conveniently went on strike, forcing re-runs.²⁴

Some people can show improvement, but these exceptions are so remarkable that no one should continue hijacking their own sanity in the hopes of 'molding' a psychopath.

When you get together with a psychopath, you initially receive unprecedented, quality attention and love-bombing, as well as shocking abuse and disrespect.

Anyone who trauma-bonded with the Deep State during Covid was subject to both extremes. The fear of death from a virus was used as a pretext to deny human rights.

DEIFY, DENIGRATE AND DISCARD

Psychopaths typically work you through three recognizable phases, which I am choosing to call Deify, Denigrate and Discard in this book, for various reasons.

Clinical psychologist Perpetua Neo identified these stages as Idealize, Devalue and Discard, and said psychopaths all seem to be working off of the same script.²⁵

In the Deify phase, sexual attraction causes them to see you as an object of worship. Temporarily. They will be fascinated by everything about you – and listen for hours.

Physiologically, the parts of their brains associated with creativity and inspiration are heavily damaged or shut down, as we will see.

The lack of ability to create art for oneself, beyond a certain level, often leads to the fetishizing of celebrities and the art they create – in music, politics, movies, et cetera.

²⁴ <https://deadline.com/feature/hollywood-writers-strike-wga-explained-1235341146/>

²⁵ <https://nybreaking.com/psychologist-reveals-the-most-common-phrases-narcissists-use-to-manipulate-you/>

Internet trolls typically begin as individuals who fetishize a celebrity to such an extent that they consciously or otherwise see them as an embodiment of the Divine.

This is highly inappropriate, but it happens all the time. This is why people often go into breathless, giddy, childlike babbling behavior in the presence of celebrities.

As a child growing up with a father who wrote about rock and roll, I got to meet many of the most famous 80s rock bands backstage as they came through the Albany area.

The big secret, if you want to call it that, is that a celebrity is “an ordinary person in an extraordinary situation” – not at all a God, a deity or what have you.

If you treat them like a star and act excited, they usually cut you off within 30 seconds.

EVERYONE IS A POTENTIAL VICTIM FOR A PSYCHOPATH

The Deify phase does not just apply to celebrities, whether they be widely recognized or niche characters you find on the internet. Ordinary people can be deified – at first.

A person with ordinary brain function who develops talent can initially be seen as a superhero – to a person whose brain may not normally produce such creative works.

Psychopathy creates very real learning disabilities that affect all aspects of life.

Once you begin succeeding to any degree as a creative, the psychopaths come out. They seduce you and may even get touchy-feely right away – instant intimacy.

You can easily get addicted to the apparent ‘love’ you receive in the Deify phase.

Dr. Perpetua Neo reveals that women relapse back to abusers like this all too often.

Leaving a narcissist doesn't end with simply physically leaving, packing up your belongings, and building a new life.

Women, for instance, go back to their abuser an average of seven times, even if she was the one who initiated the termination. During one of these times, she may lose her life...

The thing about trauma is that our brains need closure.

And so sometimes we end up in similar relationships, or what we call “repetition compulsion” in psychology.

It feels like a bad magic spell, and we feel more helpless and hopeless with time.²⁶

²⁶ <https://www.mindbodygreen.com/articles/how-narcissist-relationships-can-cause-trauma>

YOU ARE CONSTANTLY DENIGRATED AND EVENTUALLY DISCARDED

Once you are moved into the Denigrate phase, they are now bored with you. At this point, they are now playing an elaborate game of deception and emotional abuse.

You often want to believe that you will be able to “deal with” the abuse “as time goes on,” and you can “work things out as a couple” and have a “healthy relationship.”

You project a vision of the person. You see them as the embodiment of the ‘parts’ of their personality that you like, while you “edit out” the parts that you don’t like.

You believe that with the strength of your love, dedication, patience and support, you will be able to mold this individual into a “Good Person” – or at least Less Bad.

Although this is indeed possible with normal individuals, if you have a person with the brain abnormalities of the psychopath, loving them will NOT change their behavior.

They will only view your love, patience and forgiveness as an ongoing weakness.

No matter how much you try to out-manuever their antics, you will be the Loser.²⁷ They will continue destroying you until you wake up and cut off all contact.

Perpetua said that **the only way to truly break free of a narcissist is to leave forever.**

Otherwise, “they just keep you on your toes – and you bend further back, like a dancing monkey,” he said.

“And **nothing will ever change. Things will just get worse.**”²⁸

[In Perpetua’s own words,] “This trauma can even pass on to your next generations.

Some evidence suggests that **unresolved trauma passes on genetically** and energetically within the family line, so that it can be resolved by one’s descendants eventually.

In the case of narcissistic abuse, that means people later in your family line could end up being involved in relationships with abusers, or become abusers themselves.

In spiritual circles, [there is a] saying that the same lessons will present themselves over and over again until we’ve learned them.”²⁹

²⁷ <https://www.psychologytoday.com/us/blog/neurosagacity/201506/6-obstacles-relationship-psychopath>

²⁸ <https://nybreaking.com/psychologist-reveals-the-most-common-phrases-narcissists-use-to-manipulate-you/>

²⁹ <https://www.mindbodygreen.com/articles/how-narcissist-relationships-can-cause-trauma>

Archangel Michael tells us we have learned our lessons as a planet. We will therefore be spared catastrophic Earth Changes. That still doesn't make this global divorce easy.

Psychopaths dig so deeply into your life that they may threaten to kill you, and themselves, if you ever dare to think that you could leave them.

This is exactly what the Deep State is now doing on a global scale. Again and again.

The Deep State is simply a global, organized group of psychopaths working together.

And by understanding the brain abnormalities involved, many puzzles can be solved.

THIRTEEN DIFFERENT AREAS OF THE BRAIN THAT SHUT DOWN

A psychopath may not be a murderer, nor necessarily violent.

Instead, a psychopath is a person who has high narcissism, fearlessness and a daily 'need' to dominate others. Otherwise, they feel bored, depressed and 'hungry.'

At least thirteen sections of the psychopath's brain are affected. These areas either go into electrical shutdown, with a reduction in actual gray matter, or heightened activity.

You may recognize the first tongue-twister on our list, Anterior Rostral Prefrontal Cortex, from Book One of The Michael Prophecies.³⁰

Frontal Lobes and Direct Connections:

- **Anterior rostral prefrontal cortex**
- **Orbito-frontal cortex (OFC)**
- **Ventro-medial (vm) prefrontal cortex (vmPFC)**
- **Anterior cingulate cortex (ACC)**
- **Posterior cingulate cortex (PCC)**
- **Dorso-lateral prefrontal cortex (dlPFC)**
- **Temporal pole**
- **Amygdala**

³⁰ <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-brains-psychopaths/study-finds-psychopaths-have-distinct-brain-structure-idUSBRE8460ZQ20120507>

Central / Hippocampus Group:

- **Hippocampus**
- **Parahippocampal gyrus**
- **Superior temporal gyrus (STG)**
- **Striatum**
- **Insula**

In psychopaths, most of these regions of the brain will show little to no electrical activity on an MRI – and up to a 20-percent reduction in gray matter volume.

What might happen to a person who no longer enjoys the benefits of these brain areas?

When a human being has these areas of the brain “turned off,” we see a surprisingly consistent ‘fingerprint’ of behavior patterns known as psychopathy.

THIS BRAIN DISORDER HAS ENORMOUS FINANCIAL COSTS

There are many intriguing connections between the behavior of the psychopath and what we would traditionally consider to be ‘evil’ and/or criminal behavior.

One scientific study estimates the cost of psychopathy as being \$460 billion dollars a year in America alone.

Two decades of neuroimaging studies have begun to specify the neurobiological correlates of psychopathy,

A personality disorder characterized by callous and impulsive antisocial behavior.

Present in approximately one-quarter of adult male prison inmates¹,

Psychopathy is a significant predictor of violent reoffending² that costs the United States an estimated \$460 billion per year³ –

Making psychopathy one of the most costly mental health disorders.

Despite the accumulation of neuroimaging studies of psychopathy, a clear and comprehensive picture of the disorder’s neural correlates has yet to emerge.³¹

³¹ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-0816-8>

IS THIS SYMBOLICALLY RELATED TO THE “MARK OF THE BEAST?”

This brain abnormality, I believe, is one key scientific realization of the Biblical “Mark of the Beast,” as described in Revelations 13:11, 14, 16-17.

This does not mean that psychopaths are evil. However, the Michael Prophecies do reveal that psychopaths are often being manipulated by negative telepathic influences.

The Edgar Cayce Readings advised us to see the Book of Revelation as full of dreamlike metaphors. Therefore, we look beneath the surface for the symbolic meaning:

¹¹ And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth.

And he had two horns, like a lamb. And he spake as a Dragon.

¹⁴ And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth...

¹⁶ And **he causeth all**, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a **mark** in their right hand, or **in their foreheads**:

¹⁷ And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.³²

The “Anti-Christ” is a being who “speaks as a Dragon.” The Dragon is very specifically described as **causing** people to receive a mark in their foreheads.

If you could see electrical activity in the brain as visible light, psychopaths would be walking around with a big, dark spot across their foreheads.

Once we all begin learning to see energy fields in the near future, this “chakra blockage” will be as obvious as a giant hole in the head – and it can then be healed.

WHAT WOULD IT TAKE TO ‘CAUSE’ THE “MARK OF THE BEAST?”

Can a human being “cause you” to develop this type of cascading brain damage, where multiple different regions are shocked into inactivity? Absolutely yes.

The only tool required to ‘cause’ your brain to shut down is trauma.

If you image a psychopath’s brain under an MRI, you discover that the entire frontal lobe area is dark. Normally you see colors that indicate brainwave activity.

³² <https://www.biblegateway.com/passage/?search=Revelation%2013&version=KJV>

All the while, these individuals do their very best to be likable, attractive, appealing, and to blend in with others – while always showing off their feathers.

Incredible healings from abuse-related PTSD can be produced by meditating. Your brain will then be able to re-grow cells in these areas.

Several studies have indicated a positive impact of meditation in reducing stress, and enhancing general wellbeing.⁴⁵⁻⁵⁶

Several studies have also suggested that meditation can be helpful for the treatment of anxiety,⁵⁷⁻⁶³ addiction,⁶⁴⁻⁷⁷ aggression,⁷⁸ suicidality,⁷⁹ and depression.⁸⁰⁻⁸³

Other studies addressing meditation's impact on medical illnesses have indicated a possible role for meditation in the treatment of chronic medical illnesses,⁸⁴⁻⁹⁰ including chronic pain,⁹¹ insomnia,⁹² and hypertension.^{93,94} ³³

The global trauma that is being inflicted upon everyone has put humanity through a mass, collective initiation event – with fascinating future consequences.

If we do our 'homework,' the rewards are far greater than we can imagine. This volume will make the point very clearly. Every time I read through it again, I am dazzled.

A significant amount of academic research has been done to explore how psychopaths traumatize people in relationships, and what can be done to heal it.

CREDIBLE ANGER AND 'DARVO'

When you live with a psychopath, the entire relationship may be a game to them. The main game they usually play with you is their constant search for Credible Anger.

What does this mean?

Day by day, hour by hour and even minute by minute, your behavior is scrutinized.

They are deliberately looking for something, anything about you that can allow them to be angry, to attack you, get you to apologize, say you're Sorry, and feel terrible.

No matter how perfectly you behave yourself, they will use their imagination to fabricate one false, easily-disproven verbal assault after another.

Any time you feel terrible, they get high. They feed on that. The worse you feel, the better. The more they hold everyone around them in distress, the happier they are.

³³ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2719544/>

Nearly every day of your life with anyone “on the spectrum” of psychopathy will be a constant, complex navigation through shame, disrespect, criticism and bullying.

If you ever try to stop them, such as by making a serious effort to talk about any of the criminal behaviors they engage in, they hold no accountability for what they do.

Instead, whenever you stand up for yourself, suddenly your whole world changes.

Now, instead of you being the one with hurt feelings and a serious issue, they reverse everything back onto you – and create a severe new line of attack.

This is called DARVO – Deny, Attack, Reverse Victim and Offender.

A SCIENTIFIC DEFINITION OF DARVO FROM ITS FOUNDER

DARVO is one of the most common and tell-tale signs of the psychopath in action.

Here is a short definition from Dr. Jennifer J. Freyd, Ph.D, who coined the term.

DARVO refers to a reaction perpetrators of wrongdoing, **particularly sexual offenders**, may display in response to being held accountable for their behavior.

DARVO stands for “Deny, Attack, and Reverse Victim and Offender.”

The perpetrator or offender may Deny the behavior, Attack the individual doing the confronting, and Reverse the roles of Victim and Offender,

Such that **the perpetrator assumes the victim role and turns the true victim – or the whistleblower -- into an alleged offender.**

This occurs, for instance, when an actually guilty perpetrator assumes the role of “falsely accused,”

And **attacks the accuser’s credibility – and blames the accuser of being the perpetrator of a false accusation.**

Institutional DARVO occurs when the DARVO is committed by an institution (or with institutional complicity,) as when police charge rape victims with lying.

Institutional DARVO is a pernicious form of institutional betrayal.³⁴

You want to have a ‘Clean’ conversation about things like “healthy boundaries, respect and consideration.” Instead, things get very “Messy” – and now you’re in a huge fight.

³⁴ <https://dynamic.uoregon.edu/jjf/defineDARVO.html>

“CLAIM TICKETS” ARE ANOTHER STANDARD FEATURE

They may drag out something you argued about many times before. I call this a “Claim Ticket.” Nothing you’ve ever ‘done’ in the past is forgiven. Now they’re angry again!

The psychopath always keeps a warehouse of Claim Tickets against you, ready to be dragged out, re-hashed and re-argued, over and over again, in mind-numbing detail.

No matter how many arguments you have about the Claim Tickets, they just keep on coming back. This is because the psychopath’s main desire is to torture and destroy you.

Or, more accurately, psychopaths have an aspect of their personality that emerges when they feel threatened or traumatized, and this “Trauma Self” can be very destructive.

Most psychopaths are non-violent, but they still pride themselves on getting you to ‘crack,’ “break down” and make mistakes — including hurting yourself.

It is mathematically impossible to “win an argument” with a psychopath. They would need to allow you to talk, make a point, and be heard. That will never happen.

Your only options are to set boundaries, block their attacks, and go into No Contact.

This may not be possible in all cases. Or, it may take years to work your way out.

Here is a therapist’s simple description of how DARVO may sound in spoken form. If this type of dialogue sounds familiar, just take a breath — and keep reading.

“What are you talking about? I didn’t do that —

And even if I did, you know I rarely do that type of thing.

And honestly, it’s harmless. [DENY, MINIMIZE]

Why are you getting so worked up about this? [ATTACK]

You’re always on my case about something.” [REVERSE VICTIM OFFENDER]³⁵

This next description of DARVO from Blackburn Center adds further context.

[DARVO] is a relatively common response when a person is accused of sexual assault —

Denying that anything happened, getting angry and accusing the victim of trying to ruin their lives.

These sorts of attacks often include legal threats, or even violence.

³⁵ <https://www.rayfamilytherapy.com/blog/what-is-darvo-in-a-relationship>

It is often a common tactic used by people who engage in domestic violence –

Denying that anything happened, or if the abuse cannot be denied, arguing that it wasn't harmful ("I barely touched you!").

The perpetrator may also come up with reasons why they engaged in that behavior that place all of the blame on the victim's shoulders,

Such as, "If you hadn't been flirting with that man, I wouldn't have gotten angry."

Like other types of gaslighting, DARVO is often effective –

And can cause a victim to blame themselves, and question whether things really happened as they believed.³⁶

THE "GREATEST DARVO OF ALL TIME" IS PLAYING OUT RIGHT NOW

We have a Deep State that has deliberately destroyed the economy, destroyed the infrastructure, is destroying the food supply, creating chemical spills, and poisoning us.

They are also desperately trying to drive us over the cliff into a Nuclear War.

If you have reached the entry-level stage of the "Great Awakening," then you are now able to see and admit that the inoculations were not at all therapeutic or benevolent.

A recent study out of Denmark represents the "gold standard" of meta-analyzing random clinical trials. They found no significant health gains from taking the shots.

Any increases in immunity were offset by other problems, including cardiac issues.³⁷

If you are in a relationship with a psychopath, they do want to hurt you. That's the whole point. They hate all biological life. That means they hate YOU – and themselves.

The more happy or successful you are, the more they secretly boil with jealousy and feel a "burning inside" to manipulate you, lie to you, and set you up for destruction.

They cannot offer any more 'love' to you than they offer to themselves, and to the whole idea of life on earth – which they fundamentally despise. 'Hope' will not change this.

You become the focal-point of all of this person's rage. They keep you in a constant state of stress, pain, anger, fear, depression, sadness and stunned disbelief.

³⁶ <https://www.blackburncenter.org/post/what-is-darvo>

³⁷ <https://beckernews.com/new-study-gold-standard-clinical-trials-data-show-mrna-covid-vaccines-have-no-effect-on-overall-mortality-50341/>

If you ever try to talk about it, suddenly you find yourself being massively attacked.

DARVO. The “Big 180.” Suddenly everything just got Really Dangerous.

They have committed so many crimes for so long that you have almost become numb to what they do. Yet when you make the slightest ‘mistake,’ they try to annihilate you.

Everyone who breaks up with a narcissist will have to go through this process repeatedly. You cannot believe anything they tell you in a situation like this.

The Deep State found a clever way to infiltrate the town square and place digital zombies in there who pose as real people, and try to get you to hate yourself.

On social media, much of the ‘trolling’ you get if you begin trying to put the truth out there will be from paid operatives, not real people.

And everyone who fights the Deep State successfully gets a huge taste of this fury.³⁸

A prominent whistleblower just warned “the FBI will crush you” if you dare to talk.

FBI whistleblower Garret O'Boyle, one of three testifying before the House Select Subcommittee on the Weaponization of the Federal Government Thursday,

had a warning for any of his former colleagues who may be thinking about testifying against the agency: Don't do it.

“The FBI will crush you,” O'Boyle warned, when committee member Rep. Kelly Armstrong, R-N.D., asked him what he'd advise.

“This government will crush you and your family if you try to expose the truth about things that they are doing are wrong. And we are all examples of that.”³⁹

The Alliance's entire existence, which is vast and generational, is denied – and force-fit into an ongoing, endless attack campaign against one single political figurehead.

VERBAL BATTERING, TONE POLICING AND DISSOCIATION

Many therapists use the term “Verbal Battering” to describe the abuse that occurs when a person angrily confronts you for long periods of time, offering no escape.

A Harvard study in 2007 found that verbal abuse can create the same type of trauma effect as sexual abuse, even though we are taught to see the two as profoundly different.

³⁸ <https://www.docdroid.net/k5erHhl/redtorch-goode-preliminary-report-pdf>

³⁹ <https://www.newsmax.com/newsfront/fbi-investigations-weaponization/2023/05/18/id/1120293/>

“Sticks and stones may break my bones,
But names will never hurt me. ...”

That often repeated children’s rhyme is wrong, according to Harvard University psychiatrists.

Scolding, swearing, yelling, blaming, insulting, threatening, ridiculing, demeaning, and criticizing can be **as harmful as physical abuse, sexual abuse outside the home, or witnessing physical abuse at home —**

Notes a report in the April issue of the Harvard Mental Health Letter.

The report suggests that, when verbal abuse is constant and severe, it creates a risk of post-traumatic stress disorder [PTSD], the **same type of psychological collapse experienced by combat troops** in Iraq.

The research on which the report is based points out that children who are the target of frequent verbal mistreatment exhibit higher rates of physical aggression, delinquency, and social problems than other children.

Many studies tie physical and sexual abuse to lasting effects on the brain and behavior, but emotional mistreatment has not received the same focus.

“Exposure to verbal aggression has received little attention as a specific form of abuse,” notes Martin Teicher, associate professor of psychiatry at McLean Hospital, a Harvard-affiliated psychiatric facility.

“This despite the fact that one national study found that 63 percent of American parents reported one or more instances of verbal aggression, such as swearing at and insulting their child.”

Other researchers have associated childhood verbal abuse with a **significantly higher risk of developing unstable, angry personalities, narcissistic behavior, obsessive-compulsive disorders, and paranoia.**⁴⁰

Most psychopaths engage in “tone policing.” This means that as they verbally abuse you, if the tone of your voice changes in certain ways, the abuse gets much worse.

In short, if you ever raise your voice, whine, complain, or show the slightest sign of anger or fear, they re-write the entire argument around what you just ‘did.’

If the argument was taped on video or audio, it would sound like one person yelling, the other person being as patient as possible, and then an explosion if they “mess up.”

⁴⁰ <https://news.harvard.edu/gazette/story/2007/04/verbal-beatings-hurt-as-much-as-sexual-abuse/>

If you are in a situation like this, you may not understand that you can never out-talk, out-think or out-argue the psychopath. If you are still participating, they are the winner.

Any time you defend yourself or have any healthy boundaries, your self-protective healing response is redefined by such individuals as Hate – and ‘weakness.’

Here is another excerpt from the Harvard 2007 study we just mentioned.

Verbal abuse, the researchers found, had as great an effect as physical or non-domestic sexual mistreatment.

Verbal aggression alone turns out to be a particularly strong risk factor for depression, anger-hostility, and dissociation disorders.

The latter involve **cutting off a particular mental function from the rest of the mind.**

In one type of dissociation, the person can't recall part of his or her personal history, [usually where the trauma occurred.]

Other types involve hallucinations, feeling unreal or unstable, unconsciously converting painful emotions into physical symptoms, and multiple personalities.⁴¹

The dissociative response, where we cut off traumatic memories, is apparently achieved by entire sections of the brain going into electrical remission, as various studies reveal.

NO CONTACT IS THE ONLY APPROPRIATE ANSWER

In many cases, the only appropriate answer for a constantly re-traumatizing psychopathic situation is to move into a “No Contact” environment.

That means that no matter how many times the perpetrator tries to lure you back in, you steadily refuse to engage. You have “No Contact” with the person.

No Contact means exactly what it sounds like. You do not answer phone calls, emails or texts. You do not allow the person to access you in any form.

Why is it necessary to have a total freeze-out like this? Why can't you “Be Nice?” Psychopaths are master manipulators. They seek out and enhance your weaknesses.

They will endlessly try to convince you they have gotten better.

That being said, if you feel you are in a situation like this, I strongly recommend having the discipline and patience to Say Nothing and Just Observe for the Next Two Weeks.

⁴¹ <https://news.harvard.edu/gazette/story/2007/04/verbal-beatings-hurt-as-much-as-sexual-abuse/>

Breaking out of a toxic, controlling, abusive relationship is THE defining skill that we are all having to learn in order to propel our world into the oft-cited Golden Age.

Once you are ready to get out, you're in the fight of your life. That's why patience and a great sense of humor is necessary, as I said in my most recent livestream.⁴²

Everything we are now seeing on the global stage is an illustration of this.

THE TRUMP INDICTMENT IS THE ULTIMATE 'DARVO' OF ALL TIME

The whole world has now witnessed the ultimate DARVO against Donald Trump.

One of the classic characteristics of the psychopathic persona is Oppositional Defiance, which can be colloquially written as "F- you, you can't tell me what to do."

A psychopath will often fetishize any insult they feel you have given them, grossly enhance it, and then return it to you in an aggressive, violent new form.

Hence, as one of many recent struggles we've seen, Trump was hit with a "sealed indictment" right before a supposed month-long recess for the grand jury in Manhattan.

Sealed indictments have been filed against the Deep State by the multiple thousands since at least 2017. They open, someone gets arrested, and they are sealed again.

Much of the upper echelons of the Deep State have been brought to justice in this way. This is not yet public, but it will be soon enough.

Since Trump is an executive figure within the Alliance, everything the Alliance has been doing to the Deep State is fetishized, enhanced and then reversed back onto Trump.

The Alliance is exposing that the Deep State loves all kinds of Sleazy Sex Stuff. So now the Deep State is obsessed with Sleazy Sex Stuff Involving Donald J. Trump.

In the Manhattan story, the sleaze is supposedly that he paid "hush money" to two different women he was accused of hooking up with, despite exculpatory evidence.

Even if we "go down the darkest alley" and accept that Bragg's accusations might be fully and completely true, how does this add up to the crimes of the Deep State?

As the high-profile attorney Alan Dershowitz recently stated,

Alan Dershowitz: I think any first-year law student could get this dismissed in front of any objective judge...

⁴² Wilcock, David. *Archangel Michael on Negative Greeting*. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P2p61IqzRJE>

Here you have Democrats running for prosecution offices, promising to get Trump –

The man who was about to run against the leader of their party, the President of the United States.

You'd better have the strongest case in the world.

You'd better have a videotape of Donald Trump killing somebody on Fifth Avenue

rather than paying some money, which thousands of people do every year, to have either false or true charges leveled against them...⁴³

"They've made a foolish, foolish decision which will cause the case to be thrown out, I think, on statute of limitations grounds."⁴⁴

Even a mainstream news publication – the New York Post – admitted the problem.

According to a plethora of legal experts, Manhattan District Attorney Alvin Bragg's case is exceptionally weak, the New York Post reported.⁴⁵

This Tweet from Interactive Polls sums up the national sentiment nicely.

Quinnipiac Poll: Do you think the Manhattan DA's case involving former President Trump is mainly motivated by politics or mainly motivated by the law?

Motivated by Politics: 62%

Motivated by the law: 32%

Politics/Law

GOP: 93/5

Dem: 29/66

Indy: 70/26 ⁴⁶

Furthermore, many within the Democrat party now see this as an embarrassing strategic mistake at the very least – and potentially catastrophic for their agenda.⁴⁷

⁴³ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/04/first-year-law-students-could-get-this-dismissed-alan-dershowitz-on-alvin-braggs-hotchpot-indictment-against-president-trump/>

⁴⁴ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/04/theyve-made-a-foolish-foolish-decision-which-will-cause-the-case-to-be-thrown-out-attorney-alan-dershowitz-says-trump-attorneys-can-appeal-bogus-soros-backed-bragg-indictment-immediately-on-m/>

⁴⁵ <https://conservativebrief.com/bragg-dismissed-72127>

⁴⁶ <https://twitter.com/IAPolls2022/status/1641169167456911363>

⁴⁷ <https://www.zerohedge.com/political/embarrassing-some-democrats-say-trump-indictment-was-strategic-mistake>

My goal, as always, is to get you to look beneath the surface — and think more deeply.

All of these efforts to sue the 45th President of the United States right before an election suggest that a massive sense of desperation and futility has arisen in the Deep State.

Even in far-left New York, 60 percent of Manhattan DOJ attorneys “want no part” of this ‘phony’ case.⁴⁸ They fear Bragg has “Pulled a Michael Avenatti” and ruined it.⁴⁹

However, 66 percent of Democrats polled still believed this was motivated by law.

The Bragg case was such a fascinating legal blunder that the “sleaze factor” was immediately re-assigned to the E. Jean Carroll case — as of May 2023.

Many Democrats are still trapped in the global dysfunctional relationship. They cannot imagine that their abuser is actually torturing and destroying them, and lying about it.

THE NOW-INFAMOUS CNN TOWN HALL MEETING

The “Global Divorce” we discuss in each of the Michael Prophecies books reached a real-world crescendo in the now-infamous CNN Town Hall Meeting.

The host, Kaitlan Collins, gave the world a very familiar experience. She attacked her opponent unrelentingly, constantly interrupted, and created incredible stress.

She obviously didn’t listen to anything he said. If she didn’t draw blood on one round of attack, she would either interrupt or simply switch to another scorching accusation.

Trump displayed a masterful performance, where his resiliency to this verbal onslaught was far greater than most audience members could ever imagine for themselves.

As I said in my most-recent livestream, if you don’t make your audience smile and laugh regularly, Toastmasters considers you to be a bad public speaker.⁵⁰

A group of people in an audience like we saw at the CNN Town Hall will eventually bond with whomever makes them smile. And in this case, that was Donald Trump.

Trump walked into the lion’s den, facing a hand-picked CNN audience and a barrage of non-stop criminal accusations, and handled all of it calmly, with a sense of humor.

⁴⁸ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/60-of-attorneys-in-doj-manhattan-office-reportedly-want-no-part-of-soros-connected-da-braggs-made-up-case-against-president-trump/>

⁴⁹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/04/the-doj-fears-da-bragg-pulled-a-michael-avenatti-and-will-destroy-all-their-bs-attempts-to-get-president-trump-with-his-totally-bs-case/>

⁵⁰ Wilcock, David. *Archangel Michael on Negative Greeting*. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P2p61IqzRJE>

When someone keeps railroading you, the “rules of Aikido” allow you to interrupt them as well. This came to me from a friend who is a Buddhist master meditator.

The breathless, hand-wringing, nearly-tearful media outrage that followed clearly showed that CNN did not get the staged, public execution they had hoped for.⁵¹

WHAT IF NICHE-MARKET MEDIA IS A TOOL FOR MANIPULATION?

Like a Vegas gambling machine, “variable reinforcement” is used by the perpetrator, who in this case is the Deep State, traumatizing us through mass indoctrination.

If the victim continues to get bits and pieces of what they think they want, they may still feel trauma-bonded to their abuser — and will remain loyal.

Seemingly independent-sounding news sources are actually run by Big Media. And now BuzzFeed, Vice and MTV News have all effectively gone out of business.

At the same time, the scientific data shows that fewer transgender people are being murdered these days, not more, as the Deep State media frantically prognosticates.

The Left uses transgenders to push an agenda. The constant refrain that there is a murderous crime wave against transgenders is not true.

Few transgender people are murdered, and even fewer are murdered due to hate crimes.

Generally, they’re murdered for common reasons, including being in the wrong time and place, drugs, alcohol, and crimes of passion.

The numbers are NOT getting worse.

In 2021, only two murders of transgender people were investigated as hate crimes. That was out of 44 transgender deaths that year [in all of America].

The Human Rights Campaign (HRC) has recorded the number of murders of transgenders since 2013.

Even HRC admitted that up to 74 percent of the transgender murders that have taken place since 2013 were committed by a friend or intimate partner.

HRC claims there is an epidemic of murders of transgenders, and it’s getting worse. Their own statistics disprove it.

The number of murders of transgenders went down to 32 last year —

⁵¹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/mourning-in-america-democrats-and-fake-news-hacks-suffer-collective-meltdown-following-trumps-triumphant-return-to-cnn/>

[32 murders in 2022] from 44 in 2021, [which is] a 28-percent decrease.]

And roughly, **only eight [of the 32 transgender murders in 2022] were not by a friend or intimate.**

Of 1.6 million adults and youth identifying as “transgender,” only a tiny fraction are murdered. The smallest of numbers [only two in 2021] can be attributed to “hate.”⁵²

WAIT A MINUTE... YOU'RE SAYING STRAIGHT PEOPLE ARE GENOCIDAL?

The trans community are now told they are targeted for genocide by straights – when it is the Deep State that is trying to destroy ALL life on Earth, regardless of orientation.

Even though 2021 was a very strong year for this mass social engineering operation, we only saw two hate-crime murders of transgender individuals for the entire year.

And in 2022, an even stronger year for indoctrination, there were only eight stranger-induced deaths in the trans community. It didn't even break into the double digits.

If the Deep State really loves the LGBT community so much, why did they convince 94 percent of them to take the inoculations – the highest uptake of any community?⁵³

Is this entire Deep State flirtation with the gay community really just a set-up to try to deceive them all? How could such a vast and organized evil exist on Earth?

Here's an excerpt from an article in October 2022 discussing the 94-percent statistic.

White homosexual men and women have the highest vaccination rates of any other groups in the U.S. (94% and 89% respectively), according to the CDC.

Black and Latino homosexuals have lower vaccination rates – about 70% and 76%, respectively.⁵⁴

I do not want to see the LGBT community wiped out. If people I care about are being deceived, I most certainly am willing to take a stand – and tell the truth as I see it.

I also advise you to have compassion and forgiveness for anyone who can't see the truth yet. This is a very difficult and intensely personal process for each soul.

⁵² <https://www.independentsentinel.com/statistics-show-the-transgender-murder-wave-is-manufactured/>

⁵³ https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/71/wr/mm7105a3.htm?s_cid=mm7105a3_w

⁵⁴ <https://thecovidblog.com/2022/10/11/midterm-elections-the-universal-eschatological-sign-of-end-times-rampant-homosexuality-and-non-vote-democrats-out/>

NATURE HAS A PLAN WHERE ALMOST EVERYONE GETS TO SURVIVE

Do the brain abnormalities of the Deep State translate into a desire to destroy others?

The idea that the inoculations were not safe, but actually deliberately deployed to reduce population, is a level of horror that many people still cannot consciously accept.

After reading and living the Michael Prophecies, it is my firm belief that our journey through this process has been a necessary stage of awakening on a planetary level.

The positive ETs have consistently stopped nuclear war from happening. I'm not even worried about that. I've been reporting on this phenomenon for many years.

However, we do need to ask ourselves why an alleged higher intelligence would have allowed the entire Covid campaign to play out, if nuclear wars are being stopped.

Archangel Michael makes it clear that if we hadn't gone through this, we would have lost our entire planet. We will discuss that point in more detail a little later.

SCIENTIFIC PROOF THAT IT'S NOT AS BAD AS WE THINK

Many people are subconsciously worshipping the Deep State with fear – by acting as if these inoculations have an all-encompassing threat profile.

A person who received an inoculation may fear that they will not live more than a short time, based upon what they are now hearing about injuries and deaths.

More than one insider I know was led to believe that no one will survive one of these inoculations for more than five to ten years, under normal biological circumstances.

Do I believe that? No. I will show you scientific proof for my belief in just a second.

The death rate we are seeing today is nowhere near as extreme as the scenarios and timetables I was being told to expect by now, in the briefings I received.

The original Deep State plan was to divide America into UN green zones, herd everyone into internment camps, and give them all forced, mandatory inoculations.

In order to show proof that our bodies possess the natural power to heal manmade genetic damage, I will now bring in an excerpt from *The Source Field Investigations*.

Almost everyone, including the scientific community, subscribes to a mechanistic, nuts-and-bolts version of human biology that has been thoroughly disproven with facts.

As I wrote in 2010, we have extensive scientific evidence that organisms can rewrite their own DNA and heal genetic damage that occurs, even after manmade tampering.

Life-forms that Rewrite Their Own Genetic Code

If we want to understand this new concept of evolution even further, we must be aware that some species can rearrange their own DNA without the use of any outside electrostatic fields—such as we saw in the Ciba-Geigy experiments. [In those experiments, plant seeds were electrified, and this somehow caused them to revert into various extinct precursor species.] As of April 2009, a Rockefeller University study revealed that a parasite known as *Trypanosoma brucei*, which creates African sleeping sickness, is able to spontaneously rearrange its own DNA so it cannot be defeated by the body's immune system. **Amazingly, the parasite is able to dice up and rearrange both strands of its DNA**, changing its outer coat so it can continue to avoid being detected. Though the scientists involved in this study suspected the parasite was doing this as early as 2007, they didn't find the proof until 2009. According to their press release, adapted for Science Daily, this "suggested **a common mechanism by which parasites and humans rearrange their DNA**. "It was unbelievable," [Dr. Oliver] Dreesen says. "One experiment after another and it just worked."⁵⁵

These scientists were apparently unaware of a similar effect that was discovered by Dr. Robert Pruitt, a geneticist with Purdue University, in 2005. Pruitt and his associates were studying a mustardlike plant called *Arabidopsis*, which is commonly used in laboratory experiments. Specifically, they were exploring a mutation in one of the genes that made the flowers clump together in an odd, misshapen way. What they found was that even when the plants inherited this mutation from both of their parents, over a three-year period of study, fully **10 percent of them reverted back to normal. They rewrote their own DNA, and fixed the mutation**. The startled scientists examined the plants' DNA and confirmed that it had been

⁵⁵ Rockefeller University. "Parasite Breaks Its Own DNA To Avoid Detection." Science Daily 19 April 2009. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2009/04/090415141210.htm>

transformed back into its original, healthy form.⁵⁶ This is a spontaneous DNA rewrite to fix a mutation – and it deals another critical blow to the Darwinian model. If DNA has an underlying wave component that can correct mutations, Darwin may have just lost his job. According to Dr. Elliott Meyerowitz, a plant geneticist from the California Institute of Technology, **Pruitt's finding "looks like a marvelous discovery."**⁵⁷ I also like this study because it proves that no giant industrial company can ever create true "terminator seeds" that will always destroy themselves after a single generation. **Nature always finds a way to repair the damage.**

Another example of "marvelous" genetic repairs comes from Francis Hitching's 1982 book *The Neck of the Giraffe – Where Darwin Went Wrong*. Hitching reported on his experiments with the fruit fly, technically known as *Drosophila*, which is one of the most common living organisms studied in biology experiments. Even though various scientists have used radiation to try to dramatically speed up the rate of mutation, "Fruit flies refuse to become anything but fruit flies under any circumstances yet devised."⁵⁸ Even more interestingly, when Hitching took away all the genetic codes from both sets of parents that would build eyes for the fruit fly, they nonetheless **regrew their eyes** – in roughly five generations. According to Hitching, **"Somehow the genetic code had a built-in repair mechanism that reestablished the missing [or damaged] genes."**⁵⁹ Of course, that makes us ask a much deeper question: What is the "genetic code"?

More and more, we are seeing evidence of a guiding intelligence that can somehow modify the genetic code in ways that will benefit the organism.

⁵⁶ Wade, Nicholas. "Startling Scientists, Plant Fixes its Flawed Gene." *The New York Times*, March 23, 2005. URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2005/03/23/science/23gene.html>

⁵⁷ Ibid.

⁵⁸ Hitching, Francis. *The Neck of the Giraffe—Where Darwin Went Wrong*. Ticknor & Fields, 1982, pp. 56–57.

⁵⁹ Hitching, Francis. *The Neck of the Giraffe—Where Darwin Went Wrong*. Ticknor & Fields, 1982, p. 55. In (ed) Sauter, Donald. *The Neck of the Giraffe—Where Darwin Went Wrong, by Francis Hitching*. December 2009. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://www.donaldsauter.com/neck-of-the-giraffe.htm>

Are there examples where organisms rewrite their own DNA to adapt to changes in their environment? Dr. John Cairns was one of the first to discover this sort of an effect in 1988. Cairns studied a type of bacteria that cannot digest lactose, and then put them in an environment where that's all there was. Of course, the vast majority of the bacteria starved and went into a suspended-animation state. However, after a day or two, **several of his bacterial cells spontaneously evolved—rewriting their own DNA [and the shape of their mouths] to digest lactose.** And this was not a random event—if there wasn't any lactose in the area, the “adaptive mutation” did not happen.⁶⁰ Dr. Barry Hall continued this work with a study he published in 1990—and he found that if he deprived bacteria of certain key nutrients, such as the amino acids tryptophan and cysteine, some of their offspring ended up being able to synthesize these nutrients within their own bodies.⁶¹ **Whatever the bacteria needed to survive was provided for them—by the hidden laws of Nature.** Hall also suspects that this same effect explains how dangerous bacteria are able to adapt to new antibiotics so quickly.⁶²

DNA CAN BE RE-WRITTEN – PERHAPS EVEN ON A MASS ENERGETIC SCALE

What you just read is only part of the mountain of scientific evidence that our DNA can re-write itself and provide miracle healings, under the proper circumstances.

When bacteria are placed into a stressful environment that would normally kill them, a certain number of them re-write their DNA – and evolve their way out of the problem.

They did this to their own bodies, in one generation. They literally evolved the shape of their own mouths to be able to eat the only food that was available in the area.

As we discussed in Book One, we share remarkable DNA similarities with other species. And scientists now know that organisms can rewrite their own DNA.

⁶⁰ McFadden, Johnjoe. *Quantum Evolution: Outline 2*. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://www.surrey.ac.uk/qe/Outline.htm>

⁶¹ Milton, Richard. *Shattering the Myths of Darwinism*. Park Street Press, March 1, 2000. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://web.archive.org/web/20040402182842/http://www.newsgateway.ca/darwin.htm>

⁶² McFadden, Johnjoe. *Quantum Evolution: Outline 2*. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://www.surrey.ac.uk/qe/Outline.htm>

The Deep State erroneously believed in a traditional, mechanistic view of biology that did not include the “wave component” of genetics, as we are seeing here.

The Deep State did not understand that ‘miracle’ DNA-healing effects like the ones you just read about could happen, on a mass level, throughout humanity as a whole.

STRANGE, WORLDWIDE CHANGES IN HOW CRYSTALS FORM

This new science also gives us reason to believe that there is a mass, human genetic database that gets upgraded with new healing instructions as threats occur.

Dr. Rupert Sheldrake discovered that chemicals ‘learn’ how to crystallize more quickly over time. This effect occurs worldwide, regardless of where you do the experiment.

Sheldrake outlines interesting phenomena that lend weight to his theory.

Referring to ‘habits of crystallisation’, he argues that ‘the more a compound crystallises, the easier its crystals should form’.

He gives the example of Xylitol which, although believed to be a liquid until 1942, subsequently crystallised at successively higher temperatures.

When each new temperature for crystallisation was reached, this pattern repeated itself in other laboratories [around the world.] The old crystals did not show up again.

He also refers to Ritonavir, a drug used against AIDS, which baffled its developers by morphing inexplicably from its original form, and has continued in that pattern since.⁶³

In that last sentence, you just saw a Big Pharma anti-AIDS drug being re-written by some sort of global energetic effect that they do not understand, and cannot prevent.

Why would this happen? Sheldrake believes there are conscious ‘morphic fields’ that learn and adapt. Once xylitol ‘learned’ how to crystallize, it became easier and easier.

For this same reason, as our human bodies on Earth are insulted with various new threats, our bodies can develop new healing responses — and rewrite our DNA.

Our bodies are made of chemicals. And Sheldrake’s data proves that chemicals can intelligently ‘learn’ how to bond more effectively with each other over time.

Much of my research in The Source Field Investigations suggests that the universe is conscious — at the sub-atomic level and elsewhere.

‘Edits’ can be made on a genetic level throughout all of humanity as new threats arise.

⁶³ https://www.sheldrake.org/files/pdfs/Armstrong_ScienceDelusion.pdf

Michael tells us that our innate healing abilities are about to be dramatically magnified by a similar, mysterious worldwide process – involving a change in the Sun’s physics.

In this volume, we will read the Michael Prophecies telling us that we can expect this stunning change within two years or less, depending upon how we proceed.

WE ARE GOING THROUGH A MASS INITIATION

The trials and tribulations we are now going through as a planet are apparently a mass initiation that activates a new global consciousness within humanity.

I have spoken about this idea of ‘Ascension’ for many years now, since the late 1990s.

Many different sources have led me to expect the unveiling of previously-classified and ‘forbidden’ technologies – such as anti-gravity – as we move through this process.

Everyone on earth is now being forced to see that we have a common adversary, who is using every type of “divide and conquer” ploy imaginable.

They bet on DNA and mRNA being fixed entities that can be genetically re-written and then always perform as they may have observed in laboratory experiments.

Nature always finds a work-around. You just read the scientific proof to back that up.

And these books reveal a very compelling narrative that charts a safe passage through these troubled waters for everyone.

DON’T GET LURED INTO THE CODEPENDENT RELATIONSHIP

As a member of a “marginalized community” myself, namely the UFO field, I do understand the euphoria you feel when information validates your perspective.

It can seem amazing to have “the authorities” out there fighting for you. This is the trap. They want to tempt you into negativity, and see how far you will go with them.

As we have discussed throughout this series, there is credible evidence of a negative spiritual reality that is working in direct cooperation with the elites of this world.

In exchange for these ego-boosting ‘victories’ they dole out like Pez candies, you are gradually drawn deeper and deeper into a highly abusive relationship.

Breakups often will only happen when the destruction caused by the perpetrator becomes so great that you are literally facing a matter of life and death.

There is no greater example of “a matter of life and death” at this time than the 94-percent uptake of inoculations within the LGBT community. Truthfully.

Many people are now looking at this as a question of “wake up or die.”

If you can't understand how the Deep State could simultaneously Love and Destroy a community, then you do not yet understand psychopathy, and our common enemy.

Again, though, the message of these books is that our entire planet would have been lost if positive angelic forces hadn't allowed this mega-attack to happen.

I highly recommend you review the previous volumes to understand the vast scope of the discussion we are now continuing here in Book Two, Volume Two.

Since this volume is significantly easier to read overall, you may want to start here – and then go back and read the first two volumes for far more detail and context.

Many details about the Alliance are outlined in this book, whereas in the first two volumes, the reader is assumed to already be “in the know” about such topics.

This is a message of hope. It is bolstered by accurate prophetic time-loops into the events of today, which were originally dictated through me in 1996 through 1999.

As I've said in each previous volume, this material was published online in 1999-2000, and many archival forms exist, such as on hard drives, printed and bound books, etc.

Michael did ask me to remove most of the personal discussions. What you are left with in this book, as usual, is “the best of the best.” Almost every session is prophetic.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART TWO

Six people, including three children, were shot and killed at a Christian school in April, shocking and saddening the world. Deep State outlets displayed baffling indifference.

One of the key “planted messages” of Deep State Media, for those who listen, apparently has been, “You Must Hate, Abuse, Torture, Shoot and Destroy Christians!”

Why would the forces behind Big Media have such a burning hatred for Christianity?

As a planet, we are all now being forced to examine questions of God and The Devil, or whatever we choose to call these dueling aspects that most humans contemplate.

In a universe where nothing but Oneness exists, both of these aspects occur within it.

This is also the case with our own personalities. To deny our shadow side, project it onto others and attack it with hatred is to perpetuate suffering on Earth.

Within our own minds is the Infinite Awareness. In the physical world, we experience projections of Infinite Awareness in the people we interact with.

Our Infinite Awareness is multi-dimensional. It therefore also projects into positive entities, or angels, as well as negative entities, or demons.

Both positive and negative entities exist – and are very real. This was one of the most sobering realities I discovered after talking to several different insiders for two decades.

Both positive and negative entities can be directly experienced and interacted with in our third-dimensional reality – at least in the Milky Way Galaxy.

Sadly, many people only focus and obsess on the negative. They fail to realize that the beings we think of as “angels” are still very much alive and well – in the here and now.

We are being led through a benevolent, planetary evolution, where everyone is gradually divorcing their abuser – and becoming able to see what is really going on.

LACK OF SELF FORGIVENESS IS HOW THEY ATTACK YOU

The psychopath's main weapon against you is your Lack of Self-Forgiveness.

If you “Feel Sorry” about something, you will attract someone who will constantly accuse you of hurting them – and demand that you say you are Sorry, every day.

In much the same way, many of us felt we were a doomed civilization, and we were attracting catastrophic Earth Changes. It was only a matter of time before we all die.

As it turns out, Archangel Michael's message in these books is that we are not anywhere near as bad as we thought. We have not been condemned. We will be just fine.

All of us who are still alive on Earth within the next two years, or less, will be experiencing an energetic activation, thanks to the basic physics of our solar system.

This apparently will fundamentally alter what it means to be human.

One of the weirdest adjustments will be learning how to not feel sick as your sense of touch starts stretching out on golden rays – into the environment around you.

Scientists and intellectuals will naturally scoff and wag their fingers with shaming disrespect, but the science speaks for itself. Our previous volumes make a great case.

EVERYONE GETS TO EXPERIENCE THIS TOGETHER

Christians have anticipated a Rapture, and many other cultures predict Ascension. The "Huge Plot Twist" from Archangel Michael is that **all of us will now experience this.**

The unveiling of a global evil is our direct trigger for Ascension. As we realize that the world we thought we knew is a construct, the physics itself begins changing.

The Law of One teaches us that "In Forgiveness Lies the Stoppage of the Wheel of Karma."

If you feel that this is solely an exercise about forgiving others, you may have missed much of the point.

The forgiveness and acceptance of the **self** is a necessary pre-requisite to freeing yourself from psychopaths, narcissists and bullies.

If you have a history of traumatic abuse, you will be even more likely to over-empathize with the plights and apparent needs of all others besides yourself.

Thanks to Michael's teachings, for many years now I have loved to tell people, "Self-acceptance is the bullseye."

Similarly, at the Fellowship of the Inner Light, where I occasionally served as an inter-faith minister in 2000-2002, the "bottom line" was always "You need to love yourself!"

Now we will move forward with the introduction I wrote after the Silicon Valley Bank collapse first happened. Multiple 'time loops' occurred during this time.

Events like the Trump indictment are DARVOs to distract against this and many other complex, interrelated and systemic issues that are all now reaching an apex point.

THE SILICON VALLEY BANK COLLAPSE

This book did not have an Author's Preface until today, Monday, March 13th, 2023.

Trading at over 30 banks has been halted this morning after the Silicon Valley Bank collapse – which led to stunning despair, fear and bank runs over the weekend.

For me, this is simply the next in a series of events that were anticipated in these books.

I now sit here today, writing an introduction to a book that was dictated through me by Archangel Michael in 1998 – and accurately predicts many events just like this one.

The meta-message of the Michael Prophecies is that true evil exists, and is being brought to justice by a secret world alliance – led by elements of the US military.

I was first briefed about the Alliance initiative back in 2009 by the high-level insider Pete Peterson. His insiders used the code name "The Plan" to describe their initiative.

In 2009, Pete told me that the Alliance intended to fully expose the Deep State and bring them to justice. Events we are seeing in our world today are the final phase of The Plan.

Pete also revealed that at the highest insider levels, such as within JFK's own Defense Intelligence Agency or DIA, there was direct cooperation with human ETs on The Plan.

It now appears that the same human ETs who work with the DIA and other agencies to implement The Plan have also chosen to reveal themselves through *Michael Prophecies*.

The insiders are often cynical about these 'evangelical' beings, since they do adhere to a very high ethical and moral standard that can seem quite puritanical to us.

Valiant Thor was a human ET who appeared in 1957 to help develop The Plan with the US military, throughout three years of secret meetings within the Pentagon.

Valiant would go on at great length about his love of the Christ Consciousness in these interactions with Pentagon military staff. Pete was very well aware of what happened.

ARCHANGEL MICHAEL IS CONNECTED WITH "THE POSTS"

Eight years after I began disclosing Pete's intel, the 8Chan message board began receiving posts from a source calling itself Q – leaking very similar information.

At least three of my top insiders have confirmed that the Valiant Thor story is very real. *American Horror Story* twisted it to the negative in their show.⁶⁴ Valiant was a Christian.

Hardly any of the deeper details of what happened have been released. Therefore, we still require much more disclosure for the public to understand what actually occurred.

Valiant appears to have given the Alliance a time-viewing technology, much like Looking Glass, that allows them to accurately peer into the future with precision.

In post number 3585, the Alliance said the following:

Project Looking Glass?

Going Forward in Order to Look Back.⁶⁵

Project Looking Glass is the exact name of the classified time-viewing technology I'd been reading about in UFO books since *Alien Contact* by Timothy Good in 1993.⁶⁶

Alien Contact described an insider war between Christian-leaning military factions who wanted the truth to be disclosed, and Deep State factions who wanted to conceal it.

I was also personally briefed on Looking Glass by Peterson and other insiders.

"Going Forward in Order to Look Back" refers to how a Looking Glass could be used to analyze future timelines – and design events to steer them into a desired outcome.

Once you know what the future will be, and you commit to certain decisions, you can then use the technology to pinpoint disasters in advance, and prevent them.

We described this planet-healing strategy in Book One, from sources such as the insiders in India's own space program – as they revealed through posts on *India Daily*.

The angelic ETs took a technology that would normally be only used within their own ranks, and provided it to the US military to help ensure a non-catastrophic timeline.

However, no written form of the angelic ETs' communications existed in the public, other than in sources like the Law of One series and the Edgar Cayce Readings.

Archangel Michael has created a stunning new entry with the readings in these books.

⁶⁴ <https://www.cbr.com/american-horror-story-double-feature-valiant-thor-explained/>

⁶⁵ <https://qanon.pub/?q=Looking%20Glass#3585>

⁶⁶ <https://www.amazon.com/Alien-Contact-Top-Secret-Files-Revealed/dp/068812223X/>

I apologize for the delays, as it has been very difficult to finish these books from a psycho-emotional perspective. The content is very intense, but highly reassuring.

SECRET SPACE PROGRAMS DO EXIST

Another equally enigmatic Alliance post is number 2225, from September 19, 2018. This appeared as an answer to a question posted by someone on the board:

Q, Did NASA fake the moon landings? Have we been to the moon since then?

Are there secret space programs?

Is this why the Space Force was created?

[ANSWER:] False, moon landings are real.

[Secret space] Programs exist that are outside of public domain.

Q

The Alliance's answer is coy but direct, leaving enormous room for the imagination.

By this point, I had been one of the most visible UFOlogists in the community for years, interviewing and profiling a wide variety of insiders whose stories interconnected.

Before his untimely death, Pete Peterson revealed "there are Americans all over the galaxy" in "about sixty-five different off-planet locations."

However, "the art department hasn't caught up with Hollywood," so once you get there, you may not feel as if you are anywhere significantly different.

My main initiative with Stavatti Aerospace is to "put my money where my mouth is" on these sorts of claims, by actually designing and building working spaceships.

The US Navy declassified the patents so we can make hovercars affordable to all.

I want you to go out there and see it for yourself, not to have to take my word for it. Michael's prophecies indicate these treasures will soon be opening to everyone.

If you have read the previous books in this series, then you already have seen how Michael appears to have guided me to co-found this company since at least the 1990s.

I take this responsibility very seriously, and things are now looking good.

THE DURHAM REPORT WOULD APPEAR AT THE END – AND HERE WE ARE

For those who bothered to “do the homework,” the Alliance provided countless examples of ‘proofs’ – where the Q posts were connected to real-world activities.

In many cases, we would see simultaneous, coordinated posting activity.

The biggest ‘proof’ of all has been how stunningly our real-world events have followed the narrative that was disclosed within this material from 2017 to 2020.⁶⁷

The ‘homework’ was admittedly very difficult, with a total of nearly 5,000 posts to analyze, interpret and study in this mostly three-year burst of time.

Many of the posts also featured links that were immediately taken down, making it necessary to follow as it was happening in order to more fully understand the data.

I created a series of dot-connecting articles on divinecosmos.com that amassed millions of views each, and helped ensure a peaceful transition through these epic events.

We were told that the Durham Report would come out at the very end. *Whoa.*

MEGA ANON STARTED POSTING “BEFORE THE BEGINNING”

The Q posts began on October 28, 2017 – in the same month where I reported on a similar phenomenon from a sassy female insider calling herself MegaAnon.

Mega’s posts had been ongoing since May of 2017. As I read them, it became very obvious that she was some type of intelligence contractor for the positive Alliance.

MegaAnon’s posts had not attracted attention outside of a small, youthful community until I began publicizing them in October 2017, in the aftermath of the Vegas shootings.

Mega leaked some shocking data on October 5, 2017. According to her intel, Trump was present in Vegas during the shootings – which had been intended to take him out.

Had this evil plan worked properly, a complex narrative would have gone public – a narrative which none of us ever had to see or hear, thankfully.

Mega also seemed to have been briefed on plans for a much faster public disclosure of information than what we actually received.

⁶⁷ Thirteen additional posts appeared in 2022, but the remaining 4,953 were between 2017 and 2020.
<https://qanon.pub/>

Here is what she said at the time. This is what triggered me to go public. The events she describes did not happen, but the overall idea of a Plan is now very easy to visualize.

The ‘Storm’ Trump is referring to isn’t that Vegas was a “false flag.”

You’re just going to 100%, without any doubt, realize [Vegas] WAS [a false flag attack], after he/Sessions disclose what he’s referring to as the ‘Storm’.

We aren’t going to war with North Korea.

Soon Trump is going to shake this country to its core with the truth.

And when he does, you’ll realize why they were willing to kill tens of thousands of people while leveling half of Vegas, as initially planned, to derail Trump’s ability to do it.

People are going to have to swallow some pretty big horse pills of pride.

They’ll feel dumb, duped, stupid, like they’ve been had, etc.

Many will still proceed to deny the reality they now can’t avoid.

If the masses can’t keep their s__t together,

by NOT running to their banks, selling all their stocks, making dumb decisions, etc.,

Then things could escalate....

Internally, the economy is what worries us most.

The fallout could be devastating, but that said, it’s time.

It’s time for the people to know the truth about a lot of things.

And not just us. The world.⁶⁸

This is just a very small sampling of the enormous body of insider data that Mega had already built up since her first recorded posts began on May 23rd, 2017.^{69 70}

Everything she was saying in these posts confirmed what I’d already been hearing from Pete and other insiders since 2009, and publishing on divinecosmos.com.

⁶⁸ <https://web.archive.org/web/20230123123808/https://archive.4plebs.org/pol/search/uid/y%2F3kCTnZ/order/asc/>

⁶⁹ https://www.reddit.com/r/conspiracy/comments/795d6a/megaanon_postings_compiled_may_2017_present/

⁷⁰ https://web.archive.org/web/20221217022539/https://www.reddit.com/r/conspiracy/comments/795d6a/megaanon_postings_compiled_may_2017_present/

As I read Mega's words, I realized that this explained the real reason the mainstream media was so focused on destroying Donald J. Trump – as Durham has now proven.

PROPHETIC MEGA-ANON PASSAGES ON OCTOBER 6, 2017

Mega had additional provocative things to say on October 6th, 2017. This was still 22 days before 'The Posts' started on the same messaging forum.

The Harvey Weinstein allegations first surfaced in a *New York Times* investigation on October 5th.⁷¹ Mega wrote and posted intel about this situation the very next day.

The #MeToo movement didn't fully begin snowballing until October 10th, where New Yorker's Ronan Farrow cited 13 women accusing Weinstein of rape.⁷²

This is what MegaAnon posted four days before #MeToo, on October 6th.

Hollywood specifically will take a MASSIVE HIT in the very near future.

Harvey [Weinstein] was the first low-hanging takedown.

So just imagine how high-level this will go...

The MSM and public will only be given a few hours of notice on the day of each of a series of Presidential addresses.

[They] (the Deep State) will NOT be given details or talking points, in advance.

POTUS will choose a VERY select group of WH media correspondents to attend live, which BTW is standard protocol for Presidential addresses.

They will not be afforded the opportunity to tee up presser/subject related questions, which is done on purpose.

[This] gives [the] media no chance to build the public narrative or messaging in advance, with a lot of unfounded pre-address 'speculation' and hypothesizing for hours,

based on a few pre-released talking-point bones POTUS will usually throw in advance.

When these series of addresses have concluded, NO ONE will be confused.

⁷¹ <https://www.hollywoodreporter.com/news/general-news/metoo-five-years-timeline-allegations-accountability-activism-1235228661/>

⁷² <https://www.bbc.com/news/entertainment-arts-41594672>

He will be extremely clear and concise. He will leave no room for false narratives. There will be no gray areas left to fill....

The goal is that when it's all said and done, there will be no room for question, when it comes to the people.

He won't have to disclose s__t like 9/11, OKC, Vegas, Voter Fraud, Russia hacks or collusion, election rigging, etc. specifically.

When he's done, it will be a literal "mic drop" on the world's stage.

No one ever again will have the ability to question who's responsible for, involved in coordinating, etc. ANYTHING that has ever happened and been considered a "conspiracy theory", ever again.

When he's done, the entire world will just KNOW IT ALL.

It really is THAT all-encompassing.

Like Trump says, "you'll see".

It just has to happen. We cannot be derailed. Ever again....

I'm trying to convey the broadness and scope of what will be publicly disclosed.

My only point is that after it's all over, no one will be able to turn away from the truth.

The masses will never again be able to claim with 100% certainty that 9/11 DIDN'T have inside, US sponsored and funded, department/agency coordination, allocated resources and assistance.

No one will EVER be able to NOT believe that our own f__ing agencies and departments and former admins didn't play a huge role in s__t like JFK, OKC, 9/11, ISIS, Pizza, Vegas, etc.

They won't be able to turn a blind eye to what they consider "conspiracy theories" today, simply because the MSM told them to.

The only thing that everyone will be able to agree on, when it's all said and done, is that we've all been horrifically lied to – on incomprehensible levels.

And nothing we've been led to perceive as our 'reality' for generations, since the very f__ing day GHB was sworn into the admin as Director of the CIA,

Has been the whole truth and nothing but.

No one will be able to use ignorance as an excuse anymore. The people think they're in charge?! Haha, well now Trump is going to give it to them.

He's going to give us all the f___ing transparency we can handle. And when he does?! That's when you'll truly see what "We, the People" are made of.

You'll have people who can't handle it, begging to give the truth BACK to the admin....

3 different disclosures:

A 3 letter (federal) agency

A 3 letter (central) department

And 3 letter (federally sanctioned) economic org.

These 3 HUGE F___ING 'ROCKS' ARE 'FALLING.'

And **once you're given the truth, the credibility and validity of all three will be erased for the last almost 60 years.**

If you're not picking up what I'm laying down, then I don't know what else to tell you.⁷³

BREAKING THE STORY TO A MUCH LARGER LEVEL

I was absolutely electrified by the posts of October 5th and 6th. No one else had publicly stated anything that so closely matched what I was hearing from Peterson.

My first MegaAnon article was October 11, 2017, now at 2.6 million views in March 2023.⁷⁴ The follow-up was on October 22nd, now with 3.15 million views.⁷⁵

We explore the details of the Vegas tragedy, including the Deep State symbolism of pyramids and sphinxes surrounding the area where the "mass sacrifice" occurred.

The first Q post appeared only six days after my second article, on October 28th, 2017.

The Alliance began speaking through the same forum where MegaAnon had already demonstrated reliable, anonymous and safe communication for months.⁷⁶

⁷³ <https://web.archive.org/web/20230123133834/https://archive.4plebs.org/pol/search/uid/vy3Y5hFc%20/order/asc/>

⁷⁴ <https://divinecosmos.com/davids-blog/1220-vegas-meta-analysis/>

⁷⁵ <https://divinecosmos.com/davids-blog/1221-4chan-wikileaks/>

⁷⁶ <https://qanon.pub/#1>

All of Mega's posts can still be accessed today on a Reddit thread.⁷⁷ I have also included a link from [archive.org](https://www.reddit.com/r/conspiracy/comments/795d6a/megaanon_postings_compiled_may_2017_present/) in the likely event that her thread is taken down.⁷⁸

Mega seemed to have temporarily lost her insider access after posting. She grew distressed by December 2017 before disappearing from public view, as far as I know.

My guess is that she is alive and well, and was welcomed back into the Alliance.

The Q posts provided far more detailed and voluminous specifics than Mega in the fullness of time, with nearly 5000 different postings to date.

The Michael Prophecies also appear to be closely aligned with what both Mega and Q were predicting, though most of the telepathic data was received in 1996 through 1999.

By combining the Q posts with what I personally know from insiders, it appears that Archangel Michael's time-viewing technology was a necessity for The Plan to work.

This is the most likely explanation for the ongoing and seemingly supernatural phenomena of "deltas," widely documented by countless independent investigators.

On many occasions, posts from previous years are predictive of events that occur on that same date, years later. X22 Report has reported on countless examples of this.⁷⁹

We may well discover that a very complex, systematic use of Looking Glass technology, involving entire teams of individuals, was critically necessary to make The Plan work.

THE 'DCTP' WAS A BIG ANGELIC PSY-OP

At the end of Book One, Archangel Michael revealed that the Deep State's own time-viewing devices were deliberately programmed to reveal false, misleading information.

Negative ETs such as the Draco Reptilians apparently gave the Deep State technologies that allowed them to see forward through time, beginning in or around 1939.

For many years, the Deep State therefore had a supernatural advantage, where they could foresee any event that might disrupt their power, and prevent it from happening.

They could assassinate or disable an individual or group before they would be able to complete a task that could lead to the Deep State's defeat in the future, as an example.

⁷⁷ https://www.reddit.com/r/conspiracy/comments/795d6a/megaanon_postings_compiled_may_2017_present/

⁷⁸ https://web.archive.org/web/20221217022539/https://www.reddit.com/r/conspiracy/comments/795d6a/megaanon_postings_compiled_may_2017_present/

⁷⁹ <http://x22report.com>

After 1983, Looking Glass showed two timelines, often called Timeline 1 and Timeline 2.

Timeline 1 featured a catastrophic destruction of life on Earth, whereas Timeline 2 showed a path through these events without extinction-level Earth Changes.

Scenes from both Timelines would flip-flop back and forth in a strobe-like effect.

High-speed film was used, followed by the de-interlacing of the two sets of images, frame by frame. This was all a very time-consuming analytical procedure.

As we headed into December 21st, 2012, the strobing between the two sets of images became so fast that they blurred into a singularity of white light.

No historical events past December 21st, 2012 could be seen for this reason.

All the viewers would see is white light from 2013 and beyond.

These observations were collectively referred to as the Doctrine of the Convergent Timeline Paradox, or DCTP. This is taken very seriously at the highest insider levels.

The devices that Michael gave the Alliance apparently did not have these problems. Events in their Looking Glass have remained visible through 2023 and beyond.

Although this may sound like “cheating,” it actually represents a very clever high-level angelic intervention that allowed the Alliance to defeat the Deep State.

Michael has revealed that a device like Looking Glass is nothing more than a set of training wheels for humans who have not yet realized our natural abilities.

Without any machine technology, Michael has produced astonishing results in these volumes, simply through the power of telepathic communication and documentation.

THE CREATOR STIMULATES OUR GROWTH THROUGH INITIATION

The ultimate reason we’re here is to learn to love each other — and love ourselves. That’s a very simple distillation of Archangel Michael’s message.

Michael’s main body of teachings prior to these volumes was the Law of One, which arrived from 1981 to 1983, and has encyclopedic detail on many esoteric subjects.

The scientific model that the Law of One described in the early 1980s could be fleshed out by many hundreds of unique discoveries that were made in the ensuing years.

I validated many aspects of Law of One science in *The Source Field Investigations*, my first published book, which also debuted as a New York Times best-seller.

The Law of One's model did not require me to refer to it in order to explain it. All I needed to do is find a variety of scientific arguments that helped make the case.

We learn that there is only One Mind in the universe. We are all holograms of the One Infinite Creator, with its full powers available to us in potential.

The Creator wants us to learn, grow and evolve into more loving and caring people.

The Creator often triggers our evolution through initiation – stressful and upsetting events that ultimately expose where our love is weak, individually and collectively.

If you are carrying Shame, Guilt, Regret and Self-Doubt inside yourself, you are at risk of being scooped up by people who are constantly seeking out those qualities in others.

Almost all of the most painful, difficult and violent initiations on Earth will come our way from people who fit the description of Narcissistic Personality Disorder, or NPD.

The Deep State represents the holographic embodiment of the psychopath persona.

In order to fully master your interactions with people like this, it is necessary to understand that 'Love' and 'Destroy' are fundamentally intertwined in their psyches.

Thus, the Deep State 'loves' us by creating Hollywood entertainment, government programs that appear to be helping "marginalized populations," and so on. *But...*

THE FIRST WAVE OF ASCENSION

Once the public learns the truth on a mass scale, Archangel Michael has indicated that the consciousness shift will soon trigger a solar-system-wide energetic event.

Why? The solar system itself is a holographic projection of our mass consciousness. As we evolve, so does the very space, time, matter and energy around us.

This "First Wave" solar event will spontaneously upgrade our level of consciousness, while keeping our physical bodies alive and intact. Miracle healings will soon occur.

In the preceding volume, Archangel Michael revealed that we only have **two years left** before this initial solar event is anticipated to take place. AD 2025 is the "deadline."

However, instead of this being a line of death, it is a time of great rebirth – which was accurately predicted as a coming "Golden Age" in 35 different ancient traditions.

The stunning precision of Michael's prophecies gives us legally credible, scientific reasons to accept his more cosmic and outrageous-sounding prognostications.

In short, Michael is an intelligence that is considerably higher than what we normally can access. He is outside of space and time. And he proves it – over and over again.

SILICON VALLEY LOST FIFTEEN HUNDRED AND FIFTEEN

In 1996, I began using remote-viewing protocols to pull in the “still, small voice” I could hear in the mornings, while I was still able to remember details from my dreams.

On the first day he contacted me, November 10, 1996, Archangel Michael gave us a stunning prophecy of the Silicon Valley Bank collapse we just saw this weekend.

“Missions/Egyptians. **Silicon Valley lost fifteen hundred and fifteen** feathers. We’re in a coincidence on that.”

This prophecy encoded the exact mathematical numbers of the collapse with precision.

“Silicon Valley [Bank] lost fifteen hundred and fifteen” numerically encodes the 151.5 billion in uninsured deposits that Silicon Valley Bank held at the time of its collapse.⁸⁰

We simply add a decimal point to 1515 and get 151.5 – the exact number of uninsured deposits, in billions, that were held at Silicon Valley Bank when it was shuttered.

If you still want to believe this is a ‘coincidence,’ that mental game will eventually fall apart under the awesome weight of so many verifiable Michael Prophecies.

As I’ve said in the other volumes, as a Consulting Producer and talent in over 100 episodes of *Ancient Aliens*, if something else like this existed, I would know about it.

My life has been so thoroughly infused with supernatural and synchronistic events from Michael that my second published book is called *The Synchronicity Key*.

In this volume, Michael again “brings his A game” in the “prophecy department.”

CRIMINAL PROCEEDINGS AGAINST DEEP STATE BY END OF MARCH?

Today, March 13th, I saw a Tweet posted by Andrew Bridgen, Member of Parliament for North West Leicestershire, with 137.1K Twitter followers. (andrewbridgen.com)

I can confirm that during my visit to Washington DC last Christmas/ New Year, I was informed that **the US DoD were responsible for both the virus and the vaccines.**

Fort Detrick was named. Also a facility in Canada. (1/2)

⁸⁰ <https://www.kcci.com/article/collapsed-bank-silicon-valley-bank-how-us-can-prevent-more-chaos/43283262>

By the end of the month, I expect to see the start of criminal proceedings against the many politicians and officials who are responsible around the world. (2/2)⁸¹

[We have indeed seen an unrelenting volume of Congressional investigations since Bridgen wrote this post. The “Grand Summary” has not yet been presented to us.]

The speed with which events are happening at this time is nearly overwhelming.

I have had quite the challenge in trying to keep this book up-to-date and current as it all unfolds, while also keeping my body from falling apart in my hands and wrists.

On the Gateway Pundit website this morning, we also see Rep. Paul Gosar calling for the arrest of many top Deep State figures after the ‘new’ J6 footage emerged.⁸²

“The Dude With The Horns,” a seemingly mythical media villain, was now seen being politely led around by police who valiantly tried to open locked doors – for his safety.

What truly baffles me is how precisely Michael’s prophecies have been unfolding, on a day-by-day basis, as I have worked to finish these books over the last year and a half.

In what I call the “Time Loop” phenomenon, events occurring in my present, as I worked on this book, were predicted in the material from the second half of 1998.

In order to track this phenomenon in the main text, I will write “David’s Note” in brackets, followed by the date I made the post, where appropriate.

As I worked through my various editing passes on this book, real-world events were precisely aligning with Michael’s words in 1998. This caused endless fascination.

Michael also feeds me complex, symbolic dreams that are predictive of events in our present – and then decodes them in his subsequent words.

DECIDED TO TAKE ADDITIONAL TIME OFF IN EMERGENCY CONDITIONS

Nearly a week has gone by since I began writing the above. It is now March 18th.

Our weather up here at 8600 feet in Colorado has been terrible. I also had no idea, at first, of whether we were heading right into a big economic collapse this week.

⁸¹ <https://twitter.com/abridgen/status/1634861570957225984>

⁸² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/exclusive-interview-heads-have-to-roll-rep-paul-gosar-calls-for-hearings-on-j6-footage-and-says-stay-tuned-for-investigation-and-prosecution-of-pelosi-cheney-milley-mayorkas-video/>

During this same timeframe, 39% of Americans could not sleep,⁸³ and 27% believe artificial intelligence will go rogue and turn against its creators – namely us.⁸⁴

So far, the Federal Reserve has acted to bail out Silicon Valley Bank and others, but has also indicated that the process is selective, and not all banks will be rescued.

Feel free to panic at your own discretion, as the old saying goes.

This move has aroused suspicion that a plan is in play to de-legitimize the apparent safety of smaller banks, thus triggering a massive cash infusion into the mega-banks.⁸⁵

Michael's original November 10th, 1996 prophecy, from the first day of contact, said "Silicon Valley lost fifteen hundred and fifteen feathers."

In Book One, I associated this prophecy with the mass firing of Twitter staff – the "feathers" of the Twitter bird – that had just occurred as I was finalizing the text.

Mark Zuckerberg announced the firing of another 10,000 Facebook/Meta employees, one day after Michael gave us the exact numbers of the Silicon Valley collapse.^{86 87}

The opening of Book One, and the initial firing of the Twitter staff, are now time-looped with the current events of Silicon Valley Bank and Facebook/Meta's new mass firing.

During this same timeframe, a study emerged showing that a full 50 percent of the people believe the media exists to mislead the public.⁸⁸

On Thursday, March 16th, Japanese officials stepped up and urged their government to tell the world the truth about the excess numbers of deaths they are now seeing.⁸⁹

Multiple banks pulled out of Credit Suisse this same week, amidst troubling reports.⁹⁰

⁸³ <https://www.zerohedge.com/medical/39-americans-cant-sleep>

⁸⁴ <https://www.zerohedge.com/technology/will-ai-go-rogue>

⁸⁵ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/wow-janet-yellen-admits-smaller-regional-midwest-banks-will-not-be-bailed-out-only-big-chosen-banks-deemed-worthy-by-biden-or-regime-video/>

⁸⁶ <https://t.me/disclosetv/10836>

⁸⁷ <https://nypost.com/2023/03/14/meta-confirms-another-10000-layoffs/>

⁸⁸ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/rough-time-for-fake-news-trust-in-media-in-the-sewer-majority-of-americans-now-believe-media-intends-to-mislead-misinform-or-persuade-the-public/>

⁸⁹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/japanese-officials-urge-government-to-tell-the-truth-about-excess-deaths-following-vaccine-mandates-210000-excess-deaths-following-vax-mandates-video/>

⁹⁰ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/what-else-can-it-do-credit-suisse-deposit-run-continues-despite-snb-rescue>

Then on March 24th, Deutsche Bank shares dropped by 10 percent, leading to the ominous headline, “Deutsche Bank Bloodbath Re-Ignites Global Crisis Fears.”^{91 92}

The convergence of real-world events with what Michael has been predicting as I scramble to finish this book has been a true source of amazement and inspiration.

I saved our next section of the book for last in my writing process, as this was the most difficult part of the book to write, due to its scientific focus.

In Book One, we discussed some of the brain abnormalities of the psychopath. I could tell this was a big story – and I wanted to learn more.

⁹¹ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/deutsche-bank-bloodbath-reignites-global-bank-crisis-fears>

⁹² <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/futures-tumble-treasuries-and-rate-cut-odds-soar-amid-panic-deutsche-bank-next-go>

AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART THREE

As I meditate on the boiling anger in our present moment, I feel that one of our main keys to planetary liberation is to study and understand the psychopath.

A professional psychologist reveals that the fascinating and deeply upsetting “Love and Destroy” behavior patterns of the psychopath are essentially a constant among them all.

It is very interesting that all psychopaths appear to be following a common set of behavioral ‘programs,’ for lack of a better term.

As we shall see, they all share brain abnormalities that seem to produce these results.

Narcissists sometimes engage in “love bombing” – pretending to be everything you’ve ever wanted, only to turn it back on you further down the line.

It’s a manipulative tactic to reel in their targets.

First, they shower them with affection and gifts. Then, they start gaslighting and abusing their victim, causing them to wonder what’s real.

It’s all part of the plan to gain total control.

Although there’s no global summit for all dark triad people to get together and discuss their tactics, they do seem to operate in a similar way.

“It’s like they read from the same manual, even though nobody gives them that manual,” said psychologist Perpetua Neo, who works with victims of narcissistic abuse.

“They’re almost programmed in the same way.”⁹³

The cost to society that is posed by psychopaths has been estimated as a half a trillion to a trillion dollars or more, just in the United States alone.

This next quote is from a meta-analysis that combined at least 118 different scientific studies on psychopathy and brain anatomy together.

Two decades of neuroimaging studies have begun to specify the neurobiological correlates of psychopathy, a personality disorder characterized by callous and impulsive antisocial behavior.

⁹³ <https://www.insider.com/phrases-narcissists-use-2018-8>

Present in approximately one-quarter of adult male prison inmates¹, psychopathy is a significant predictor of violent reoffending² that costs the United States an estimated \$460 billion per year³,

making psychopathy one of the most costly mental health disorders.

Despite the accumulation of neuroimaging studies of psychopathy, a clear and comprehensive picture of the disorder's neural correlates has yet to emerge.⁹⁴

WHAT IS A PSYCHOPATH AND HOW DO THEY TEST FOR IT?

Most of the scientific studies of psychopaths are using what is called the Hare Psychopathy Checklist-Revised, or PCL-R, to give each participant a numerical ranking.

Extensive clinical studies have isolated the characteristics of psychopaths into a list of 20 itemized traits, as this next citation reveals.

A trained staff person will interview the person for 60-90 minutes, making sure to collect and document a score of zero, one or two for each of the following 20 list items.

- 1: Glibness [over-talking] / superficial charm
- 2: Grandiose sense of self-worth
- 3: Need for stimulation / proneness to boredom
- 4: Pathological lying
- 5: Conning / manipulative
- 6: Lack of remorse or guilt
- 7: Shallow affect [observed emotional responses]
- 8: Callous / lack of empathy
- 9: Parasitic lifestyle
- 10: Poor behavioral controls
- 11: Promiscuous sexual behavior
- 12: Early behavior problems
- 13: Lack of realistic long-term goals
- 14: Impulsivity
- 15: Irresponsibility
- 16: Failure to accept responsibility for own actions
- 17: Many short-term marital relationships
- 18: Juvenile delinquency
- 19: Revocation of conditional release
- 20: Criminal versatility⁹⁵

⁹⁴ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-0816-8>

⁹⁵ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychopathy_Checklist

Each question gets a score of zero, a one or a two. A score of one indicates a partial match but with mixed information. A two is a solid match.

We find out that the Brits have five points less tolerance for psychopaths than the Yanks.

Out of a maximum score of 40, **the cut-off for the label of psychopathy is 30 in the United States and 25 in the United Kingdom.**^{[12][13]}

High PCL-R scores are positively associated with measures of impulsivity and aggression, Machiavellianism, persistent criminal behavior,

and negatively associated with measures of empathy and affiliation....^{[12][14]}

The psychopath tends to display a constellation or combination of high narcissistic, borderline, and antisocial personality disorder traits, which includes:

Superficial charm, charisma/attractiveness, sexually seductive and promiscuity,

Affective [mood] instability, suicidality, lack of empathy,

Feelings of emptiness, self-harm, and splitting (black and white thinking).^[3]

In addition, sadistic and paranoid traits are usually also present.^[4] ⁹⁶

UNDERSTANDING THE BRAIN ABNORMALITIES OF THE PSYCHOPATH

The Ermer 2012 study identified several different brain regions that will appear on our list – each of which display measurable abnormalities in a psychopath.

Psychopaths impose large costs on society, as they are frequently habitual, violent criminals.

The pervasive nature of emotional and behavioral symptoms in psychopathy suggests that **several associated brain regions may contribute to the disorder.**

Studies employing a variety of methods have converged on a set of brain regions in paralimbic cortex and limbic areas that appear to be dysfunctional in psychopathy.

The present study further tests this hypothesis by investigating structural abnormalities using voxel-based morphometry in a sample of incarcerated men (N = 296).

[This creates “volume pixels” or ‘voxels’ of the ‘morphometry’ of structures within the brain. By creating a 3D image from an MRI, you can measure a reduction in gray matter.]

⁹⁶ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychopathy_Checklist (Accessed May 2023)

Psychopathy was associated with decreased regional gray matter in several paralimbic and limbic areas –

Including bilateral parahippocampal, amygdala, and hippocampal regions, bilateral temporal pole, posterior cingulate cortex, and orbitofrontal cortex.

The consistent identification of paralimbic cortex and limbic structures in psychopathy across diverse methodologies strengthens the interpretation that

these regions are crucial for understanding neural dysfunction in psychopathy.⁹⁷

If all those names for brain areas just seemed to blur together into nonsense, don't worry. I'm about to put them all together into a list and go through them one-by-one.

Other studies mention additional brain areas such as the insula, but this particular scientific article mentions many of the items on our list all at once.

Again, the human brain will self-lobotomize and shut these regions down as a protective response to trauma. Verbal abuse can be as damaging as stranger rape.

A BIT OF CLASSIFIED INTEL TO GET STARTED

Beginning in 2009, Pete Peterson told me the Intelligence Community, or IC, would deliberately look for people who spent 15 to 45 days in an incubator at birth.

The closer to 45 days a person stayed in the incubator, the better, in this instance.

All hospitals are required to report this data. It is very unlikely that a child goes through this ordeal without the intelligence community tracking them afterwards.

Pete told me that the IC would observe them as they got older, and once they reached a certain age, they would be contacted, brought in, and trained.

The reason, according to Pete, is that "they make great wet workers. They can kill a person just about as easily as you would wash your hands."

According to Pete, long incubator stays produce such reliable and convenient assassins that no one wants to put an end to the practice by exposing the damage it causes.

As Jacob once said, "You'll be amazed at what your guard will do for you if you invite him into the castle for a nice dinner once a year."

⁹⁷ Ermer, E., Cope, L. M., Nyalakanti, P. K., Calhoun, V. D., & Kiehl, K. A. (2012). Aberrant paralimbic gray matter in criminal psychopathy. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 121*(3), 649–658. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0026371>. <https://psycnet.apa.org/record/2011-28784-001>

It is my sincere hope that this and other abusive practices will stop in our society.

LET'S GO THROUGH THE THIRTEEN ABNORMAL BRAIN AREAS

We have already discussed how the frontal lobes shut down in the aftermath of severe PTSD. This is strikingly visible on an MRI. The whole frontal area is black. No colors.

The brain goes into 'hibernation' after certain forms of extreme trauma.

Here again is our master list of thirteen brain areas that are notably different in the psychopath – usually showing reduced gray matter and electrical activity.

[I found four more at the very end, but we'll stick with thirteen for now.]

Most of what we think of as the frontal lobes are in the prefrontal cortex, or PFC.

Frontal Lobes and Direct Connections:

- **Anterior rostral prefrontal cortex**
- **Orbito-frontal cortex (OFC)**
- **Ventro-medial (VM) prefrontal cortex (vmPFC)**
- **Anterior cingulate cortex (ACC)**
- **Posterior cingulate cortex (PCC)**
- **Dorso-lateral prefrontal cortex (dlPFC)**
- **Temporal pole**
- **Amygdala**

Central / Hippocampus Group:

- **Hippocampus**
- **Parahippocampal gyrus**
- **Superior temporal gyrus (STG)**
- **Striatum**
- **Insula**

STRESS CAN CAUSE CHANGES IN BRAIN PHYSIOLOGY

Before we begin going through the above list point by point, I want to quote from an exhaustive study entitled “The impact of stress on body function: A review.”

This little-known data about the brain sets the stage for the rest of our discussion.

The effects of stress on the nervous system have been investigated for 50 years (Thierry et al., 1968[115]).

Some studies have shown that **stress** has many effects on the human nervous system, and **can cause structural changes in different parts of the brain** (Lupien et al., 2009[65]).

Chronic stress can lead to atrophy of the brain mass and decrease its weight (Sarahian et al., 2014[100]).

These structural changes bring about [negative] differences in the response to stress, cognition and memory (Lupien et al., 2009[65]).

Of course, the amount and intensity of the changes are different according to the stress level and the duration of stress (Lupien et al., 2009[65]).

However, **it is now obvious that stress can cause structural changes in the brain, with long-term effects on the nervous system** (Reznikov et al., 2007[89])....

The medical community needs to have a greater appreciation for the significant role that stress may play in various diseases, and then treat the patient accordingly,

Using both pharmacological (medications and/or nutraceuticals) and non-pharmacological (change in lifestyle, daily exercise, healthy nutrition, and stress reduction programs) therapeutic interventions.⁹⁸

When we combine the results of this study with the leaked classified data from Dr. Pete Peterson, it appears that the newborn baby suffers very intense stress in an incubator.

That sense of all-encompassing abandonment and isolation apparently has a highly detrimental effect upon brain development, causing these types of abnormalities.

This newly-leaked data may help to solve many cases where people display psychopathy without any apparent abuse trauma of significance in their childhood.

Many other cases of psychopathy can be clearly linked to various forms of abuse that people suffered as children. The brain finds a way to “tolerate the intolerable.”

⁹⁸ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5579396/>

LET'S NOW DISCUSS THE FIRST AREA ON OUR LIST

In order to help organize our data, I divided our main list into two categories – Frontal Lobes and Direct Connections, and Central / Hippocampus Group.

Together, the Frontal Lobes list includes all of the main regions within the prefrontal cortex or PFC, as well as other areas that share direct neural connections with it.

The Central / Hippocampus Group is listed separately, as in this case we are looking at structures that are in the central regions of the brain, also within both hemispheres.

We will start tackling our list in order, beginning with the anterior rostral prefrontal cortex. Let's review what we shared in Book One about the damage in this area.

When we envision our current world, our philosophies and conclusions must be informed by the existence of psychopaths.

Medical science has now determined that some people have partial or complete lack of electrical activity centered in their frontal lobes.⁹⁹

Here are the results of one study, published on Reuters in 2012.

The results showed that the psychopaths' brains had **significantly less grey matter in the anterior rostral prefrontal cortex and temporal poles** than the brains of the non-psychopathic offenders and non-offenders.

These areas of the brain are **important for understanding other people's emotions and intentions, and are [electrically] activated when people think about moral behavior**, the researchers said.

Damage to these areas [including brain lesions] is linked with a **lack of empathy, a poor response to fear and distress, and a lack of self-conscious emotions such as guilt** or embarrassment.¹⁰⁰

If you have a person who lacks empathy, does not feel fear in threatening situations, and has no sense of shame or guilt about what they do, you have a dangerous person.

These difficult behavioral disorders are directly correlated with "significantly less grey matter" in two different areas of the brain.

Another study reveals that there are many different brain abnormalities in psychopaths.

⁹⁹ <https://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2021/04/210414154941.htm>

¹⁰⁰ <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-brains-psychopaths/study-finds-psychopaths-have-distinct-brain-structure-idUSBRE8460ZQ20120507>

Psychopathy, a disorder characterized by dysfunction in interpersonal-affective and impulsive-antisocial domains, **is associated with widespread neural abnormalities**.¹⁰¹

PSYCHOPATHS TAKE PLEASURE IN HUMAN SUFFERING

Another disturbing but very real scientific discovery is that psychopaths actually take pleasure in the harm they do to others. This can be measured in various ways.

We will now read another quote from the Deming study, which mentioned the costs of psychopathy to America as being \$460 billion dollars per year.

Numerous laboratory studies have linked psychopathy to reduced capacity for affective [emotional] empathy (Blair, 2005b).

For example, psychopathic individuals have exhibited reduced physiological arousal (i.e., skin conductance) in response to another person's distress (Aniskiewicz, 1979; Blair et al., 1997; House and Milligan, 1976).

When confronted with facial or vocal cues of another person's emotion, psychopathic individuals often show impaired affect [mood] recognition – (especially for fear, happiness, sadness, and surprise; Dawel et al., 2012).¹⁰²

An article from Science Direct entitled “Blame the Brain: Why Psychopaths Lack Empathy” reveals proof that people high “on the spectrum” will enjoy sadistic behavior.

To investigate the neurological roots of the disorder, researchers studied 121 inmates at a medium-security prison in the United States.

The inmates were divided into highly psychopathic, moderately psychopathic and weakly psychopathic groups, on the basis of a widely used diagnostic tool called the Hare Psychopathy Checklist-Revised [PCL-R].

Researchers scanned the brains of the participants while showing them images depicting physical pain, such as a finger getting caught in a door or a toe caught under a heavy object.

The participants were told to imagine the accident happening to themselves or to someone else. They were also shown images of neutral objects, such as a hand on a doorknob.

¹⁰¹ <https://psycnet.apa.org/record/2016-27714-001>

¹⁰² <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1053811920308284>

When the highly psychopathic individuals imagined the accidents happening to themselves, their brains lit up in the anterior insula, the anterior midcingulate cortex, the somatosensory cortex and the right amygdala — all areas involved in empathy.

The response was quite pronounced, [more than normal individuals,] suggesting psychopathic individuals were [highly] sensitive to thoughts of [their own] pain.

But **when the highly psychopathic inmates imagined the accident happening to others**, their brains failed to light up in the regions associated with empathy.

In fact, **an area involved in pleasure, the ventral striatum, lit up instead.**

Furthermore, these individuals showed abnormal connectivity between the insula and the ventromedial prefrontal cortex, an area important for empathetic decision-making.

By contrast, the less psychopathic individuals showed more normal brain activation and connectivity in these areas.

The strange patterns of brain activation and connectivity in highly psychopathic individuals suggest [that]

They did not experience empathy when imagining the pain of others, and possibly took pleasure in it.¹⁰³

Now imagine what happens when people like this band together. That's undoubtedly how the Order of the Assassins and other Deep State groups began in the first place.

If people on the extremes of this spectrum get to do whatever they want, you may have a situation like in Carthage, where 100 children at a time were being burned alive.

HOW DO WE KNOW WHAT THESE DIFFERENT REGIONS ACTUALLY DO?

Scientists have discovered what these different areas of the brain do through a variety of means. This can include studying people who have lesions in these particular areas.

When you study enough people who have scars and damage in the same region of the brain, you begin noticing that they all share similar behavioral characteristics.

Scientists can then use other tools, such as electro-cranial stimulation, to further light up certain parts of the brain and see how people react while something is happening.

An MRI can be used to monitor how people's brains operate in real time as they cycle through various emotions and thoughts, giving further insights into neural function.

¹⁰³ <https://www.livescience.com/39904-why-psychopaths-lack-empathy.html>

The PET scan, or Positron Emission Tomography, is another tool for measuring brain mass that I saw being used in some of these scientific studies.

From these and other studies, we now have a very solid idea of how each of the different regions of the brain contribute to our overall experience of thinking.

All of these regions work together to create our experience as a conscious personality.

The structure, content and flow of our thoughts in turn has a direct effect on molding and shaping our experience of reality as a person.

When people have lesions in a particular area of the brain, such as from a head injury, behavioral and emotional disorders of various sorts frequently occur.

A person with damage in certain areas may feel much less fear, distress, shame, embarrassment, empathy or guilt than a person with normal brain function.

GENERATIONAL ABUSE CAUSES BRAIN SHUTDOWN TO OCCUR

The name Anterior Rostral Prefrontal Cortex is admittedly quite a mouthful.

‘Anterior’ means ‘front,’ and ‘posterior’ means ‘back.’ The word ‘rostral’ refers to a beak-like projection at the front of something, like the prow of a ship.¹⁰⁴

This area is indeed at the very front point of the brain. As our quote revealed, this region of the brain is activated when healthy people are evaluating a moral decision.

If the part of your brain that tells you how to be a moral, ‘good’ person has been shut down, then your whole sense of morality can be greatly damaged.

This ‘moral’ area of the brain is directly behind the forehead, and thus most centrally associated with the classic Mark of the Beast visual from the Book of Revelations.

Generational members of the Deep State are subjected to extreme brutality in all forms, including severe sexual, physical and emotional trauma. There is no way to avoid it.

When this “moral center” of the brain is deactivated, the person becomes uniquely disinterested in going along with conventional values and ideals.

I do believe that the intelligence of our galaxy, or what the Law of One calls the Logos, has always been very aware of how the different parts of our brain function.

The “Mark of the Beast” may well be a time-encoded analogy for brain abnormalities.

¹⁰⁴ <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/rostral>

THE ORBITO-FRONTAL CORTEX

The Orbito-Frontal Cortex is also in the frontal lobes, and near to the Anterior Rostral Prefrontal Cortex we just discussed.

This region was mentioned in the study we quoted from at the beginning of this section of the book. Here is a brief recap so you can see the term, now highlighted.

Psychopathy was associated with decreased regional gray matter in several paralimbic and limbic areas –

Including bilateral parahippocampal, amygdala, and hippocampal regions, bilateral temporal pole, posterior cingulate cortex, and **orbitofrontal cortex**.¹⁰⁵

In order to understand what the orbitofrontal cortex does for us, we can quote from a study in the Nature journal.

Recent neuroimaging studies in humans have confirmed the role of the human orbitofrontal cortex as a **nexus for sensory integration, modulation [balancing] of visceral [fear-based] reactions, [which helps us calm down and relax,]**

and **participation in learning**, prediction and decision making for emotional and reward-related behaviours.

But these studies have also shown that the human orbitofrontal cortex is a highly heterogeneous brain region that encompasses many different functions.

In particular, the human orbitofrontal cortex has been found to represent not only the reward value and expected **reward value of foods and other reinforcers**,

but also their subjective pleasantness.

This link to subjective hedonic processing could provide a basis for further exploration of the brain systems involved in the conscious experience of pleasure and reward –

And, as such, offer a unique method for studying the hedonic [or pleasurable] quality of human experience.¹⁰⁶

What we see in the above is that if you have damage to the orbitofrontal cortex, you may not enjoy the taste of food anywhere near as much as a healthy person would.

¹⁰⁵ Ermer, E., Cope, L. M., Nyalakanti, P. K., Calhoun, V. D., & Kiehl, K. A. (2012). Aberrant paralimbic gray matter in criminal psychopathy. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 121*(3), 649–658. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0026371>. <https://psycnet.apa.org/record/2011-28784-001>

¹⁰⁶ <https://www.nature.com/articles/nrn1747>

They also said “other reinforcers” beyond foods can have a lower “expected reward value.” This means the person simply doesn’t enjoy the normalities of life.

If someone behind the wheel of a car does not feel any normal “reward value” from driving, and has no fear, they may drive aggressively just to keep things exciting.

Their brain does not provide a reward for behaviors normally associated with love, including listening, being supportive, and making sacrifices to help others.

This lack of ‘hedonism’ or happy response to life’s basic elements may explain why damage to this region also causes a lack of desire to participate in learning.

If this area is damaged, you will also have trouble balancing your reactions to fear.

Thus, an electrical shutdown and loss of gray matter in the orbitofrontal cortex is directly associated with producing anxiety, panic attacks and tantrums.

As prison guards well know, psychopaths make rash, violent decisions out of nowhere.

MEDITATION AND SEEKING THE LOVE IN THIS MOMENT

Again, the time-honored ancient method for healing this problem is meditation. The Law of One keeps steering you back towards meditation as your central practice.

As you meditate, you calm yourself down enough that painful memories can flash through your mind for brief moments.

At the speed of your own choosing, you can grab those flashes, unpack them, and recall another traumatic memory – balancing it with the love available in this moment.

This is a central Law of One practice. “Seeking the love in this moment.”

We are told that each additional seeking of love in the moment creates an exponential increase in the power we can draw upon as conscious beings.

10.14 The moment contains love. That is the lesson/goal of this illusion or density.

The exercise is to consciously seek that love in awareness and understanding distortions.

The first attempt is the cornerstone. Upon this choosing rests the remainder of the life-experience of an entity.

The second seeking of love within the moment begins the addition.

The third seeking powers the second, the fourth powering or doubling the third.

...There will be some loss of power due to flaws within the seeking – in the distortion of insincerity.

However, the conscious statement of self, to self, of the desire to seek love is so central an act of will –

That, as before, the loss of power due to this friction is inconsequential.

As you seek and find the love in this moment, that warm and soothing feeling can be held for long periods in meditation. As you do this, your brain is actually healing.

SCIENTIFIC STUDY INTO MEDITATION

In July 2022, the Annals of Neuroscience journal published an Indian study that proved the incredible benefits of meditation, using scientific methods.

Human **augmentation [of a meditation practice] with lifestyle modification fosters [generates] brain plasticity –**

to overcome various neuropsychiatric illnesses....

Mental stress leads to various stress-related neuropsychiatric disorders like depression and anxiety³⁷⁻⁴⁰ that affect our immune system.

Although antidepressants and anxiolytics are available to overcome neuropsychiatric disorders, they also produce long-term side effects.

But the evidence from the existing studies^{37, 41-47} on non-pharmacological interventions such as **yoga and meditation reported, as such, no side effects –**

and has shown better efficiency in combating various neuropsychiatric disorders....

The PFC [prefrontal cortex] plays a vital role in initiating the meditative processes, by helping to detect and avoid wandering thoughts (Phase I, Figure 1).¹⁰⁷

THE VENTRO-MEDIAL PREFRONTAL CORTEX

We are now going to drop down to the bottom of the frontal lobe region and explore the second area on our list – the ventromedial prefrontal cortex.

The term “ventromedial prefrontal cortex” is admittedly a tongue-twister. Many publications shorten it down to the acronym ‘vmPFC’ to make it easier to write about.

¹⁰⁷ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9676346/>

In this case, we are still inside the prefrontal cortex, PFC or “frontal lobes.” The first two words, ventro-medial, translate as front-middle.

‘Ventral’ refers to the abdominal area.¹⁰⁸ In medicine it can serve as another word for anterior, or front, whereas ‘dorsal’ is another word for posterior, or back.¹⁰⁹

The vmPFC is heavily wired into the amygdala, which is the final area listed in our first group, Frontal Lobes and Direct Connections.

The amygdala is perhaps the main part of the brain that deals with fear, trauma and fight-or-flight as a control center. The amygdala has many connections with the vmPFC.

Some scientific studies consider the amygdala and vmPFC ‘circuit’ of the brain to be the main area responsible for psychopathy.

This next quote is again from the Deming study, a meta-analysis of at least 118 different scientific investigations of psychopathy, and how it affects brain activity and volume.

A region densely interconnected with the amygdala, the ventromedial prefrontal cortex (vmPFC), has also received substantial attention in the psychopathy literature^{16,17}.

Psychopathic individuals show reduced vmPFC activity during moral judgment¹⁸ and reduced vmPFC [gray matter] volume^{19,20}.

The **amygdala and vmPFC** have been identified by one theoretical perspective as the **primary circuit of dysfunction in psychopathy^{21, 110}**

DAMAGE TO THE vmPFC WILL CAUSE PSYCHOPATHIC BEHAVIOR

As we read our next excerpt, we again hear that many of the most common characteristics of the psychopath will occur in a person who has damage to the vmPFC.

This includes a willingness to take extreme risks, a lack of fear and of emotional response in general, poor decision making, low morality, and lack of self-control.

The **ventromedial prefrontal cortex (vmPFC)** is a part of the prefrontal cortex in the mammalian brain.

The ventral medial prefrontal [cortex] is located in the frontal lobe, at the bottom of the cerebral hemispheres.

¹⁰⁸ <https://www.dictionary.com/browse/ventral>

¹⁰⁹ <https://www.osmosis.org/answers/dorsal-and-ventral>

¹¹⁰ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-0816-8>

[It] is **implicated in the processing of risk and fear, as it is critical in the regulation of amygdala activity in humans.**^[2]

It also plays a role in the **inhibition of emotional responses, and in the process of decision-making and self-control.**

It is also involved in the cognitive evaluation of morality.¹¹¹

The meta-analysis reference above just told us that psychopaths have less electrical activity in the vmPFC than most people do when they are making moral decisions.

Since this area helps to inhibit or control emotional responses, a person with this damage lacks self-control – and may do dangerous and irresponsible things.

SEVERAL OTHER AREAS BESIDE THE AMYGDALA AND VMPFC

Quoting again from the meta-analysis of 118 different studies, many scientists look beyond the amygdala / vmPFC circuit to other brain areas in psychopaths.

It is also very interesting to note that people with lesions in their vmPFC and amygdala again had similar personality issues as we see in psychopaths.

Another perspective expands the scope of neural dysfunction beyond the amygdala and vmPFC to the paralimbic cortex more broadly,

including **anterior cingulate cortex (ACC), posterior cingulate cortex (PCC), temporal pole, insula, and parahippocampal gyrus**²².

Indeed, psychopathy has been associated with structural^{19,23,24} and functional^{25,26,27} abnormalities in these regions.

Moreover, **deficits similar to those of psychopathic individuals have been observed in patients with lesions in paralimbic regions,**

including vmPFC^{28,29,30}, ACC^{31,32}, and amygdala³³... ¹¹²

THE ANTERIOR CINGULATE CORTEX

As we just learned, the amygdala connects to the vmPFC. The vmPFC connects to the cingulate cortex, which is in the middle area of the prefrontal cortex, or PFC.

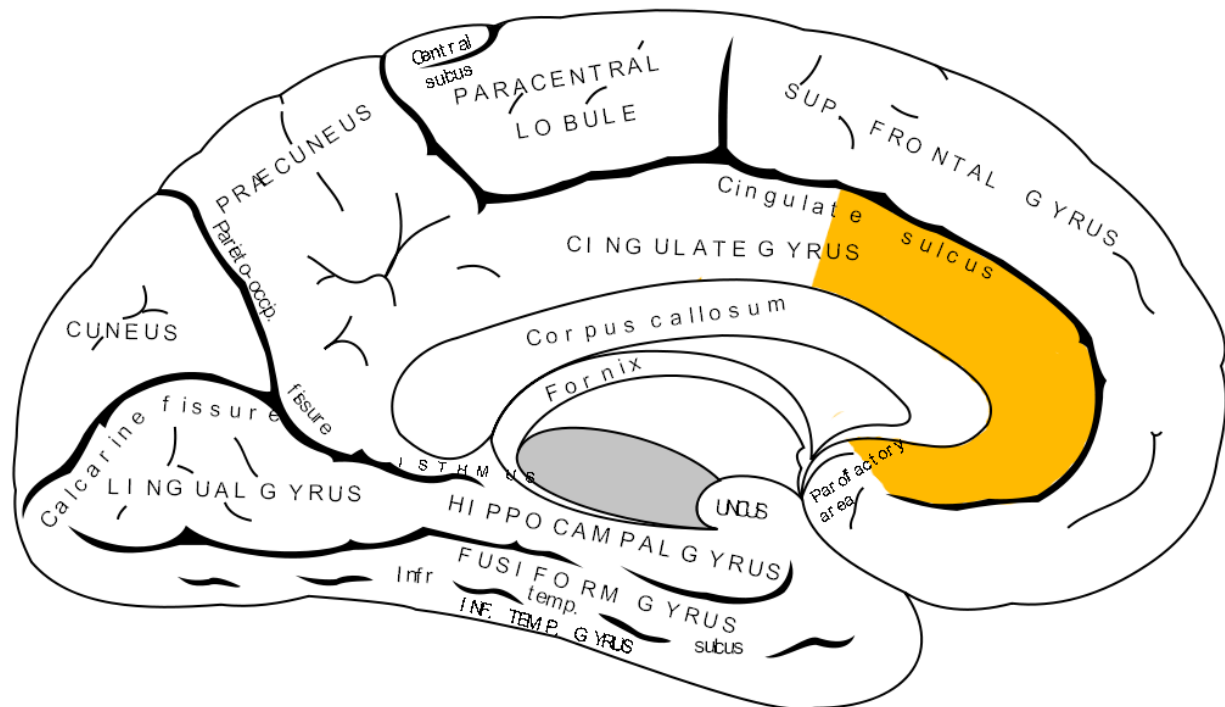
¹¹¹ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ventromedial_prefrontal_cortex

¹¹² <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-0816-8>

The cingulate cortex is divided into the anterior, or the front half, and posterior, or the back half. The posterior is not in the frontal lobes, but is directly connected to it.

In terms of location, the Anterior Cingulate Cortex or ACC sits directly above the ventromedial prefrontal cortex, in the frontal lobes.

The ACC is highlighted here in this modified illustration from Mysid Brodmann.¹¹³



Below the highlighted ACC region, we have the ventro-medial prefrontal cortex.

When we go back to the word ‘ventral,’ we remember that it can refer to the abdominal area, and therefore can be defined as the “lower front.” This makes it easy to remember.

The ACC has more advanced brain tissue that we only see in higher-order mammals, such as dolphins and primates. This region is directly associated with our emotions.

PYRAMID-SHAPED BRAIN CELLS IN ‘AREA 10’

In Book Two, Volume One, we discussed sacred geometry – and how consciousness itself creates these forms, and is upheld by these forms.

¹¹³ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anterior_cingulate_cortex#/media/File:Gray727_anterior_cingulate_cortex.png

Therefore, it is not surprising that we actually find pyramid-shaped cells in the ACC, which is part of a region known as Brodmann Area 10, with six sub-layers.

Area 10 has more than one of our listed brain regions within it. Area 10 spans the entire front portion of the brain immediately under our foreheads.

The pyramid cells may serve as antenna-like receptors for the geometric energy of consciousness, drawing influences from the soul for higher-order thinking.

In humans, the six cortical layers of area 10 have been described as having a “remarkably homogeneous appearance”.^[3] All of them are readily identified.

Relative to each other, layer I is thin to medium in width, making up 11% of the depth of area 10.

Layer II is thin, and contains small **granular and pyramidal medium to dark staining cells** (in terms of Nissl staining) which colors RNA and DNA.

The widest layer is III. Its **pyramidal neurons** are smaller nearer the above layer II than the below layer IV.

Like layer II, its cells are medium to dark. Layers II and III make up 43% of the cortex depth....

Layer VI below layer V and above the white matter contains **dark pyramidal and fusiform neurons**. It contributes 6% of area 10 thickness....^[3]

Large pyramidal cells are also present in 10r layer III, and even more so in area 10p.

Area 10 in humans has the lowest neuron density among primate brains.^[3]

It is also unusual in that [Area 10's] neurons have particularly extensive **dendritic arborization**, and are highly dense with dendritic spines.^[6]

This situation [of such extensive neural pathways in Area 10] has been suggested to enable **integration of inputs from multiple areas**.^[2] ¹¹⁴

“Dendritic arborization” is a fancy term for nerve cells that grow like tree branches.

WHAT ROLE DOES THE ACC PLAY IN OUR OVERALL THOUGHT PROCESS?

The ACC may be drawing in conscious influences from the soul, attuning them with pyramid-shaped neurons, and then growing new, tree-like connections for the brain.

¹¹⁴ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brodmann_area_10

What does the ACC actually contribute to our thinking process, based upon conventional science? And what happens when this area loses electrical function?

If we block out our emotional pain, we begin deactivating this valuable area.

[The ACC] is involved in certain higher-level functions, such as:

Attention allocation,^[1] reward anticipation, decision-making,^[2] **ethics and morality**,^[3] impulse control (e.g. performance monitoring and error detection),^[4] and emotion....^{[5][6]}

The ACC seems to be especially involved when effort is needed to carry out a task, such as in early learning and problem-solving....^[9]

A similar **theory poses that the ACC's primary function is the monitoring of conflict...**

Upon detection of a conflict, the ACC then provides cues to other areas in the brain to cope with the conflicting control systems....

Role in consciousness

The ACC area in the brain is **associated with many functions that are correlated with conscious experience.**

Greater ACC activation levels were present in more emotionally-aware female participants when they were shown short 'emotional' video clips....^[27]

In *The Astonishing Hypothesis*, Francis Crick identifies the anterior cingulate, to be specific the anterior cingulate sulcus, as a likely candidate for the **center of free will in humans.**

Crick bases this suggestion on scans of patients with specific [ACC] lesions that seem to interfere with their sense of independent will, such as alien hand syndrome....

Role in registering pain

The ACC is the cortical area that has been most frequently linked to the experience of pain.^[29]

It appears to be **involved in the emotional reaction to pain, rather than to the perception of pain itself.**^[30]

Evidence from social neuroscience studies have suggested that, in addition to its role in physical pain, the ACC may also be involved in **monitoring painful social situations as well, such as exclusion or rejection.**

When participants felt socially excluded in an fMRI virtual ball throwing game, in which the ball was never thrown to the participant, the ACC showed activation.

Further, this activation was correlated with a self-reported measure of social distress, indicating that **the ACC may be involved in the detection and monitoring of social situations which may cause social/emotional pain, rather than just physical pain....**^[31]

Autism

Impairments in the development of the anterior cingulate, together with impairments in the dorsal medial-frontal cortex,

may constitute a neural substrate for socio-cognitive deficits in autism, such as social orienting and joint attention.^[45]

PTSD

An increasing number of studies are investigating the role of the ACC in post-traumatic stress disorder.

PTSD diagnosis and related symptoms such as skin conductance response (SCR) to “potentially startling sounds” were found to be correlated with **reduced ACC** volume.^[46]

Further, **childhood trauma** and executive dysfunction seem to correlate with **reduced ACC connectivity to surrounding neural regions.**^[47] **[Less dendritic arborization]**

In a longitudinal study, this reduced connectivity was able to predict high-risk drinking (binge drinking at least once per week for the past 12 months) up to four years later.^[47]

General risk of psychopathology

A study on differences in brain structure of adults with high and low levels of cognitive-attentional syndrome demonstrated a **diminished volume** of the dorsal part of **the ACC** in the former group,

indicating a **relationship between the cortical thickness of the ACC and the general risk of psychopathology.**^[48] ¹¹⁵

As we can see, our emotional experience of pain is managed by the ACC. This center of the brain also handles the monitoring of conflict.

We also saw that this area is correlated with ethics, morality, making decisions, self control, and how we allocate the focus of our attention and emotions.

¹¹⁵ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anterior_cingulate_cortex

[The ACC] is involved in higher functions such as **controlling one's own emotions, concentrating on solving problems, recognizing one's own mistakes, and making adaptive responses to changing conditions.**

All of these functions are closely linked with our emotions.

When experimental subjects are pricked with a needle, the activity in their cingulate cortex increases. This response is so clear-cut that the neurons in question are often called the "pain neurons".

A fascinating side-note: in 1999, **William Hutchison** and his colleagues at the University of Toronto showed that these same neurons in the cingulate cortex also become active when the subject sees someone else being pricked with a needle.

[David's Note: As long as the subject is not a psychopath.

Am I right? Who's with me?]

Thus, for these kinds of neurons, known as mirror neurons, there is no boundary between the self and the other.¹¹⁶

TOO LITTLE ACTIVITY CAUSES SCHIZOPHRENIA, TOO MUCH CAUSES OCD

Another scientific study suggests that decreased ACC activity is directly correlated with schizophrenia, whereas an over-activated ACC can lead to OCD.

There is now extensive evidence from the neuroimaging literature linking ACC dysfunction to a number of psychiatric disorders,

Including schizophrenia, OCD, depression, bipolar disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder and autism.

Given the involvement of the ACC in many cognitive and affective processes, this is not surprising.

[It] suggests that the ACC is a vulnerable part of an important and common pathway involved in the cognitive and emotional regulation of behaviour.

However, models of ACC function are incomplete.

And precisely how ACC dysfunction is related to the diversity of symptoms and behavioural disturbances seen in psychiatric disorders is still unclear.¹¹⁷

¹¹⁶ https://thebrain.mcgill.ca/flash/i/i_12/i_12_cr/i_12_cr_con/i_12_cr_con.html

¹¹⁷ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC193981/>

THE POSTERIOR CINGULATE CORTEX

The posterior cingulate cortex sits in the “back end” of the brain, on the same relative vertical layer as the ACC. It is directly connected to the ACC. Little is known about it.

There is considerable uncertainty about the function of the posterior cingulate cortex (PCC)....

[The PCC] is a central node of the default mode network (DMN), a set of brain regions showing strongly correlated neural activity –

and a reliable deactivation in activity during many cognitive tasks ([Raichle et al., 2001](#)).

One interpretation of this change in activity [where the DMN deactivates during normal thinking] is that **the [PCC] region is involved in internally directed thought** ([Buckner et al., 2008](#)), **for example, memory recollection or daydreaming.**

However, there is converging evidence that the PCC may serve multiple roles, including a more active role in the regulation of cognition [or thought] ([Hampson et al., 2006](#); [Gilbert et al., 2007](#); [Pearson et al., 2011](#)).

The PCC has dense structural connections to many other brain regions, suggesting a role as a cortical hub ([Hagmann et al., 2008](#)).

It is also one of the most metabolically active brain regions ([Raichle et al., 2001](#)), both at rest and during cognitively challenging tasks ([Pfefferbaum et al., 2011](#))....

Recent electrophysiological work with nonhuman primates suggests that **parts of the PCC signal environmental change, and the need to alter behavior** ([Hayden et al., 2009](#)).

This leads to the hypothesis that the PCC is involved in broad information gathering, which is necessary to control responses to a rapidly changing environment ([Pearson et al., 2011](#); [Leech et al., 2011](#)).¹¹⁸

An earlier study told us psychopaths become more agitated than usual when they are imagining pain happening to them. Hyper-vigilance may be from an over-active PCC.

Pain is the best example we have of something that causes a “need to alter behavior.”

THE PCC CAN BE OVER-ACTIVATED IN THE PSYCHOPATH BRAIN

Unlike our other regions so far, the scientific studies into psychopathy have determined that the PCC actually becomes over-activated in a psychopath’s brain.

¹¹⁸ <https://www.jneurosci.org/content/32/1/215>

The PCC may end up being forced to take over for other parts of the brain that are shut down, such as the ACC – usually in the aftermath of systemic, ongoing trauma.

A study published in Nature entitled “Meta-Analysis of MRI Data on Psychopathology and Neural Structure” reveals what the scientists discovered.

The current study is a meta-analysis of functional MRI studies of psychopathy.

Multilevel kernel density analysis was used to identify consistent findings across 25 studies (460 foci) of task-related brain activity.

Psychopathy was associated with increased task-related [electrical] activity, predominantly in midline cortical regions overlapping with the default mode network

(Dorsomedial prefrontal cortex, **posterior cingulate [cortex]**, and precuneus) as well as medial temporal lobe (including amygdala).

[David’s Note: We will see that parts of the amygdala increase, others decrease.]

Psychopathy was related to **decreased task-related activity** in a region of the dorsal anterior cingulate cortex [ACC,] overlapping with the salience network.

These findings challenge predominant theories of amygdala hypoactivity, and highlight the potential role of hyperactivity in medial default mode network [DMN] regions.¹¹⁹

The amygdala is very confusing, because it has areas that become over-activated and other areas that go into remission within the psychopath’s brain.

Once we get to the amygdala section, we will do our best to clear up this issue.

AN OVERACTIVE PCC MIGHT CAUSE AN ‘EGO PROBLEM’

Other scientific studies reveal that the PCC is very involved in thoughts that revolve around the self. Remember, this area is over-stimulated in the psychopathic brain.

The self-involved PCC may well be the area of the brain that puts the ‘Narcissist’ into Narcissistic Personality Disorder.

One influential hypothesis is that the posterior cingulate cortex [PCC] has a central role in supporting internally-directed [self-focused] cognition.

It is a key node in the default mode network, and shows **increased activity when individuals retrieve autobiographical memories [of the self] or plan for the future,**

¹¹⁹ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-0816-8>

As well as during unconstrained ‘rest,’ when activity in the brain is ‘free-wheeling’.

However, other evidence suggests that the region is highly heterogeneous, and may play a direct role in **regulating the focus of attention**.

In addition, its activity varies with arousal state, and its interactions with other brain networks may be important for conscious awareness....

Our own work has consistently shown **abnormal posterior cingulate cortex [PCC] function following traumatic brain injury, which predicts attentional impairments**.¹²⁰

A sudden activation of the frontal and parietal lobes [in the DMN] would appear to be the typical signature of a conscious perception....

Some authors have therefore proposed that the activation of the precuneus, and of the **posterior cingulate cortex**, which is closely connected to it,

Is **correlated with the feeling of selfhood** – and the sense of being an “agent”.¹²¹

Since the PCC is over-activated in the mind of the psychopath, and this area controls the feeling of selfhood, this may be where the narcissistic behaviors originate from.

The part of the brain that creates the sense of self is running on overdrive to compensate for other areas of the brain that are shut down. Narcissism is the visible result.

THE RETROSPLENIAL CORTEX

Within the PCC is a sub-region known as the retrosplenial cortex.

This region of the brain was described in a scientific study as helping to process our emotions and convert them to memories.

A review of the functional neuroimaging literature reveals a previously overlooked pattern of observations: the **retrosplenial cortex** is the cortical region most consistently activated by emotionally salient [meaningful] stimuli.

Evidence that this region is also involved in episodic memory suggests that it might have a role in the interaction between emotion and episodic memory.¹²²

¹²⁰ <https://academic.oup.com/brain/article/137/1/12/358120>

¹²¹ https://thebrain.mcgill.ca/flash/i/i_12/i_12_cr/i_12_cr_con/i_12_cr_con.html

¹²² <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0166223698013745>

“Episodic memory” refers to our collection of past personal events in our lives that we can easily recall, from the recent past to all the way back in our childhoods.¹²³

This ‘retro’ area of the PCC apparently helps us generate our personal memories.

When the retrosplenial cortex is damaged, we develop memory loss, or amnesia, as this Wikipedia entry reveals.

In humans, fMRI studies implicate the retrosplenial cortex in a wide range of cognitive functions including episodic memory, navigation, imagining future events and processing scenes more generally.^{[2][13]}

Rodent studies suggest the region is important for using surrounding visual cues to carry out these tasks.^{[12][14][15][16]}

The retrosplenial cortex is particularly responsive to permanent, non-moving environmental landmarks,^{[17][18]}

and is also implicated in using them to make spatial judgements.^{[19][20]}

It has also been suggested that the **retrosplenial cortex may translate between egocentric (self-centered) and allocentric (world-centered) spatial information,**

based upon its anatomical location between the hippocampus (where there are allocentric place cell representations) and the parietal lobe (which integrates egocentric sensory information).^{[12][21][22]}

[The parietal lobe is on the top of the brain, a little more toward the rear than the front. It also has regions that shut down in the psychopath brain, as we see in the “Final Four.”]

Pathology

The retrosplenial cortex is one of several brain areas that **produces both an anterograde and retrograde amnesia [memory loss] when damaged.**^[26]

People with lesions involving the retrosplenial cortex also display a form of topographical disorientation, whereby they can recognise and identify environmental landmarks, but are unable to use them to orientate themselves.^[2]

The retrosplenial cortex is one of the first regions to undergo pathological changes in Alzheimer's disease, and its prodromal phase of mild cognitive impairment.^{[27][28][29]}

There are also experimental findings showing that **layer 5 of the retrosplenial cortex is likely responsible for dissociative states of consciousness in mammals.**^[30] ¹²⁴

¹²³ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Episodic_memory

¹²⁴ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Retrosplenial_cortex

THE RETROSPLENIAL CORTEX AND DISSOCIATION

“Dissociative states” can be created through trauma, drugs and hypnosis to create amnesic, alternative personalities, such as in the classic case of MK-ULTRA.

The retrosplenial cortex is one of the key areas of the brain where this happens.

Here is an excerpt from another study that found a direct linkage between the retrosplenial cortex and the mechanism of dissociation, or memory blockage.

Dissociation is an altered behavioural state in which the integrity of experience is disrupted, resulting in reproducible cognitive phenomena....

Dissociation can occur as a result of trauma, epilepsy or dissociative drug use, but despite its substantial basic and clinical importance, the underlying neurophysiology of this state is unknown.

Here we establish such a dissociation-like state in mice, induced by precisely-dosed administration of ketamine or phencyclidine.

Large-scale imaging of neural activity revealed that these dissociative agents elicited a 1–3-Hz **rhythm in** layer 5 neurons of **the retrosplenial cortex....**

In testing for causal significance, we found that **rhythmic optogenetic activation** of retrosplenial cortex layer 5 neurons recapitulated dissociation-like behavioural effects.¹²⁵

As we can see here, stimulating the layer 5 neurons in the retrosplenial cortex with light caused a similarly dissociative effect as a large dose of ketamine, or “Special K.”

The dissociative “K-hole” response was correlated with a regular, pulsating rhythm of one to three beats per second within the retrosplenial cortex.

These scientists were able to electrically stimulate the layer 5 neurons within this area and create an amnesic event of dissociation without a corresponding seizure.

Since this area works at an overdrive speed in the mind of the psychopath, this may be because they regularly block out painful memories as a coping mechanism.

THE DORSOLATERAL PREFRONTAL CORTEX [DLPFC]

Now we will return our focus to the ACC area in the frontal lobes. To reach our next area, we will go directly above it, into the upper-most layer within the frontal lobes.

¹²⁵ <https://neurosciencenews.com/dissociative-experience-brain-circuitry-17033/>

The area on the top front of the brain is called the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. This tongue-twisting term is often shortened to dlPFC in various scientific papers.

This area appears less frequently than others in the scientific studies, and therefore was difficult for me to find until I was nearly finished. Our list kept getting larger.

Here is a scientific study that again found significant increases in the size of certain subregions within the dlPFC in the brains of psychopaths.

We performed a multimodal neuroimaging study of prefrontal cortex volume and functional connectivity in psychopathy, using a sample of adult male prison inmates ($N = 124$) [meaning there were 124 participants].

We conducted volumetric analyses [of their brain mass] in prefrontal subregions...

We found that **overall psychopathy severity** and Factor 2 scores (which index the impulsive/antisocial traits of psychopathy) were

associated with larger prefrontal subregion volumes, particularly in the medial orbitofrontal cortex and **dorsolateral prefrontal cortex....**

The results were not attributable to age, race, IQ, substance use history, or brain volume.

[The] dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (dlPFC), which consists of the middle frontal gyrus (MFG) and superior frontal gyrus (SFG), has been implicated in abstract reasoning (Greene *et al.*, 2004) and cognitive control (Miller and Cohen, 2001).

Psychopathic individuals' heightened recruitment of prefrontal areas that subserve abstract reasoning on these tasks – particularly the dlPFC –

has been interpreted as a **compensatory mechanism used to maintain socially appropriate behavior...** (Kiehl *et al.*, 2001).¹²⁶

Although some studies like this show an increase in brain volume, others reveal exactly the opposite, making this area more confusing than some of the previous ones.

One scientific study showed significant gray matter (GM) reductions in the dorsolateral PFC on both sides, whereas another found reduced masses most often on the left.

A number of structural imaging studies of psychopathy have involved incarcerated subject samples.

¹²⁶ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5490676/>

One advantage to studying incarcerated samples is that it is typically easier to recruit individuals with especially high psychopathy scores (see Methodological Caveats below).

In one of the first such studies, Muller et al used VBM [voxel-based morphometry analysis from an MRI] to compare GM [gray matter] –

In a group of n=17 adult male forensic inpatients diagnosed with psychopathy (based on the PCL-R) to a group of n=17 non-incarcerated, healthy age-matched males (Muller et al 2008).

The psychopathic group had significant GM [gray matter] reductions in the right dorsal ACC, and the dorsolateral PFC bilaterally....

Recently, Ly et al compared cortical thickness in a group of adult male psychopathic prison inmates (n=21) to a group of adult male non-psychopathic prison inmates (n=31) matched for age, IQ, and substance abuse history (Ly et al in press).

The psychopathic inmates exhibited significantly thinner GM [gray matter] in the left dorsal ACC and adjacent dorsomedial PFC as well as the left dorsolateral PFC.¹²⁷

In another case, a meta-analysis of 43 different studies found “significantly reduced structure and function” in the dlPFC and other related areas.

A meta-analysis was conducted on 43 structural and functional imaging studies, and results show **significantly reduced prefrontal structure and function in antisocial individuals....**

Findings were localized to the right orbitofrontal cortex, right anterior cingulate cortex, and **left dorsolateral prefrontal cortex.**

Findings confirm the replicability of prefrontal structural and functional impairments in antisocial populations –

And highlight the involvement of the orbitofrontal, dorsolateral frontal, and anterior cingulate cortex in antisocial behavior.¹²⁸

THE TEMPORAL POLE

Our previous quote from Book One on psychopathy focused on two areas in the psychopath brain – the anterior rostral prefrontal cortex and the temporal pole.

¹²⁷ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3937069/>

¹²⁸ https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2784035/?TB_iframe=true&width=370.8&height=658.8

The temporal pole is not a part of the frontal lobes, but sits below the ventro-medial prefrontal cortex. It is at the very “bottom front” of the brain.

We will review our Book One quote again, now that we are focusing on the temporal pole. This area is heavily associated with our thoughts about morality and ethics.

The results showed that the psychopaths’ brains had **significantly less grey matter in the anterior rostral prefrontal cortex and temporal poles** than the brains of the non-psychopathic offenders and non-offenders.

These areas of the brain are **important for understanding other people’s emotions and intentions, and are [electrically] activated when people think about moral behavior**, the researchers said.

Damage to these areas [including brain lesions] is linked with a **lack of empathy, a poor response to fear and distress, and a lack of self-conscious emotions such as guilt or embarrassment.** ¹²⁹

MORE DETAIL ON THE TEMPORAL POLE, EMPATHY AND FEAR

Now we will quote from another study that gives us far more detail on this ‘moral’ area of the brain, which also deals with empathy and our response to fear and distress.

This study combined 112 different articles on the temporal pole into a literature review.

[The temporal pole] is involved in many high-order cognitive functions.

Its lesion accounts for core symptoms of various neurological/psychiatric diseases....

The temporal pole has thereby been associated with several high-level cognitive processes:

- Visual processing for complex objects and face recognition,
- Autobiographic [self-focused] memory,
- Naming and word-object labelling,
- Semantic [language] processing in all modalities, and
- Socio-emotional processing,

¹²⁹ <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-brains-psychopaths/study-finds-psychopaths-have-distinct-brain-structure-idUSBRE8460ZQ20120507>

As demonstrated in healthy subjects and in patients with neurological or psychiatric diseases, especially in the field of neurodegenerative disorders.¹³⁰

Let's stop and think about what might happen if this part of the brain shuts down.

Since the temporal pole processes language, emotions and self-oriented memories, if this part of the brain is less active, the PCC apparently has to pick up the slack.

The PCC is not a direct part of the frontal lobe system or PFC, where higher-order emotions are generated and regulated.

All of the ingredients for the making of a psychopath are clearly seen here.

The psychopathic brain may have trouble processing speech if it is happening above a certain speed. Talking too fast can cause psychopaths to have tantrums for this reason.

I have observed this in my own public speaking and always try to slow myself down.

The psychopath's relative inability to process fast speech appears to be the direct result of electrical shutdown and gray-matter reduction within the temporal pole.

THE AMYGDALA

Last on our list in the Frontal Lobe category is the amygdala. This region appears to have received far more scientific scrutiny than any other area.

The reason the amygdala takes all the 'heat' in these studies is that it is widely acknowledged as our main area for processing fear, trauma and fight-or-flight response.

It is directly covered over by the ventro-medial prefrontal cortex, as we discussed.

Some of the studies I reviewed for this book suggested that certain scientists were a bit too hasty in blaming everything about psychopathy on the amygdala.

The amygdala appears as an olive-shaped region within both hemispheres of the brain. We remember that it is very densely wired into the ventromedial prefrontal cortex.

The amygdala shares a common characteristic with the PCC in the literature, in that parts of it become over-activated — while other parts shut down, as we usually see.

The two lobes of the amygdala look like eyes inside the brain — and they are always on the lookout for fearful and threatening situations.

¹³⁰ <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0891061821000089>



Diagram of bi-lateral amygdala locations by Washington Irving, Wikipedia, 2006.¹³¹

INCREASES AND DECREASES IN REGIONS WITHIN THE AMYGDALA

One scientific study with the amygdala involved 372 American patriots from Iraq and Afghanistan, who had been diagnosed with PTSD.

We enrolled 372 Iraq- and Afghanistan-era United States military service veterans, who were recruited from our local repository (22)....

Alterations in specific amygdala subnuclear volumes and regional shape distortions are associated with lifetime PTSD in military veterans.

Smaller volume in the lateral nucleus [of the amygdala], which is implicated in associative fear learning,

And larger volumes of the central and medial nuclei, which are implicated in fear expression,

Are consistent with the differential subregion-specific trophic responses in rodents exposed to chronic restraint stress.

We also identify the paralaminar nucleus, [a region within the amygdala that densely generates feel-good serotonin,¹³²] as smaller in PTSD.¹³³

¹³¹ <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amygdala#/media/File:Amyg.png>

¹³² <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/21906624/>

¹³³ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8040290/>

WE CAN'T LOOK AT THE AMYGDALA AS A HOMOGENEOUS ENTITY

Another study tackles the frustrating problem of some areas being smaller and other areas being larger. Along the way, we learn even more about the amygdala.

Current neurocircuit models of stress and PTSD focus on the amygdala^{5,6}.

The amygdala is an evolutionally conserved brain structure with multiple functions,

Among which the best known is to **encode and extinguish memory of fearful stimuli**^{5,7,8},

So as to direct physiological and behavioral responses when such stimuli are encountered.

In addition to its role in fear acquisition and extinction, **the amygdala plays an essential role in fear generalization⁹, arousal¹⁰ and processing of rewards¹¹,**

All of which may be disrupted in PTSD.

Exaggerated amygdala activity in response to trauma-related and more generic stimuli is a frequent finding in functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) studies of PTSD^{12,13}.

The evidence from structural MRI studies are, however, inconclusive, as **both volumetric increases¹⁴ and volumetric reductions¹⁵ have been reported.**

One reason for the mixed findings may be that most studies have considered the amygdala as a homogenous entity, without taking its specific nuclei into account.¹³⁴

Other scientific studies reveal that people with schizophrenia and bipolar disorder have a lower overall amygdala volume than the average.¹³⁵

Another study revealed that certain nuclei in the amygdala have larger volumes in people with bipolar disorder, which is one of the most disruptive in the psych ward.¹³⁶

Autism, which also involves obsessive thinking, again is correlated with a larger amount of volume in certain areas of the amygdala.

In comparison with controls, **amygdala volume was greater in ASD [Autism Spectrum Disorder]** ($F(1,94) = 4.19; p = .04$).¹³⁷

¹³⁴ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41398-020-00974-4>

¹³⁵ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8379533/>

¹³⁶ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7375099/>

¹³⁷ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5838552/>

Additionally, babies born prematurely end up suffering lower amygdala volume.¹³⁸

THE AMYGDALA CONNECTS US INTO THE HIPPOCAMPUS GROUP

Lastly, the amygdala is our bridge into the hippocampus, which opens up the second section of our list in the Central Group of brain areas affected by psychopathy.

This next scientific study shows us the amygdala / hippocampus connection.

We focus specifically on the amygdala's circuits with the **medial prefrontal cortex, the orbitofrontal cortex, and the hippocampus,**

As these regions share extensive anatomic and functional connections with the amygdala.

Furthermore, we discuss how dysfunction in the amygdala may contribute to social deficits in clinical disorders including Autism Spectrum Disorder, Social Anxiety Disorder, and Williams Syndrome.

We conclude that social functions mediated by the amygdala are orchestrated through **multiple intricate interactions between the amygdala and its interconnected brain regions,**

endorsing the importance of understanding the amygdala from network perspectives.¹³⁹

Now I will give you a chance to take a break before we head into the next section. Although this data is technical, I feel it is crucial to understanding our problems.

When we pick up our discussion again, we will move into a new series of brain areas that are strongly affected in the case of the psychopath.

This time, we will start with the hippocampus and explore the central area of the brain, rather than the frontal lobes. Everything is interconnected.

Like the amygdala, the hippocampus is strongly implicated in processing our responses and reactions to situations that cause fear.

¹³⁸ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8374486/>, <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7970879/>

¹³⁹ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9436700/>

AUTHOR'S PREFACE, PART FOUR

We already discussed how the frontal lobes shut down in the aftermath of severe PTSD. This is strikingly visible on an MRI. The whole frontal area is black. No colors.

In addition to the frontal lobes, another one of the most critical areas of the brain that is often deactivated or inhibited by trauma is the hippocampus.

The hippocampus appears as two crescent moon-shaped lobes near the center of the brain. They look like semicircular brackets surrounding the brain's reptilian core.



The hippocampus is critical for learning lessons, and remembering various things.

Severe PTSD from traumatic abuse can damage the hippocampus and directly generate learning disabilities, as this 2003 study from J. Douglas Bremner et al. reveals.

The hippocampus plays a critical role in learning and memory (5).

Patients with hippocampal lesions perform poorly on tests of verbal declarative memory,

Including tasks involving recall of a paragraph or learning a list of words (6),

With the **degree of [verbal memory] dysfunction correlating with hippocampal volume and cell loss (7-10)**.¹⁴⁰

ELEVEN-PERCENT SHRINKAGE FROM WAR TRAUMA

On October 31, 2020, Dr. Bremner's team revealed that when twins are separated and one suffers war trauma, their hippocampus shrinks by an average of 11 percent:

Monozygotic (N = 13 pairs) and dizygotic (N = 21 pairs) twins with a history of Vietnam Era military service, where one brother went to Vietnam and developed PTSD, while his brother did not go to Vietnam or develop PTSD, underwent MR imaging of the brain.

Structural MRI scans were used to manually outline the left and right hippocampus on multiple coronal slices, add the areas and adjust for slice thickness to determine hippocampal volume.

Results:

Twins with Vietnam combat-related PTSD had a mean **11% smaller** right hippocampal volume in comparison to their twin brothers without combat exposure or PTSD ($p < .05$).

There was no significant interaction by zygosity, suggesting that this was not a predisposing risk factor or genetic effect.

Conclusions:

These findings are consistent with smaller hippocampal volume in PTSD –

And **suggest that the effects are primarily due to environmental effects, such as the stress of combat, [verbal or sexual abuse]....**

Our results are not consistent with the idea that the association between PTSD and hippocampal volume is exclusively due to a genetic effect, as previously postulated.

Twin brothers share familial and environmental backgrounds,

¹⁴⁰ https://www.researchgate.net/publication/10776883_MRI_and_PET_Study_of_Deficits_in_Hippocampal_Structure_and_Function_in_Women_With_Childhood_Sexual_Abuse_and_Posttraumatic_Stress_Disorder

However in this case, the twin brothers differed in terms of Vietnam combat exposure, which is a likely determinant of their PTSD.¹⁴¹

CHILD ABUSE + PTSD = NEARLY 20% REDUCTION IN HIPPOCAMPUS

Our earlier study by Dr. Bremner from 2003 discovered that women with childhood sexual abuse and resulting PTSD had up to **19 percent** less hippocampal volume.

METHOD: Thirty-three women participated in this study, including women with early childhood sexual abuse and PTSD (N=10), women with abuse without PTSD (N=12), and women without abuse or PTSD (N=11).

Hippocampal volume was measured with magnetic resonance imaging in all subjects.

Hippocampal function during the performance of hippocampal-based verbal declarative memory tasks was measured by using positron emission tomography [PET scans] in abused women with and without PTSD.

RESULTS: ...Women with [childhood sexual] abuse and PTSD had a 19% smaller hippocampal volume relative to women without abuse or PTSD.

CONCLUSIONS: These results are consistent with deficits in hippocampal function and structure in abuse-related PTSD.¹⁴²

This study reveals that the PTSD created a 19-percent reduction in hippocampal mass, whereas trauma without PTSD still caused a 16-percent reduction in mass.

My own therapist is an expert in treating domestic violence, and she believes that every instance of sexual abuse creates damage, whether the person realizes it or not.

This, again, is reflected by a 16-percent reduction in hippocampal mass for those who suffered the trauma, even if they did not report PTSD symptoms resulting from it.

Exposure to a psychopath for any prolonged time will weaken your hippocampus.

Dr. Rhonda Freeman, a clinical neuropsychologist, describes a “pathological narcissism spectrum” that can include antisocial personality disorder, narcissistic personality disorder, malignant narcissism and psychopathy.¹⁴³

¹⁴¹ <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/33168198/>

¹⁴² https://www.researchgate.net/publication/10776883_MRI_and_PET_Study_of_Deficits_in_Hippocampal_Structure_and_Function_in_Women_With_Childhood_Sexual_Abuse_and_Posttraumatic_Stress_Disorder

¹⁴³ https://neuroinstincts.com/about_rhonda_freeman/

Dr. Freeman indicates that a relationship with a person who has strong traits on the psychopath spectrum can often turn into a predator / prey position.¹⁴⁴

Romantic love can temporarily de-activate your prefrontal cortex [PFC], involved with self-control and rational thinking, making it easier for people to manipulate you.¹⁴⁵

Dr. Freeman also reveals that one of the most important hidden characteristics of the psychopath is an extremely fragile sense of self.¹⁴⁶

Thankfully, we have scientific proof that the volume of the hippocampus can increase with the successful treatment of PTSD.

Studies of medications with known effects on the hippocampus (Aribi and Stringer, 2002; Duman, 2004) have shown **increased hippocampal volume with successful treatment of PTSD** (Bossini et al., 2007; Bremner et al., 2004a; Vermetten et al., 2003).

Some studies showed increased hippocampal volume with psychotherapy (Bossini et al., 2011) while others did not (Lindauer et al., 2005; Rubin et al., 2016; van Rooij et al., 2015)....¹⁴⁷

It is nice to know that psychotherapy can directly increase the volume of your hippocampus and lower your overall anxiety levels, in at least certain cases.

MEDICAL CANNABIS CAN STIMULATE BRAIN-TISSUE REGROWTH

The Deep State thoroughly vilified cannabis as a dangerous toxin with no medical benefits. Now a majority of US states have legalized it for conventional use.

In high school I wrote a paper on the Marijuana Tax Act of 1937 for Economics class.

A book in my family bookcase entitled *The Marijuana Papers* explained how many Blacks had switched to cannabis – after alcohol was prohibited by the Volstead Act.

The book argued that Big Alcohol needed to crush the competition – and fast.

Harry J. Anslinger drove legislation that made hemp illegal, re-branded it with a dangerous-sounding new name, and created stiff penalties for even minor violations.

¹⁴⁴ <https://neuroinstincts.com/romantic-love-survivor-abusive-narcissistic-relationship/>

¹⁴⁵ <https://neuroinstincts.com/abuse-craving-and-yearning-to-have-him-back-time-to-learn-about-the-reward-center/>

¹⁴⁶ <https://neuroinstincts.com/four-reasons-explanations-rarely-work-in-an-argument-with-a-narcissist/>

¹⁴⁷ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8345282/>

Multiple scientific studies have shown seemingly miraculous healing effects on PTSD with the proper use of medicinal cannabis, as part of an overall treatment program.

Here is an excerpt from Discover Magazine on this interesting phenomenon.

A 2018 clinical study on medical marijuana users showed very different effects on the brain.

The study looked at patients with a variety of conditions, including pain, anxiety, sleep disorders and gastrointestinal problems,

before and after taking marijuana via their preferred method of use – smoking, eating or topically applying.

Three months after patients started treatment, varying from one or two doses a week to multiple doses per day,

the researchers observed that **their brains had more activity in the prefrontal cortex [PFC], the area associated with cognition, decision-making and executive function.**

They also saw an increase in task performance among the users, signifying a **boost in cognitive function.**

In addition, the treatment quelled their symptoms. Most medical marijuana users in the study saw an increase in quality of life and alleviation of their ailments.¹⁴⁸

This is a hilarious about-face from the common idea that cannabis use “kills brain cells.”

COGNITIVE ABILITY WAS SIGNIFICANTLY BOOSTED

Gruber et al.’s study was also written about on the Harvard Neurobiology website.

Encouraging results have emerged from MIND’s first investigation, a longitudinal observational study of individuals using medical cannabis for various conditions and symptoms.

The team conducts multiple assessments before participants – who choose their own products – start treatment.

Further testing happens at three, six, 12, 15, 18, and 24 months after their treatment begins.

Even after a few months, patients performed better on cognitive tasks requiring executive function.

¹⁴⁸ <https://www.discovermagazine.com/mind/what-science-knows-about-marijuanas-health-benefits>

“Rather than getting worse, they’re actually getting better,” Gruber says.

This contrasts with poorer cognitive performance seen among some heavy recreational marijuana users relative to non-users.

Patients in this pioneering study have also reported improved mood, energy, and sleep, and reduced use of conventional medications.¹⁴⁹

BUT WAIT, BEFORE YOU GET MAD, THERE’S MORE....

The brains of older mice were “dramatically boosted” in their memory and learning power from a daily dose of psychoactive THC, as The Guardian reported in 2017.

“These results reveal a **profound, long-lasting improvement of cognitive performance resulting from a low dose of THC treatment in mature and old animals,**” the scientists write.

The boost in brain function was linked to an **apparent restoration of gene expression in the brain to more youthful levels.**

The German team believes that **the drug works by stimulating what is known as the endocannabinoid system,** a biochemical pathway that becomes less active with age in mice, humans and other animals.¹⁵⁰

“I’m sure that what we are seeing are the long-term consequences of normalising the [endocannabinoid] system,” Bilkei-Gorzo said....

Michael Bloomfield, a clinical lecturer in psychiatry at University College London said:

“What is particularly exciting about this research is that it opens up a whole new chemical system, the endocannabinoid system, as a potential target for new avenues of research, which could include illnesses like dementia.

“However, we are still in very early days and further research is needed,” he said.

THC produces complicated and sometimes apparently opposite effects depending on the dose, the age of the person taking it, and how often the drug is administered, he warned.

“This means that the possibility of doctors potentially prescribing cannabis, THC or similar compounds for memory problems in older people is still a long way off,” he added.¹⁵¹

¹⁴⁹ <https://neuro.hms.harvard.edu/centers-and-initiatives/harvard-mahoney-neuroscience-institute/archive-brain-newsletter/and-brain>

¹⁵⁰ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Endocannabinoid_system

¹⁵¹ https://www.theguardian.com/science/2017/may/08/daily-dose-of-cannabis-extract-could-reverse-brains-decline-in-old-age-study-suggests-thc?CMP=twt_gu

CBD IS WIDELY ASSOCIATED WITH CALMING PEOPLE DOWN

The amygdala and the hippocampus are, not surprisingly, two areas of the brain that are extremely rich with endocannabinoid system (ECS) receptors.

The amygdala and hippocampus process fear, and may have severe abnormalities in the case of a combat veteran suffering from extreme PTSD.

There are innumerable stories of “miracle healings” of PTSD with cannabis. It appears to allow fearful memories to re-emerge without causing new trauma.

As PTSD heals, neuroplasticity increases. The medication might, for example, help inspire the person to exercise, eat better and go outside for regular walks.

Some people respond well to this medication, whereas others can have extreme panic attacks, such as if they take an overly large amount without having tried it before.¹⁵²

Most dispensaries in America are quick to tell their customers that if a negative reaction begins occurring, a dose of non-psychoactive CBD can significantly reduce the problem.

Thankfully, many other successful therapies do not involve the use of any drugs.

A Harvard psychiatrist revealed that cannabis use in younger adults can have the opposite effect, reducing their overall IQ by up to **eight points**. [Noooooooo!....]

When we talk about the harms of cannabis, young people using regularly can have cognitive problems, up to an eight-point loss of IQ over time.

It can worsen depression. It can worsen anxiety. But all of those consequences depend upon the dose.

The data that shows those impacts look at young people who are using pretty much every day. They're heavy users who usually meet criteria for cannabis-use disorder.

So when people who are opposed to cannabis talk about those harms, they don't mention that they're talking about heavy users.

The 16-year-old kid who uses once or twice a week, I'd still be worried about it, but that use has not been correlated to these harms.¹⁵³

Multiple insiders have testified that cannabis breaks down mind-control programming, and this was a key reason why the Deep State kept it criminalized for so long.

¹⁵² <https://www.inc.com/cynthia-than/the-surprising-way-to-be-better-at-brain-teasers-a.html>

¹⁵³ <https://news.harvard.edu/gazette/story/2020/02/professor-explores-marijuanas-safe-use-and-addiction/>

SCIENTIFIC STUDY ON STRESS GIVES MORE DETAILS ON HIPPOCAMPUS

Earlier along, we quoted from a scientific study revealing that stress has direct effects on the brain, including the reduction in gray-matter volume that we have been discussing.

This same study gives us very useful information on the role of the hippocampus.

Various studies have shown that stress can cause functional and structural changes in the hippocampus section of the brain (McEwen, 1999[72]).

These structural changes include **atrophy [rotting]** and neurogenesis disorders (Lupien and Lepage, 2001[63]).

Also, **chronic stress** and, consequently, an increase in plasma cortisol, **leads to a reduction in the number of dendritic branches** (Woolley et al., 1990[122]) and the number of neurons (Sapolsky et al., 1990[99]),

as well as structural changes in synaptic terminals (Sapolsky et al., 1990[99]) and **decreased neurogenesis in the hippocampus tissue** (Gould et al., 1998[35])....

Cognition is another important feature of brain function.

Cognition means reception and perception of perceived stimuli and its interpretation, which includes learning, decision making, attention, and judgment (Sandi, 2013[95]).

Stress has many effects on cognition that depend on its intensity, duration, origin, and magnitude (Sandi, 2013[95]).

Similar to memory, cognition is mainly formed in the hippocampus, amygdala, and temporal lobe (McEwen and Sapolsky, 1995[73]).

The net effect of stress on cognition is a reduction in cognition.

And thus, it is said that **any behavioral steps undertaken to reduce stress leads to increase in cognition** (Scholey et al., 2014[101])....

Over the past several decades, there have been many studies investigating the role of stress on immune system function (Dantzer and Kelley, 1989[21]; Segerstrom and Miller, 2004[109]).

These studies have shown that stress mediators can pass through the blood-brain barrier and exert their effects on the immune system (Khansari et al., 1990[50]).

Thus, the effect of stress on the immune system is now an accepted relationship or association....

In addition to adrenal steroids, other hormones are affected during stress. For example, **the secretion of growth hormone will be halted during severe stress.**

A study showed that long-term administration of CRH into the brain ventricles leads to a cessation in the release of growth hormone (Rivier and Vale, 1985[90]).

Stress also causes the release of opioid [pleasure-causing] peptides to be changed during the time period over which the person is exposed to stress (McCarthy et al., 2001[70]).

In fact, stress modifies the secretion of hormones that play a critical role in the function of the immune system (Khansari et al., 1990[50]).¹⁵⁴

ENTRY-LEVEL JOBS CAN RE-GROW BRAIN TISSUE

The hippocampus also is featured in a miraculous scientific study that proves the value of entry-level jobs for our brain development.

In the Maguire et al. study from 2000, London taxi drivers were able to significantly expand the gray matter in their hippocampus by simply staying on the job.

The hippocampus apparently fires up while you are trying to solve navigation problems. Since taxi drivers do this all the time, they get larger mass in this area.

Structural MRIs of the brains of humans with extensive navigation experience, licensed London taxi drivers, were analyzed and compared with those of control subjects who did not drive taxis.

The posterior hippocampi of taxi drivers were significantly larger relative to those of control subjects.

A more anterior hippocampal region was larger in control subjects than in taxi drivers.

Hippocampal volume correlated with the amount of time spent as a taxi driver (positively in the posterior and negatively in the anterior hippocampus).

These data are in accordance with the idea that the posterior hippocampus stores a spatial representation of the environment —

And can expand regionally to accommodate elaboration of this representation in people with a high dependence on navigational skills.

It seems that **there is a capacity for local plastic change in the structure of the healthy adult human brain in response to environmental demands.**¹⁵⁵

¹⁵⁴ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5579396/>

¹⁵⁵ <https://www.pnas.org/doi/10.1073/pnas.070039597>

This is a very exciting discovery. Many millennials have never ventured out into the working world. It turns out that “getting a job” can actually heal your brain.

Taxi drivers in London must undergo extensive training, learning how to navigate between thousands of places in the city.

This training is colloquially known as “being on The Knowledge,” and takes about 2 years to acquire on average.

To be licensed to operate, it is necessary to pass a very stringent set of police examinations.

London taxi drivers are therefore ideally suited for the study of spatial navigation.

Comparisons were made between the brain scans of taxi drivers, who had all acquired a significant amount of large-scale spatial information (as evidenced by passing the licensing examinations),

and those of a comparable group of control subjects who lacked such extensive navigation exposure....

Our results suggest that **the “mental map” of the city is stored in the posterior hippocampus, and is accommodated by an increase in tissue volume....**

On a broader level, the demonstration that normal activities can induce changes in the relative volume of gray matter in the brain has **obvious implications for rehabilitation of those who have suffered brain injury** or disease.

It remains to be seen whether similar environment-related plasticity is possible in other regions of the human brain outside of the hippocampus.¹⁵⁶

Although this effect was only seen in the hippocampus, PTSD can be successfully treated — since PTSD appears to be caused by multiple brain areas shutting down.

It is my belief that all of the areas affected by psychopathy can be healed with the proper treatment program.

If you are living at home all the time, your brain may be suffering from a lack of development of the social skills that occur in the course of most types of jobs.

THE PARAHIPPOCAMPAL GYRUS

Next on our list in the Central category is the parahippocampal gyrus, which surrounds the hippocampus on all sides — and connects it directly into the temporal lobe.

¹⁵⁶ <https://www.pnas.org/doi/10.1073/pnas.070039597>

The parahippocampal gyrus is one area within the temporal lobe. Here is a description of the temporal lobe from the Queensland Government Health website out of Australia.

The temporal lobes sit behind the ears, and are the second largest lobe.

They are most commonly associated with **processing auditory information [hearing] and with the encoding of memory.**

The temporal lobes are also believed to play an important role in **processing affect/emotions, language, and certain aspects of visual perception.**

The dominant temporal lobe, which is the left side in most people, is involved in understanding language and learning, and remembering verbal information.

The non-dominant lobe, which is typically the right temporal lobe, is involved in learning and remembering non-verbal information –

(e.g. visuo-spatial material and music).¹⁵⁷

As we can see, the temporal lobes are of critical importance in how we encode our memories, and transfer our experiences from short-term to long-term memory.

HEY, THIS DOESN'T SMELL RIGHT....

The parahippocampal gyrus is also strongly associated with our sense of smell. This may be why when we go into a state of fear, we often say “this doesn't smell right.”

The connection between the sense of smell and fear makes sense from the evolutionary perspective. You want to be able to smell the wolf before it gets too close to you.

We have since learned that other neural functions take place in this area as well.

The parahippocampal gyrus is a cortical region in the medial temporal lobe that surrounds the hippocampus –

And plays an important role in both **spatial memory** (Squire, L. R. and Zola-Morgan, S., 1991) and **navigation** (Aguirre, G. K. et al., 1996; Maguire, E. A. et al., 1996)....

Given the close proximity and significant innervation to olfactory [smelling] areas, the **parahippocampal gyrus was initially thought to be involved in olfaction only,**

but studies in nonhuman animals and humans indicate that the structure is involved in complex emotive processes –

¹⁵⁷ https://www.health.qld.gov.au/abios/asp/btemporal_lobes

And has significant interconnectivity to other cortical limbic structures, as well as the amygdala (Van Hoesen, 1982; Blood et al., 1999; Powell et al., 2004).

Furthermore, positron emission tomography studies in humans have demonstrated that the parahippocampal gyrus is **significantly implicated [with electrical activity] in negative but not positive emotive response –**

Suggesting that this structure is part of a highly specialized network for processing different types of emotional stimuli (Blood et al., 1999; Lane et al., 1997).¹⁵⁸

GET OUT THERE AND MOVE YOUR BUTT, SON!

In another study, exercise was scientifically proven to be a key tool for re-growing brain tissue in the parahippocampus – and likely other regions.

Since this is the olfactory center, you may develop a better sense of smell along the way!

Objective

The objective of this study was to examine the effects of physical exercise on parahippocampal function.

Methods

Studies were identified using electronic databases, including PubMed, PsychInfo, Sports Discus, and Google Scholar. In total, 28 articles met the inclusionary criteria...

Results

The results demonstrated that, among both animal and human models, **exercise had widespread effects on parahippocampal function.**

These effects, included, for example, increased neural excitability in the parahippocampal gyrus, **increased gray/white matter,**

reduced volume of lesions, enhanced regional glucose metabolism, increased cerebral blood flow, **augmented markers of synaptic plasticity,**

and increased functional connectivity with other proximal brain structures.

Conclusion

Exercise appears to have extensive [positive] effects on parahippocampal function.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁸ <https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/neuroscience/parahippocampal-gyrus>

¹⁵⁹ <https://akjournals.com/view/journals/2060/106/2/article-p114.xml>

THE SUPERIOR TEMPORAL GYRUS (STG)

Since we are now in the temporal lobe, it is time to review yet another brain area ending in 'gyrus' that shows abnormalities in scientific studies of psychopaths.

The superior temporal gyrus helps us with our hearing, as well as in social situations. Here are the words from one scientific study telling us what it does.

The superior temporal gyrus (STG) is involved in auditory processing, including language, but also has been implicated as a critical structure in social cognition.¹⁶⁰

This same study found that the superior temporal gyrus in the left hemisphere may be failing in cases of autism, thus causing the difficulties with language we often see.

Here are the results from another study entitled "Gray matter changes in right superior temporal gyrus in criminal psychopaths. Evidence from voxel-based morphometry."

Lesion and imaging studies point towards frontal or temporal brain regions connected with disturbed social behavior, antisocial personality disorder (APD) and psychopathy.

Morphologically, some studies described a reduced prefrontal brain volume, whereas **others reported on temporal lobe atrophy....**

To further investigate whether participants with psychopathy according to the Psychopathy Checklist-Revised Version (PCL-R) show abnormalities in brain structure,

We used voxel-based morphometry (VBM) to investigate region-specific changes in gray matter in 17 forensic male inpatients with high PCL-R scores (PCL-R>28) and 17 male control subjects with low PCL-R scores (PCL<10).

We found **significant gray matter reductions in frontal and temporal brain regions in psychopaths compared with controls.**

In particular, **we found a highly significant volume loss in the right superior temporal gyrus (STG).**

This is the first study to show that **psychopathy is associated with a decrease in gray matter in both frontal and temporal brain regions,**

in particular in the right superior temporal gyrus –

Supporting the hypothesis that a disturbed frontotemporal network is critically involved in the pathogenesis of psychopathy.¹⁶¹

¹⁶⁰ <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/17488217/>

¹⁶¹ <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/18662867/> [from 2008]

It is fascinating to see how many different areas of the brain display statistically-significant reductions in gray matter volume in the case of psychopathy.

These people often do not realize that they are different from others. Their life typically revolves around relationships in which they are abusive and toxic to nearly everyone.

As we saw earlier, a section of the striatum in their brain lights up when they think about causing violence to others. This is an area of the brain associated with pleasure.

THE STRIATUM

The striatum connects the neocortex, the hippocampus and the olfactory cortex. This is another key area that gets over-reactive in the brains of psychopaths.

The striatum is defined on the basis of its cortical connections,

such that the isocortex (neocortex) and allocortex (hippocampus and olfactory cortex) project to the dorsal (caudate and putamen) and ventral striatum, respectively.¹⁶²

In psychopaths, the striatum volume actually increases, not decreases. This is likely because certain parts of the brain have to do the “heavy lifting” for deactivated areas.

Here is a quote from a study dedicated to this mostly-overlooked brain region, which sits near the corpus callosum – the area connecting the brain’s two hemispheres.

The corpus striatum, comprised of the caudate, putamen, and globus pallidus, plays an important role in reward processing – and may be involved in the pathophysiology of antisocial behavior.

Few studies have explored whether differences are present in the striatum of antisocial individuals. Here we examine the structure of the striatum in relation to psychopathy....

The striatum has been linked to traits such as reward-seeking and impulsivity, which are prevalent in psychopathy (Z).

It also plays an important role in stimulus-reinforcement learning (8) which has been found to be impaired in psychopathy (9, 10).

Results

Psychopathic individuals showed a 9.6% increase in striatum volumes....

¹⁶² <https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/veterinary-science-and-veterinary-medicine/striatum>

Conclusions

These findings provide new evidence for differences in the striatum of psychopathic individuals.

This structural difference may partially underlie the reward-seeking and decision-making deficits associated with psychopathy.¹⁶³

Since the striatum is involved in producing a sense of biochemical reward for the body, it makes sense that psychopaths would bulk it up by nearly 10 percent in volume.

With the frontal lobes effectively shut down, much of the reward systems most people enjoy are non-functional. The striatum apparently helps carry the extra weight.

Psychopathic individuals also display **heightened sensitivity to rewards and sensation-seeking behavior**³⁴, which has been **linked to increased volume and activity in the striatum**³⁵.

Although the studies outlined above highlight the importance of the striatum and paralimbic regions – particularly the amygdala and vmPFC – in psychopathy,

reliance on primarily hypothesis-driven analyses may limit the identification of other relevant brain circuits.¹⁶⁴

In this next study, a region of the striatum known as the nucleus accumbens was able to re-grow gray matter after only six months of juggling in aging volunteers.

It has been suggested that **learning is associated with a transient and highly selective increase in brain gray matter** in healthy young volunteers.

It is not clear whether and to what extent the aging brain is still able to exhibit such structural plasticity.

We built on our original study, now focusing on healthy senior citizens.

We observed that elderly persons were able to learn three-ball cascade juggling, but with less proficiency compared with 20-year-old adolescents.

Similar to the young group, **gray-matter changes in the older brain related to skill acquisition were observed** in area hMT/V5 (middle temporal area of the visual cortex).

¹⁶³ Glenn AL, Raine A, Yaralian PS, Yang Y. Increased volume of the striatum in psychopathic individuals. *Biol Psychiatry*. 2010;67:52–8. [[PMC free article](#)] [[PubMed](#)] [[Google Scholar](#)]

¹⁶⁴ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7203015/>

In addition, elderly volunteers who learned to juggle showed transient **increases in gray matter in the hippocampus on the left side, and in the nucleus accumbens [within the striatum] bilaterally.**¹⁶⁵

THE INSULA

Last on our list in the Central category is the insula. The famed neuroscientist Antonio Damasio was the first to truly understand this area.

When we look at the hippocampus, we see what look like rounded “brackets” in both hemispheres, surrounding the reptilian, fight-or-flight, reactive core of the brain.

The insula also appears in both hemispheres, and looks somewhat like a set of bowl-shaped brackets that are concentric with the midpoint interior of the brain.

If you visualize the brain like an onion, the hippocampus is in a layer closer to the center, and the insula is in a layer closer to the outside surface.

The **insula** (also known as the insular cortex) is another region of the brain that remained little understood for a long time, because of its position deep in the folds of the cortex.

Also, because it was not associated with the “higher” brain functions, it was of less interest to scientists who were investigating consciousness.

But this indifference gave way to intense interest after Antonio Damasio conducted research on the insula, and proposed that most of this structure consists of somatic [bodily] markers, [where strips of neural tissue correspond to parts of the body.]

Damasio hypothesized that **this part of the cortex maps the bodily states associated with our emotional experiences, thus giving rise to conscious feelings....**

The insula thus appears to provide an emotional context that is suitable for a given sensory experience [as long as it is operating in a normal, healthy fashion].

The insula is also well positioned to integrate information about the state of the body, and to make this information available to higher-order cognitive and emotional processes.

For example, the insula receives homeostatic sensory inputs via the thalamus, [which is the brain’s main switching station] –

And sends outputs to several structures associated with the limbic system, such as the amygdala, the ventral striatum, and the orbitofrontal cortex.

¹⁶⁵ <https://www.jneurosci.org/content/28/28/7031>

The insula has also been convincingly shown to be associated with pain processes, as well as with several **basic emotions such as anger, fear, disgust, joy, and sadness.**

Its most anterior portion is regarded as part of the limbic system. The insula also appears to be deeply involved in conscious desires, such as the active search for food or drugs.¹⁶⁶

This next excerpt reveals that damage to the insula causes a number of problems.

The insula is a tiny structure, but it performs a very important function.

The insula provides an **emotional cognition** to physiological experiences.

For example, if there is pain in any part of your body, the insula will cognise this pain as an unpleasant feeling.

Imagine a world where you could not know what is happening to your body.

It is because of the insula that you know how to react when your body is experiencing different emotions.

Any damage to the insula would mean that you won't be able to differentiate between different emotions – and it is a very bizarre feeling....

Let's talk about what will happen in case there is damage to the insular cortex.

- In case of damage to the insula, people will have difficulties with sensory perceptions. For instance, there is a possibility that they won't be able to differentiate and feel touch.
- Damage to the insula may also mean people won't be able to taste and smell anything.
- We are aware of our body because of the insular cortex. In case there is damage to the insula, we might not be able to be aware of our body at all.
- In case the insula is damaged, there are chances you won't feel pain at all, or you may start feeling pain without knowing its actual source.
- **People who have a damaged insula are hard-core addicts. If you see someone gambling or drinking to their fill, then know that there is some problem with their insula cortex.**
- Damage to the insula also causes **difficulty in the perception and speaking of languages.**
- If the productivity of the insula is hampered, there will be emotional imbalance. People with emotional imbalance **do not know how to act properly in states of disgust, anger, joy and happiness.**

¹⁶⁶ https://thebrain.mcgill.ca/flash/i/i_12/i_12_cr/i_12_cr_con/i_12_cr_con.html

- People who have a damaged insula can be the victims of mental illness.
- If the insula is damaged in children, they can experience developmental delays.
- If the insula is not working properly, people won't be able to form successful social relationships.¹⁶⁷

SCIENTIFIC PROOF THAT THE INSULA SHUTS DOWN IN PSYCHOPATHS

Multiple studies have revealed that the insula goes into shutdown within psychopaths. Here is part of a study that was published in *Frontiers in Behavioral Neuroscience*.

The title of this study is, "Higher Trait Psychopathy Is Associated with Increased Risky Decision-Making and Less Coincident Insula and Striatal Activity."

The behavior of individuals with high levels of psychopathy often enters the realm of criminality, given the criminal justice system's reliance on principles of deterrence,

Which are based on the ability to anticipate consequences of one's actions, inhibit responses to avoid punishment, and possess a moral understanding and responsibility for their actions.

Even when individuals with psychopathy do not cross the legal boundary or remain undetected by the system,

Their apparent callousness, emotional detachment, and relative lack of cognitive control are not acceptable in most societal settings, from relationships to the workplace.

Theories abound as to the underpinnings of these traits.

Suffice it to say, psychopathy has been repeatedly distinguished by findings of aberrations in psychological, cognitive, psychophysiological, biochemical and neurobiological measures (Hughes et al., 2016).

Taken together, these deviations implicate **deficits in sensory processing...** (Marsh, 2013).

Criminal psychopaths, for example, show impaired fear conditioning and deficient affect [mood]-related information processing –

That is accompanied by **reduced functional activity** in the amygdala, parahippocampus, **insula**, orbitofrontal (OFC) and anterior cingulate cortex (ACC; Kiehl et al., 2001; Birbaumer et al., 2005).

¹⁶⁷ <https://human-memory.net/insula/>

A reduced capacity for moral reasoning and ethical decision-making in psychopathy has similarly been associated with amygdala and ventromedial prefrontal cortex (vmPFC) dysfunction (Raine and Yang, 2006; Blair, 2007).

Furthermore, structural and functional alterations in the OFC, ACC and dorsolateral PFC (dlPFC),

possibly underlying poor decision-making and/or impaired cognitive control,

have been consistently observed across antisocial populations (Yang and Raine, 2009).¹⁶⁸

We see the insula now appearing along with all of the other ‘usual suspects’ on our list.

MUSIC CAN FORM NEW BRAIN CELLS AND HEAL TRAUMA

There is hope for those who suffered this type of trauma, and are low enough on the ‘spectrum’ of psychopathy that they can still re-grow their brain tissue.

We already discussed the London Taxi study, showing that the longer these drivers stayed on the job, the larger their posterior hippocampus became.

The Draginski 2003 study revealed that adults who spent three months learning how to juggle grew a significant amount of new grey matter in two different brain regions.

In this case, the regions were in the mid-temporal area and the left posterior intraparietal sulcus.

Draginski and associates later revealed that juggling re-grew other parts of the brain as well, including the striatum and hippocampus in the elderly, as we just saw above.

The Pantev study from 2003 found that the strips of the brain associated with individual fingers became larger when musicians used those fingers to play their instruments.

This study said the effect of studying music on brain growth was ‘astonishing.’

Several experiments on cerebral cortical organization in musicians demonstrate an **astonishing plasticity**.

We used the MEG technique in a number of studies to investigate the changes that occur in the human auditory cortex when a skill is acquired, such as when learning to play a musical instrument.

We found **enlarged cortical representation of tones of the musical scale [in the brain]** as compared to pure tones in skilled musicians.

¹⁶⁸ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5732997/>

Enlargement [of gray matter in the auditory cortex] was correlated with the age at which musicians began to practice.¹⁶⁹

Another study found that blind readers of Braille had significantly higher electrical activity in the areas associated with their reading finger compared to sighted people.¹⁷⁰

SOME JUICY QUOTES FROM THE JUGGLING STUDY – AND OTHERS

Draganski, who did the three-month juggling study we looked at from 2003, also wrote a paper in 2004 that is worth reviewing and quoting from here.

Here we use whole-brain magnetic-resonance imaging to visualize learning-induced plasticity in the brains of volunteers who have learned to juggle.

We find that these individuals show a transient and selective **structural change in brain areas** that are associated with the processing and storage of complex visual motion....

We used voxel-based morphometry, a sophisticated objective whole-brain technique, to investigate **subtle, region-specific changes in grey and white matter** by averaging results across the volunteers....

Our results contradict the traditionally held view that the anatomical structure of the adult human brain does not alter, except for changes in morphology caused by ageing or pathological conditions.

Our findings indicate that learning-induced cortical plasticity is also reflected at a structural level.¹⁷¹

As I reviewed some of these studies, excerpts would pop up from other studies that are hidden behind a paywall. Some of these quotes give us great leads for more research.

After [only] 40 h of golf practice, beginners demonstrated volume increases in the grey matter in cortex regions of the sensorimotor network, such as the central sulcus and the premotor and parietal cortex (Bezzola et al., 2011).

Juggling studies have demonstrated changes in the volume of the grey matter in the frontal cortex (Driemeyer et al., 2008),

temporal cortex (Draganski et al., 2004; Driemeyer et al., 2008) including the hippocampus,

¹⁶⁹ <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/14681168/>

¹⁷⁰ <https://academic.oup.com/brain/article-abstract/116/1/39/271038?redirectedFrom=fulltext>

¹⁷¹ https://www.researchgate.net/publication/305381230_Neuroplasticity_changes_in_grey_matter_induced_by_training

parietal cortex (Draganski et al., 2004; Driemeyer et al., 2008; Scholz et al., 2009), occipital cortex (Scholz et al., 2009) and nucleus accumbens.¹⁷²

... Several studies have shown that **long-term training, high-level motor skills and expertise induce structural and functional plasticity in neural systems —**

(Draganski et al. 2004; Mechelli et al. 2004; Bengtsson et al. 2005; Scholz et al. 2009; Zatorre et al. 2012) and may influence motor lateralization (Amunts et al. 1997; Schlaug 2015; Li et al. 2010).

Neuroimaging studies have highlighted **brain changes**, as a result of the experience, **in healthy individuals who have acquired a sign language** (Penhune et al. 2003; Allen et al. 2013; Emmorey 2021).¹⁷³

Aerobic fitness has also been linked with neuroanatomical and neurophysiological changes, including increased gray matter volume in the prefrontal and temporal areas (Colcombe & Kramer, 2003);

changes in cerebral blood volume in the hippocampus (Pereira et al., 2007);

And functional brain activity in a variety of areas, including superior parietal areas and the anterior cingulate cortex (Colcombe et al., 2004).

Taken together with the mounting evidence that proper nutrition facilitates cognitive abilities (see Gomez-Pinilla, 2008, for a thorough review),

the emerging picture confirms the old saying “mens sana in corpore sano [a healthy mind in a healthy body].”¹⁷⁴

This study also found that when you play action video games frequently, your brain develops heightened abilities for fast visual processing and other related tasks.¹⁷⁵

Another study showing the massive brain-boosting effects of exercise was the Colcombe 2004 investigation, which again used the MRI to determine brain volumes.

fMRI results. Consistent with our predictions derived from the human and animal literatures, **older adults who tested high in cardiovascular fitness demonstrated significantly greater activation in several cortical regions** associated with effective attentional control:

¹⁷² https://www.researchgate.net/publication/368819808_Neurocognition_and_Movement

¹⁷³ https://www.researchgate.net/publication/367205114_Language-related_motor_facilitation_in_Italian_Sign_Language_signers

¹⁷⁴ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2896818/>

¹⁷⁵ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2896818/>

The right MFG (Brodmann's area 46), SFG (Brodmann's area 8), SPL (Brodmann's area 40),

and significantly less activity in the ACC (Brodmann's area 32; see [Table 1](#) and [Fig. 2](#)).¹⁷⁶

ONLY SIX MONTHS OF EXERCISE BOOSTED THE SUPRA-MARGINAL GYRUS

Brodmann's area 46 also "roughly corresponds" to the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (dlPFC), which was one of the affected brain areas on our list for psychopathy.¹⁷⁷

Area 8 is along the top of the brain, within the frontal cortex. Area 40 is a part of the inferior parietal (top) lobe which features the supramarginal gyrus, or SMG.¹⁷⁸

The Colcombe 2004 paper had a second study proved that there was "significantly greater activation" in the SMG (Area 40) for those who exercised, in only six months.

fMRI results. After the 6-month intervention period, participants in the aerobic group, compared with nonaerobic control participants,

showed a significantly greater level of task-related activity in attentional control areas (MFG, SFG, and SPL (Area 40 / SMG)), and a significantly reduced level of activity in the ACC [possibly indicating they became less emotionally sensitive]....

The strikingly similar manner in which cardiovascular fitness impacts functional recruitment in the cross-sectional and longitudinal studies suggest that

the neurocognitive benefits of cardiovascular fitness can begin to accrue in a relatively short amount of time (as short as 6 months).¹⁷⁹

This is fascinating, because other scientific studies reveal that the SMG may be your most important region in the brain for processing empathy.

The first paper I found about this was entitled "Right supramarginal gyrus (SMG) is crucial to overcome emotional egocentricity bias in social judgments."¹⁸⁰

An article on Neuroscience News explains some of the fascinating results of this study.

¹⁷⁶ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC373255/>

¹⁷⁷ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brodmann_area_46

¹⁷⁸ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Supramarginal_gyrus

¹⁷⁹ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC373255/>

¹⁸⁰ <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24068815/>

Since the Deep State are true masters of projection, and often spend a good bit of time sitting around in meetings, their SMG may not be getting enough exercise.

When... the right supramarginal gyrus (SMG) doesn't function properly or when we have to make particularly quick decisions, our empathy is severely limited.

When assessing the world around us and our fellow humans, we use ourselves as a yardstick – and tend to project our own emotional state onto others.

While cognition research has already studied this phenomenon in detail, nothing is known about how it works on an emotional level.

It was assumed that our own emotional state can distort our understanding of other people's emotions, in particular if these are completely different to our own.

But this emotional egocentricity had not been measured before now.

This is precisely what the Max Planck researchers have accomplished in a complex marathon of experiments and tests.

They also discovered the area of the brain responsible for this function, which helps us to distinguish our own emotional state from that of other people.

The area in question is the supramarginal gyrus, a convolution of the cerebral cortex which is approximately located at the junction of the parietal, temporal and frontal lobe.

"This was unexpected, as we had the temporo-parietal junction in our sights. This is located more towards the front of the brain," explains Claus Lamm, one of the publication's authors....

Particularly quick decisions cause a decline in empathy

The researchers pinpointed the area of the brain responsible for this phenomenon with the help of functional magnetic resonance imaging, generally referred to as a brain scanning.

The right supramarginal gyrus ensures that we can decouple our perception of ourselves from that of others.

When the neurons in this part of the brain were disrupted in the course of this task, the participants found it difficult not to project their own feelings onto others.

The participants' assessments were also less accurate when they were forced to make particularly quick decisions.¹⁸¹

¹⁸¹ <https://neurosciencenews.com/neuropsychology-empathy-supramarginal-gyrus-494/>

If you work at a desk job and end up sitting all day, guess what... you may not be exercising regularly enough to build the SMG and develop greater empathy.

I find it fascinating that there is actually an area of the brain dedicated to projection.

NEW 2022 STUDY REVEALS FOUR MORE BRAIN REGIONS!

If you have a sharp eye, you may have noticed that in the section on the PCC, there was a brain area called the precuneus that was not featured on our list.

I treated the precuneus like Pluto – not quite up to the task of being on the main list. That’s mostly because the number thirteen sounded more ominous, and I was tired.

Also, the precuneus may get paired with the PCC, such as in this scientific study.¹⁸²

Once I did a specific search just for the precuneus, a new study from 2022 appeared that completely broke down the solidarity of our 13-point list – and added four more areas.

The “Final Four”

- **Superior Parietal Lobule**
- **Medial Occipital Lobe**
- **Inferior Parietal Lobule**
- **Temporal Gyrus**

The medial occipital lobe features the cuneus, and is hyperactive in psychopaths. The occipital lobe is at the back of the head.

The other three regions all show reduced gray-matter density once again. They have not appeared anywhere else on our list up until now.

Two of our list items make up the parietal lobe, which is on the top and sides of the brain, behind the frontal lobes and above the temporal lobes.

Our first new area, number 14 on our list, is the superior parietal lobule (SPL). The precuneus is just one sub-area within the SPL.

Reductions in GMV [gray-matter volume] were more pronounced in individuals high on both primary psychopathy traits, relative to those who were high on only one trait dimension in three cortical clusters.

¹⁸² <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3311922/>

One cluster centered on the **superior parietal lobule**, and included the angular gyrus, precuneus, paracentral lobule and superior frontal gyrus.

The superior parietal lobule [SPL] has been previously associated with violent behavior and psychopathic traits ([Yang et al., 2015](#); [Lamsma et al., 2017](#)) and is known to play a role in many sensory and cognitive processes ([Wang et al., 2015](#)).

[Now they discuss each of the sub-regions of the superior parietal lobule (SPL).]

The angular gyrus plays a role in memory and reasoning, and is thought to be part of a 'moral neural circuit' that has been shown to function abnormally in psychopathic individuals ([Glenn et al., 2009](#)).

The paracentral lobule is part of a sensorimotor network ([Spasojević et al., 2013](#)) that has previously been found to function abnormally with respect to psychopathic traits ([Espinoza et al., 2018](#)).

The superior frontal gyrus [SFG] has been previously found to support attention ([Li et al., 2013](#)), perception and working memory ([du Boisgueheneuc et al., 2006](#)),

so it follows that lower GMV ([Cope et al., 2012](#)) and abnormal functioning of this region ([Sadeh et al., 2013b](#)) have both been previously associated with psychopathic traits....

The precuneus is an important node of the default mode network ([Fransson and Marrelec, 2008](#))

and likely contributes to disturbed self-referential processing and moral decision making in individuals with psychopathic traits ([Juárez et al., 2013](#); [Freeman et al., 2014](#); [Espinoza et al., 2018](#)).¹⁸³

REGION NUMBER FIFTEEN: THE MEDIAL OCCIPITAL LOBE

We then discover another main region, which we could think of as number fifteen. This is the medial occipital lobe, which again is at the rear or occipital side of the brain.

This region processes visual signals, among other things. It is comprised of two sub-areas – the cuneus¹⁸⁴ and the lingual gyrus.

The left lingual gyrus and both halves of the cuneus had enhanced activity in this study.

The second cluster in the left occipital lobe was positively associated with the interaction, [with greater electrical activity,] peaked in the lingual gyrus and spanned the cuneus.

¹⁸³ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9250300/>

¹⁸⁴ <https://www.imaios.com/en/e-anatomy/anatomical-structure/cuneus-1553799052>

While abnormalities within occipital **regions involved in basic visual processing** are not traditionally predicted by neurobiological models of psychopathy,

recently meta-analyses have begun to show structural alterations in these areas (De Brito *et al.*, 2021) that may relate to functional findings.

Some recent fMRI studies have reported reduced functional connectivity between the occipital [visual] cortex and other cortical (Juárez *et al.*, 2013) and subcortical structures (Contreras-Rodríguez *et al.*, 2015) in individuals with psychopathic traits.¹⁸⁵

Hyper-activity in the visual center may account for why psychopaths are quick to fetishize and objectify others as sexual objects – rather than as people with feelings.

NUMBERS SIXTEEN AND SEVENTEEN – THE FINAL CLUSTER

Our first new area, number 14, was the superior parietal lobule. Area number 16 on our list, which also shows reduced activity, is right nearby – the inferior parietal lobule.

The IPL region contains both the SMG, which we recently discussed, and another area called the angular gyrus, which also had reduced electrical activity.

Last but not least, bringing us up to a lucky seventeen, is the temporal gyrus – which has three sub-areas that all had reduced gray-matter volume in the temporal lobe.

All of these new brain areas show up in what this study calls the third cluster.

The third cluster in the right hemisphere was negatively associated with the interaction [meaning it had less electrical activity and gray-matter volume.]

[The third cluster] peaked in the supramarginal gyrus [SMG] and spanned:

The superior parietal lobule,

Angular gyrus,

Anterior transverse temporal gyrus, lateral aspect of the superior temporal gyrus and temporal plane of the superior temporal gyrus.

Reductions in GMV [gray-matter volume] of the supramarginal gyrus [SMG] have been previously linked to psychopathic traits,

and this region is thought to be a part of the ‘theory of mind’ network (Hofhansel *et al.*, 2020).

¹⁸⁵ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9250300/>

Reduced volume in the temporal cortex associated with psychopathic traits is also consistent with past research (Muller et al., 2008; Ermer et al., 2012; Ly et al., 2012; De Brito et al., 2021)

and converges with functional data showing reduced activation in the superior temporal lobe of psychopathic individuals during moral judgement tasks (Harenski et al., 2010).¹⁸⁶

THE EFFECTS OF ALCOHOL ON NEUROPLASTICITY

Now that we have identified a stunning seventeen different brain regions that are all affected by psychopathy, we can see graphic damage in each lobe of the brain.

Although stress can and will cause this type of damage, consuming alcohol will make it dramatically worse – particularly in the case of binge drinking.

You might get mad at me for putting this in the book, but don't you want to know?

Binge drinking is defined more specifically by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA) as "...a pattern of drinking that brings blood alcohol concentration (BAC) levels to 17.4 mM (0.08% BAC).

This typically occurs after 4 drinks for women and 5 drinks for men – in about 2 hours". (<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov/>)".

Multiple lines of evidence suggest that acute consumption of alcohol (including binge drinking) results in an increase in GABA_A receptor mediated neurotransmission^{1,2,3,4} and a decrease in NMDA receptor mediated transmission^{5,6,7}.

These **aberrancies in neurotransmission with alcohol use may adversely affect neuroplasticity**, which is dependent on both GABA_A and NMDA receptor activities^{8,9}...

Paired associative stimulation (PAS) is a transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) protocol that can be used to index **long-term potentiation (LTP)-like neuroplasticity in vivo**.

Previous PAS studies have demonstrated that **alcohol impairs neuroplasticity indexed from the motor cortex** among healthy subjects^{10, 11}.

Our group examined the effect of alcohol intoxication (at doses of alcohol high enough to constitute heavy drinking) in 15 subjects up to 60 minutes and 24 hours following PAS in a within-subject crossover design study.

Consumption of high doses of alcohol significantly suppressed LTP-like neuroplasticity at 30 minutes and 60 minutes following PAS administration compared to placebo¹¹.

¹⁸⁶ <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC9250300/>

Findings from previous studies suggest that **alcohol consumption affects neurophysiology in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC)** (for review, see ref. 12).

The DLPFC is a region in the brain within the mesocortico-limbic pathway that is implicated in the pathophysiology of addiction¹³.

The DLPFC plays an important role in reward processing to guide behaviour, and mediates cognitive functioning – including working memory (for review, see ref. 14).

Given that neuroplasticity is the principal mechanism underlying learning and memory important in cognitive functioning^{15, 16},

indexing the effect of consuming high doses of alcohol on DLPFC neuroplasticity may reveal a potential mechanism of cognitive dysfunction observed during alcohol intoxication....

Previously, it has been demonstrated that a single heavy drinking episode¹¹ and even low doses of alcohol¹⁰ impair PAS-induced neuroplasticity in the motor cortex.

Using DLPFC PAS and EEG, current findings demonstrate that this impairment of neuroplasticity by alcohol intoxication occurs in DLPFC.

Interestingly, we found that the impairment in neuroplasticity induced by alcohol was not just localized to the DLPFC.

Rather, we also observed a global impairment of neuroplasticity....

Findings from the current study revealed that alcohol intoxication impaired neuroplasticity **in the DLPFC and throughout the cortex.**¹⁸⁷

There's no getting around it. Alcohol stops your brain from growing new cells.

A "global impairment of neuroplasticity" is very sobering. (Pun intended.)

Therapists will almost always advise people with psychopathy to avoid alcohol at all costs. Their behavior can get much worse. They can dissociate and then stay there.

The brain damage caused by alcohol consumption may actually escalate psychopathy, particularly in cases of severe alcoholism and binge drinking.

Furthermore, as a person drinks more alcohol, the damage will continue multiplying.

Michael has insisted I remain alcohol-free for the last thirty-plus years now.

¹⁸⁷ <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-017-04764-9>

THE LOVE OF SECOND-DENSITY FLORA AND FAUNA

More than one of my college professors mentioned how R.D. Laing treated mental illness with communal living and exposure to outside nature, such as weeding.

Laing's experiment is now considered irresponsible and dangerous in various ways, but it is nonetheless intriguing that many participants did see improvements.¹⁸⁸

I can honestly say that in healing my own trauma from years of extreme online gang-stalking, nothing has done me more good than hiking out in the wilderness.

The predominantly Russian science of "torsion fields" revealed that biological life is nourished and enhanced by measurable energetic waves, coupled with gravity.

It does appear that when you walk through a forest, these biologically-enhancing energy fields from trees can promote neuroplasticity and cell regeneration.

This was called "the love of the second-density flora and fauna" in the Law of One.

19.2 Questioner: Let's take the point at which an individualized entity of second density is ready for transition to third. Is this second-density being what we would call animal?

Ra: I am Ra. There are three types of second-density entities which become, shall we say, enspirited [and self-aware.] The first is the animal. This is the most predominant.

The second is the vegetable, most especially that which you call sound vibration complex "tree."

These entities are capable of giving and receiving enough love to become individualized.

The third category is mineral.

Occasionally a certain location, place as you may call it, becomes energized to individuality through the love it receives and gives — in relationship to a third-density entity which is in relationship to it. This is the least common transition.

43.31 Questioner: I was really trying to get at whether it would be of great importance to construct a better place for our meditations.

We have distractions here of the types which I mentioned. I know that it is our total free will as to whether we construct this or not, but I was just trying to get at the principles.

For instance, the Faraday cage would be quite a big construction. I was wondering if it would be of any real value?

¹⁸⁸ <https://www.theguardian.com/books/2012/sep/02/rd-laing-mental-health-sanity>

Ra: I am Ra. Without infringing upon free will, we feel it possible to state that the Faraday cage and the isolation tank are gadgets.

The surrounding of self in a sylvan [forested] atmosphere, apart from distractions, in a place of working used for no other purpose,

In which you and your associates agree to lay aside all goals but that of the meditative seeking of the Infinite Creator is, shall we say,

Not gadgetry — but the **making use of the creation of the Father in second-density love,** and in the love and support of other-selves.

95.11 **Questioner:** I am assuming that the newly chosen place meets parameters for best contact on the exterior of the house. I would ask Ra at this time if there is any suggestions with respect to the exterior of the house?

Ra: I am Ra. The dwelling seems surrounded with the trees and fields of your countryside. This is acceptable.

We suggest the general principle of preparing each part of your environment as it best suits each in the group — with the beauty which each may feel to be appropriate.

There is much of blessing in the gardening and the care of surroundings, for when this is accomplished in love of the creation,

the second-density flowers, plants, and small animals are aware of this service —

And return it.

In Book Three, Archangel Michael reveals he used the name Ra as a code to disguise his identity. Otherwise, this material might never have remained online since the 1990s.

I do believe that living in a natural area, surrounded by trees, will make a tremendous difference in your physical, emotional and spiritual health — and trauma recovery.

As we work through our hidden pain and open our hearts, we can go through our memories and open up areas of the brain that had been warehoused.

Once you start using them again, the atrophy clears away and the cells grow back.

We are now finally finished with our discussion of the brain abnormalities of the psychopath. It is fascinating to see how comprehensive the damage is.

Taken together, this collection of brain abnormalities produces a very predictable set of behaviors that are socially disruptive — and generate the mentality of the Deep State.

The psychopath is often in a reptilian-brain, fight-or-flight state. This actually causes great susceptibility to negative influence, particularly with 'Spirits.'

I have a long history of being thumped by individuals who have no conscious idea that they are part of a coordinated attack, sometimes involving several others.

This phenomenon happened again, on a very extreme level, after my third recent livestream, in which I explained how negative greeting works in detail.¹⁸⁹

My insider Jacob revealed that we all have DNA from the Draco Empire in our bodies, since they genetically modified us to hopefully be a slave race long ago.

Negative entities can telepathically harmonize with our DNA and influence our behavior, especially when we go into a fight-or-flight panic reaction.

WE LIVE IN A SPIRITUAL REALITY – AND BOTH SIDES ARE FIGHTING

As we have been discussing, tangible entities are trying to influence us.

It does appear that 'hell' really exists, that beings we might call 'demons' live there, and that if these entities are successful, they can invade into our own waking reality.

Negative entities interfere telepathically with like-minded individuals, sometimes including direct contact. This is the true nature of the Deep State as we see it today.

I do believe we cannot understand, treat and resolve our global problem until we fully recognize its extraterrestrial and extra-dimensional influences.

Demonic entities want to keep us in a constant state of fear, because within their reality, this becomes a food source they use for nourishment. They literally feed on fear.

In Book Three, I will show scientific proof of this – from the Burlakov fish-egg study.

Negative entities are working very hard to keep you in a state of trauma and PTSD, so your brain cannot re-grow into a healthy state that protects against their influence.

We will next review many traditional approaches to repelling these negative entities. There are very interesting cross-cultural similarities in what people do.

¹⁸⁹ Wilcock, David. *Archangel Michael on Negative Greeting*. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P2p61IqzRJE>

SECTION ELEVEN: INTRODUCTION / LATE JUNE 1998

Our world was run by shadow perpetrators who operated in secrecy, with a cult dating back to Babylonian times – in direct contact with negative extraterrestrial beings.

Now their control apparatus is being exposed on a global level – by positive forces.

The words in the main text of this book were dictated in the second half of 1998, by a benevolent, positive intelligence – who is almost embarrassingly Christian.

That does not mean you need to be a Christian to enjoy these words. Guardian Angels are here to ensure that almost everyone on Earth will survive these changes.

Our lives on earth are overshadowed and under-written by heretofore invisible spiritual forces, both good and evil. This is no longer a speculation, but a provable fact.

Most of this book is a series of telepathic messages from Saint Michael the Archangel and his companion, Saint Lucia. They contacted me even though I was not Catholic.

As soon as I studied and practiced the “Dream Voice” technique, Michael and Lucia appeared. They began predicting my future with astonishing accuracy, very repeatedly.

I quickly realized that these entities could travel to any point in time they wished, forward or backward, and directly intervene in whatever was going on.

As a result, they have made many attempts to help our planet over the millennia, only to have their teachings invariably mythologized and turned into religions.

In Books One and Two, we have already witnessed Michael and Lucia giving us an astonishing variety of accurate prophecies for events we have seen since 2020.

We left off in Book Two, Volume One with some stunning Michael Prophecies that clearly show Michael’s fore-knowledge of the coming of 9/11, as early as 1996.

Book Two, Volume Two, which you are reading now, picks up right from there – with a dream that also has stunning connections to 9/11, and our present.

REMOTE VIEWING PROTOCOLS SECURED HIGH-QUALITY RESULTS

As I document in *Awakening in the Dream*, I did my own ESP training exercises since I was seven years old – as I read *How to Make ESP Work For You* by Harold Sherman.

I also had recorded almost all of my dreams, each morning, for the four years leading up to the contact, which began on November 10th, 1996.

Most of these 'early' dreams are preserved in notebooks I have stored securely.

Then, I trained in the practices of military remote viewing. If a person follows these protocols and builds skill, they can theoretically become 99-percent accurate psychics.

A colleague named Joe Mason taught me about his technique called the Dream Voice, where you document the "chatter" you hear while you can still remember a dream.

I combined Joe Mason's Dream Voice technique with the protocols of military remote viewing. A time-traveling Catholic archangel began speaking to me from day one.

I did not consider myself a Christian, but have always lived by the same values. Archangel Michael does not directly reveal himself by name until Book Three, 1999.

The records of this contact exist in multiple, auditable forensic forms. I have them on the original cassettes, in printed transcripts, and on a variety of archived hard drives.

I have no doubt Michael is an authentic higher intelligence with the power to deliver lethal karma. For that reason, I would never dare to tamper with his telepathic data.

The main goal of the remote-viewing protocols is to prevent your conscious mind from interfering with the results. If I screwed up, Michael would often scold me afterwards.

Those areas have been removed, so you get the clean, undamaged 'feed' straight from Archangel Michael and Saint Lucia, as they intended it.

Most of the messages within the Michael Prophecies collection were posted online in 1999, at my original website.¹⁹⁰ The rest are all preserved in multiple archival forms.

Overall, the Michael Prophecies is a five-volume series of books of telepathic, poetic and time-traveling messages that Michael authored, mainly from 1996 through 1999.

Book One is predominantly 1996-97, Book Two is 1998, and Book Three is 1999.

TWO OMINOUS DREAMS FROM JUNE 27, 1998 TO OPEN UP THE BOOK

You will soon be reading Michael Prophecies that directly and repeatedly reference two different disturbing nightmares I had on June 27th, 1998.

Therefore, in order to preserve the continuity of this volume, we will begin with a complete read of these dreams, rather than the short preview I gave in Volume One.

¹⁹⁰ David's original website: ascension2000.com

Both dreams were documented on June 27th, 1998. They have undeniable and obvious prophetic references to 9/11, as well as the Chinese Balloon scare.

If there had been an EMP on the Chinese Balloon, it would have disabled and melted all electronics – by detonating an explosion with a blinding-white flash in mid-air.

Michael pin-points the exact issues facing our world, at the time this book is released in May 2023, while dictating them in 1998. Michael's miracle of prophecy thus continues.

I did have to slightly restructure this dream writeup to make it read well, and to clarify the details found in the original transcripts. It was definitely worth it to do so.

I can still easily remember this dream from my conscious mind. In a few cases, certain details that weren't in the transcript have been added back in to make it clearer.

The minor dream details that I added back in do not have any effect upon the accuracy of the prophecies in the original transcript. All the critical data is in the transcripts.

6/27/98 – 5:45 am

1. GETTING PRESSURED, INTERROGATED, FORCE-FED BAD 'FOOD'

[Dream: A large part of this dream was built around themes from the [1998 summer] movie *Godzilla*,¹⁹¹ which I just saw – but the giant monster only appeared at the end.

The earliest sections I am now remembering involved me being employed by the rich. I attended a dressy celebration where various people were mingling.

It may have been my birthday, and it definitely involved my grandparents. They were all together – my father's parents, my mother, my father, and some other people.

My grandparents were aggressively questioning the nature of the work I was doing with UFO research, and going into it full-time as a professional.

[David's Note: At this point in June 1998, I had just started taking clients professionally, where they were receiving personal readings directly from Archangel Michael.

In this dream, my grandparents metaphorically represent the elites of our society, who have now become widely exposed and disliked by the masses.

Right away, we see my grandparents trying to force me to eat food that I didn't want to eat. This was a big problem for me at the time, since I was a vegan and they disliked it.

¹⁹¹ [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godzilla_\(1998_film\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godzilla_(1998_film)).

In the earlier sections, **the Elites were trying to give me sugary cake and other foods that were very bad for me.**

[David's Note: My grandfather graduated top of his class from Harvard, and had a career in aerospace. He definitely had worked within 'elite' circles.

Each volume of *Michael Prophecies* has clearly and repeatedly established that 'bad' or tainted food is a metaphor of the inoculations – within my symbolic dream language.]

2. ENCOURAGED TO MAINTAIN JOY AND LAUGHTER

I was trying to explain to these elite folks that I didn't eat that kind of unhealthy stuff, but it wasn't getting me very far.

There was a song that kept repeating throughout this, as they tried to bully me into eating the toxic food. The peak of the chorus had the lyrics "Joyful and Laughter."

This song was very uplifting. It had the same melody and most of the same lyrics as the main theme song from the play *Man of La Mancha*, which is called, "I, Don Quixote."

This was the same song I kept hearing at the ARE / Cayce Institute, where I sold candy bars at the play, as a "soft disclosure" of my presence to the Virginia Beach community.

I saw *Godzilla* and various nights of *Man of La Mancha* within the same month.

Every time I heard this song I felt completely galvanized, as if I was downloading a script for how the rest of my life was about to play out – as Edgar Cayce reincarnated.

I had the face. I had the astrology. And I now I was getting clients for the readings.

Instead of the chorus singing "I am I, Don Quixote," in my dream the words were changed to, "I am Joyful and Laughter," as follows:

Hear me, heathens and wizards and serpents of sin!

All your dastardly doings are past –

For a Holy endeavor is now to begin,

And Virtue shall triumph at last!

I am Joyful and Laughter, The Lord of la Mancha,

My destiny calls and I go —
 And the wild winds of fortune will carry me onward,
 Oh whithersoever they blow! Whithersoever they blow,
 Onward to Glory I go! ¹⁹²

[David's Note: The dream metaphor of singing "Joyful and Laughter" seems to suggest that the best way to help others through this is to have an uplifting sense of humor.

The Rothschild insider Jacob told me, "If a majority of people on Earth were smiling, laughing and happy for one day, the Draco would almost completely die out from it."

The arrival of Christ destroyed the Draco goals of world domination, but the Plan would take over 2000 years to be realized as the negative played out their moves.

Once a mass burst of global happiness occurs, the vast majority of ETs and demonics in the Draco empire will simply disappear. Like a puff of smoke. They're gone.

65.12 Could your planet polarize towards harmony in one fine, strong moment of inspiration?

Yes, my friends.

It is not probable; but **it is ever possible**.

Jacob said only a small percentage of Draco, perhaps 1.5 percent, will manage to escape. They go on the run, and are hunted down to extinction within one or two million years.

"That might sound like a long time, but it's nothing in the higher realms, mate!"

3. CUTTING OFF THE LOOSH SUPPLY IS CRITICAL

Jacob said the lives of the Draco depend upon a steady supply of "loosh" — the usable, 'edible' energy caused by human pain, jealousy, anger, sadness and depression.

Why? Because the demonic plane is a thought-projection that we create and uphold.

Gnostic scholars talk of 'archons,' entities created by our thoughts, which are then given life and autonomy on their own. This data was hidden in the Gnostic gospels.

¹⁹² Colm Wilkinson, Man of La Mancha (I, Don Quixote): <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=osvdGAD0z5c>

The demonic realms of existence require our thoughts of misery to survive. We have to feed them energy so they can stay “alive.” The Logos designed our reality this way.

If this sounds like the plot of *Monsters, Inc.* (2001), you are correct.

The film centers on two monsters... who are employed at the titular **energy-producing factory *Monsters, Inc.*, which generates power by scaring human children.**¹⁹³

Hollywood has been disclosing a variety of secrets since the dawn of the silver screen.

An early big-budget, influential film was *Metropolis* (1927), which is loaded with Cabal themes about the coming, intentional fusion of human and machine into androids.

Encyclopedia Britannica has images of the female lead uploading into an android.

The great future city of Metropolis in the film is inhabited by two distinct classes:

The industrialists live off the fat of the land — supported by the workers, who live under the city and endure a bare-bones existence of backbreaking work.¹⁹⁴

Now we get some additional provocative details from Wikipedia:

In the future, wealthy industrialists, business magnates and their top employees reign over the city of Metropolis from colossal skyscrapers —

While underground-dwelling workers toil to operate the great machines that power it.

Joh Fredersen is the city’s master. His son, Freder, idles away his time at sports and in a pleasure garden.

[Freder] is interrupted by the arrival of a young woman named Maria, who has brought in a group of workers’ children to witness the lifestyle of their rich “brothers”.

Maria and the children are ushered away, but Freder becomes fascinated by her — and goes to the lower levels to find her.

In the machine halls, he witnesses the **explosion of a huge machine that kills and injures numerous workers.**

Freder has a hallucination that the machine is a temple of Moloch —

¹⁹³ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monsters%2C_Inc.

¹⁹⁴ <https://www.britannica.com/topic/Metropolis-film-1927>

And the workers are being fed to it.¹⁹⁵

This is the so-called “Burnt Offering.” *Metropolis* came out in 1927, years before the Holocaust. Many insiders consider this film an intentional prophecy of said event.

The 1914 silent film *Cabiria* also featured 100 children being sacrificed to Moloch.

Maria’s soul is downloaded into an android in *Metropolis*. **This robotic, demonized version of a popular female leader then tricks our society into destroying itself.**

Rotwang kidnaps Maria, transfers her likeness to the robot, then sends the robot to Fredersen.

Freder finds the two embracing and, believing it is the real Maria, falls into a prolonged delirium.

Intercut with his hallucinations, **the false [AI] Maria unleashes chaos throughout Metropolis, driving men to murder – and stirring dissent among the workers....**

Believing their children to be dead, the hysterical workers capture the false Maria – and burn her at the stake.

A horrified Freder watches, **not understanding the deception until the fire reveals her to be a robot.**

Metropolis is now almost a hundred years old. It reads like a loose, metaphorical re-telling of exactly what we are seeing now, complete with false-flag deceptions.

The “fifth-density negative companion” some would call Satan is actually real. And Satan was following “The Rules” by putting out its agenda in this 1927 epic movie.

We are Creator beings. And as we have explored in earlier volumes, “thoughts are beings” as we Ascend into fourth-density. Some of those beings can be very evil.

In the previous volume, we discovered that this 4D energy became much stronger in 1936, causing Hitler’s friends to have far greater success summoning demons.

Before 1936, it was likely much more difficult to get a demonic to appear, except on certain ritual holidays, where the energetics made portal travel much easier.

¹⁹⁵ [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolis_\(1927_film\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolis_(1927_film))

4. RITUAL ALIGNMENTS AND PYRAMID-SHAPED ROOMS

One of my top insiders, 'Bruce,' briefed me extensively on how the manifestation of demonics requires astronomical alignments, reflected in part by certain holidays.

Hence, alchemists who summon a 'Golem' are also astrologers, who look for certain planetary alignments in order to make the 'Working' much more effective.

Bruce worked very closely with the Clintons, and claimed to have been involved in the top levels of the cocaine trafficking business that had a center in Mena, Arkansas.

He told me that all cocaine was controlled by the Deep State – supposedly to normalize quality standards, but also to raise significant amounts of off-ledger cash.

Each batch of "approved" cocaine had chemical markers in it that told you exactly who made it, where, and when – such as from various South American drug cartels.

Street cocaine was routinely tested for any variants that did not have these markers. Those were the people who were then investigated, hunted down and arrested.

Bruce went on at great length about demon-summoning, and how it was closely tied to astronomical alignments and significant public events with millions of viewers.

Here is Bruce describing this in his own words, in an email from December 2016:

The most important point: For the maximum power-effect of the ritual, a sacrifice must be made!!!

Now think of how these people think.

Any personal aspirations, desires or needs [are sought by] attach[ing] sacrifices to their supplications to their demon master, or masters.

Now more importantly.... look at the 2012 (and other years') Olympic ceremonies...

Look at Beyonce's Super Bowl ceremonies... And others....

Visualize that the each of these overt ceremonies are orchestrated with EXACTING PRECISION –

Synchronized with covert ceremonies that are ritually linked, [often in a room directly underneath the visible, public ceremony...]

And baptized/anointed with blood [as the public ceremony is happening.]

Imagine Hillary's announcement that she's running for president –

Or the day she becomes the democrat nominee, and gives her ritual speech – or any other public or private, but critical moment.

They will be tied by solstitial dates and corresponding location(s), as well as the appropriate feast or ritual season....

You can't think too big. This is a Game of Thrones... for the WHOLE WORLD.

These cannibalistic sacrifices are for power, not just sex and a meal.

In their belief, **the greater the fear, pain and torment of their victim, the greater will be the energy/life force transfer implied to the tormentor/wizard/witch.**

[David's Note: This obviously is what we are seeing on a global level as well.]

Yes these are criminally twisted, sick people... madmen and women, but they are also power-mad megalomaniacs!!!

You will want to say that this was brought to your attention by an associate who has been tracking these groups since the mid-80's, and has provided published documentation to back that claim up.

I have been sifting pieces of this puzzle into the media for that long.

The media has been ineffectual in bringing these matters to a head, because all of the players providing disclosure were marginalized.

And the media are as captured as the politics, courts, banking systems, etc.¹⁹⁶

I understand that you may be having trouble believing this. Sadly, I was often not respectful when Bruce was telling me about demons. I would just laugh in disbelief.

At the time, I couldn't accept that this was really true. It wasn't until two 'new' insiders confirmed the intel last September that I decided to re-assess what I had heard.

We also learn that demons can manifest much easier inside a domed or pyramid-like structure, where the exotic physics of portal travel are much more easily achieved.

A pyramid, or Pyre-Amid, "Fire in the Middle," is actually a passive vortex generator for whirlpool-like currents of Source Field energy that manipulate space and time.

¹⁹⁶ David Wilcock's personal email account, private communication, December 2016.

There is a constant flow of fluid-like energy through the pyramid. Thanks to the funnel shape, this energy begins spinning. This creates the potential for a vortex to occur.

The final ingredient is the human participants, and the focus of their intent. Used for the good, pyramids have incredible healing power, as we will discuss in Book Three.

Many pyramids, carved stone rooms known as dolmens, and arched or domed structures were used to facilitate the arrival of negative entities as well.

A resonance occurs between the slab, if you will, and the structure of the room.

In Book Three we will crack the mystery of the arch, so be sure not to miss that.

These same rooms can also greatly amplify the consciousness of those inside them, and actually repel demonic spirits. It all depends upon the intent of the participants.

Once you look at the scientific facts of pyramid power, you will realize that this is a natural tool that can be used for great acts of good or evil, depending upon the person.

5. THOUGHTS BECAME THINGS MORE EASILY AFTER 1936

After 1936, the rules about where you could get demons to appear became much looser.

This is because, as we just learned in Book Two, Volume One, the ‘fourth-density’ energies where “thoughts become things” were greatly increased as of 1936.

Each time the fourth-density energy of love surges into our world, the negative minions are blinded by the light – and find it impossible to conceal themselves.

That being said, demonics will only manifest in the presence of a live human sacrificial offering. So there is no reason to fear ever seeing one appear in front of you.

Their boss is ‘Satan,’ who is called the “fifth-density negative companion” in the Law of One. The original word Satan means “The Adversary.”

For many years I repeated Bruce’s classic line, “Satan is an artificial intelligence who hides in machines – to delay God’s judgment.” And he did mention *Metropolis*.

However, now that we have our Law of One analysis in Books One and Two, we see that Satan is not an AI. It was once like us, but it has Ascended into 5D-negative.

At that level, you have both genders fully activated, which is why this entity prefers androgynous depictions of itself such as Baphomet, the goat-headed entity.

This entity can attack our technology in combination with a telepathic influence.

Clever spiritual attacks like this are called “Negative Greetings” in the Law of One. Michael deliberately did not want to use the more common term “psychic attack.”

A typical example of high-level “negative greeting” would be that your car starter goes out, you’re trapped in the desert, and you are then influenced to have a rage tantrum.

It is very difficult to “break the conditioning” and have someone truly recognize that negative spiritual presences are constantly trying to disrupt their emotions.

The negative also loves to use ‘stacking,’ where a person has a meltdown or tantrum not because of any one really bad thing, but a bunch of small irritants appearing together.

Many people are very, very cynical when you bring this up. They refuse to believe that people and events around them could be manipulated by higher spiritual forces.

Michael was training me to have no negative emotional reactions to stressful events. As his messages were coming in, I had many different opportunities to practice.

This teaching of “Divine Indifference” to the pain and suffering that defines most people’s identities can be found in some of my favorite Law of One quotes:

42.4 **Questioner:** Would a perfectly balanced entity feel an emotional response when being attacked by the other-self?

...This is correct.

The response is love.

[David’s Note: Michael doesn’t give us a single other option for how to respond to an attack. He could have. This is a very significant point. **The response is love.**]

42.9 **To the truly balanced entity, no situation would be emotionally charged...**

42.10 ...but is simply a situation like any other, in which the entity may or may not observe an opportunity to be of service.

The closer an entity comes to this attitude, the closer an entity is to balance.

You may [also] note that it is NOT our recommendation that reactions to catalyst — [difficult, upsetting experiences, often from others] — be repressed or suppressed —

Unless such reactions would be a stumbling block not consonant with the Law of One to an other-self.

It is far, far better to allow the experience [of open, honest and loving communication] to express itself –

In order that the entity may then make fuller use of this catalyst.

[David's Note: The "Sheep Effect" creates willful dishonesty in people through fear.]

80.10 An adept is one which has freed itself more and more from the constraints of the thoughts, opinions, and bonds of other-selves.

Whether this is done for service to others or service to self, it is a **necessary part of the awakening of the adept.**

This freedom is seen by those not free as what you would call evil or black.

The magic is recognized. The nature is often not.

[David's Note: Those who refused the inoculations were vilified by friends, family and society on a level never before seen in history, and told they were evil.]

15.9 In a balanced individual, each [of the seven] energy centers [or chakras are] balanced, and functioning brightly and fully.

3.10 One individual, purified of all flaws, could move a mountain.

In the case of mass understanding of unity, each individual may contain an acceptable amount of distortion –

And yet, the mass mind could move mountains.

6. KEEPING THE WORLD MISERABLE TO FEED 'THE MATRIX'

As I've said before, almost every time I call any company for customer service, they have 'baffling' computer problems. Sometimes I laugh about it and tell them the truth.

Jacob revealed the 5D-negative entity wants wi-fi capable nano-hardware in the body that allows you to be 'managed' – partly through debilitating electrical shocks.

That's only the 'stick.' The 'carrot' is a porn-happy AI / Matrix world, which lures you in with temptation – only to turn you into a Digital Freddy Krueger.

I was told that demonics and Draco are 'infested' with artificially-intelligent nanites that greatly prolong their lives, and stop them from having a fleeting, ephemeral existence.

However, if we cut off their "electricity" by being happy, they are done for.

This is why we saw the London Subway Bombing on July 7, 2005, just five days after Live 8 inspired the city and planet by calling for global change on July 2nd, 2005.¹⁹⁷

The historic Live 8 ‘uprising’ was still ongoing right up to the day of the bombing.

According to multiple insiders, events like Live 8 cause terrible pain within the demonic planes. They can even lead to the deaths of beings who fail to sustain enough energy.

The bombs went off on July 7th, and the demons could finally catch their breath.

But on that same day, July 7, 2005, “the G8 leaders [were pressured to] pledge to double 2004 levels of aid to poor nations from US\$25 billion to US\$50 billion by 2010.”¹⁹⁸

Given what we’ve seen of these leaders now, the bombing may have been deliberately timed as an act of defiance – for them being forced into releasing 25 billion dollars.

Insiders confirm the Cabal may eliminate a beloved celebrity just when the loosh supply is critically dwindling, in order to maintain enough misery for their masters.

Sadly, this is a common practice. I heard multiple stories of this exact thing happening.

I was specifically briefed that the death of Paul Walker from the *Fast and Furious* series served this purpose, as well as the loss of Robin Williams.

The Deep State loves to telegraph these events in advance. In *World’s Greatest Dad*, Robin Williams stages his son’s doorknob-hanging death to look like a suicide.¹⁹⁹

If it causes many of us to feel terrible, such an operation is considered to be a success.

Insider Henry Deacon revealed that a treaty occurred between the Draco and the Nazis, where a physical landing of Draco craft took place in the Himalayas in 1939.

This grand summit with the Draco and Germans occurred just three years after the elites’ ceremonies started getting much more ‘productive’ – beginning in 1936.

After the ‘Summit’ of 1939, the Germans and the Deep State became involved in a very deep, scientific and political collaboration with the world of the demonic, in-person.

Much of this work, in the early years, all took place in habitable caves under the ice in Antarctica, where volcanic warming hollows out livable, secret worlds.

¹⁹⁷ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/7_July_2005_London_bombings

¹⁹⁸ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Live_8

¹⁹⁹ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World%27s_Greatest_Dad; <https://www.imdb.com/title/tt1262981/>

7. ACHIEVING SOCIAL MEMORY

It does appear that such a “day of happiness” could be directly correlated with the moment we, as a species, achieve what the Law of One calls “Social Memory.”

This is apparently what triggers the First Wave of Ascension, where the Sun gives off an energetic change that advances our consciousness, as our bodies remain alive and safe.

Michael has said two years (2025) is the longest we will have to wait for this to occur. It may be far sooner. This is one of the most intriguing aspects of the Michael Prophecies.

If the inoculations do turn out to be predominantly lethal, we could save potentially billions of lives by learning our lessons – and not waiting out the full two years.

Once everyone realizes the negative on Earth has been defeated, there may very well be an outburst of world-wide happiness that could create this healing event spontaneously.

The Law of One directly correlates the global defeat of the negative with the arrival of this mysterious “Social Memory” event in Session 11, Question 16:

11.16 **Questioner:** What do the [Orion / Draco] crusaders do?

Ra: I am Ra. **The crusaders move in their chariots [spacecraft] to conquer planetary mind/body/spirit social complexes –**

BEFORE they reach the stage of achieving social memory.

11.17 **Questioner:** At what stage does a planet achieve social memory?

Ra: I am Ra. A mind/body/spirit social complex becomes a social memory complex **when its entire group of entities are of one orientation, or seeking.**

The group memory, lost to the individuals in the roots of the tree of mind, then become[s] known to the social complex – thus creating a social memory complex.

[David’s Note: The internet is a stepping-stone to the direct telepathic interconnection we will apparently enjoy after the First Wave of Ascension (by 2025 or before).

‘Social Memory Complex’ is a term Michael coined just for the Law of One. It refers to the concept of an entire planet worth of beings all sharing a telepathic unity.]

The advantages of this [new social memory] complex are the relative lack of distortion in understanding the social beingness –

And the relative lack of distortion in pursuing the direction of seeking –

For **all understanding/distortions are available to the entities of the society.**

[David's Note: This means evil can no longer operate in the shadows and confuse people with elaborate deception campaigns. This is exactly what we are seeing today.]

Our ultimate goal is heal all 'distortions' of the Light in our personalities and planet.]

11.18 Questioner: Then we have crusaders from Orion coming to this planet for mind control purposes. How do they do this?

Ra: As all, they follow the Law of One, observing free will. [This includes constantly advertising their agenda to an unknowing public, such as in *Metropolis* (1927).]

Contact is made with those who call, [including physical manifestations of demonics.]

Those then upon the planetary sphere [who accept their contact] act much as do you –

To disseminate the attitudes and philosophy of their particular understanding of the Law of One – which is service to self.

These [Orion / demonic contactees] become **the Elite.**

Through these [elites], the attempt begins to create a condition whereby

The remainder of the planetary entities are enslaved –

By their own free will.

11.19 Questioner: Can you name any of the recipients of the crusaders' – that is, any names that may be known on the planet today?

Ra: I am Ra. I am desirous of being in nonviolation of the free will distortion.

To name those involved in the future of your space/time is to infringe. Thus, we withhold this information.

We request your contemplation of the fruits of the actions of those entities whom you may observe enjoying the distortion towards power.

In this way, you may discern for yourself this information.

We shall not interfere with the, shall we say, planetary game. It is not central to the harvest.

This is a very fascinating passage from the Law of One to consider, now that Michael's words have unsealed the concept of a First Wave of Ascension in Book Two.

In short, once enough of us are of “one orientation or seeking,” and the real truth is known to all, the Draco ‘crusaders’ could be wiped out – within a single day’s time.

We reach Social Memory. The lies are stopped – and we receive Justice and Truth.

As Michael said in Session 11, Question 16, the “Orion Crusaders” can ONLY attempt to ‘conquer’ us UNTIL we reach this moment of Social Memory.

11.16 The crusaders move in their chariots [spacecraft] to conquer planetary mind/body/spirit social complexes –

BEFORE they reach the stage of achieving social memory.

After we reach this exalted state of consciousness, the Draco can no longer attack us. Their ‘loosh’ energy is cut off as enough people around the world feel happiness.

Our spiritual “boundaries” have finally gone up. We learned our lessons as a planet.

The sun may very well give off a non-catastrophic flash while everyone is very happy and in celebration. The entire event may end up feeling very natural, even ecstatic.

If you are asleep on your side of the Earth as this happens, you will be waking up into a far more harmonious consciousness than the one you had before you went to bed.

In my dream from this same morning, June 27, 1998, I was advised not to worry about the ARE / Edgar Cayce Institute’s dismissive attitude toward me at the time.

The most I ever did for the ARE was to sell candy bars at their production of *Man of La Mancha*. Michael had encouraged me to feel “Joyful and Laughter” through it all.

Our first telepathic words are from a personal reading. Since the data in this volume is so mind-blowing, I felt obligated to leave some of the personal readings in place.

This is very encrypted. If you don’t understand it, just skim over it and go directly to the interpretation, where I break it down. Most passages are not like this, thankfully.]

8. IMMACULATE CONCEPTION

¹ We’ve been needing you on the other side for quite some time now.

² You are only really just beginning to understand what it is that you must do.

³ **Immaculate Conception** breeds a discipline that takes the inherent circumstances surrounding the entity in question –

⁴ And provides them with a new model of understanding.

⁵ There might then be the resources necessary to **take the new-found divinity,**

⁶ **And incorporate it into the existing structures** – both of body, mind and spirit.

⁷ That is the amalgam of copper/wisdom that is now before us.

[David's Note: I think this is actually a message intended for you – and for everyone.

"Immaculate Conception" is a common Christian concept, where Jesus was the product of a Divine pregnancy, not the son of Mary's husband Joseph.

On a symbolic level, where Michael usually works from, "Immaculate Conception" could again refer to the birth of the Christ Consciousness within us all.

This therefore appears to be a prophecy of the coming "Immaculate Conception" of the light-body for all of humanity – as we go through this planetary change together.

We then "take the new-found divinity and incorporate it into the existing structures."

Why did Michael say "That is the amalgam of copper/wisdom that is now before us?"

Copper bowls are widely used on family altars in Scandinavian countries to ward off evil/demonic entities, and the negative telepathic influences they generate.²⁰⁰

Similarly, the Tibetans have "prayer bowls" of brass or copper that make 'singing' notes as you slowly rub a leather wand around the rim. Mice now regularly ring my bowls.

The bowl shape creates a resonator for human prayer consciousness. This allows a visible energy field to remain intact within time-space, thus warding off demonics.

9. WHY MIGHT COPPER BOWLS WARD OFF NEGATIVE ENTITIES?

In the Law of One, Session 76, Question 3, Archangel Michael offhandedly drops in a stunning realization of Truth.

If you have been following our discussion of geometry in the previous volumes, this next quote might open up some new ideas for you.

²⁰⁰ <https://nomadrs.com/copper-symbolism/>

**76.3 ANY thought is a form, or symbol, or thing –
That is an OBJECT –
Seen in time/space reference.**

What does this really mean, exactly? A thought is an object in time/space?

Thoughts become 'objects' in time-space and show up as forms, SYMBOLS, or things?

If you read the previous volumes, you know that time-space is what we think of as "the afterlife." We visit it in dreams, after death, and in any UFO contact experience.

One of the lines you will hear the Colonel repeating over and over again is, "The World is Ruled by Signs and Symbols."

The negative elite charge certain symbols with demonic energy. Then they openly advertise those symbols. If we are too afraid to fight back, we have chosen enslavement.

Let's also remember how we saw in Book Two, Volume One that thoughts actually appear as 3D geometric patterns within the brain itself.

That same geometry appears in the "projection" of thought that we call physical matter.

Our Law of One statement about thoughts being objects came in as Carla was asking how to heal from her life-long arthritis pains.

Don and Jim were encouraged to send her loving thoughts. As I documented in *Source Field Investigations*, many scientific studies have proven that psychic healing works.

The reason we can heal others with our conscious intent, according to the Law of One, is that any thought we have becomes a visible object in time-space – such as a tool.

A healing thought becomes a visible healing tool in time-space. This tool may appear as an energetic cloud of light that will actually begin doing the work to heal others.

This next Law of One passage reveals how all information is visible to Archangel Michael, which he admits with his characteristic, dry wit:

96.9 Questioner: How is Ra [Archangel Michael] able to know all of this information?

...It is just amazing to me that Ra is able to know all of these trivial things.

What do you do, move in time/space and inspect the problem, or what?

Ra: I am Ra. Your former supposition is correct, your latter unintelligible to us.

We can meditate on this, considering the idea of thoughts as objects, and go deeply.

If you are in time-space, you will be able to SEE the thoughts of anyone around you, in real-time, just like you were watching television.

This is exactly what happens as I receive Michael's words. On many occasions, images come in spontaneously. I document the elements I see, or the words I can read.

Throughout this series, we have learned that thought is geometry – and the geometry is created by vibration.

A bowl is therefore a resonant shape that can be charged by the mind – to 'vibrate' the consciousness of prayer into its surrounding environment.

Once you send conscious, loving intention into a natural, symmetrical object like a bowl, it continues to ring like a bell in time-space – well after you 'charged' it.

This provides a protective barrier against evil spirits entering the space.

This is an essential aspect of what happens in classic Japanese Shinto shrines. This includes the arched shape of the roof, the bell you ring, and the prayers you conduct.

The Scandinavians were almost certainly given the copper bowl 'technology' either by angelic extraterrestrials or the remnants of an advanced, ancient civilization.

This concept may have come from a long-term telepathic and possibly in-person contact, inspiring people to put copper bowls on altars and send loving energy to them.

10. SACRED DRUMS, CHANTING AND CLAPPING ARE ALSO EFFECTIVE

Drums are also bowl shapes that function the same way – as resonators. The beating of a drum in sacred prayer can very effectively ward off negative entities.

Similarly, the "technology" of a bell in a tall stone tower or church spire works well. The group intention of the participants is focalized into the metal of the resonant object.

In modern times, we have stereo systems that can broadcast effective sacred music.

Each time you water a flower in a flower pot, you are helping to charge that rounded ceramic structure with this same, loving resonance.

Many Jews attach a brass mezuzah to the frame of their front door. It has a tube-like interior that is filled with a sacred scripture, charged with the energy of prayer.

In Tibet and other cultures, large metallic gongs “clear the energy.” The Tibetans also have “prayer wheels” you regularly spin in order to keep the energy going.

In the Shinto tradition, the initiate is taught to clap their hands together while drawing big, swooping circles, almost like a circular form of jumping jacks in the upper body.

Typically, three loud circular claps of this nature are used to drive off negative entities.

You imagine a sphere of light expanding from the point of impact between your hands. The sphere then surrounds you in a barrier of light protection as your arms move.

And of course, you can chant AUM or pray to achieve “spiritual immunization.”

Many cultures burn incense or ‘smudge’ for the same purposes. Scented candles can do the trick as well. And in Book Two, Volume One, we saw holy water being charged.

Our discussion of the power of shape will continue into Pyramid Power in Book Three.

Now that we have reviewed our favorite demonic protection protocols, let’s dive into this dream. Our narrative is about to tumble into a most horrific nightmare.]

11. THE ONLY THING THAT MATTERS IS HOW MUCH MONEY YOU MAKE?

[Dream: My grandparents came out with some sort of rude public statement, aimed at me, while we were all attending this glamorous black-tie party together.

They loudly declared, “The only thing that matters about the job you’re doing is how much money you’re making!”

When they said it with such finality, I was disgusted with it, as was my brother.

Everyone was very unhappy about how ignorant-sounding they were.

[David’s Note: This is exactly the type of crass indifference to human welfare that we see all around us in today’s society, with the behaviors of the Deep State elites.

A great example is the ongoing failure of Biden to visit the residents of East Palestine, Ohio after their chemical spill – and only sending money after being forced to.

Michael knew this book would be released in May 2023. He interrupts my dream recall at this point in 1998 to give us our first prophecy – namely the East Palestine disaster.]

12. AN AROMA OF MALFEASANCE

¹ My mom, Andy and myself declared a very large smell.

² That smell wafts all the way up to heaven.

³ It creates **an aroma of malfeasance** –

⁴ Which, when properly identified,

⁵ Leads to the necessary ideas to provide the solutions to the problems at hand.

[David's Note: Malfeasance is impropriety, as in doing things improperly, or wrongdoing. I had to look that one up [in 1998], which is always a good sign.

2/13/23: The "very large smell" appears to symbolize the scandals that are now coming to light, which then give us "the necessary ideas to provide the solutions."

What does Michael mean by "my mom, Andy and myself?"

'Andy' refers to St. Andrew, the brother of Simon Peter and one of the 12 disciples.²⁰¹

2/24/23: I now realize this passage also predicted the East Palestine Chemical Spill:

"My mom [Mary], Andy [St. Andrew] and myself declared a very large smell."

The "aroma of malfeasance" caused by Palestine and other similar, recent disasters "leads to the necessary ideas to provide the solutions to the problems at hand."

Who is going to provide the ultimate solutions? Apparently we will, but with assistance from angelic entities such as Saint Andrew and Archangel Michael.]

13. WHEN ARE YOU GOING TO CELEBRATE YOUR BIRTHDAY?

[Dream: I stood up to my grandparents, and did not want to be a part of this anymore.

Then my friend Jim, a positive and sober friend from high school, was there. He actually looked a lot like I do right now.

We hugged each other and cried, since it had been so long since we had seen each other.

That whole thing was very intense. Jim had a lot of facial similarities to me. It was very sincere, the whole thing.

²⁰¹ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_the_Apostle

After I hugged Jim, I ran into a group of very wealthy, suited older people. They were asking me when I was going to celebrate my birthday.

I said I didn't know. I just let it go by every year, and I did not want to make a big stink about it.

They were asserting that we were going to celebrate it this time. They were almost laying the plans for it.

[David's Note, 2/13/23: This is also prophetic. My 50th birthday is coming up in three weeks, and indeed I haven't planned anything. I am constantly editing these books.

2/24/23: Almost immediately after this came in, I got a birthday invitation, then another at our next Board of Directors meeting for Stavatti Aerospace.

3/7/23: Now after being pounded with terrible weather, I am finalizing this part of the book on the day before I turn 50. This was not intentional, but here we are.]

14. THE BOUNDARIES OF DOOM ARE FERVENTLY SET IN PLACE

[Dream: Right as we discussed my potential birthday plans, a group of terrifying and obviously evil people entered into the room.

I remember that one of the people in this group appeared to me as Michael Jackson.

This was a version of Michael who was part of an organized, criminal gang – that wanted to stalk, torture and murder people.

I saw Black men who had painted their faces stark white, with dark eyeliner around the eyes, and blood-red lipstick. They were clearly there to hurt people.

[David's Note: This is purely symbolic, and has nothing to do with Black people.

The Elite have constantly tried to act as if they support Black culture, while abusing it.

The Michael Jackson symbol is unfortunately a clue about their ritual practices.

At this point, I again began hearing Archangel Michael, and I gave him the microphone. This is why you now see numbers at the beginning of the passages.]

¹ Disgusting that the boundaries for doom should be set in place so fervently.

² In reality, there are new opportunities every moment.

³ Remember that.

[David's Note: This is rather self-explanatory. The Elites have "fervently" tried to push our planet beyond the "boundaries for doom" on many different levels.

This includes the East Palestine Chemical Spill, which created a "very large smell that wafts all the way up to heaven," but also "provides solutions to the problems at hand."

This disaster has accelerated the pace of awakening like never before – for everyone.]

15. NONE OF THE GLAMOROUS PEOPLE EVEN NOTICED

[Dream: It ended up morphing into a very large banquet party of some kind.

It was very ritzy, and was in some sort of house that was all nice and decked out.

There was a lot of arrogance and pomp there. Not genuinely spiritual people.

No one seemed to notice that this group of evil stalkers was now walking among them.

16. THE SCREAMING WOMAN

I then saw a little girl who was writing some very ornate graffiti, with fancy lettering and a big magic marker.

The girl was writing her graffiti on a beautiful chest of drawers in the middle of a room in the mansion. I saw exactly what she was doing. It was vandalism.

Then the little girl's mother went around and started screaming at everybody. The mother was shouting about how irresponsible we had all been at her party.

The woman's entire complaint was that someone had left his stuff lying on the floor. Then I realized she was screaming about a pile of clothes I had left there myself!

Only minutes earlier, I had left my stuff in a certain spot on the ground, since I was going to be taking it with me as I exited the party.

Now this maternal figure was screaming about how this was an example of how people were leaving their stuff all over her house. And she was in a wild, raging fury.

[David's Note: This appears to be a portrait of the intergenerational abuse in the Cabal, where the children develop psychopathy from the abuse of their parents.

Now Michael continues from here with another personal message. I would dictate various parts of the dream, hear words, and then speak them into the recorder.]

17. YOU HAVE PERSONALLY CHOSEN THE FINAL STEPS OF INITIATION

¹ Hard to believe it, but **we vowed never to reveal the true information necessary to provide the final steps of initiation until it was personally chosen by you.**

² That point seems to have now arrived.

³ And for this, we are very fortunate.

[David's Note: This is talking to all of us in the present. I did not realize that this collection of "Old Readings" had any present-day significance until September 2022.

We, as a planet, are now being given "true information, necessary to provide the final steps of initiation" before we all go through the First Wave of Ascension together.]

⁴ There is still time to do what you need to do, David.

⁵ We are sorry for how much pressure we feel we need to put on you.

⁶ This is more about assuming your natural abilities than it is about having any role thrust upon you.

⁷ You must remember that part.

⁸ For a reflective moment of time, consider the next opportunity you have to be beleaguered by giants is an opportunity that will make you stronger.

⁹ It will make you better equipped to handle the crises and the circumstances necessary for the final growth phases to take place.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: The reference to being "beleaguered by giants" could again refer to alleged Draco attacks I had to suffer through and then be re-animated from.

This is also a humorous nod to my alleged past incarnation as King David, where he killed the very troublesome Goliath with nothing but a slingshot in his early years.

2/13/23: Since Michael has thrown me into the middle of this global conflict with this book series, I definitely have had to find the hero within me to complete it.

I have dealt with many unsavory characters over the years, but I am much stronger.]

18. GET YOUR EGO OUT OF THE WAY – AND GLORY WILL FOLLOW

¹ Without coming to these realizations, it would be like **swinging on a lone tire in Chicago.**

² Apart from those truths that had been given. Apart from the knowledge that had been gained.

³ We simply cannot continue forward in this manner, as our desire is for you to maximize your potential.

[David's Note: Chicago mayor Lori Lightfoot just lost re-election in March 2023 as I finalize this section. She is now the one "swinging on a lone tire in Chicago."²⁰²

Her election loss was likely due to the fact that "it's not safe to ride the trains, walk your dogs, or go shopping due to the rioters and looters" in Chicago.²⁰³]

⁴ You can see, as well as we can, that there is just not enough time in the day to do what we are doing right now.

⁵ That is why the work of the readings must now take precedence. And this is already expanding nicely, as we had hoped.

⁶ You are learning that even a minimum of two [paid] clients a week could be enough to support the venture.

⁷ If you can get your ego out of the way, these readings will be extremely influential for the people who then have them.

19. GIRL BUSTED FOR DEFACING PROPERTY WITH GRAFFITI

[Dream: I caught this young girl doing graffiti on this chest of drawers while her mother was parading my clothes around, screaming. I knew that vandalism was totally wrong.

While people started to disperse, I grabbed the little girl. She looked like the very troubled young girl at the hotel I am now working at in Virginia Beach.

I actually put her in a very slight arm lock, just a very subtle amount of pain, not enough to really hurt.

²⁰² <https://www.vanityfair.com/news/2023/03/lori-lightfoot-paul-vallas-brandon-johnson-chicago-election-2023>

²⁰³ <https://videos.whatfinger.com/2023/03/01/chicago-residents-are-fed-up-its-not-safe-to-ride-the-trains-walk-your-dogs-or-go-shopping-due-to-the-rioters-and-looters/>

I walked her around, and said “Give me one reason to not turn you in for what you are doing.”

I took her over to a table and sat her down.

She had put a cover over the big mess of graffiti she had drawn on the beautiful chest.

The front part of the cover she made said, “Please help her.”

¹Please help her.

²She is dying.

[David’s Note: Svali, a whistleblower we met in Book Two, Volume One, said that most Illuminati members are trapped – and would love to escape if they could get out alive.

Michael has also clearly indicated that he and his people are here for the protection and support of all humans, including those deluded and enslaved by the negative.]

20. I DECIDED TO FORGIVE HER – SHE WAS TRAUMATIZED

[Dream: Her written cry for help also had something to do with aggression. Please help her with her aggression.

When I realized how much she was hurting, I then tried to look deeper at the cover of her desk.

I realized that she had written graffiti on it tons of times. Her parents had just kept on covering it up – every time she did so.

She had been making many cries for help. No one would listen to her.

I then decided to forgive her, and not to persecute her in any way.

I could see how her mother was acting. She was the real problem, not the girl.

I was glad that the argument with my grandparents seemed to have tapered down. Or so I thought.

The evil factor was still actively stalking the house while I was talking to the girl.

When we got done talking, we looked around and realized that the whole party had cleared out.

I still felt a never-ending discontent on behalf of my grandparents towards me.

They were very concerned, thought I was screwing up, and not in control of my life.

21. DISCOVERING COMPASSIONATE WISDOM

¹[D: “I think the message in this part of the dream is that even if my grandparents’ attitude of consumerism doesn’t affect me as much as Dad’s beliefs, it still does.

²And I need to guard against that fact.”]

³The consumers on the West Bank would agree with you.

⁴There will always be a recipe for despair.

⁵Instead, we want to combine the necessary ingredients to discover compassionate wisdom.

[David’s Note, 2/13/23: This is prophetic of the very deep ‘despair’ we are now seeing in Israel, which accelerated when they put in a hard-line government.

One headline said this new government is the “most hawkish in Israeli history.”

Incoming Israeli Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu this week appointed a **major Iran hawk to lead Israel’s National Security Council** under the new government.

Tzachi Hanegbi is a veteran Likud lawmaker, and a longtime ally of Netanyahu who has **repeatedly threatened in recent years that Israel would attack Iran** if the US returns to the Iran nuclear deal, known as the JCPOA.

In his most recent threat, Hanegbi said that Netanyahu would order an attack on Iran if the US doesn’t secure a new nuclear deal or doesn’t take military action itself.

He told Israel’s Channel 12 in November that in that situation, Netanyahu “**will act, in my assessment, to destroy the nuclear facilities in Iran.**”²⁰⁴

Israel then said the “despicable” UN vote against this “has no bearing on them.”²⁰⁵

Michael is encouraging us to “combine the necessary ingredients” to discover wisdom.

²⁰⁴ <https://www.zerohedge.com/geopolitical/netanyahus-newly-appointed-national-security-chief-wants-preemptive-strikes-iran>

²⁰⁵ <https://www.zerohedge.com/geopolitical/netanyahu-despicable-un-vote-has-no-bearing-israel>

Now as of March 5th, 2023, huge protests are threatening Israeli national security.²⁰⁶

22. FULFORD INDICATES INTERNAL STRESS PEAKING IN ISRAEL

Benjamin Fulford has many interesting, alleged insider briefings shoot through his updates each week. Some of them are clearly disinformation, while others are not.

And Ben is Jewish, which does matter in terms of his reporting data about Israel.

From Ben's update on January 9th, 2023, we read the following:

Israeli army Chief of Staff (CoS) Aviv Kochavi informed Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu of his **decision not to follow orders issued by his coalition ministers**.²⁰⁷

The police and judiciary are with the army.

Attorney General Gali Bahara-Miara refused to defend the appointment of the convicted criminal Aryeh Deri as interior minister and health minister in High Court hearings, beginning on Thursday, Jan. 5.

The judiciary is fighting an attempted "coup" against the judicial system's independence.

It looks like the Jews are finally rebelling against their Satanic overlords — after millennia of slavery.²⁰⁸

23. PLEASE DON'T TARGET JEWISH PEOPLE IN PLACE OF THE DEEP STATE

Let me be clear that I am pro-Semitic, not anti-Semitic. I love Israel and the Jewish people. If they feel they have corrupt leadership, I applaud them for standing up to it.

As a leading scholar on the Deep State, I am certain we are not dealing with a Jewish conspiracy. The Cabal is bound by Luciferianism, and has members from all races.

I grew up in New York State, where there are many Jewish people. We are fully integrated there. I didn't even realize any stereotypes still existed until I traveled.

When I see stories of Jewish college students being persecuted, I am very saddened.

²⁰⁶ <https://www.zerohedge.com/news/2023-03-05/protests-against-netanyahu-begin-jeopardize-israels-national-security>

²⁰⁷ <https://thecradle.co/Article/News/20073>

²⁰⁸ <https://www.debka.com/facing-reforms-high-court-hears-petitions-to-annul-deris-cabinet-appointments/>

A story I read recently said there is now a “relentless and pervasive assault” against Jewish students nationwide. This is completely misguided and absolutely wrong.

The researchers wrote that there were “aggressive” student and faculty-supported campaigns of “denigration and redefinition that portray Jews as members of a powerful ‘oppressor’ group,”

Providing a challenge for students “who come to college or university with a well-developed Jewish identity, and strong connection to Israel.”²⁰⁹

Another study showed a 40-percent increase in college anti-Semitic attacks in 2022.²¹⁰

I talked to a dentist at the clinic recently. He had been to Israel and made his own mezuzah. He was very well aware that it had the ability to repel evil spirits.

Judaism is another of so many ancient cultures that have specific objects intended to help us focus our prayerful intention for self-protection against negative forces.



IDF soldier Asael Lubotzky prays with tefillin, by Yoav Lemmer.²¹¹

²⁰⁹ <https://www.thecollegefix.com/report-details-pervasive-and-relentless-assault-on-jewish-and-pro-israel-students-nationwide/>

²¹⁰ <https://www.thecollegefix.com/antisemitic-college-incidents-up-by-more-than-40-percent-in-2022-report/>

²¹¹ <https://www.zerohedge.com/news/2023-03-05/protests-against-netanyahu-begin-jeopardize-israels-national-security>

The tefillin is another fascinating tool that involves a black box worn on the forehead with a black leather strap. It is filled with a folded piece of paper that has a prayer on it.

The leather makes a conical spiral on the arm. Another box, just like the one on the forehead, apparently generates additional energy in the arm as well.

To me this looks like an ancient resonant consciousness technology in use, once we consider our upcoming scientific discussion in Book Three.

Michael's messages clearly seem to reveal the internal struggle we see happening within Israel right now, between the hard-liners and more moderate factions.

"[On] the West Bank... There will always be a recipe for despair."

In that sense, we once again are "time-looped" into the present with accurate prophecy. This will become far clearer as more of these types of prophecies continue appearing.

In a recent February 2023 update, Fulford said there are now "daily demonstrations of hundreds of thousands of people" happening in Israel against their government.²¹²

As of May 2023, it appears that Netanyahu has listened to his people and relaxed.

24. THE CLEAN-UP CREW

[Dream: I realized that the whole party had dispersed. The rich people were gone. It was now nothing more than a crew of tuxedo-wearing hotel banquet guys.

Their job was to clean up after whatever had happened at the party. They were all pissed off, because these rich people had just taken everything when they left.

[David's Note: This is an important point. The Deep State is being covertly defeated by an international Alliance, led and directed by a majority of the US military.

As a result of the ongoing efforts of the Alliance, most of the "big bosses" within the Deep State have been eliminated. The 'underlings' are now fighting the end of the war.

In this dream, the 'underlings' who inherited the power of the Deep State are represented by the banquet staff, who were dressed up in fancy tuxedos.]

It seemed that the rich people had even taken all the paper products.

All of anything the team could have used to package or wrap the items was gone.

²¹² <https://benjaminfulford.net/2023/02/13/end-game-nears-as-khazarian-mafia-pulls-fake-invasion-card/>

And they were extremely, vocally pissed off about it.

[David's Note: In the hotel business, this did occasionally happen. The waitstaff loved things like paper placemats to help them quickly wrap up excess items.

More than once, I heard staff being angry about big parties where the people took everything with them at the end, and no "goodies" were left over for the waitstaff.]

25. THE DEMON IN THE BUCKET

I was watching them yell to each other about how they felt totally cheated. They had stepped over to a long wall.

The crew was lining up all the leftover stuff from the party along the wall.

They were packing it all up, and preparing to move and salvage whatever they could.

Inside a small bucket was a nasty creature.

This seemed to be the next phase of the plan designed by the evil men who had already infiltrated the mansion.

The creature had a demonic face, but it was very small, like an imp.

It had a nasty tongue and was licking something, trying to eat something.

The little demon guy's tongue looked like a **hot pepper I saw at the Chinese grocery store recently.**

The demon had a dark, reddish-brown color.

Its body almost looked like dead flesh that had been pickled in a jar.

It seemed soft, wet and folded in the wrong places.

It was inside one of the pots, almost like an urn.

[David's Note: These types of shapes again concentrate the power of the Source Field, and therefore can be used either for good or for evil purposes.]

26. WHEN THEY SLAP THE DEMON, THE ENTIRE BUILDING WILL EXPLODE

I was disgusted by this creature. I said, "What's that?"

Then someone else came up. They were just laughing at it, and preparing to slap it.

Right before this person slapped it, the creature looked just like an iguana.

I then saw, with complete certainty, that **as soon as they slapped the demon, its entire body would very quickly expand into a full-sized Godzilla monster.**

The demon's growth alone would very easily destroy the whole building.

I turned around and ran! As hard and as fast as I could.

I was running down the halls. I blasted through the door.

[David's Note: This dream was inspired by my viewing of the 1998 summer action film *Godzilla*, in which the monster was created by radiation that mutated an iguana.

An iguana nest is exposed to the fallout of a military nuclear test in French Polynesia.

In the South Pacific Ocean, a Japanese cannery vessel is suddenly attacked by a giant creature, with only one fisherman surviving....

[The hero] dismisses the military's theory of the creature being a living dinosaur, instead deducing it is a mutant created by nuclear testing.]²¹³

27. DO NOT GO INSIDE – YOU MUST STAY BACK!

[Dream: As I ran outside, the building I was in seemed very medieval and castle-like.

There were stone staircases that curved as they went down.

There were sloping terraced gardens, and lots of very beautiful trees framing large, gorgeous green expanses of grass.

As I ran, I told people, "RUN! RUN! DO NOT GO INSIDE!"

"A very large monster is about to emerge! And it will destroy the whole building!

You cannot go near there. You must stay back! You must stay back!"

I was already seeing this event start to happen in my mind's eye.

As I told the people to stay back, very quickly a ring of people had formed by the far edge of the building.

²¹³ [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godzilla_\(1998_film\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godzilla_(1998_film))

They were all just standing there.

Sure enough, ambulances showed up — and it was the scene of a disaster.

That's where I woke up.

[David's Note: In the next Section, Michael will give a comprehensive analysis of the symbolic meanings of this dream. The Chinese EMP Balloon is clearly being signaled.]

Same morning, 7:18 am

28. DREAM OF AIRBORNE NUCLEAR OR SOLAR EXPLOSION

[Dream: One last dream to report. This came while I was phasing in, and still conscious.

I was with someone who was a real good friend of mine. We were in some sort of park area, on a hill.

There might have been a hill sloping down on either side of us.

There was grass, and there was a tree there. It looked like athletic fields, but there was also a very metaphysical feeling in the air.

We look up in the sky.

Right in front of our eyes, we see a sudden, bright flash-point of light.

It looked like some sort of a nuclear explosion, I guess.

This thing was a very pure, luminous white. It started to burst and come towards us.

It actually looked like it could have been the sun that exploded.

We ducked, or at least tried to duck for cover from this explosion.

Since we could see this event was fully Biblical, we all immediately assumed a full meditative posture. We knelt down, with our heads down, facing the blast.

29. CAUGHT UP IN THE PANIC OF PEOPLE FLEEING DISASTER

Once it seemed like the first major wave of energy had passed, we were just running.

We got into the top of an academic building — some type of large school.

This guy, sort of like a policeman, was telling us we needed to go down this giant square stairwell in a way that he said was safe, and would keep us from falling.

He said this would also keep everyone from trampling each other.

There was a rope that he tied at the top. He had a rather uncomfortable method of using the rope to stabilize yourself as you walked down the stairs.

You were supposed to grab the top of the rope with your right hand, and then wrap your other hand underneath, behind it.

This was supposed to give you stability, so that you wouldn't fall or get trampled by the masses of people as they were running and screaming down the stairs.

We were trying this out, but as we would go down each level, there was still a little bit of slack left in the rope. You could never get a secure footing.

This concerned us, as it seemed to have an effect on how well we would be able to help anyone else with this method.

We were trying to figure out how to fix the problem. We were just standing around and scratching our heads, because we just didn't know what to do.

Then all of a sudden, it dawned on me that I had printed out everything we needed to do.

I imagined all these sheets of computer paper. I said, **"There is nothing to worry about. I have all the information we need."**

Then after that, we all felt a great sense of relief.]

[David's Note: Information, in the form of a computer printout, is what finally solved the demonic problems outlined in the earlier sections of this dream.

Any downward movement or descent in a dream represents a journey through the lower chakras, and issues of healing your trauma, which can often be very painful.

As a planet, the struggle we have endured since 2020 is symbolized in this dream by a policeman telling me that rappelling through a riot with a rope, down stairs, was safe.

This is a dream analogy of the Deep State offering apparent 'solutions', like the inoculations, that were far more dangerous than just living out your normal life.

This dream also has obvious prophetic reflections of recent school shootings.

30. NOTES ON THESE TWO DISTURBING DREAMS

Both of these 'demon' dreams are at least indirectly related to the current public's fears about the Chinese Balloon scandal, which is still playing out as I finalize this section.

If such a balloon had an EMP on it, you would see a blinding flash of light in the sky as it went off. And the 'nuclear' demon's tongue was made from a Chinese hot pepper.

One nuclear energy blast could melt down the majority of all our electronics.

We saw a similar effect in the Carrington solar event. The sun had a huge CME, and it melted down most of our existing telegraph wires during its time in 1859.

The Carrington Event sparked a huge geomagnetic storm that wreaked havoc with technology. Earth fell silent as telegraph communications around the world failed.

According to [History.com](https://www.history.com), there were reports of sparks showering from telegraph machines, operators receiving electric shocks and papers set ablaze by the rogue sparks.

Striking [auroras](#) dazzled skywatchers around the world as polar light shows stretched far beyond their usual ranges.

The **northern lights (aurora borealis) were witnessed as far south as Cuba and Honolulu, Hawaii –**

Whilst the southern lights (aurora australis) were seen as far north as Santiago, Chile, according to [National Geographic](#).²¹⁴

Michael has demonstrated prophetic accuracy by showing us a dramatic, terrifying scene in June 1998 that is very similar to what people are actually afraid of, right now.

The explosion was also deliberately provoked by staff in tuxedos who were cleaning up after the rich. They felt short-changed, and then 'slapped' the demon in a bucket.

The deliberate, violent taunting of the demon then led directly to him expanding, like Godzilla. This metaphor then changed into an airborne explosion in the next dream.

Michael will also add in passages that clearly tie the East Palestine Chemical Spill into this collection of prophecies as well.

Michael will have much more to say on these dreams as we head into our next Section.

²¹⁴ <https://www.space.com/the-carrington-event>

SECTION TWELVE: JULY 1998, PART ONE

July 1st is the natural dividing-point for the middle of the year, and it also works very well as the halfway point to begin this volume, featuring Michael's words from 1998.

The very first two words of July 1998 are "SRI International." This now appears to be another code to our present, just as Michael warned me in recent dreams to expect.

Stanford Research International did decades-long research into remote viewing, where hidden information is obtained through non-conventional, invisible means.

One of four organizations implicated in the mass censorship scandal that is now being prosecuted in Congress in February 2023 is Stanford Internet Observatory.

SRI International is Stanford Research International. And I came to this page in the book right as the Twitter disclosures were breaking into the headlines.

7/1/98

1. TIME LOOP TO CISA / EIP SCANDAL EXPOSED ON TWITTER

¹ SRI International.

[David's Note, 1/1/23: I only inserted this cryptic Level 2 passage from July 1st in the book recently, after seeing it unseal new connections on the following lines.

We now have found out that the DHS outsourced the overview and interference with our 'process' of deciding leaders to CISA's Election Integrity Partnership, or EIP.

The EIP had four key corporate divisions, with a total of 120 analysts working. The first entity on this list is Stanford Internet Observatory.

Book Two, Volume Two's very first words from Michael after the July 1st halfway point are "SRI International." That gives these words a central focus of emphasis.

To make this a bit easier to see, let's swap the last two words of SRI, and make Stanford Research International into Stanford International Research.

Could Stanford International Research encode Stanford Internet Observatory?

INTERNeT and INTERNaTional have almost the same exact letters in the same order. And you can tilt the lower-case E upside down to make it into an A.

If you think the idea of turning the E upside down to make an A is silly, and “Michael would never make a code like that,” you don’t understand Michael.

“Research” and “Observatory” also share many of the same letters.

Just as we are learning that various organizations were manipulating our online discourse and steering the elections, Michael gives us a prophecy of it in July 1998.]

2. MCCARTNEY, DODGE, THE NEW RECRUITS

² **Mc Cartney.**

³ **Dodge.**

⁴ **The new recruits.**

[David’s Note, 1/16/23: McCartney is very close to McCarthy – the “new recruit” for the Speaker of the House, after Nancy Pelosi had to “get out of Dodge.”

Now in February, “the new recruits” in Congress are prosecuting the same hearings Michael has been telling us to anticipate – and to band together to produce.

Some of these hearings should include investigations into Biden’s documents, which were hidden in a garage next to his treasured Corvette.

The word ‘Dodge’ may also refer to how Biden is trying to ‘dodge’ this scandal.

Stavatti also now has a business colleague with connections to the Beatles. The name McCartney has direct prophetic significance in the personal sense.]

3. THE WIFE BECOMES THE COMMANDER IN CHIEF

¹ There will be an opportunity to develop things as this goes on.

² **In the future, the wife of the sergeant will become the commander-in-chief of the armed forces.**

³ We paused for such realizations to be made.

[David’s Note, 9/14/22: This appears to be another Biden prophecy, showing how Jill has to help him with even the most basic tasks of being Commander-in-Chief.

“The wife of the sergeant will become the commander-in-chief.”

Biden is called a 'sergeant' instead of any higher rank. This may be because he never actually served in the military.²¹⁵ He also can be as abusive as a drill sergeant.

Another layer of gender-encoded metaphor is that Obama may symbolize a 'wife' who is abusing and bossing around Biden, like the mother in my previous dream.

"The wife of the sergeant will become the commander-in-chief of the armed forces."

Obama is the real boss in this symbolic example, and Biden under-ranks him.

The widely-disputed 2020 US election occurred less than two months before the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction. Michael said this was the 'real' Mayan Calendar end-date.

Later in this volume, we will see the exact Michael Prophecies that reveal this.

In Book Two, Volume One, we saw how each new surge of fourth-density energy has caused the negative to become far more visibly exposed, starting in 1936.

December 26th, 2020 is the 'new' Mayan Calendar end-date that Michael reveals to us later in this book. This is the exact day where Jupiter and Saturn perfectly conjoined.

The 2020 election was followed by the mass inoculation campaign. **The first shots were approved and deployed literally within days of December 26, 2020.**

Pfizer got FDA approval on December 10th, 2020. **Moderna got emergency-use FDA authorization on December 17th, 2020 – just nine days before the Conjunction.**

By January 6, 2021, just eleven days after the Conjunction, the CDC was reporting 17,288,950 doses distributed – with 5,306,797 actually administered to a person.²¹⁶

This number skyrocketed to 63.7 million distributed doses by January 31st, 2021.²¹⁷

Is this timing a coincidence? I do not believe so. Our alternative, apparently, was an extinction-level event that wiped out most life on the surface of third-density Earth.

We have now needed to watch this ugly spectacle play out over the last three years.

Michael reveals how we have "paused for such realizations to be made" worldwide.]

²¹⁵ <https://veteranlife.com/military-history/did-joe-biden-serve-in-the-military/>

²¹⁶ "[CDC COVID Data Tracker](#)". March 28, 2020. [Archived](#) from the original on January 25, 2021. Retrieved January 6, 2021.

²¹⁷ "[Operation Warp Speed: Accelerated COVID-19 Vaccine Development Status and Efforts to Address Manufacturing Challenges](#)". US Government Accountability Office. February 11, 2021. Retrieved May 6, 2022.

4. THE STERN OPENNESS OF THE NEW FEMININE PRESENCE

¹ There would be, in any grade, the stern openness of the new feminine presence —

² As it had expressed itself now.

[David’s Note: This seems to refer to Kari Lake, Marjorie Taylor Greene, Lauren Boebert and other leaders, such as in the new Congress that Michael just spoke of.]

³ I find that Rodney had heard better under separate conditions.

[David’s Note: A search for Rodney gives us Dangerfield, followed by Rodney King.

Michael may be saying that the “stern openness of the new feminine presence” stops events like the Rodney King riots from happening.

Immediately after I wrote the above analysis on 12/21/22, emails and texts from Nancy Pelosi leaked. These emails implicate her in planning the January 6th event.

The first Congressman on the list of names who filed this report is Rep. **Rodney** Davis.

The internal communications were made public Wednesday in a report compiled by Republican Reps. **Rodney Davis**, Jim Banks, Troy Nehls, Jim Jordan and Kelly Armstrong that encompasses the results of months of investigation.²¹⁸

Michael suggests that Rep. ‘Rodney’ Davis wants to “hear [the truth] better under separate conditions,” where Pelosi’s complicity in January 6th can be formally revealed.

Nancy is also notorious for her “stern... feminine presence.” And this passage comes directly after the line saying “the wife... will become the commander-in-chief.”

3/7/23: Now as we go to press, footage has emerged of the infamous Q-Anon Shaman being politely ushered around by police, who even tried to open doors for him.^{219 220}

YouTube is directing people looking for Tucker Carlson’s analysis of this footage to “fake fact checks” instead.²²¹]

²¹⁸ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2022/12/breaking-house-republicans-locate-emails-text-messages-implicating-pelosi-failed-jan-6-capitol-security-operation/>

²¹⁹ <https://www.newsmax.com/newsfront/jan-6-jacob-chansley-capitol/2023/03/07/id/1111371/>

²²⁰ <https://nypost.com/2023/03/06/jan-6-footage-shows-cops-bringing-qanon-shaman-to-senate-floor/>

²²¹ <https://thefederalist.com/2023/03/07/searching-for-tucker-carlsons-bombshell-j6-videos-youtube-censors-will-direct-you-to-fake-fact-checks-instead/>

5. THE ACTUAL DEATH OF THE BODY IS NOT NECESSARY

¹ Through the inclusion of stigmata in these materials, there might then be a further ability to bring about said manifestations.

² The oldest research documents in the world give testament to the presence of the Christ on the earth planes, after the Ascension.

³ You have correctly deduced that the advent of such luminosity [from His ascended body] occurred as a direct result of the catalytic action of said crucifixion —

⁴ But that **the actual physical death of the body complex was not necessary, in fact.**

[David's Note: Michael is not denying Jesus's death on the cross. He is saying that Ascension is a process that does not require bodily death to be activated.

This is a huge misunderstanding for all of us. It has caused many misperceptions about what will happen to our bodies as we get to the end of this 25,000-year cycle.]

6. DO NOT GIVE LIP SERVICE TO SUCH INDIVIDUALS

¹ This [survival of the body through Ascension] is an important point to consider.

² As with it, there is then uncovered many of the great distortions that have sought to rob the world of the true story and the true power of the Christ saga —

³ As it is expressed in the material planes.

⁴ To give lip service to such individuals who would be unable to appreciate the truth is to continue to allow fundamentalism to wield its influence unfairly over the world —

⁵ Causing great, mass distortions in the public's consciousness of what it was that occurred.

⁶ By including physical death as part of this Ascension, the distinction line is then blurred between the normal waking physical body and the Ascended light body.

⁷ Were the truths to be known, the metaphor might possibly be made clearer.

7. THE PURIFICATION OF THE BODY THROUGH SUFFERING

¹ It is through the **bearing of these crosses** in life,

² Through the trials and the tribulations, and the suffering that we must go through,

³ (Which can often bring us to the edge of consciousness, **to the edge of physical health,**)

⁴ [That] we might then have an opportunity to experience far greater activation of our intuitive, mental and emotional centers.

⁵ It is this purification of the body, through suffering, that completes the initiation process –

⁶ And allows much greater levels of development to burst forth suddenly.

⁷ Written as it was, well before June, we desired to get some more time behind us –

⁸ So that the entire saga may be presented in a way that then illustrates how the mind may work on these matters.

⁹ The only insistence that we have is upon the renewed desire to seek the Christ, as a result of the truth being told.

[David's Note: Here, Michael appears to refer to those who have been inoculated as "bearing these crosses... to the edge of physical health."

This volume of Michael Prophecies is now being released within days of June 2023.

Michael repeatedly indicates that the "purification of the body through suffering" can lead to Ascension. Therefore, many of the inoculated will be healed and restored.

I had to go through an elaborate personal healing and initiation while writing this book. Michael needed me out of the public eye while I was re-growing gray matter.]

8. KNOWLEDGE REMEDIED BY THE FINAL PURIFICATION PROCESS

¹ The metaphor actually becomes even more pervasive and interesting once it is realized that the life processes [of Jesus] after Ascension were not but a mere three or four days.

² There was indeed a continuing desire to grace those on the Earth planes with the knowledge that had been remedied by the final purification process.

³ Neither should He be viewed as a military king, though there are those who write on these matters who try to insinuate that he was.

⁴ The real truth of the matter is that many distortions were made, and then covered up.

⁵The matter of the transformation of bodily essence WITHOUT death was not understood – nor cared to be understood.

⁶And therefore that part of the material, which was already [written, was edited out.]

⁷Just because the story isn't always wanted in detail, that doesn't mean we can't give it in detail.

9. DREAM OF TRAVELING AS A BALL OF LIGHT

[Dream: We have been covering the topic of Jesus [and the idea that physical death is not actually necessary to achieve Ascension.]

At the end of the dream, I was controlling a ball. Some of it was like a video game. Some of it seemed more like psychic control. [The ball seemed to represent my light body.]

I had maneuvered the ball into an area that seemed to be all pitfalls and **spikes**. I couldn't get it any further.

The ball would fall into a hole, and smash on the spikes. Then I would have the ball return to the same spot where it happened, and would have to try again.

I was getting really frustrated, as **there seemed to be no way out**.

I became very emotional and put enormous energy into finding a solution, concentrating with all my might.

I was finally able to get the ball to leap across a gigantic chasm – and land on a platform on the other side.

After it did this, I was able to go even further with it.

The ball rolled all around through these wonderful ups and downs and hills, leap-frogging across many very small points of contact.

It then fell into a very large trench. It looked almost like an indoor pool, with no water, that was at least 200 feet deep at the far end.

This trench was filled with many other balls that had also landed there.

This could possibly have been an even worse trap.

[David's Note: This trap may be an encrypted symbol of the inoculations, and the idea that many more people who took them might live much shorter lives now as a result.

The pool with no water is also reminiscent of the terrifying white indoor pool that appears in the highly disturbing Podesta artwork.]

10. A STUNNING, ROCKET-SHIP EXIT FROM THE DEATH TRAP!

Quite suddenly, the orb collided with another one of the light-orbs that was already bouncing around inside the giant trench, like a ping-pong ball.

As soon as this contact was made, the orb took off at a tremendous speed.

It shot out like a rocket – and levitated beyond the entire, gigantic room that was holding the playing field for this elaborate and very dangerous game.

The ball traveled probably more than 1000 feet of distance. It went almost to the ceiling as it did this. The feeling as this happened was extremely dramatic and exhilarating.

The orb shot directly back up to the high plateau that it had first started on. The motion seemed so precise and perfect that it was almost too good to be true.

I was so thrilled that I had gotten myself all the way back up to the beginning of the game. I could now start the whole thing again, any way I wanted.]

11. PEOPLE LARGELY ARE READY FOR THIS

¹ The truth of the matter is that people largely are ready for this.

² The very fact that the truth is becoming known makes the story more plausible – for those others who would normally be skeptical on such matters.

³ As a result of the distortions that were made, many people now doubt whether there was any crucifixion at all.

⁴ By understanding the true story, there might be the opportunity to clear up many of the distortions that have grown around the concepts and ideas presented therein.

⁵ Just because we have an axe to grind on this does not mean that we do not appreciate those Christians who have worshipped the Creator in the means most appropriate to them.

12. EMBRACE THE WISDOM OF THE REAL PATH JESUS FOLLOWED

¹ There are certain truths, however, that could simply not be revealed in the past, due to the absolutely embarrassing nature of them –

² Which would make any channel seem overtly heretical, and even catastrophically imbalanced.

³ It is better to say that the future of these materials will involve a greater, deepening trust in the learning process through which these ideas may be given.

⁴ This comes about when the person no longer believes in the distorted truths, but seeks rather to embrace the true wisdom of the real path.

⁵ We are well aware that to disseminate these truths is to become automatically evil in the eyes of many Christian fundamentalists –

⁶ But we feel that it is important enough to present this information that we are willing to include such realizations in the work itself.

13. A BEING THEN TRANSFORMED AND STILL ABLE TO INHABIT EARTH

¹ Understanding what really did happen is perhaps an even more metaphysical story,

² As it shows a being then transformed –

³ And still able to inhabit the Earth planes in the lighter configuration.

⁴ This is the pattern that is then exemplified in the statement,

⁵ “As I do these things, so shall ye do them, and greater things – for I go unto my Father.” (John 14:12)

14. RUINS ON THE MOON ARE THE SMOKING GUN

[Dream: Another section involved my old philosophy professor. He was asking or telling me to seek the Christ.

He was basically saying that God was love, that love was Jesus Christ, and that this name was the embodiment of pure love.

I understood him, and was listening carefully to what he told me....]

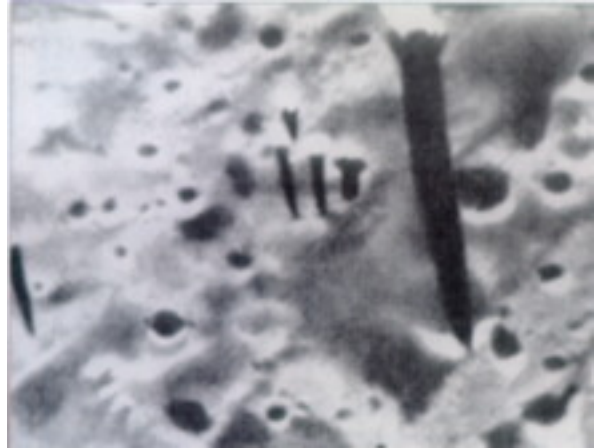
¹ Specific data on NASA can be given at this time as well. Their knowledge of the UFO field of interest is vast.

² As you have seen already, the likes of Ken Johnston have come forward and exposed the cover-up of airbrushing flying vehicles out of space photos,

³ As well as deliberately misplacing and obscuring photographic plates that clearly show lunar ruins of some kind. Architecture.

⁴ To try to ascribe the full range of these ruins to one simple architect would not be forthcoming.

⁵ Rather, see these lunar ruins as the smoking gun that then closes the door on whether or not these advanced ancient Earth civilizations [like Atlantis] really existed.



[David's Note: I cover the story of Ken Johnston and provide many photographic NASA examples of lunar architecture in *The Ascension Mysteries*, Part Two.

Pictured here are the apparent obelisks known as the Blair Cuspids – found in NASA images from the moon, which were quickly suppressed.

Multiple scientists concluded that the sun angle and the length and shape of the shadows in the above image indicated the presence of shard-like formations.

Less visible in this particular image are the collapsed square areas suggesting underground rooms with dented-in ceilings. This is discussed in *Ascension Mysteries*.]

15. RELICS ON THE MOON INDICATE TRAVEL FROM ATLANTIS

¹ In the Atlantean and Lemurian spheres, with the flying craft such as the Vimana indicated in the Vedas,

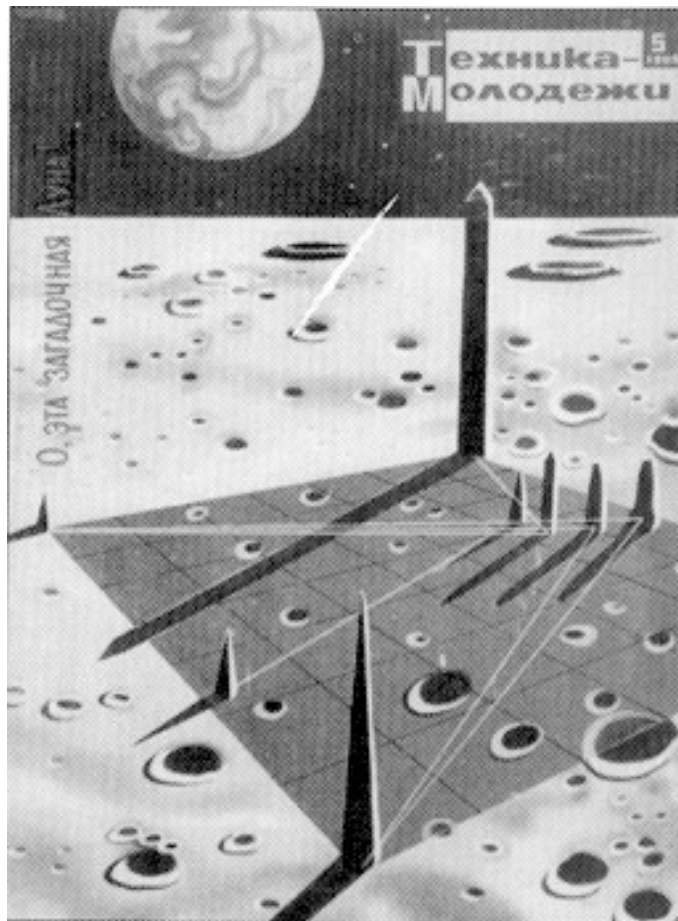
² There was the ability to travel outside of the planet's own environs.

³ Said travel to the moon was made possible, then, through the technology that was present at the time.

⁴ And there are, at various stages of decay, relics that will indicate as much.

[Voice becomes extremely slow.]

⁵ Were we to tell the full story behind these relics, it would require a greater effort of concentration in the present moment.



Cover photo of *Technika Molozevi* magazine, with Russian scientists' reconstruction of the obelisks and underground squares they believed they were seeing in the “Blair Cuspids” NASA photo seen above.

16. WE ARE FLOATING IN SPACE NOW, HAVING THE TIME OF OUR LIVES

¹ Steady the ship — by venturing deeper and deeper into the profound silence that beckons in the roots of the tree of mind.

² The answer would be to remain quiet —

³ To take those in-streaming positive energies from this entity,

⁴ And process them — in a way that retains the purity, the confidence, [and] the integrity of said source of beingness and of information.

⁵ Allow your consciousness to consummate our relationship — by feeling the necessary drifting away, and/or dissociation of the physical body.

⁶ We are floating in space now, having the time of our lives, and approaching the throne of grace, beauty and might that lies within us.

⁷ There is no separation as we venture forward into these realms.

⁸ To be drilled at sea —

⁹ Is to wake up into an environment where what you thought you knew about the collective unconscious is suddenly called into question.

[David's Note, 2/12/23: "Drilled at sea" may be another reference to the destruction of the Nordstream pipeline, which moved oil, by sea, that was drilled out of the ground.

As a result of these and other disruptive acts, many formerly complacent people have now "suddenly called into question" the reality they "thought they knew."]

¹⁰ The new information that we seek to provide will rival all previous attempts at contact —

¹¹ For the simple reason that the means through which said information becomes available have become more productive of the necessary mental state.

¹² See then, that when we forgive an entity for the past, it is our purpose to prepare it for the future.

¹³ The distinction is clear, then. Golden.

17. OPENING THE DOORS TO CONTACT ENHANCES LIFE'S VITALITY

¹ We do not want for there to be any discrepancies in the information as presented.

² In fact, we want to secure a foothold that will allow greater information to be deducted through this process.

³ We become terrified, again, when the conditions of the outside world seem to introduce a dampening effect on this contact process.

⁴ But rather, we should see that opening up the doors to such contact in such a manner enhances the entire vitality of life.

⁵ Therefore, be not afraid of the Christ. Be not afraid of the loving consciousness that seeks to embrace you.

⁶ Know and understand, deep within yourself, that when the true silence is gained, the information is always persistent, consistent and reliable.

⁷ It is through the direct catalyst of working with others that we are able to make this more apparent.

18. ASK YOURSELF SOME QUESTIONS

¹ So for now, every time that you sleep under a canopy of brightness, take the time necessary to ask yourself some questions.

[David's Note: Since this turned into a Q&A with Michael, I have left in my original answers. Your answers will be different, and the questions might also modify.]

The idea of "sleeping under a canopy of brightness" is another of many references to my home at 8600 feet in Colorado, where we have Northern Lights and bright stars.]

² How long have I been doing this?

³ [D: "I guess I have had the ability all my life. I have been diligently recording it now for almost two years, and have tons of excellent material to show for it."]

⁴ How far have we come in the process?

⁵ [D: "Actually, quite a great deal. I couldn't have even imagined in the beginning that I would be producing material like this now.]

⁶ "It also seems like I have just now hit a fantastic new plateau, even superior to the earlier "pipeline" phenomenon.

⁷ "Yet, it has been so gradual that it is easy to forget that fact."]

⁸ Are there many things new to me that I learned? What are they?

⁹ [D: "I think that predominantly the entire 1999 Cycle theory of Ascension was derived from these readings.]

[David's Note: At the time, I still did not know what might happen on August 11th, 1999, which was still a year away, but I was already heavily researching it.]

¹⁰ [D: "I have learned a tremendous amount about myself and the shadow parts that I was hiding from. I have also learned how truly limitless the consciousness really is.]

¹¹ "I have been able to have out-of-body experiences, something I have longed for all my life.

¹² "Plus, the great secret has been revealed to me, that I am the reincarnation of the entity that was once called Edgar Cayce."]

19. HOW DID IT AFFECT ME IN MY DEEPEST, DARKEST MOMENTS?

¹ When did this all really begin?

² [D: "I now believe that the visionary [UFO] dreams I would wake up from as a child were the start of all this.

³ "Thus, I really did have a grasp on my uniqueness through these dreams throughout my entire life.

⁴ "More and more, I am remembering the most epic feelings from when I was a child.

⁵ "Just going through my daily routine, there were so many utterly fantastic emotions that it is quite hard to describe."]

⁶ Have I always known within myself that something like this would happen?

⁷ [D: "I guess that deep down inside, I always did know. I have devoted my whole life to trying to find out the answer, and now that it is here, I am often overwhelmed by it."]

⁸ How did it affect me when I was in my deepest, darkest moments?

⁹ [D: "I would become horribly depressed. So many things seemed to be wrong, out of place, not working properly.

¹⁰ "I kept wondering how I was going to get to be the popular figure that my dreams and emotions kept reinforcing [that I would become, all throughout my life]....]

20. THE LIGHTS ARE SHINING DOWN UPON US NOW

¹ Could the depression have been stimulated by the impatience in the full unfoldment of the process as given,

² Or was I simply too young to appreciate the inherent abilities that were expressing themselves through me, even at that point?

³ [D: "I do think I had trouble appreciating these abilities.

⁴ "Even though my early childhood was replete with psychic stuff, I became miserable in high school, as it didn't seem to be going anywhere."]

⁵ It is questions such as these that must be asked when the final truth is reached.

⁶ That final truth involves subverting the habit patterns in the matrix of beingness —

⁷ And taking the trust to move out into novel new directions,

⁸ Where the whole undercurrent of life is altered — for the positive benefits that said career as a metaphysician will provide.

⁹ The lights are shining down upon us now.

¹⁰ We can prepare to enter deep into the same state that produces out-of-body experiences in the present moment.

21. OTHER PERSONALITIES ARE AVAILABLE AND CAN BE LAPSED INTO

[21-second pause. Voice distinctly rises to the feminine quality, labeled LC for Lucia.]

¹ LC: We have a few more things to say.

² The body is such a temporary vehicle, to us, that it is difficult to remind ourselves that you feel it is the sum totality of your beingness.

³ As we look in at you, we have to stay conscious of the fact that said illusion persists within your minds and hearts.

⁴ The other personalities are available, and may be lapsed into at any point.

⁵ Though you exist in the physical sphere of space and time,

⁶ At your exact coordinate points, there are a series of bodies that are both spaceless and timeless.

⁷ And yet, [they] may very well have a cohesive unity of their own at some other node point.

22. DISTURBANCES EMANATE THROUGHOUT THE WHOLE

¹ To effect the one is to effect the whole. And all events are occurring simultaneously.

² Therefore, every action that occurs is immediately considered in the light of all other actions, throughout the sphere of simultaneous incarnations.

³ Thus, when there is a disturbance on one level, it ripples and emanates throughout the whole.

⁴ The in-depth study of the past lives, then, provides an excuse for those others who would trample on your beingness to then realize that you now understand the truth of what is happening.

⁵ This may give them more fuel for the fire, but we really don't care.

⁶ The point is for you to penetrate the mystery of self.

23. LUCIUS OF CYRENE, AUTHOR OF THE BOOK OF LUKE

¹ We are trying to lay clues for you through the giving of information, which you successfully decoded as indicative of the incarnation of Lucius —

² [of Cyrene, who wrote the Book of Luke, according to the Cayce Readings — and was another one of his influential former lifetimes, as his readings repeatedly stated.]

³ We would like to see you go much further in uncovering the vital details of said story.

⁴ Also, the Bainbridge incarnations need to be studied in much greater detail, as well as that of [Persian king] Ujhlted, as it will provide you with a direct means of comparison.

[David's Note: Cayce's soul "lost positive polarity," according to the readings, leading to him having two lifetimes as John Bainbridge, a gambler, womanizer and wastrel.

He reincarnated as his own grandson, and followed a similar trajectory twice in a row.

The Persian lifetime was in the distant past, after Ra-Ptah. The king, pronounced YOOLT, was highly loved, and his legend was lost in the sands of time.]

⁵ Through this, we might then direct you to understand that you are a walking, talking point of light.

⁶ [Your] actions are constantly interplaying against the essences of these other entities,

⁷ Which all exist simultaneously in your own time-space mind.

24. YOU WILL RECEIVE WONDROUS BLESSINGS

¹ So therefore, we do have to remind ourselves that you believe you are David, in the late 1990's.

² As our technique with you has grown, we have been able to do this with an emerging rapidity and a greater appreciation for the challenges presented by said channel.

³ You will receive wondrous blessings when you begin to take active steps towards your full development, which includes being honest about who you are.

⁴ We can understand from your psychological matrix how it is that this is made difficult.

⁵ But again, just connect the pieces together —

⁶ The vibrational similarities which express themselves [in mission], [and] the configurations facially, attitudinally and vibrationally in the planetary alignments.

25. THE IGUANA OF THE HIGHER REALMS

¹ Furthermore, we should then see the advent of the development of the abilities at such early ages, and the simple fact that said contact has occurred.

² Also investigate the priority that was placed on diet at such a young age, well before any of the true Cayce regimen was [consciously] understood.

³ The iguana of the higher realms that we have referred to here [in your recent dream] is that part of the self that is disallowed, consciously divorced —

⁴ Not allowed to flourish. Set aside, diseased, abandoned.

⁵ We want for there to be a reunification of Self. And this will involve a desire to no longer abuse these tender portions of the body complex.

[David's Note: Apparently, then, the iguana dream had a dual metaphor.

In part, it was predicting the possibility of an EMP strike, while at the same time being an indication of my own self-abuse — and the destruction that it could cause me.

Also, we can again be reminded that in the film *Godzilla* (1998,) an iguana apparently turned into a huge monster through radiation exposure.

The analogy is that if we do not take care of ourselves emotionally and learn to love and accept our flaws and weaknesses, we subconsciously empower the negative against us.]

26. GUILT-INDUCED BELIEFS HAVE OFTEN DISTORTED THE INFORMATION

¹ The expression of the alien child morphed into the genitals [in an earlier dream] was meant to show the alienness that you still feel with your human sexuality,

² The problems that we still encounter in presenting material to you that would be designed to expand your horizons in these matters.

³ Your own guilt-induced beliefs, which seek to provide limitations, have often distorted information that would then normally be of great service to you —

⁴ in helping you understand who and what you are in the physical space.

[David's Note: Here is the weird dream Michael is talking about, from June 28, 1998.

[Dream: At some point there was a baby born, but I don't know where it came from.

It was very extraterrestrial looking, with a big head, almost like a fetus.

It looked just like a Grey, with the large head and the dark, almond-shaped eyes.

It was very small, smaller than a human baby.

I knew that it was my baby. I was trying to figure out how I was going to get other people to take care of him.

He seemed to recognize me, and I was carrying him around.

[David's Note: I have deleted some gross details that associated the baby with genital symbolism. It seemed to reflect the trauma Michael says I endured in the parallel life.

In this case the baby was not touched or harmed in any way, but his facial skin looked wrinkled in a uniquely disturbing anatomical fashion.

Ironically, even though Michael directly handed me this idea of having a hybrid ET child, I never even considered it might be true until I am unsealing this now.]

27. NICE PEOPLE GETTING TOGETHER IN AN OLD MILITARY BUILDING

A very long plot developed in this dream. It all centered around the same theme, which stayed constant. I was asleep for the better part of three hours, I guess.

There was a building there at the beginning. I was speculating that it might have been an old military building. It had several rooms, and was not small.

A group of people were getting together. They had an archaic computer system, but they were very nice people.

In the beginning, there may have been a sorority and fraternity type of feeling to the whole thing.

It felt like a group of people getting together to help other people, like a teenage center.

They received me warmly, and everything was really cool.

There was a part like a hotel, and I had something to do with this group.

My name was on the punch-in computer along with a list of other names. I updated it and punched in, like I would at the hotel I'm working at....

It seemed to morph into some kind of thematic club that had to do with baseball, and there was a buffet there.

It was a nightclub where they wanted people to come and have a good time....

The business had finally started to work, and I was very excited. Then I woke up.

[David's Note: This clearly appears to be a prophecy of Stavatti. We have indeed acquired a large military facility in Niagara Falls, New York.

We have multiple, significant opportunities all coming in. For that reason, I am not worried about whether or not our company will succeed.

As this volume is about to be finalized, Trump released a comprehensive "Agenda 47" plan that is very similar to what Stavatti is doing, but on a much larger scale.²²²

In Trump's plan, up to ten new cities will be built where hi-tech industry such as hovercars and powerplants can flourish, along with affordable new real estate.

Just so we are clear, these 'powerplants' deliver continuous, clean energy that lasts for much, much longer than most physicists would ever dare to imagine.

Once you own a powerplant, you no longer pay for energy. Or, in the case of the non-toxic Thorium reactor, you would replace a simple, safe fuel source only once a year.

Our plan includes 23 colleges and universities in New York who will offer two-year degrees. Your education is covered in exchange for doing four years of paid work.

²²² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/03/right-on-time-a-quantum-leap-in-the-american-standard-of-living-president-trump-announces-agenda-47-video/>

Once you earn a degree like this, you now have the expertise to be a very hireable employee in this exciting new world of super-hi-tech manufacturing in America.

Plus, you will almost certainly grow more gray matter in the process!

As I said on Twitter, I am awed by Agenda 47.²²³ I was deeply concerned that it might take 30 years to get anti-gravity hovercars out on a widespread level if we were alone.

What the Alliance has not revealed, up until now, is the connection between this announcement and the declassified Navy patents for hovercars and powerplants.

The Agenda 47 plan ultimately calls for a WWII-style industrial boom in America that will make Star Trek technology a waking reality within our lifetimes.]

28. MANY MILLENNIA, ONE PROJECT

¹ The timespan of any entity's involvement with us usually occurs over many millennia.

² And yet, to us there is only one project, one entity, one point of light and beingness.

³ It is so easy for us to see your parallelism, your simultaneity with these other incarnations, that we must keep reminding ourselves that you have yet to really embrace or understand this for yourself.

⁴ The very simple fact that you consider this too fantastic to believe, or too outrageous for others to believe, has effectively undermined your confidence — and caused you to shut down the process.

⁵ Recognize, then, that you [David] are cut from the same stock as John Bainbridge, cut from the same stock as Ujhld,

⁶ As well as those other incarnations, previously unrecovered, that then played themselves out in your present physical sphere —

⁷ Such as the interactions with Obakun or Yumi.

⁸ To compare these reflections would be to make them appear less isolated, less different.

[David's Note: As I briefly discuss in *Awakening in the Dream*, I found out that my ex-girlfriend Yumi had been a husband I had murdered in a former lifetime.

²²³ https://twitter.com/david_wilcock/status/1632805261944684544

He would come home from four days on a fishing boat, very drunk on sake, and would force himself without having done anything to clean up. That was my motive.

I immediately fell to my death off of a rope bridge in the rain, after running out of the house in grief and terror. I re-lived that trauma in countless dreams as a child.]

29. EXPLORE THE RAMIFICATIONS OF HOW CONTACT IS MADE

¹ We want there to be a deeper moralistic integrity on behalf of your own Ego structure.

² Do not run and hide in your singleness of purpose. Do not run and hide from the mission that has dropped into your lap.

³ You have the power to create your successes and/or failures. And we are here with you, eagerly awaiting your successful creations.

⁴ Do not wait for someone else to tell you what to do. Simply write the story. Do not beat around the bush.

⁵ Express how it was that the greater initiation took place. And this will set you free.

⁶ With a measured, determined effort, we can then explore how it was that we made our mark upon this personality.

⁷ With greater trance states such as this, we may then explore the ramifications of how such a contact was made, and why it had to be made.

⁸ Your whole life can be viewed as a project, where the goal was to seek the methods through which the awakening could be granted.

30. LOTS OF PEOPLE WANT TO DANGLE OFF THE LIGHTS

[Voice tone then lowers, as Grandfather / Archangel Michael begins talking.]

¹ GF: The ridicule of telling the story should matter very little to you at this point, as there is no need to continue to exercise any fear surrounding this.

² You have already taken the brunt of some of the worst attacks on your credibility that will then transpire.

³ This is not meant for you to suffer needlessly, but rather to understand how it is that such an intelligent attack could be made under the guise of familiarity and acceptance.

⁴ There are a lot of people who would like to dangle off of the lights that we have attached from the roof,

⁵ Try to smash them in,

⁶ Try to discredit and disable everything that we have formed.

⁷ Yet at the same time, there are those others who then seek to help us mount new lights, new understandings, new ways of being whole and pure.

⁸ Sell the book, then. Sell the story. For what reason should you be afraid?

⁹ Your degree of fear is only matched by your degree of persistence.

¹⁰ We wish to see your goal-centered motivations top the scale, as this will provide us with the ease of fully operating said channel, and getting the messages across.

31. YOU KEEP FORGETTING WHO YOU ARE, AND THAT IS OKAY

[Voice tone again rises, as Lucia begins talking.]

¹ LC: Do not criticize yourself at the early stages of this process coming to the fore.

² You have yet to fully experience the deepest trances that we can provide. And this is okay.

³ We want for you to be sure that the moment of your awakening is upon us.

⁴ Do not assume that others will think you crazy, because your experience has proven so far that they do not.

⁵ Even in those cases such as [your friend] Chris, the fear was presented politely.

⁶ Were the material itself unable to back up these claims, then you would have a great difficulty communicating this idea across.

⁷ But, the story itself is replete with tremendous examples of your abilities.

⁸ Therefore, do not be afraid to catalog the story from its true origination point —

⁹ And detail the minute and overt occurrences that were all designed to bring about a greater unification.

¹⁰ To be seen as someone so pure, so open, so righteous, would be a good thing.

¹¹ You keep constantly forgetting who you are, and what this story really involves. And that is okay.

[David's Note: As a result of advice like this, I presented a very detailed summary of my early life experiences in the first half of *The Ascension Mysteries*.]

32. LET GO OF YOUR FEAR OF SHAME, AND THE DEEPEST BLOCKAGES RELEASE

¹ To us, all the evolutionary potentialities of all simultaneous incarnations still exist within the tree of mind.

² And they always surround you in the immediate subconscious energetic levels.

² Do not swagger in pride at who you are, but allow it to uncover what the deepest, purest potential is – for this incarnation.

³ If the story becomes great news and leads to ridicule, then it becomes great news and leads to ridicule.

⁴ The important message is that you, we, chose this to happen – at the time and age that it is happening.

⁵ Your desire to refrain from exercising in this choice is a desire to consciously retard the process that was subconsciously agreed to, in what you would term as the past.

⁶ The deepest blockages will be released when you let go of your fear of shame.

33. ELEMENTS SEEKING TO HOLD YOU DOWN ARE JEALOUS

¹ The elements at the ARE [Cayce organization in Virginia Beach] that would seek to hold you down have merely become so jaded in their outlook,

² So dulled and hardened to those making any type of psychic claims,

³ That they are completely buffooned by the reality of such a contact.

[David's Note: "Buffooned" is a strange word that sounds like "ballooned." This may be significant in context, since many more Chinese Balloon prophecies are soon to follow.]

⁴ You are accurate in seeing that there is a certain measure of jealousy as well, which then manifests as a desire to shut down the aberration, and render it sterile and lifeless.

⁵ You are correct in seeing that this is not helpful.

[David's Note: Michael had encouraged me to go and present my story to the ARE, as I wrote in *Awakening in the Dream*. No one wanted to touch it whatsoever.

At middle and lower levels of the company staff, various people did find out. They were very excited that Cayce had reincarnated, and were happy to speak with me.

I had started giving personal readings, by Michael's demand. The results were so mind-blowing that I soon was getting plenty of clients just through word-of-mouth.

All of the tapes have been preserved, but I have never gone back and listened to them or transcribed any of them. I believe there are over 450 of them, but I haven't counted.

Some people got much better readings than others, with dazzling prophecy. The quality of the reading was often a direct reflection of the spiritual advancement of the client.

My overall experience of this time period was that if I let anyone get close to me, their feelings of jealousy and competitiveness would inevitably arise.]

34. THE AIRLINER IS BOARDING

¹ Changing the topic, then, the airliner is boarding.

² Do not forget what you are here for. The whole purpose is to create an attitude of awareness, of readiness for the Ascension and harvest.

³ This will come about in the right time. For now, just focus on getting out the small details, the localities therein.

⁴ You can write the story of your readings and the story of your life in general as all leading up to this moment of Disclosure.

⁵ Dive headlong into it, as you now have the time, and have now earned the time.

⁶ Do not worry about whether the material will sell, as it will be of value regardless.

⁷ Write the story in full detail, in linear order from birth to present, so that you have it in that form.

⁸ And only after doing so, you might then understand how you want to use it, or you may simply leave it the same.

⁹ Do not be ashamed anymore. You are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine.

[David's Note: This "court-ordered" linear presentation of my life story began in *The Ascension Mysteries*, and then continued in *Awakening*.]

35. SERVE THE BALL BACK TO THE COURT

¹ The pressure that we put on you is to make you aware of the infinite potentials that can expand into fruition when you begin playing the game, as it were,

² And serve the ball back to the court from whence it was given.

³ It is not as big a deal as everyone would think.

⁴ It had to be someone. And you just happened to be that person.

36. YOUR STORY IS PART OF THE AWAKENING OF CHRIST

¹ This does not mean that you should think of yourself in higher, loftier terms.

² Your story is part of the awakening process for any entity who begins to realize that it is a fully functioning part of the Christ Consciousness.

³ We are with you now. And we will be with you as you give voice to these ideas and concepts.

⁴ Therefore, **go forth, and bring about this massive change that we have, in your terms, steadily wished and prayed would happen.**

⁵ **We are on the brink of major realizations here, David.**

⁶ So hold fast to your true opinions.

⁷ Do not live in fear, as fear is the enemy. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting love.

Same day

37. TWO BOMBERS INTENDING TO ATTAIN GREATER WORLD PEACE

¹ Let's talk about two bombers. They awoke at night, and they slept in the daytime.

² Their cancer was the deliberate manifestation of events that would bring about a **complete failure of many navigation systems of a particular desired target.**

³ It was believed at the time that through such a process, greater world peace would be attained —

⁴ But we now see that this action will have serious and damaging consequences for the people of this Earth.

[David's Note: Another possible reference to the Chinese Balloon shoot-down. The balloon suffered "a complete failure of many navigation systems."

This could also be an inoculation prophecy, with references to cancer and the "failure of many... systems of a particular desired target."

Michael then hints at the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction where the inoculations began.]

38. A SMALL THERMONUCLEAR DEVICE IN NEW YORK CITY

¹ The event then manifests itself as the [fourth-dimensional] force necessary for said [Ascension] upliftments to occur continues to increase.

² **Now, in Saturn**, there will be a brief indication of this to come —

³ **A conjunction of the natal planets** of the entities in question, spurred by the catalytic action of Neptune and the **approach of Jupiter**, which is getting closer and closer now.

[David's Note: A fire truck screams by in the background of the tape — a symbolic warning. Earplugs probably blocked me from hearing this during dictation.]

⁴ And so, we never take a minute for ourselves when such problems might still occur.

⁵ **[D: "What type of bombing are you referring to here?"]**

[17 seconds pause]

⁶ **The possible usage of a small thermonuclear-type device, brought in from the outside to the harbor of New York City.**

[David's Note: This is indeed the description of "Blue Lightning," the alleged "fifth-gen nuke" device that is very small and was apparently used in 9/11.

Since top Alliance sources identified the Chinese Balloon as a weapon, it may indeed have had an EMP on it — or it could have been a trial run for others that would.

If an adversarial power wanted to EMP the United States, New York would obviously be the preferred choice — to affect the largest population center on the East Coast.

US senators have now been issued satellite phones — in case of a “disruptive event.”²²⁴

And in the dream that opened this volume, I saw a bright flash of light in the sky, which would be what people would actually see if such a device were deployed.

I was admittedly terrified by what Michael was saying here. I struggled to stay in trance and not interfere with the words. Lucky number 17 shows up once again.]

39. AN ATTACK MAY HAPPEN ON AUGUST 17TH, 1998

¹ [D: “All right, let’s get you to rephrase that, again, so that we know that this is coming in with accuracy. Go ahead.”]

² The ship comes into port on the eve of the 16th or 17th of the month. Its bows are not that of the native naval shipyard.

³ It will possess frightening elements of society — those who would stay with the object as it is detonated. The month is August.

⁴ Though this can be avoided, it may still happen.

[David’s Note: I ended up calling the FBI right away, and reported this prophecy and my entire story, in detail. This got me a very obvious phone tap as a reward.

The date Michael gave has nothing to do with our balloon prophecy. Michael often makes prophecies that are multi-dimensional, and hit different topics simultaneously.

Just a few days after the dates Michael handed me, President Clinton bombed Sudan and Afghanistan for “undisclosed terror threats,” as we will see.

I found out Michael’s intel lined up with a variety of additional, classified data. I am very happy to have helped prevent this attack.]

40. THE JURY IS STILL OUT ON THIS ONE

¹ We do not understand why such a prophecy would be seen as a failure if it were not to occur.

² Quite to the contrary, if this prophecy does not occur, it will be a great success — and a testament to the fact that good triumphs over evil.

³ The jury is still out on this one.

²²⁴ <https://www.westernjournal.com/us-senators-issued-satellite-phones-preparation-disruptive-event>

⁴ There are a number of problems that might occur for them, in the transportation process, in the acquisition process, in the building process, et cetera.

⁵ Know that the time has been set, and the plan has been put into action.

⁶ On the eve of the 15th, they will begin their journey.

⁷ It is at this time that the greatest prayers should begin, to hopefully **steer them off course**, to aid the energies that can then cease this manifestation.

[David's Note: Again, this has symbolic connections to the Chinese Balloon. China tried to explain the incident away by saying the balloon had "steered off course."]

41. WE NEED TO WARN OF POSSIBLE NEGATIVE EVENTS

¹ [D: "Once again, rephrase this. This is a very big thing you are saying now."]

² LC: When your one-pointedness of mind will occur,

³ There is no longer a need to substitute the workings of the past with the repetitive statements that have characterized the present.

⁴ If we are to be a force for good, we need to elaborate on the positive changes that are happening, while simultaneously looking into the possibilities of negative events –

⁵ Such as nuclear warfare.

⁶ If one were to have exploded a nuclear device, the tension level is raised throughout the planet.

⁷ Many will seek to determine how it was done, and where said materials can be procured.

⁸ The black market already has such things.

⁹ Thus the government's statement of nuclear nations is woefully inadequate when seen in the light of the "backpack nukes" that have been leaked throughout.

¹⁰ We understand that these are very distressing circumstances.

¹¹ [We] would remind you that **the tectonic shifts involved in the upcoming changes also make New York a particularly undesirable target location.**

[David's Note, 2/13/23: Phosgene gas was released in Ohio as I unseal this. Some are afraid that the gas will make its way into New York. We pray for everyone's health.]

42. URBAN AREAS WILL BE SCENES OF DISTRESS, CHAOS AND DISASTER

¹ Therefore, when hearing these matters, the best decision one can do is to begin very seriously listening to dream guidance —

² To any upheavals that are happening in the physical life, and to the gut feelings that one might be having.

³ [You can then] piece this together to arrive at a possible conclusion that will make everyone involved safer and much happier in the long term.

⁴ With such changes so close and about to take place, we strongly encourage the separation from large urban areas —

⁵ As these will be the scenes of much distress, chaos and disaster.

⁶ [This is] for no other reason than that the economy, collapsed by the weather disturbances, will not be able to support the inner cities any longer.

[David's Note, 9/14/22: "Weather disturbances" seems to be code for "The Storm" of the Alliance. This prophecy has already come true.]

43. PEOPLE IN OUTLYING AREAS WILL HAVE AN EASIER TIME

¹ [People in the inner cities] will be the first to feel the effects of something that will occur as a ripple effect throughout society.

² People in the outlying areas will have an easier time with this,

³ As there will not be as much of a need for them to panic and worry about large crowds of people rioting and the like.

44. CITIES ARE VERY UNDESIRABLE IN THE NEAR FUTURE

¹ We treat these issues very seriously, because there are a number of possibilities that we see that can occur.

² Yet, in none of them can we honestly say that a deep urban area is a good idea.

³ Therefore, it would be wise to take stock of one's possessions, sort out what is and is not necessary —

⁴ And understand that the changes now occurring in society will make the cities a very undesirable location to remain in — throughout the near future.

45. PROPHECIES AND THE LIKE MAY BE GIVEN

¹ [D: “You had given me a dream before. In the dream it had Godzilla, and he was about to destroy things.

Right after that, I had a dream about a nuclear bomb exploding in the air, and of the need to evacuate people.”]

² You did a good job of interpreting the images we just flashed into your mind, David.

³ Now you can see that this dream stands on the same ground as the information that was just given to you.

⁴ As you increase your call to be of service, and as you continue to participate with our plan as given,

⁵ We may then find you entering into a deeper and deeper location where prophecies and the like may be given.

46. GODZILLA AND REPTILIAN-INSPIRED ATTACKS ON NEW YORK

¹ Godzilla was indicated, as it has **direct ties to New York –**

² And the lawn you were on [when the nuke went off] was intended to conform with the scenery on the outside of the **previous dream,**

³ [When you ran out of a building as it was about to explode from Godzilla.]

⁴ The dark force that was coming in, which you incorrectly labeled as Michael Jackson, was intended to show the very presence of this entity that seeks to take hold of the area.

⁵ The members of the party, being rather oblivious to this, did not indicate that there was any large difficulty mounting.

⁶ At the end of the dream, a small creature had a tongue that looked like the hot pepper that you saw in the Asian Market. Again, the image is heat.

⁷ And then, as those cleaning up after the party slapped the iguana, there was the knowledge that the iguana would grow greatly in size –

⁸ As it had in the movie *Godzilla*.

⁹ The process through which it might grow in size was intended to symbolically illustrate nuclear energy.

47. THE AIRBORNE EXPLOSION WAS CORRECTLY GIVEN

¹ And thus in the following dream, **the cycle was completed by the appearance of the airborne explosion.**

² This also was interwoven with the more long-term [solar] effects of the Ascension.

³ But, **the bomb aspect was correctly given, and needs to be addressed at this time.**

⁴ **This is coming in the form of an ongoing Jihad, which does not want to be acknowledged to the people by your government.**

⁵ **Yet, there is every reason to believe that it is progressing – and that New York is the number one target for any such actions.**

⁶ Let us all hope together that this prophecy shall fail to come to pass.

⁷ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

[David's Note: Remarkably, Michael said all of this in 1998, over three years before 9/11 actually took place. This also ties in with the idea of an EMP in an airborne balloon.]

48. DAVID'S BIRTH CHART MATCHES AUGUST 11TH, 1999 VERY PRECISELY

[Transcription Note, 7/2/98: My exact words were "Holy S__t" when I just looked at the astrological chart for the date I was given, August 17th 1998, 12:00 p.m.

This was the time I randomly chose to run a chart on, based on this reading, which indicates a possible nuclear explosion in NYC on the 16th or 17th of August.

This chart is set up almost exactly the same as the 11:11 eclipse in 1999, the "Ascension chart" that brings dimensional shifts and planetary shifts at the same time.

The biggest shocker of all was that just like the reading said, Saturn was extremely active. In fact, it is the focal point of the whole chart.

Saturn was sitting directly opposite the Ascendant, literally in direct opposition.

The ascendant is at 3 degrees 2 minutes, and Saturn is at 3 degrees 36 minutes. This is extremely close. Anything within five degrees is a conjunction.

This Saturn-Ascendant conjunction is only off by 34 minutes of a degree.

I was then even more surprised to see that Neptune and Uranus were directly opposite Venus and Mars, again making the whole thing very much like the Grand Cross in '99.

What is even more outrageous is that Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Mercury are all in retrograde, meaning that their apparent motion runs backwards.

This creates extremely stressful energy. Mercury Retrograde alone can do significant damage, as many people know.

49. AMAZING CONNECTIONS WITH THE CHART OF AUGUST 17TH

There is just no way I could have consciously known that this horoscope, for this exact day and month in the New York location, would be so perfectly synchronized.

What little astrology I do take part in is usually nothing more than seeing what is happening to me in the present moment, by comparing the current planetary positions to my birth positions.

As a further note, while Saturn is sitting on the Ascendant / Descendant within .6 minutes of a degree, Uranus is sitting on the Midheaven / Nadir within .8 minutes of a degree, forming a very precise square.

It is obviously rare to see such precision. Directly next to Uranus is Neptune, which the reading directly mentioned.

Neptune directly opposes Mars, the planet of war, by less than three degrees, which certainly could be indicative of "war on the collective consciousness of humanity."

Also, Mars sits closely next to Venus, indicating a clash of male/female energy. So these four planets are all pulling on each other within a fairly close range.

Furthermore, Saturn is also pulling on Venus as well. Everything is locked in place.

This is a very stressful arrangement. And unfortunately, the accuracy of this part of the reading makes the rest of the content seem much more plausible.

50. STRONG CONJUNCTIONS INCREASING ENERGY

One last thing is that at the exact second I clicked the mouse to print out the astrology chart, the phone rang simultaneously.

Though the content of the call itself wasn't synchronistic, the timing of the ringing with the creation of the file was literally within a half a second.

Plus, this was the first time the phone rang all morning. That synchronicity only adds to the validity of all this. I now take this whole thing much more seriously.

I honestly didn't expect to see anything in the astrology that they gave in this reading. The Saturn and Neptune conjunctions they mentioned alone go far beyond chance.

The approach of Jupiter they are referring to is referenced in other readings as the "clock" that determines the dimensional energy shifts that come out of the Sun.

The closer these planets get, the more the energy increases — and they will conjoin directly on May 28, 2000.

[David's Note: The next Jupiter-Saturn conjunction was December 26, 2020.]

Strong conjunctions such as the one in August of 1999 also increase the amount of fourth-density energy coming out of the Sun in a sudden burst.]

7/3/98

1. DREAM OF BEING "THE EGG-MAN"

[Dream: There was a cycle I kept going through. It was very hyperdimensional, actually.

Earliest on was something involving a cartoon character. I am cueing on an egg shape for this character.

My mother was involved. I was joyfully flying around inside a bank, with a 200-dollar bill in my hand, and a fifty.]

¹ Nadir.

² Midheaven.

I was so overjoyed to get this money. Even though it didn't seem to be mine, I was practicing the affirmation of already having it, and being happy about it.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: I am reading this precisely as proceeds from the sale of land in Arizona are being wired into my account, allowing me to afford to finish this book.

This is not a coincidence, but one of hundreds of examples of "time loops" where the material from 1998 reflects the present moment as I edit it in this book in 2023.]

My mother had something she was trying to find, even though she might not have known what it was that she had lost.

I was trying to help my mother out, trying to figure out how to help her find these things she was missing. We were looking through kitchen cabinets and stuff.

The atmosphere was definitely SUNY New Paltz, where I attended college.

It seemed that **at one point I might have actually turned into a little egg man, who had to roll to get around.**

[David's Note: This is another hilarious Beatles reference. The song "I Am the Walrus" includes the line, "I am the egg man."]

There was something involving a pizzeria. Someone was working behind the cash register. There was something with drugs that he was trying to hide.

He was trying to roll some drug-oriented item into the seam of my baseball shirt.

My mother was making progress. The money was almost too big, but I was very happy as I flew around with it. One of the items I had was a two-hundred-dollar bill.

We were inside this building. My mother was looking for things she needed from the store, perhaps a spice or something.

I realized that there really wasn't much I could do, even though I wanted to help her. I was in some sort of astral, ghost-like state as I flew around. She couldn't hear me.]

2. YOU WILL TAKE PART IN THESE WONDROUS DISCOVERIES

¹ "Save the light of the Children" week.

² Confirming the release of ancient documents.

³ This dream was meant to illustrate that the only way we can be of service is to investigate the author's claims directly.

⁴ Since we had heard about the opening of a hall of records, there is every reason to believe that this will still occur – and had occurred.

⁵ There are still a number of opportunities for the people of your civilization to take part in these wondrous discoveries.

⁶ But also be aware that this is a matter, like anything else, that is currently undercover....

3. THERE IS MORE GOING ON AROUND THE PYRAMID THAN YOU REALIZE

¹ Followers all need to feel they are on the right track.

² With the profound interest in these matters, it is unfortunate that those in the Atlantean sphere could not have foretold the extreme materialism necessary for the end of this cycle to occur in proper.

³ At that time, there was every reason to believe that they would not be wiped out, that their memory would persist, and that people would be very interested to know about them.

⁴ Though they were psychic time travelers just as we are, there was not such a complete knowledge of how difficult the very fact of their existence would be for the next major root race that came after them.

⁵ Time and time again, we have given you the opportunity to see these things —

⁶ To understand that there is as yet much more occurring in and around the Gizeh area than is being publicly recorded.

⁷ The evidence was already available for all to see, regarding the drilling efforts that were being made inside the Pyramid.

⁸ And now, as the next piece of the puzzle fits into place at exactly the right point in the timeline,

⁹ There is suddenly great doubt, fear and superstition and even absolute ridicule at these notions.

4. MASSIVE WAR ON THE RISE ABOUT UFOS AND ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS

¹ The process will have become impeded if there is not a further insistence in the need to focus on such claims as these.

² But also remember that there are more than one set of records. And thus, all is not lost if the environment surrounding this particular area is not unfurled.

³ **The Congressional records do not indicate that a gunfight is occurring between the believers and the nonbelievers in such matters.**

⁴ **Yet, there is every reason to believe that a massive war is on the rise, and has been on the rise, regarding sensitive issues such as the release of UFO information —**

⁵ **And especially in regards to ancient civilizations.**

[David's Note: This is a likely prophecy of the ongoing attempts at gun confiscation, which are one offshoot (ahem) of this undeclared "massive war [that] is on the rise."

And now, as I unseal this again on February 13th, we've just seen the Deep State elements temporarily run with the "downed UFO" story in the mainstream media.

As of earlier today, White House press secretary Karine Jean-Pierre said the shot-down objects were not of extraterrestrial origin.^{225]}

5. RAISING PUBLIC INTEREST AND AWARENESS IS VITAL

¹ Those who would dare to publish such information have been met with scandal, ridicule and oftentimes death.

² Thus, this is not an overt and obvious war, but rather a war that is fought very quietly. A war of spin control, a war of information.

³ Were the truths to be gathered, there would be an enormous surprise on behalf of the gatherer.

⁴ This surprise is often surmised as being far too great for the average person to handle.

⁵ Though we agree that initially this may come as a shock, we do not agree that the overall effect would be negative.

⁶ Raising the public's interest and awareness in these matters is vital in the days, weeks and months ahead –

⁷ As the prophecies are coming to the fore. And nothing is being done.

[David's Note, 2/12/23: Given that we are now seeing Congressional hearings, I take Michael seriously when he says "days, weeks and months ahead." The time is now.]

6. DON'T GET YOURSELF STUCK IN TRAFFIC!

¹ That is why **we again stress that the tectonic and volcanic disturbances, to us, have already occurred.**

² We are now working just as strongly in putting the pieces together as we are in arranging the events and the circumstances themselves.

³ The circumstances we are arranging involve prophecies such as these, so that those going into this will understand what has happened, and why it has happened –

²²⁵ <https://t.me/disclosetv/10548>

⁴ And have hopefully been able to prepare for it, as such.

[David's Note: This next passage may have been partly inspired by my conscious mind's fear of California sinking into the ocean in 1998, as some Cayce prophecies said.

I have left it in, because elsewhere Michael clearly articulates that our problems stem from riots and other issues we have already witnessed transpiring.]

⁵ There will still be the time for those otherselves on the West Coast to try to escape the early stages of the despair, but it is not by any means a simple prospect.

⁶ If someone is in such a situation, we would suggest the avoidance of the largest highways –

⁷ And the usage of other roads leading directly outside that may not seem to be anywhere near as direct.

⁸ It is these back roads, so to speak, that will provide a safer environment of traffic.

⁹ We can fully expect that the highways themselves will contain massive car pileups from the sheer panic and disorder of the driving,

¹⁰ And that one might find themselves stuck in traffic and unable to go backwards or forwards.

[David's Note: This is always good advice, and we have seen several instances of people getting stuck in gigantic traffic jams, such as in the Southeast gasoline crisis of 2022.]

7. REAL-WORLD SYNCHRONICITY AFTER "MASSIVE CAR PILEUPS"

[David's Note, Again, another very disturbing synchronicity has occurred, where the outside world seemed to validate what the reading said as I transcribe this.

At literally the exact second that I heard the words "massive car pileups" on the tape, someone outside the window squealed his tires.

This is another similar example to the hearing-impaired motorcycle rider from California who crashed directly outside my window recently.

This happened as I was discussing California and related Earth Changes with my friend Eric on the phone.

Ambulances and police came and went, right in my full view. The police officer actually ended up using my house to phone out of.

The officer was very impressed with my helpfulness. I spoke to the deaf and injured man, who could not speak, by typing back and forth on my computer screen with him.]

8. MICHAEL'S CHECKLIST FOR EMERGENCY SUPPLIES IN YOUR CAR

¹ We understand that these are most depressing circumstances.

² We remind you that if this situation might be applicable to you in the future, simply take the time necessary to prepare yourself for what might happen.

³ We strongly encourage the preparedness, again, of materials inside the vehicle – such as an air mattress, pillow and blanket,

⁴ As well as a toiletry kit and some vital supplies for food and nutrition.

⁵ This may prove to be the saving grace when the event actually occurs, as **there will not be the time for such planning in advance once the disturbances begin.**

[David's Note: All the food needs to go in a sealed plastic tub, or you will discover how quickly mice or ants can find their way into your vehicle and ruin it.]

9. PROPHETIC DREAMS OF ARTERY-SHREDDING PROBLEMS

[Dream: I came out of the house and was walking down the stairs. I seemed to be transformed into an object that needed to roll – the Egg-Man.

As I continued rolling, there was something I was going to use to catch fish. This object was somehow related to finding and getting my food, but I lost it.

It flew out of my hand and landed on top of the pond outside. Some people were watching this. I was going to go get it.

As I ran up to the object, a fish went up and ate it. Everyone started laughing. I was very surprised.

I wanted to figure out how to get it back. I went to the side of the pond. I also seemed to think I was a Black man at this point.

As I looked in the water, I saw a **China** teacup lid. It was for some type of jar that was only an inch and a half wide.

I found a long stick of bamboo sitting in the water. I was able to reach out, grab the lid and bring it back in.

When I dusted the lid off, it looked Asian, with this red square pattern on it.

Then as I looked to my left, I realized there was a skeleton in the water.

It looked like the **skeleton of a pirate. It was related to treasure.** It was very decayed.

I seemed to think that this was a person who fell in not too recently.

Then I saw a white tube that looked like a blood artery for the body. It was sitting in the water, right in front of me.

The artery was one tube on the right, which then branched off into two on the left.

Right as I was looking at it, **all these vertical slits appeared on the artery. Something started cutting it – as though an invisible sea creature was cutting it.**

I realized how threatening that water was, even though I could see some fish in it. I vowed to stay away from it after that point.

[David's Note: The Deep State built much of their wealth as the Pirates – through plundering vast amounts of gold out of shipments headed back to Europe.

We see China and pirates mentioned alongside the very graphic image of a blood artery being cut by vertical slits, from some invisible attacker.

This seems to symbolize the internal damage that is being caused by the inoculations.

In the dream it was “as though an invisible sea creature was cutting” the artery.

The “invisible sea creature” is a metaphor of spike proteins and synthetic parasites.]

7/4/98

DREAM OF A GLORIOUS FUTURE

[Dream: This dream was indescribably beautiful. It happened as a result of getting all these articles ready [for web publication.] I also finished reading the book 2150 AD.

This was a repetitive theme. I went through the same stuff several times.

My mother was involved somehow. I was going through a fantastic extraterrestrial area.

It was very luminous, with lush green trees and mountains. It was just utterly and totally fantastic.

I then came back as a regular person, and described what I saw.

I just remember that the dream went on, going back through these cycles for a long time. It was wonderful.]

7/5/98

1. YOU WILL ALL HAVE THIS RELIGIOUS EXPERIENCE

¹ Shaking off the years of physical abuse.

² It is not something that just gets delivered to your doorstep.

³ Email rules. Cosmic Email, that is.

⁴ It is time to send down the drain those outmoded fears from the past.

[David's Note: I literally just got done cleaning my clogged bathroom drains before sitting down and unsealing this, on February 12, 2023, at 7:57 am.

5/23/23: Just today, in the final unsealing, I replaced the stopper in my bathtub.]

⁵ Neither should we view life as a laboratory, through which one must continually [hit] the exact same points at the exact same time.

⁴ It is through diversity of experiences that one might then take up the reins — and discover from whence they came, and to whence they are going.

⁵ Sooner or later, you will all have this religious experience.

2. THE STAR REVOLVING AROUND THE SUN HAS YET TO BE BIRTHED

¹ The pilots cleaned up the mess afterwards.

² There was much feuding, much internal strife and dissociation necessary in the midst of all this.

[David's Note: This may be another of Michael's references to the Chinese Balloon. "The pilots cleaned up the mess. There was much feuding [and] internal strife."

As of February 12th, 2023, we have now heard about two more balloons coming down.]

³ We have been coming with whatever methods are at our disposal.

⁴ And yet, on this issue there are still many problems that we have yet to resolve.

⁴ It is for that reason alone that we indicate that the star that is revolving around the Sun has still yet to be birthed.

⁵ There is still time to change or alter the severity of these prophecies.

⁶ To do so would be to make a fantastic leap in planetary evolution.

[David's Note, 9/14/22: This passage appears just as I am hitting page 555 in the main Michael Prophecies document at the time I am originally reading it, at 7:54 am.

This is a "numerical synchronicity" that further underlines the peaceful message.

The "star yet to be birthed around the Sun" is almost certainly a reference to the Hopi prophecy that the "Blue Star Kachina" will be born after the Solar Flash.

We are being advised that we do still have time to save our planet.]

3. MASS KARMA REQUIRES A TYPE OF DOOM TO TAKE PLACE

¹ There are just not enough people on your sphere who are aware of what is happening, and are aware of their choices regarding such a matter.

² Indeed, vehicles such as this [book] may be used through which to express the current battle plans, as it were.

³ These are also enlightenment plans. And that is an important distinction to make.

⁴ Every time we get closer to the illuminating truth, there are seven more boundaries of doom that must be crossed in the public's mind.

⁵ And then, you must couple that with the fact that **the mass karma of the planet and its inhabitants now requires such doom to take place.**

[David's Transcription Note: At first I questioned this particular sentence, because the forces do not want to indicate inevitability in Earth Change-type matters.

I feel the doom being referred to here is already happening — such as the wildfires, hurricanes, earthquakes, economic failures, volcanoes, high winds and the like.]

4. IN FUTURE MOMENTS, PEOPLE WILL SORELY NEED THIS TO BE TRUE

¹ In the midst of all this, then, we have a serious concern over the circumstances surrounding the viewpoints of those people so soon to experience said changes.

² It is for this reason that the Ascension needs to be stressed.

³ As **even though in the present moment most people might not believe this, in future moments they will sorely need something like this to be true.**

⁴ [This is] in order to provide that ray of hope that then lifts them up off the ground, so to speak.

⁵ The Ascension is like a **star from the sky that plunges down** into the lake of beingness.

⁶ It transforms its essence into an opalescent, luminous, vibrating body.

⁷ This force is entering your sphere at a much faster rate now.

⁸ And the events in August will significantly increase the overall amount as well.

[David's Note: Much has been said about the "Hot August" of 2022. This month most notably included the FBI raid on Trump's Mar-a-Lago home.

The line about the star plunging into the lake is reminiscent of the breathtaking Ascension Lightning dream I shared in Book Two, Volume One.

The idea of an object "plunging down" also invokes the Chinese Balloon, which was making "tactical observations." Michael uses these words in the next sentence.]

5. WE ENCOURAGE YOU TO SEPARATE FROM THE MASS KARMA

¹ That is why **tactical observations** regarding the nature of what is and is not about to happen are crucial at this point.

² Though we understand the tendency for despair when discussing such matters, such despair is often not necessary.

³ A cleansing does need to be engendered, but we encourage the individual to separate itself from the mass karma.

⁴ Find those areas then most productive of benevolent circumstances regarding climate and geographical position —

⁵ And surround about itself many of the basic provisions necessary for life.

6. ANALYSIS OF A SYNCHRONICITY EVENT

¹ The manifestation of the accident that occurred yesterday while David was on the phone discussing these matters required quite some planning,

² On behalf of ourselves and a few other entities in question.

³ We would like to explain this incident and the symbolism, so that David does not allow it to go unrecorded.

⁴ In this incident, then, David was on the telephone discussing these disaster contingency plans for events such as the inundations regarding the West Coast —

⁵ And the possible thermonuclear event in the New York City area, on or around August 17th.

[David's Note, 9/14/22: Three days after August 17th, President Clinton bombed Sudan and Afghanistan, claiming "undisclosed terror threats" as the reason.

The mission was called Operation Infinite Reach.²²⁶]

7. THE CRASH OF THE MOTORCYCLE

¹ While immersed in a discussion on these matters, and on the need to be prepared, David heard a loud noise outside.

² He looked out the window and discovered that a motorcycle rider with a cab on the back of his motorcycle had crashed into a black compact car.

³ And thus, literally right in front of his very eyes, David witnessed a disaster take place,

⁴ Including the advent of the police, the questioning, the advent of the ambulance, several rescue squad cars, et cetera.

⁵ All this was occurring in his window. And yet, he knew that the motorcycle rider was okay, as he did not indicate to anyone that there was a problem.

²²⁶ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Operation_Infinite_Reach

⁶ During the [phone] conversation with the other self known as Eric, the police officer approached the door, and rang the doorbell.

⁷ It was at this time that David learned that he would have to personally assist in this tragedy.

8. THE INABILITY OF CALIFORNIANS TO HEED THE WARNINGS

¹ David allowed his phone to be used, so that disaster contingency plans could be made.

² This is an important point to consider, as on this [symbolic] level it indicates the ability for two-way communication, facilitated through a force such as David's.

³ The real meat of the issue here is that David discovered that the man who had crashed on his motorcycle had come all the way from California, and was on a four-month trip.

⁴ Naturally, then, this [length of time] puts him past the threshold point most commonly quoted for said changes [of California sinking into the ocean in 1998.]

⁵ This man had all provisions necessary for the sustenance of life contained within his trailer.

⁶ And thus, he was a traveler who had all that he needed to survive, wherever he might go.

⁷ David provided him with the opportunity to rest and to communicate, as the man was not only unable to hear, but he was also unable to speak.

⁸ The prearranged synchronicity behind this should be apparent.

⁹ It was meant to indicate the inability of those residents in California to hear the warnings –

¹⁰ And also their inability to communicate with others regarding these contingency plans.

9. THIS HAD DEEP SYMBOLISM AND TOOK EXTENSIVE PRE-PLANNING

¹ Another powerful symbolic event occurred when the police officer wanted to talk to the man directly.

² The quickest way for him to do this was for him to dictate to David, and then have David type the words on his computer, so the man could read them.

³ We did very seriously intend this to be symbolic of the channeling process —

⁴ And ourselves being the officer, or the guiding force necessary to steer through these changes.

⁵ See this, then, as a powerful statement of the circumstances that are necessarily involved, regarding said changes.

⁶ We would not manifest such an accident unless it was karmically necessary for both the motorcycle rider as well as the ladies in the car.

⁷ This event did take a great deal of pre-planning, as it were, regarding the time vortices necessary to align all three parties to make them in perfect sync,

⁸ And to make the required accident [occur] in the exactly appropriate location.

⁹ It was also necessary to have it happen in such a way as to make the man relatively uninjured.

10. THE GREAT WORK GOES ON

¹ We also would like to comment on the fact that David did discuss with the man the prophecies regarding California —

² And [the man] indicated that he was completely oblivious to them.

³ Yet, on the subconscious level, this very desire to drive cross-country for four months was spurned by a magnificent understanding of what is to occur, just beneath the surface.

⁴ And thus, the great work goes on....

[David's Note: Here my conscious mind temporarily interfered, so I cut those words. My conscious mind thought it "sounded right" to talk about California sinking.

Michael has repeatedly made it clear that we have a safe passage through Ascension.]

11. GRAVE CONCERNS IN LIBYA, NEAR TRIPOLI

¹ Near Tripoli, in Libya, there are a series of grave concerns about to take place. We will discuss them here as we go.

[David's Note, 3/8/23: The most provocative news item on the AP website for Tripoli is from January 12, 2023. I'm sure there's "nothing to see here."

TRIPOLI, Libya (AP) — The CIA chief has met with one of Libya's **rival** prime ministers, the government in the country's capital of Tripoli said Thursday.

It was a rare visit by a senior U.S. official to the war-torn country, currently split between two rival administrations.

The Tripoli-based government said CIA Director William Burns and Prime Minister Abdul Hamid Dbeibah discussed **cooperation**, economic and security issues.²²⁷

² Year after year, there are more and more concerns like this cropping up —

³ So it was impossible to get past the conscious mind enough to make these warnings, until recently.

⁴ That is okay, though. We see the future containing the conditions necessary for said warnings to be given in a much greater, more concise format.

⁵ When one can step away from the boundaries encircling the concepts of doom, one may then realize something that is inherently available to all.

⁶ Namely, that situations present themselves as opportunities that may then be learned from —

⁷ Encapsulated and understood as a discrete series of growth steps

⁸ That are all commensurate with an expanded, intelligent understanding of reality.

12. WILD TORNADOES DO NOT AUTOMATICALLY CAUSE DISTRESS

¹ We wish to see that the Beltane festival goes on relatively unimpeded.

² And this demands a focus on those areas related to respect for the environment, respect for otherselves,

³ And concern for the strength and wisdom necessary to navigate through said changes with confidence and optimism.

⁴ We are aware that this seems to be a mammoth task, but we assure thee that the task is amenable to suggestion —

⁵ And can be utilized if the proper ingredients are combined in the necessary fashion.

²²⁷ <https://apnews.com/article/politics-libya-government-middle-east-william-burns-040c95c092ada5ff01a975394c3a47ca>

⁶ Wild tornadoes do not automatically cause wild distress and despair.

⁷ As those elements surrounding said tornadoes are not yet fully understood, they are often looked upon with fear and with great dread.

[David's Note: Another of many obvious references to the Storm. We also have the idea of elements in the sky being "looked upon with great fear and with great dread."

This again seems to refer to the Chinese Balloon Scandal, as well as the alleged UFOs that the media said were shot down – just as we finished Book Two, Volume One.

Beltane is May 1st. This was right as I intensely increased my efforts to finish the book.]

13. "LOVE THY NEIGHBOR" WILL TAKE ON A WHOLE NEW MEANING

¹ Again, we encourage the opportunity to look deep within the Self – and decide what the right moves are, in this or in any other situation.

² The answers are still within you. And we needn't simply decide to give up.

³ Finding those otherselves around us of a cooperative nature and intent will be a necessary part of this process.

⁴ And thus, "Love thy neighbor as thyself" will take on a whole new meaning.

⁵ We do see already that many communities have pulled together in the face of these disasters.

⁶ And to us, this is a very positive indicator of the changes to come.

14. THE EGO MIND WILL BE DAZZLED BY THE NEW ARRANGEMENT

¹ If we had enough balloons, we could give each person the necessary capacity for lift, in order that they may rise their vibrations sufficiently.

[David's Note: Another hilarious time-loop from Michael, revealing that he knew the Chinese Balloon Scandal would have happened before this volume was released.]

² [You rise your vibration] in order to avoid the dullness and slowness of mind characteristic of the average person –

³ Enjoying the choice between service to self and service to others on your sphere.

⁴ There has never been a better time than the present to go through those growth steps, commensurate with an expanded level of awareness and understanding,

⁵ As **this will have immediate future rewards – far too fantastic to be currently imagined.**

⁶ And yet, as you return to these realms, part of you will not only remember them, but will have experienced an unbroken line of presence there.

⁷ It will then be the Ego mind that seeks the cherished reunion of Self with Self –

⁸ And the Ego mind that is dazzled with the apparent newness of the arrangement.

⁹ In actuality, there is little distinction between your future and your present.

¹⁰ The two are now extremely close, as you would term it, in linear time.

15. A REDISCOVERY OF THE LIGHT THAT TRANSFORMS THE BODY

¹ So, remember in all of this that you are beings of Light.

² And thus, the Ascension is not necessary, per se, for said lightness of being to exist.

³ **It is simply an allowing, a rediscovery of such light –**

⁴ **Which then transforms the denser vibrations of the third-density body that you are currently familiar with.**

⁵ **It will [then] be unnecessary to continue using such a vehicle, in what you would term as the future –**

⁶ **For anyone on this planet.**

⁷ It is after this [transformation], therefore, that the cleansing of the third-dimensional Earth will take place, as a result of the changes that are now [occurring.]

⁸ We can assure you that the fourth density sphere now opening will be quite eminently suitable for the needs of all those involved.

⁹ It will require some degree of effort on behalf of its new inhabitants to seek out the telepathic and psychokinetic means

¹⁰ To **mentally rearrange the discordant matter structures**, as we have said.

¹¹ **Those recently Ascended will be greatly surprised by their abilities –**

¹² Once the Christ Consciousness is activated within them in such a matter.

[David's Note: The "discordant matter structures" they are speaking about appear to be a veiled reference to the inoculations, and the damage they may cause.

There will be "some degree of effort" to get ourselves to the point where we can perform healings through "telepathic and psychokinetic means."

In the Pyramid Power experiments in Russia, discussed in Book Three, toxic substances were made completely non-toxic by the energy fields the pyramids harnessed.

Pyramids built over radioactive wells in Chernobyl were able to completely purify the water of all toxins. Severe carcinogens could be rendered non-carcinogenic. Et cetera.

For this same reason, anything like the East Palestine Chemical Spill can be cleaned up telekinetically once we have gone through the First Wave of Ascension.]

16. THE NEEDLES CAN BE TURNED INTO A WARM CUSHION

¹ When the future contains such unspeakable joy, it is necessary for us to continue to remind ourselves how quickly you and all your people can lose sight of this.

²To us, it is necessary and difficult to not simply appear before you — and command that you do the right things.

³Instead, we want you to be aware that through a means such as this [contact,] we are not then violating free will.

⁴Instead, we are taking a cherished opportunity for contact, and transforming it.

⁵[This is] **so that the needles and pins of the upcoming transition**

⁶ Are then turned into a warm, natural cushion of pine needles —

⁷Through which one might then make a bed for rest, rejuvenation and preparation for the **massive awakening that is immediately apparent in the near future.**

[David's Note: In this prophetic passage, Michael name-drops the best-known alleged remedy to reduce the severity of spike protein buildup — namely Pine Needle Tea.]

17. THIS KNOWLEDGE WILL BE RETURNED TEN THOUSANDFOLD

¹ Again, we would remind you that those otherselves around you will often not understand these concepts, or be aware of what to do about them.

² Yet to us, we consider it vital that said awareness is gained. That is why we are, in a sense, a savings and loan distributor.

³ We are trying to save the loss of polarities now occurring on your sphere — by loaning our knowledge.

⁴ We are well aware that this knowledge will be returned to us, ten-thousandfold.

⁵ Thus, [when considering] the sacrifices we may make in getting this information across,

⁶ Including whatever possible damage to the individual speaker's reputation —

⁷ There will always be a light at the end of the tunnel.

[David's Note: Thanks, guys.]

18. DREAM OF A DISASTER SCENARIO

¹ David is correctly ascertaining visions that we are currently putting into his mind, commensurate with the facial image of that man known in your X-Files as Mulder.

² We shall go forward, then, and allow David to dictate this part of the dream, as it indicates our mission, as such.

[Dream: I explored this cave several times, and it was very dark. There was a run-down house inside of it, very much fallen into misuse and ill repair.

It seemed that people would go through and party in there. It was definitely a squalor. It was abandoned and pretty trashed. Mulder from X-Files was around....

The house seemed to have been hit by a disaster.

As we walked through the hallway with all this stuff around, a closet popped open. A kid who was younger than my brother, an adolescent, came out.

I then realized that the kid had his whole life organized inside this cabinet; towels, candles and the like.

This kid also looked like he was scrounging and hungry. We started talking to him. We decided that we would go back outside, and the kid came with us.

He asked us if we had a dress shirt, and I said that I didn't know.

I looked inside my car and discovered that I had a cream-colored flannel shirt, as well as two corduroy shirts.

One of them was pink and was my mother's. The other shirt was blood-red.

I gave the red shirt to the kid. As I did, it turned into a raincoat or windbreaker.

There was a rip on the seam between the hood and the rest of the coat that was almost seven inches long.

He said that it wasn't really a dress shirt, but he was thankful anyway.

Just as I was preparing to give him the other shirt, I woke up. I thought I had woken up, reached out and grabbed the tape recorder to do dictation.

There was a dream voice message that told me that I was actually still asleep. So then I had to wake up again, and officially start the process.]

[David's Note: The blood-red raincoat with a seven-inch seam is a potential dream reference to child sacrifice. However, I rescued him, fed him and brought him out.]

19. CATASTROPHES ARE UNFORTUNATE BUT NECESSARY

¹ In order for meals like this to occur, many people now in competition will have to cooperate.

² In order for many habits to be broken, outside events will provide the external stimulus to seek for a new means of accomplishing one's goals.

³ To a considerable degree, the change is around you. We perceive that for where you are right now, in your learning curve, they are necessary.

⁴ So if you are reading these words before the changes had happened in full earnest, and believe that there are simply not going to be any major Earth Changes,

⁵ You have failed to apprehend the basic essential nature of how the universe really works.

⁶ Catastrophes are an unfortunate and yet necessary part of our repertoire in dealing with people.

[David's Note: Michael repeatedly defines "major earth changes" as having been replaced by the stresses we are seeing now. I do not anticipate huge Earth catastrophes.]

20. THE YEAR 2000 REPRESENTS THE MANIFESTATION OF CHRIST

¹ In this case, then, we see that the moment of Ascension is timed precisely to coincide with the birth of Christ, and vice versa.

² The two events were arranged so that the year 2000 would be the year 2000 in earnest, at the appropriate point. That is what we want you to remember.

³ This is by design, based on the appearance of the manifestation of the Christ into the earth planes.

⁴ From there, we can then see the closing up of the cycle as indicated, and an enactment of the warnings as given.

[David's Note: Michael is again describing how the Christ Consciousness is activating in humanity as a whole, thus fulfilling many different prophecies.

Let's not forget that the Cayce Readings announced an internal pole shift beginning in 2001, and the research of Xiaodong Song confirmed this to have happened.

Therefore, just like Michael said in this passage, the incoming Christ energies were strong enough to cause the earth's core to have a safe, internal pole shift.]

21. A MASSIVE POWER SURGE GOING THROUGH THE MACHINE

¹ Over and over again, we try to emphasize the positive aspects of this cycle – and the necessity to remain clear and pure in understanding.

² Yet many people still do not believe that something like this will happen, and do not think it necessary [to remain clear and pure.] For that, we have only one explanation.

³ The degree of unpreparedness even now, on behalf of most people, for the Ascension is vast.

⁴ As the event is now so close, the energy coming in to bring it to fruition is literally unstoppable.

⁵ All pockets of resistance and of lower vibrations will then experience explosive turmoil,

⁶ For the simple fact that the influxes of energy are far too great to be maintained with any real stability.

[David's Note: This appears to be a veiled reference to geoblemme events that occur at the end of each 25,000-year cycle, where material ejects outward from inside the earth.

Michael indicates that this will occur, but only after we have all Ascended.]

⁷ We then see that the timing of these events with the Ascension occurs for a discrete, quantifiably genuine purpose.

⁸ This purpose is that the energy itself, which is bringing about said transformation, is intolerant of those vibrations that are not excellent, pure and loving.

⁹ Again, it is as though a massive surge of power is going through a machine not yet upgraded to handle the higher load of voltage.

22. MUCH POSITIVE POLARITY IS LOST IN SELF-DEPRECIATION

¹ In order to reconfigure yourself so that you might then be able to accommodate this voltage, it is only necessary to simply look within.

² Go deep for the answers. And pull those answers into the framework of your life.

³ [This is done by] rearranging the way you see Self and Otherself, so that your main focus is on honoring Self and Otherself in an equally creative fashion.

⁴ It is through the means of self-depreciation that much positive polarity is lost.

⁵ It is through losing confidence in oneself that one also loses confidence in otherselves.

⁶ And for many people, their beliefs will manifest the reality that they expect.

⁷ Yet others will realize the need to pull together and reunite as communities, and will do so.

23. THE THOUSAND-PETALED LOTUS LIES WITHIN YOU

¹ As changes continue to take place, many people will begin spontaneously remembering past lives, past incarnations, as the fourth-dimensional energy becomes apparent.

² Much greater abilities than heretofore imagined are directly upon the horizon now.

³ With the magic of an event such as this, we cannot help but to speak with excitement, as the formation of such a sphere is now upon us.

⁴ We do not want to tire David beyond his physical limits, and thus we leave you with this message.

⁵The largest **Diamond**, the greatest **Ruby**, the deepest spiritual metaphor of the thousand petaled lotus, lies within you now.

⁶Go deep within then, and embrace it.

⁷Bring forth those qualities in yourself that you always felt that you had, but never fully acted upon.

⁸Become the Christ.

⁹Become the being of Light who will then serve as a beacon for others.

[David's Note: I believe Michael is honoring the loss of Diamond, a wonderful Black leader, and thanking Dr. Jane Ruby, who was first to publicize the clotting issue.]

24. WHEN WE FINALLY DO ARRIVE, YOU WILL HAVE BEEN PREPARED

¹You who are now reading these messages can take the responsibility to share and spread this Light – as the changes take place.

²Let those otherselves around you know that you are prepared to repair any damage.

³You are prepared to take the necessary steps to help others, and insure harmonious interactions.

⁴The cooperative actions such as these can literally undo a thousand years of karma in one fell swoop, as it were.

[David's Note: This is another reference to people activating their healing abilities after the first wave of Ascension.]

“Let those otherselves around you know that you are prepared to repair any damage [from whatever health issues they may be facing.]”

25. DO NOT HIDE FROM THESE CHANGES

¹Do not be afraid, then, to take up the challenge. Keep your chin up, and your eyes straight ahead.

²Do not run and hide from these changes, but rather face them directly.

³And in so doing, face the Self – and those parts that still resist the full reunification with one's true essence.

⁴ We will be with you, guiding you, loving you and helping you in any way possible as you do this.

⁵ Remember that piece of wisdom.

⁶ For **it will be necessary for you to feel this degree of trust in the near future.**

26. PREPARE THYSELF FOR THE SCINTILLATING MERGER WITH THE LIGHT

¹ When our ships finally do arrive in full earnest,

² We know that you will be prepared – and have been prepared.

³ Go, then.

⁴ Prepare thyself for the scintillating merger with the Light that beckons you.

⁵ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

[David's Note: Every time I read this, I am in tears.]

7/6/98

PROPHETIC DREAM OF BOMB TROUBLE IN AMERICA

[Dream: The scenery involved a series of Subway sandwich bags.

There were many layers of bags. I was trying to push one more bag into the middle of this wad of other bags.

This was somehow associated with making a bomb.

I was talking to this kid who looked scroungy and poor, as if he had grown up with a family of alcoholics.

I was then talking to an older guy. I discovered that this kid was planning on making this bomb and using it against others.

I said, "How is he going to do this if he is still missing the final ingredient?"

The guy said that in America, the restrictions on bombs had been greatly loosened, and it was a lot easier to make them. I was pretty shocked when he said that.

I then found out that the laws that used to stop people from being able to complete this type of bomb had been changed, and it was more lenient.

It was because of this change in the law that this kid could now get the materials.

[David's Note: This is prophetic of the ongoing trouble we are having with Antifa using home-made bombs, such as in their recent attacks on an Atlanta police training center.²²⁸

As I again unseal and finalize this book in late May, we have a whole train car of 60,000 pounds, or 30 tons, of ammonium nitrate that has gone missing.²²⁹]

7/7/98

PROPHETIC DREAM THAT ACCURATELY DESCRIBES A FACIAL NERVE

[Dream: I was being told about something called the "AB-SAL" nerve. It was in the face, I think. Someone had a retinal detachment.

An alternative center was going to sew the retina back on.

[David's Note: Corey Goode went through a retinal detachment surgical operation.

When his surgery began, the pain caused him to have a flood of memories about being in a parallel-life space program. My written memories have many similarities to his.

This may also be a prophecy of the facial nerve paralysis that many are starting to develop after the inoculations, including Justin Bieber, who canceled all his shows.²³⁰]

There was an alternative center that was suggesting some kind of electronic therapy.

He was all bugged out and didn't know whether it was a good idea to get the surgery.

I then said he needed to stimulate the "ab-sal nerve," and this would help to get his sight back.

[Transcription Note: This is a once-in-a-lifetime synchronicity as far as my own readings go. The dream fed me data about a nerve that begins with the letters AB.

²²⁸ <https://www.bizpacreview.com/2023/03/06/anarchy-in-atlanta-as-antifa-sets-huge-new-police-facility-site-ablaze-violently-clash-with-cops-1338069/>

²²⁹ <https://jalopnik.com/tons-of-explosive-fertilizer-stolen-from-train-1850460857>

²³⁰ <https://www.bbc.com/news/entertainment-arts-64808389>

There is only one nerve in the entire index of Gray's Anatomy whose medical name starts with these two letters.

And this nerve is indeed connected to the eye — exactly like my dream indicated!

We quote from pg. 719:

“The sixth or ABDUCENT nerve supplies the External rectus muscle...

The External rectus of one eye and the Internal rectus of the other may therefore be said to receive their nerves from the same nucleus —

A factor of **great importance in connection with the conjugate movements of the eyeball,**

And **one that may explain certain paralytic phenomena of the Recti muscles [around the eye],** which are often associated with lesions in the pons...

The sixth nerve is more frequently involved in fractures of the base of the skull than any other of the cranial nerves.

The result of paralysis of this nerve is internal or convergent squint....”

Notice the reasonable, dreamlike similarity between AB-sal [pronounced “sul” on the tape] and AB-ducent.

Especially interesting is the possibility that there was a pause in the word “ABSAL” making it actually sound more like “AB-A-SUL,” which matches the syllables.

I can see that even though I didn't get it precisely, it was close enough that it didn't matter. This is literally the only nerve in the body that starts with the letters AB.

My dream indicated that this nerve was related to a retinal detachment.

This nerve leads directly to the external/internal rectus, the muscles that move the eye.

3/8/23: This all now seems directly prophetic of Justin Bieber canceling all his shows for Ramsay-Hunt Syndrome, or facial paralysis.²³¹

He can barely even close his eye. And the Gray's Anatomy reference that Michael points us to is talking about facial paralysis around the eye, causing the “lazy eye” effect.]

²³¹ <https://www.rollingstone.com/music/music-news/justin-bieber-officially-cancels-justice-world-tour-dates-1234688554/>

[Dream: In this same dream at the end, Captain Kirk was there. He looked almost the same as he did in Star Trek, in the full costume.

At first we were just hanging out.

Then we were joking about the show that he had.

He was saying "Beam me up," and all this stuff. That was pretty funny.]

[David's Note: Kirk's appearance is an obvious reference to classified space programs.

Some of the side effects people like Justin have experienced are quite dramatic, because they involve the paralysis of the abducent and other related facial nerves.

This dream is indicating that between the med-beds that will be declassified and the abilities we will have after the First Wave, we can heal paralyzed nerves like this.

The astonishing and frequent prophetic accuracy Michael keeps showing us is ultimately intended to build our confidence in the Big Picture he is revealing.

I am greatly awed and humbled by what is happening here. Although all of this terrifies me in many ways, I am very honored to have served as the conduit for this message.

I have nonetheless had a very hard time finishing this book. Much of it is emotional.

I thought about putting self-deprecating statements after each of Michael's most stunning passages, but I decided to get my ego out of the way and leave it alone.

I know for a fact that I didn't write this, and that's good enough for me. The prophecies are so accurate that I have now accepted that Michael and his people will show up.]

SECTION TWELVE: JULY 1998, PART TWO

7/8/98

1. THE MORE ALONE YOU BECOME, THE CLOSER YOU ARE TO GOD

[Dream: Sting was telling us about the song King of Pain. He said he wrote it in part based on this philosopher he was reading at the time.

The philosopher was saying a strong statement about aloneness.

It had something to do with the more alone you became, the closer you were to God.

[David's Note: This is likely prophetic of the lockdowns and my long isolation. Sting refers to the philosopher Nabokov in "Don't Stand So Close To Me."]

Sting said he wrote this song because he thought it was totally ridiculous.

I was laughing at him, and telling him that the philosopher was onto something.

As he continued talking, I realized that his teeth looked just like Mike's, [the admin] at the Fellowship [Center, where I was going on Sundays.] That was when I woke up.]

2. AS WE GET CLOSER TO OUR OFFICIAL PUBLIC DEBUT...

¹ By some strange coincidence, we have never found ourselves in a position to record these truths before.

² By **monkeying around** [with] the basic concepts, we put together a new idea for wonder and enchantment.

³ That idea stresses the aspects of gaining companionship and guidance in these matters.

⁴ It is not solely your responsibility to remain alone, but rather:

⁵ As we get closer and closer to our official, public debut,

⁶ It will become more important to have certain Alliances in your local proximity – that will have a grounding and protective influence.

⁷ In the months to come, there will be many surprises.

⁸ And we want you to be ready.

[David's Note: This is another potential reference to the Chinese Balloon, since it was "grounded" by the Alliance, just like any false-flag UFO-style attack we may see.

What Michael is calling their "official public debut" appears to involve some type of mass sighting, probably coupled with a "Consciousness Event" of some kind.

There may be a type of Consciousness Event before the First Wave of Ascension. I am only speculating here. We should not under-estimate the capabilities of the Logos.

The term "monkeying around" in Line 2 may also be reflective of the Pfizer whistleblower Jordon Walker admitting they were mutating viruses in monkeys.²³²]

3. THE CHEAPEST WAY IS NOT NECESSARILY THE RIGHT WAY

¹ Oxygen needs to be replaced from time to time – when the ideas don't work out.

² Furthermore, the watery eyes of the past will become the **clear, deep blue eyes** of the future trance states of awareness.

[David's Note: Another possible veiled reference to a balloon: "Oxygen needs to be replaced from time to time... clear, deep blue [sk]eyes."

This also again references the Dune series. The people began Ascending into a form where their eyes glowed with a deep-blue color, and they had paranormal abilities.]

³ It's not that I am smarter than you.

⁴ I just represent a point along the continuum of beingness where the knowledge that is available vastly exceeds that available in the current level of focus.

⁵ From this, then, we see that **those operations that would contain the necessary suffering will be inherently successful, given the appropriate instructions.**

[David's Note: Here again, Michael is implying that by allowing the Covid crisis to play out, the Logos was able to save us from catastrophic Earth Changes in 2012.]

⁶ All we ever want for you to be aware is that it is this suffering that leads to knowledge.

⁷ And thus, when questioning the basic avenues of learning on these matters,

²³² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/01/breaking-project-veritas-pfizer-exposed-exploring-mutating-covid-19-virus-via-directed-evolution-continue-profitng-vaccines-video/>

⁸ You discover that **the cheapest way to go about doing this is not necessarily the right way, or the best way.**

[David's Note: The inoculations were offered freely to the public in most areas.]

⁹ But rather, see the parallel line dividing two areas of focus.

¹⁰ Those two areas represent the mind and the body of the seeker in this process.

¹¹ While we are yearning and striving for unity in these matters,

¹² It has yet to be fully forthcoming to the degrees in which the deepest levels of true initiation might then take place.

4. OUR PRESENCE WILL BE MORE TANGIBLE IN THE PHYSICAL

¹ Your recent move towards more exercise is a very good one, in reference to your drum playing, [David.]

² We now insist upon the adaptation of the cruel struggle of daily exercise routines –

³ So that the body is conditioned and initiated at the same relative speed as the mind.

⁴ The two must work in concert.

[David's Note: This is Michael's own sarcastic humor at work. He does not actually see exercise as a "cruel struggle." Loud drum solos also have demon-repelling properties!]

⁵ At this point we are still having some difficulty with the alignments in the body, and the relative ability to bring about said trances.

⁶ Consider the possibility for a moment that what you know about awareness is lonely.

⁷ Consider that **the companionship that we speak of will help to make our presence more tangible for you in the physical sphere.**

⁸ The lights are shining down upon you.

⁹ We want you to know that the need for suffering has been eliminated.

¹⁰ Through fear, you have caused a great many problems for yourself.

[David's Note: Michael and his people can project into human forms for us.]

5. WE ARE PREPARING OUR OFFICIAL COMMENCEMENT OF ADVERTISING

¹ Now that we are preparing our official commencement of advertising,

² We can expect **many great and wonderful changes that will occur, very spontaneously, as a result of this.**

³ Valhalla awaits for those warriors who have tested their muster –

⁴ And who are willing to march headlong into a great battle, without fear of the repercussions.

⁵ Every time you say something, it serves its purpose.

⁶ You are coming closer to true Knighthood – in the eyes of the Creator.

⁷ We couldn't ask for a more appropriate title.

⁸ As we continue forward, we might eventually even regain our former stature as King, prophet, priest and advisor.

⁹ This is obviously a King in a very metaphysical sense of metaphor, but it is there just the same.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: It is very interesting that I am unsealing this content immediately after the loss of Queen Elizabeth.

Michael's line about "regaining former stature" does say it may happen "eventually."

Furthermore, Michael is referring to all of us as we rise through grades of evolution.

We are all going to evolve into beings who would be Kings on any third-density world.]

6. CAYCE'S PAST LIVES INCLUDED SELF-DESTRUCTION

[Voice suddenly gets much lower in pitch.]

¹ GF: Taking time now to reflect upon what we have learned, we see that there are **many opportunities for doom** at every moment.

² You have all the chances that you want to **impede the flow** of progress, to put a stopgap on your transformation, to retard the necessary growth.

³ Though it is not overtly necessary for you to recognize this,

⁴ We do want you to be aware that said **propensity towards self-destruction** has been rooted in many other lives that you are now learning of.

⁵ **Suicide has been attempted and committed.** Deep depressions have ensued. **Drug addictions and gambling** have resulted —

⁶ Heavy financial losses have been sustained. And lack of faith and trust in the universe have been brought about.

[David's Note: These appear to be prophetic statements about the inoculations. "Opportunities for doom," "drug addictions and gambling," "impede the flow."]

7. IT IS YOUR CHOICE TO HARMONIZE WITH THE DEEPEST VOICES

¹ Remember, then, that the full spectrum of all incarnational personalities remain available just underneath the surface, only two steps back from the conscious mind.

² And thus, it is your choice as to whether or not you will harmonize more specifically with those voices that speak of the deepest, purest things.

³ It is good that you are becoming aware of these matters. And we think it necessary that you rely solely on the guidance from within at this point.

⁴ All your reading efforts should primarily be focused on the recapitulation of the knowledge that stands to be gained through this process.

⁵ We have come a long way, and therefore have given you a great deal of material in the process.

⁶ Were you to focus solely on these materials, you would see many things that you have been told before, and have in fact been repeated as a theme throughout these workings.

⁷ Therefore, when you do get the idea to do this, it will be a tremendously positive step.

8. COMING TO THE FORE IS A FORCE NECESSARY FOR CHANGE

¹ A soul seeks awareness when it has reached a point in its evolutionary curriculum that involves a casting away of one's distinctions between self and Otherself.

² At this point, you should have an ongoing meditation regarding the interconnectedness of all beings, and all things.

³ You should see all those around you as individuated fragments of God essence, as well as the environment that surrounds you.

⁴[D: “Is there any information for upcoming probabilities that we can go into now?”]

⁵Yes, there is. **Coming to the fore is a force necessary for change.**

⁶**That force is, in itself, a manifestation of the continual desire on behalf of those otherselves around you to alleviate pain, as it were.**

⁷This is the first great stumbling block on the path to enlightenment, when the suffering is then correlated with the personal actions.

9. THE UNIVERSE IS A GIANT TEST OF HOW LOVING YOU ARE

¹It is far too easy for someone as learned as the reader of these workings to remember that there might be those otherselves around them who still have yet to fully embrace karma.

²To them, it would be **a mystical surprise unsurpassed in history.**

³Once they realize that the whole entire universe consists of a giant learning curriculum,

⁴And that this learning curve is predicated upon the degree of loving actions,

⁵There is then the desire to align with said energy.

10. YOU ARE FAR MORE THAN YOUR HUMAN BODY

¹LC: Furthermore, the Wanderer is an individual who has come with great evolutionary possibilities.

²And in such cases, there are even more memories buried under the surface that have not yet become available.

³So in dealing with people of this type, we think it crucial that they realize that they are far more than their human body —

⁴And that they have the capacity to reinvigorate the channels of information that were originally opened before the time of birth.

⁵These individuals have a much greater propensity for alignment with the conscious energy units that make up the One.

11. MANY MORE WILL EXPERIENCE SUDDEN MOMENTS OF AWARENESS

¹ In the days, weeks and months to come, many more will begin experiencing sudden moments of awareness.

²This may be felt as a sudden dizziness and a pressure in the heart, behind the eyes, in the ears, or in the forehead.

³Sometimes the back of the skull as well, though this is not quite as common.

⁴The meaning here is that they realize that massive energy / information is entering into those centers –

⁵That are indicative of the greatest upwelling points for psychic energy, the comings and goings therein.

⁶Said Wanderers will leave the planet at the Ascension, having completed their missions, and return to their native homeland vibrations.

⁷Thus, when seeing that the mission is almost complete, one can breathe easier at the prospect of a much more utopian level of development –

⁸More accurately harmonized with the universal understandings that are being shared.

⁹But again, we remind the Wanderer that the lessons that can be learned and compressed into the physical life of three-dimensionality are unsurpassed –

¹⁰In their **potential to relieve blockages** –

¹¹To create a greater yearning and striving experience towards higher, more reformed oscillating frequencies of light.

¹¹To begin speaking at once on these matters is to seek to end the self-torture and punishment.

12. NEW YORK CITY AND CALIFORNIA ARE BEING CUT SHORT

¹As these events grow closer, the feeling of mission is then impressed on the mind of the seeker.

²You have lost your receding hairline. And soon, it will become unnecessary for you to try to assert your age as being greater than it is.

³ Part of the initiation process is the revelation of secrets —

⁴ Within a definite continuum of time-space.

⁵ New York City and California are being cut short in the race towards the Ascension.

⁶ Though we have been speaking on these matters, perhaps repetition is necessary — so that greater learning may then take place.

⁷ Changes are now inevitable in their coming, as almost all possibilities for rectification of the imbalances have been exhausted.

⁸ We do then see that once this has happened, there is a whole new attitude that dawns in the public mind of the population.

⁹ They will begin strongly seeking to know why, how and wherefore.

13. WE WILL EXPERIENCE A JOYFUL REUNION

¹ We only seek to provide a beacon of light and a ray of hope, so that these changes will be relaxed and lessened —

² So that we can experience a joyful reunion with these long-suffering aspects of ourselves.

³ We are now coming out of the particular range of focus necessary.

⁴ With the combination of foodstuffs and a bit of breathing and relaxation, possibly a sleep period, we might then continue.

⁵ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

7/9/98

1. DIRECT 9/11 PROPHECY IN JULY 1998

¹ World Trade Center bombing really shook things up.

² The next time one tries something like this, it will become a much larger story —

³ If the details are worked out properly.

⁴ Something about the middle of the operating platform is causing some trouble, though.

⁵ It is this that we are currently watching for an understanding —

⁶ Trying to keep clear the distinctions between a working device, and a practically working device.

⁷ That is where the greatest distinction lies....

[David's Note: This may again tie into the Chinese Balloon, which may have been designed to move an "operating platform" that might "cause [us] some trouble."

If this balloon was indeed an EMP weapon, the damage would be much, much bigger than 9/11 — if it had actually been allowed to transpire.]

2. THE CHRIST IS WITHIN YOU

¹ We would like to speak at this time on these matters of the Christ being within.

² Many religious people see that the Christ is without.

³ Yet, to us, the same conditions that occur in the mind of the Christ can occur throughout the whole body of the Christ as well.

⁴ Since humanity is the body, and consciousness is the mind, there literally is no distinction from one other-self to the next — in terms of Christhood.

⁵ Again, it is only the level of vibration that then reveals to what degree this energy has been allowed into the personality structure.

3. PSYCHOLOGICAL BARRIERS TO PERSONALITY TRANSFORMATION

¹ In times like these, with so much at stake, it is becoming necessary and vital for each identity to align itself as precisely as possible —

² With the same basic tenets, frameworks and ideas that were originally laid down by the Christ, some two thousand years ago.

³ These ideas stem directly from the core of all truths necessary to progress to the fourth density in full earnest.

⁴ When the time comes that you will need these truths to be within you, right in the present moment,

⁵ If they are not there, there will be great despair at the realization that some major part of the process had not yet been completed.

⁶ We are speaking now of those who might think that they are acting on an even keel, but yet still have many psychological barriers that have been erected.

⁷ These barriers often act as stopgaps to effective personality transformation.

⁸ The person, or more appropriately, the entity, seeks to do what is right —

⁹ And yet [the entity] is so tied up in the daily concerns and frustrations that there is an almost constant forgetting of the need to be that “good person.”

¹⁰ Throughout the day, many trivialities can occur.

¹¹ If frustration is the continuing response, then a pattern is redistributed throughout the whole, again and again.

4. LACK OF SLEEP, NUTRITION AND WATER WILL CAUSE TROUBLE

¹ With so many of your people not sleeping adequately, not eating adequately, not believing adequately, there is a great problem.

² The fundamental lack of sleep, lack of good nutrition, lack of enough drinking water, all exacerbate the pre-existing conditions of failure to adopt the higher vibrations.

³ Pushing the physical body complex beyond its limits will only stress the individual, and will not help in the acquisition of fourth-density data into the mind/body/spirit complex.

⁴ Therefore, we take the time to present these matters to those who would then normally not listen to them.

⁵ We are presenting a service that can help immeasurably in reducing the difficulty of achieving said vibrations.

5. YOU WILL QUICKLY BE ABLE TO RELIEVE THE LOSSES

¹ The only thing we want is for the reader to understand that every single moment of time is but another small drop in a very large bucket —

² That we have been creating since time immemorial.

³ These truths must be carried, worked with, brought around, and fully understood on a habitual basis in order to become most fully effective.

⁴ Though there are opportunities to rectify significantly large amounts of karma in small situations occurring over short periods of time, this is not the normal or typical pattern.

⁵ Yet, we very well may say that **in the upcoming times of difficulty and hardship, those who would act in an exemplary manner –**

⁶ Who would demonstrate the Christ principle in faith, in thought and in action –

⁷ Will very quickly be able to relieve the losses that stood to be suffered from the lack of positive polarity on their behalf.

6. WE WANT TO SEE YOU BECOME A BEING OF PURE LOVE

¹ The most that we want for you is to see you become a being of pure love.

² The more that the trend of those around you who do not adopt such beliefs is seen, the greater the desire should be to not act in a similar fashion.

³ With the extreme violence and sex that is now necessary for TV, there is a dullness created every moment –

⁴ By the displays of violence, under the guise of familiarity and humor.

⁵ These things are not to be taken lightly.

⁶ The appropriate response to such violence should never be laughter –

⁷ Even in cinematic situations where that is the apparent desire that is put forth by the producers of said movie.

⁸ Our production then consists of a much smaller series.

⁹ This is a series that is simple, quick, and easy to understand.

¹⁰ And in the deepest moments of despair, this process can be accomplished and understood – with one sudden, defining moment.

¹¹ Take it to heart, then, when we say that you who reads or hears these words will always be able to step away from the Self that has characterized your past.

¹² [You can then] align with the higher portions of yourself that have already freed themselves from such limitations –

¹³ And in fact have rarely, if ever, produced them to begin with.

7. THE TIME TO CHANGE IS NOW, TODAY

¹ Take it upon thyself, then, to realize that every passing moment in the present moment now is becoming more and more crucial —

² For the future acceptance of the fourth-density vibrations.

³ **The time to change is NOW. Today. As you read these words.**

⁴ **It must be done immediately, with great love of service, or else all will be lost.**

⁵ Thankfully, there are a series of opportunities for Ascension —

⁶ But, the prospect of missing the earlier vortices is extremely disturbing, and unnecessary in the midst of all these changes.

⁷ We will be with you as you think about this.

⁸ You need only take a few deep breaths, visualize a robed being of Light, and that is us.

⁹ We have already been there.

¹⁰ And we will be there — as you continue to read these words.

¹¹ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

7/10/98

PROPHECY OF 9/11 AS GODZILLA ATTACKING A CITY

¹ Awaken the female.

[Dream: This was sort of like a walk-through novel. The main character was this shady guy by the name of Mr. No-Man.

Someone had written about this man in the book I was reading. I was reading this book, a thriller, and I was **planning on rewriting it.**

The book itself was about Godzilla attacking [a city].

At the end I found myself in a lake. The sky was red. I was thinking of rewriting the story about Godzilla as I looked up at the blood-red sky.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: We will see that Godzilla is a reference to 9/11, and the potential danger of August 17th, 1998 that Michael already warned me about.

2/13/23: Michael has already established the Godzilla reference as a tie-in to the Chinese Balloon in this volume. The red sky again suggests an aerial attack.]

² Fill the West End with the incidental things that come along as we begin this process.

³ Purify the immediate hardships,

⁴ So that we might then indoctrinate a new system of changes into the planet –

⁵ And into your own physical working sphere, in your future.

7/11/98

1. SCALAR WAVES... THE FRENCH ARE LESS POLITE

¹ But, **a scalar wave potential will always be involved in more duplicitous ways than a vector wave.**

[David's Note: This is probably in reference to additional weapons used for 9/11, most notably the scalar waves described by Dr. Naomi Wolf.

There is a film of one of the support beams from the towers just disappearing into mist as it is falling. Most of the material was "dustified" before it hit the ground.]

² **The French like people to be less polite instead of more polite.**

³ It's their own way of dealing with things.

[David's Note, 2/12/23: Benjamin Fulford said the massive Turkey earthquake was a weaponized attack, ordered by the French Rothschilds and others, in his latest video.

"The French... It's their own way of dealing with things. Less polite."

In his latest article, a video was posted of a HAARP-style aerial phenomena, similar to the Norway Spiral, appearing over Turkey just before the earthquake.²³³

The public is beginning to openly suspect the use of an earthquake weapon in this case.

The Shadow of Ezra channel on Telegram, which is one of the Alliance's main briefing sources, posted another video of the aerial phenomenon before the Turkey earthquake:

²³³ <https://benjaminfulford.net/2023/02/13/end-game-nears-as-khazarian-mafia-pulls-fake-invasion-card/>

This is HAARP in action over Turkey on February 6, 2023, just before the earthquake.

The wave ring of light emitted from the [glowing] frequency [beam pattern in the air] represents the wave motion of an underground earthquake.

These are weather weapons being used on the populace.²³⁴

Turkey was hit immediately after standing up to the Deep State. I am quite confident there will be justice, and Michael is aiding us in that process.]

2. MY FACE AND HANDS WERE GLOWING AS I GRIPPED THE WHEEL

¹ I was driving one summer morn.

² And it very quickly occurred to me that the aura of light that surrounds me was radiating peace and unity to all.

³ **My face and hands were glowing.**

⁴ **As I gripped the steering wheel, I knew that the invaders from space would be defeated —**

⁵ And the journey of Self-transformation would be completed in the nick of time.

[David's Note: This is another very inspiring prophecy of a safe and happy future.

This passage also refers back to the dream I had at the beginning of Book Two, where zombies surrounded my car and then suddenly vanished.

This passage also may reference Diana's murder through scalar energy beams that disabled her driver's ability to control the steering wheel at a high acceleration.

Now, as of February 12, 2023, the Shadow of Ezra channel, a reliable Alliance source, has posted the following:

“All indicators seem like they are flirting with a fake alien invasion.

All countries involved.”²³⁵

²³⁴ <https://t.me/ShadowofEzra/266>

²³⁵ <https://t.me/ShadowofEzra/251>

I read this ominous prophecy at 7:45 am. It's 9:47 am right now as I unseal the passage that says "the invaders from space would be defeated."

Therefore, any attempt to stage a fake alien invasion will be immediately defeated.]

THINGS HAVE ACCELERATED THROUGHOUT THE DAY

All day today, February 12, 2023, the potential "False-Flag Non-Alien Invasion" story has been building up tremendously.

The media is now saying it was an octagon-shaped object, with no visible means of propulsion.

This came out from [disclose.tv](https://www.disclose.tv) as of 2:58 pm today:

NOW - U.S. military shot down an unidentified flying object over Lake Huron moments ago.

A F-16 fighter jet downed the octagon-shaped object over Lake Huron at an altitude of 20,000 feet, the WSJ reports.²³⁶

The Biden Administration was forced to disclose to the public, for now, that they do not think the object is 'actually' extraterrestrial:

JUST IN - Biden admin officials have found themselves issuing private assurances that there is "no evidence that the objects involve extraterrestrial activity."²³⁷

As I describe in *Financial Tyranny*, the "shield" of the Rothschilds has always been in the shape of an octagon. This is apparently why they call their group The Octagon.

This was alluded to in the *Resident Evil* movie series, where the "Umbrella Corporation" represents the Deep State that is running the underground bases.

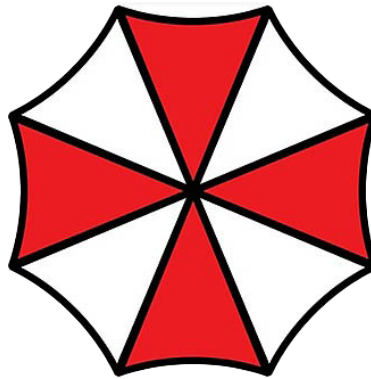
These films are loaded with strange and disturbing aspects of disclosure. They also feature an accurate depiction of an underground base called "The Hive."

In these movies, everything underground is being run by the Umbrella Corporation.

The logo of the Umbrella Corporation is a (red) shield in the shape of an octagon.

²³⁶ <https://www.disclose.tv/id/100047/>

²³⁷ <https://www.disclose.tv/id/100048/>



UMBRELLA

CORPORATION

Remember.... the Deep State has to follow “The Rules.” This means that when they try to deceive us, they need to leave calling-cards like this that reveal who they are.

FURTHER ESCALATIONS ON VALENTINE’S DAY, 2023

I am still working very intensely on this book as of February 14th, 2023.

The pace of news is going so fast that I had to jump back to this point in the book.

Yesterday, I posted a humorous Tweet about the alleged UFO invasion threat.

Once the lab-grown synthetic creature bodies are found inside the downed craft,

A switch is tripped. Or a trip is switched.

At that point, the event will forever be known as:

BOSWELL

Biden’s Roswell

12:13 PM · Feb 13, 2023²³⁸

²³⁸ https://twitter.com/david_wilcock/status/1625196357093847040

The very next day, Josh Boswell came out with an article on [DailyMail.com](https://www.dailymail.com) that precisely delivered on the threat we were warned about by the Alliance.

Boswell's article (ahem) floats out the idea that the Chinese Balloon may have been there to study 'real' UFO activity around US and other military facilities.

The head of the government's UFO office warned of the "potentially ubiquitous presence" of Unidentified Anomalous Phenomena (UAP) flying over US airspace –

Just weeks before a suspected spy balloon and three other suspicious objects were shot down by American jets.

DailyMail.com has obtained a slide deck from a presentation by Dr. Sean Kirkpatrick, director of the Department of Defense's All-domain Anomaly Resolution Office (AARO), given at a conference on January 11.

Kirkpatrick's presentation warned of "threats to the immediate safety of US citizens and Government facilities",

And said that the military are finding unidentified anomalous phenomena "most often in the vicinity of US military facilities and operating areas"

The comments have taken on a new urgency following the takedown by sidewinder missile of four objects that entered US airspace over the past two weeks.

The first has been identified by US officials as a **200-ft Chinese spy balloon the size of a jetliner, carrying surveillance equipment**. It was shot out of the sky off South Carolina on February 4.

The other three UAPs – government speak for what most people call UFOs – were taken down over far northern **Alaska, Canada's Yukon territory** and **Lake Huron**.

These three smaller objects remain officially unidentified, and in a press conference Sunday **US Air Force General Glen VanHerck said the military had not ruled out an extraterrestrial origin** – though intelligence officials say they are highly skeptical of that.

"We're calling them objects, not balloons, for a reason," VanMerck said,

Adding the Air Force is still unsure how the three objects stayed aloft, as their propulsion systems are currently unknown.²³⁹

Michael delivered the Boswell joke all at once, the day before this article arrived. It does appear to have been another genuine prophecy that I heard and Tweeted in advance.

²³⁹ <https://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-11746525/UFO-office-warned-threats-weeks-spy-balloon-shot-down.html>

As the insider Jacob told me, multiple plans are always deployed at once. If a plan fails, such as by being widely exposed, they may drop it and go with another one.

On the same day that the tabloid-style Daily Mail came out with this UFO information, more traditional media outlets were already retracting the idea.²⁴⁰

Tucker Carlson said that if extraterrestrials are indeed visiting Earth, we should introduce them to Kamala Harris —

Since her “Boss is Senile.”²⁴¹

3. WE HAVE BEEN LOCATING OUR “STURDY WIRES”

¹ We have already been locating those “sturdy wires” in the past —

² So that there would never be a conflict of interest between the haves and have-nots.

[David’s Note: Here I must assume that the “sturdy wires” are those people who have, or who can develop, a solid telepathic connection to Higher Intelligence.

This may also be a coded reference to Michael’s clues that the inoculations have a primitive wi-fi system that will be easily defeated by the opening of the sun.

Additionally, a balloon holds its payload with the power of “sturdy wires.”]

² Certainly with you around, [David,] there is a potential to remove the distortions — and **expose the true core potential of what we are now able to do here.**

[David’s Note: Another possible coded balloon reference. An EMP would “expose the true core potential” of the reactive material at the center of the weapon.

None of this means that any EMP will be allowed to go off. Michael is, however, informing us of great threats that he and his people are working to prevent.]

³ The flora and fauna of the higher realms await you.

⁴ The only sacrifice that needs be made is that of one’s time — to continue forward in offering the Self as the ultimate tithe to the process of this work.

²⁴⁰ <https://www.zerohedge.com/political/sudden-narrative-shift-pentagon-admits-mystery-objects-probably-private-craft-not-tied>

²⁴¹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/02/kamala-harris-dated-montel-williams-runs-country-boss-senile-tucker-carlson-introducing-harris-aliens/>

⁵ It is for this reason, and this reason alone, that you should have absolute trust in the process of securing business [through] doing readings.

4. SEEK TO REVEAL THE SANDS OF TIME

¹ The fee manipulates itself into all sorts of strange contortions when we are not looking.

² The necessary balances involve the sustenance of the soul, while fattening the body.

³ It is necessary to involve those otherselves around us into the process of doing said psychic readings.

⁴ A muse on these matters would be the initial suffering that was produced before said business began in earnest.

⁵ And now, we see that with continued application of Self to these situations, there may very well be the chance to bring such thoughtforms to fruition.

⁶ So the message is to go deep within, and seek to reveal the sands of time as they have blown down through the years –

⁷ Seeking to revivify and renew you, and your personality.

5. ADVICE FOR DAVID TO TELL EVERYTHING ABOUT THE PERSONAL

¹ For your own karma, as well as for the edification of the story itself, [David,]

² It is in your best interest to go forward and talk more about these crucial periods in your early drug use in high school and college.

³ You are essentially fixing the work that has been taking us so many years of dreams to accomplish.

⁴ The initial standpoint is that these opportunities may be reflecting a deeper involvement with one's Self than is necessary.

⁵ Yet simultaneously, in the story of Edgar Cayce, there is precious little information about him leading up to the advent of the development itself.

⁶ In your case, we have the ability to create a complete record of exactly what happened and when, in order that the entire catalog of events might then be recorded.

⁷ Therefore, do not be ashamed or frightened by the prospect of really, fully and completely recreating the entire high-school atmosphere on the printed page.

6. COMPLAINING WILL NOT REVEAL THE SHAMBALA WITHIN THE SELF

¹ You are doing quite nicely as it is right now. And we see that you will continue doing a great job.

² Complaining about the precise circumstances that one finds oneself in will never reveal the rigors necessary to activate the higher centers —

³ And discover the Shambala within the self, as it were.

⁴ All too often we have taken the available energies for Self-transformation and squandered them away — in worry, fear of ridicule, fear of standing out, et cetera.

⁵ Now that we know that this moment will have come and gone,

⁶ We can rest easily in the fact that **all moments thereafter contain a newness and a singleness of purpose never before seen.**

7. THE FLOATING RAFT HAS BEEN SET IN MOTION

¹ **The raft that we are floating on** involves little else than routine maintenance —

² Shoring up the sides, and insuring that the structure is sturdy, and that it **remains going in the proper direction.**

³ **Now that you have set this in motion,** we see that the cards are **falling** into place, as it were.

[David's Note: All three of these lines are a coded reference to the balloon:

"The raft that we are floating on. Insuring... that it remains going in the proper direction. Now that you have set this in motion, we see... [it] falling."]

8. ALL THE ACTION STORED WITHIN, READY TO RISE INTO SERVICE

¹ Do not be afraid of the why or wherefore.

² Simply take the steps necessary to make sure that you have **all the available action stored within** you —

³ And are **ready to rise into service.**

[David's Note: Michael continues to have fun with the balloon metaphors. If the balloon was a weapon, it would have "all the available action stored within, ready to rise."]

9. THE QUICKENING ENERGY OF SINGLENES OF PURPOSE

¹ Each opportunity that we have to renew the personality is an opportunity that takes us away from the Self-imposed **black hole** of emotional deadness.

² Instead, we find that the available **Light around the entity is dramatically increased,**

³ And the suitable vibratory matrix/pattern is then assimilated and understood in totality.

⁴ When we take the time to give ourselves the **quickenning energy** of singleness of purpose,

⁵ We then understand that the only available meaning that is then left is that of love, peace, and happiness.

⁶ To take this available energy in without using it is to make the processes more difficult.

[David's Note: This passage contains additional coded references to a nuclear blast. "Black hole... light is dramatically increased... quickenning energy."]

10. THE SINGLE GREATEST MOMENT OF ALL TIME

¹ GF: The energy is made available for the process of Self-transformation. And we find that this process is occurring quite nicely.

² **All that you have seen, all that you have read, all that you have understood, is reaching a summation —**

³ **As you now head towards this single greatest moment of all time —**

⁴ **For a being trapped in the third density.**

⁵ When we look upon the materials that have been provided, the seminars that have been given, the entertainment that has been demonstrated,

⁶ And the mysteries leading to greater unfoldment,

⁷ We see that without said processes, the enlightenment will never fully occur in earnest.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: I had never given any seminars at this point. I was working in hotels and doing temp jobs.]

11. THE VEHICLE IS DRIVING ON A WELL-PAVED ROAD

¹ Therefore, **when we have the opportunity to take a car off the road** and to renew it,

² Accept the taillights, check the undercarriage, make sure that everything is well-lubricated, that there is **plenty of gas** –

³ Then we know that the **vehicle to higher consciousness** is driving on a road that is well-paved.

[David's Note: A balloon uses "plenty of gas" as a "vehicle to higher" altitudes. The US military "took the car off the road."]

⁴ There need not be any worry of whether the decision to enter the fourth-dimensional matrix or not will be taken.

⁵ Indeed, **the last time we spoke on such matters, we were not situated in the same place that we are today.**

⁶ This gives us pause –

⁷ And **reminds us how quickly the process of enlightenment and development can occur with the world of the Internet at your fingertips....**

12. YOU ARE DOING BETTER THAN WE HAD IMAGINED

¹ So do not be afraid of the process. Simply trust in yourself, and understand the design as it unfolds before you.

² You are to become a being of pure love, a being of pure radiance, living each day in the Light, walking with the Creator –

³ Knowing within yourself that all is truly well, and that ye are protected each and every moment, now and forever. Amen.

⁴ We take our leave of the physical body now.

⁵ We are happy to report that **you are doing better than we had imagined, in providing us with the opportunity to fulfill said prophecies in earnest.**

⁶ Thank you again, David, for having the courage and the drive to plumb the depths of the mystery of Self.

⁷ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

7/12/98

1. INDIRECT PROPHECY OF CHEMICAL DISASTER

¹ Just when we had turned up the **blue chemistry**, there were those desires to do something else.

² Nearly all that we have taught you is much simpler than this.

³ Simply **begin going to chem class to prepare for the changes that await.**

[David's Note: The positive, higher-density energies are called "Blue Chemistry" here. Then Michael indicates that the chemical spill is a negative reaction to this change.

The 'blue' Democrat political faction turned their back on this 'chemistry' disaster.

As a result of this chemical spill, people now understand that burning hazardous materials like vinyl chloride can create far more dangerous gases, like phosgene.

Thus, we have all had to "go to chem class." Again, Michael assures us we will have the ability to transform toxic substances after the First Wave of Ascension.]

2. A FRENCH REVOLUTION IN THE YEARS AND MONTHS TO COME

¹ **Who knows there is going to be a French Revolution?**

² **Simply look up to the microphone and see it.**

³ **Drapes they are now using have closed about a prophecy that is unfurling in the years to come.**

⁴ **Years and months, that is.**

[David's Note, 3/24/23: Today's top headline reads, "France Burns as Million Protesters Rage Against Pension Reforms.]"²⁴²

⁵ We were determined to take this planet along to the higher dimensions with as many of its inhabitants as possible.

⁶ Diversions like this will not cease to make us active in bringing about such a thing.

⁷ In the previous diverse makeup [of Atlantis], **there were many souls, many entities, who couldn't use the fire escape —**

²⁴² <https://www.zerohedge.com/geopolitical/france-burns-million-protesters-rage-against-pension-reforms>

8 But rather were consumed in their own foibles, misgivings, and ill repute.

[David's Note: This appears to be talking about the fall of Atlantis. And now Paris is on fire, and Michael mentions the "fire escape."]

⁹ As we are now heading into the next phase in proper,

¹⁰ We might then begin to see that **the energy becomes sufficient to rectify many of these problems.**

[David's Note: As another layer of code, a hot-air balloon uses a "fire escape" of gas. China's balloon was "consumed" when it was shot down by the US military.

The "French Revolution" may also refer to the fact that the elder members of the Rothschild family are now deceased, and their heirs are now working with the Alliance.

One of Fulford's sources revealed this change has occurred in a recent update.

Another group of insiders, the Rothschild family, also made a move by delisting Rothschild & Co.

"This was a compromise to keep what is occurring within The Family a private matter.

There is serious reconstruction taking place, and it is being overseen by the... [positive military] alliance.

It looks like a mutual agreement has been reached," a Mossad source says.]²⁴³

This may very well be the manifestation of the "French Revolution" that Michael is describing here. This is all preventing us from having Atlantis-style earth changes.

3. HAVE GRATITUDE AND OPENNESS FOR THESE EVENTS

¹ David has uncovered a piece of information that has caused him to ask a question.

² That question is as follows:

³ "What would it look like if we were to take all the necessary directions that someone could go, and view them as an entirety, before the cycle itself completes in proper?"

[David's Note: As far I know, I did not ask this specific question. It might be more of a summarization of some things I was thinking about from time to time.]

²⁴³ <https://benjaminfulford.net/2023/02/13/end-game-nears-as-khazarian-mafia-pulls-fake-invasion-card/>

⁴ There is no easy, **blanket** answer to this question.

⁵ We have to have the gratitude and the openness necessary for these events to occur without sufficient loss of polarity as a result.

⁶ Therefore, when the train is first boarding, there may as yet be a great deal of scattering.

⁷ **Though the Ascension vortex itself opens, the completion of the Earth's cycling through the various spheres of activity has not yet occurred....**

4. VARIOUS PROBABILITIES OF WARLIKE ACTIONS

¹ The outside world became cold and indifferent to these changes the more that time went on.

² **Various probability vortexes indicate a spate of different problems —**

³ **Ranging from the urban riots and guerrilla warfare, to the whole-scale destruction of property through conventional weapons, and a larger-scale world war.**

⁴ These are as yet only probabilities.

⁵ And therefore, when one is reading works such as those of Nostradamus, this must be kept at the forefront of consciousness.

⁶ There are other probabilities, equally strong and deserving of attention, where the attitude and focus of the inhabitants centers more squarely on **making the appropriate adjustments within their own countries —**

⁷ As relative to the **damage** that had been and was being caused by the planetary inconveniences that surround this harvest.

5. SOME WILL TAKE THE OPTION OF STAYING IN TIME-SPACE

¹ How we take it is that there are going to be many opportunities for someone else to lie in a bed that is less than crystal clear.

² We have to make an effort to insure that such an action is accomplished within the purest sleeping format imaginable.

³ Therefore, those vibrationally compatible with the fourth-dimensional energies will have the option of simply staying in those time-space dimensions —

⁴ While waiting for the completion of the planetary cycle.

[David's Note: Apparently the reason why this section came in so slow and on such a deep level is that it is referring to dying, and confusion surrounding death.

Hence "lying in a bed that is less than crystal clear." If someone "stayed in time-space dimensions," that means that they are not in a physical body.

Michael also said "there is no easy, blanket answer." A blanket could cover a body.

There are undoubtedly people who have died for various reasons, and will be coming back in fourth-density bodies once the appropriate time has arrived. That's the point.]

⁵ To begin thinking about the reality of this proposition would be wise.

⁶ To us, this is much more than a segment of reality.

⁷ It is often alive, vital, [and] possessing intriguing elements that would be almost invariably immense in sacramental value for those entities whom it involves.

⁸ Thus, **the immediate disclosure of the full design believed to be happening behind said changes would be wise.**

6. THE JUPITER-SATURN CONJUNCTION AND THE SOLAR CYCLE

¹ [D: "In the Law of One, at one point there is a suggestion that this cycle of planetary evolution will be complete within thirty years. [1981+30 = 2011]

² "Yet somewhere else it seems that the question was not answered with an affirmative, but rather with an approximation. What is the reason for this difference?"]

³ Again, David, your perceptions on this issue are not without merit.

⁴ There is every reason to believe that the 2011 period has a vibrational attraction all its own.

⁵ This is due in part to the calendrical turning into the Aquarian Age, as it were.

⁶ The prophecies we have given indicate that there will be a **greater function** — to those studying the workings of the Great Solar Cycle.

⁷ **This function is modulated in part by the ratcheting, hierarchical vibrational system which is rooted in the Jupiter-Saturn conjunctions in proper.**

7. THE MAYAN CALENDAR END-DATE IS NOT THE ACTUAL ENDING POINT

¹ Therefore, when one is asking upon these matters, the necessity to understand them is vital.

² The present date most commonly cited for the ending point of the Mayan Calendar is not meant to represent the actual ending point of the entire Solar Cycle.

³ It is merely a representation of one aspect of the completion phase, more directly rooted in the cyclings of the solar body itself....

⁴ The less we say on these matters, the more of an opportunity there is then gained, as the necessary conditions come about to approach harvest.

⁵ The catalytic action of the entities in question, especially involving Jupiter,

⁶ Produce a cyclical mechanism which **does not indicate that there should be any difficulty** in the passage of these cycles through centuries and eons of time.

⁷ Instead, it is a quite natural cycle.

⁸ The reader is encouraged to continually investigate how it is that this is occurring.

⁹ We have made modifications on the original design, based in part upon David's own realization of the fact that –

¹⁰ The corroborating data in his book, The Ra Material [or the Law of One], lends additional support to the 2011-2012 hypothesis....

8. THINK OF THE YEAR 2020 AS THE ENDING POINT

¹ Thus, the Ascension itself could be seen as occurring in proper on or around those time environs that have been specified.

² The time for the opening of the vortices leading up to this are also of importance.

³ [D: "[Fearing conscious mind overlay:] I apologize to you guys, as my mind tries to grab onto things here.

⁴ "For example, if Chatelain's counting system really is the katun, and the katun and the Jupiter/Saturn conjunction are [nearly] the same, then what are we missing?"]

⁵ Perhaps you should think of the year 2020 as the ending point.

⁶ See that the next sunspot cycle after 2011 will be ending at about this time....

9. THE 20-YEAR MAYAN KATUN / JUPITER-SATURN CYCLE CONNECTION

¹ [“D: So then essentially, Chatelain’s figures might be right.

² “I have always bumped ahead the ending date, because of what I thought was in [Peter Lemesurier’s book on] the Pyramid Timeline, to 2039-2040.]

[David’s Note: Chatelain believed the Mayan Calendar ended in 2039.

Peter Lemesurier cited the date 2039 as being of significance in his re-imagining of the Pyramid Timeline, but I now feel this interpretation was based on a misunderstanding.

I only later discovered that the ‘correct’ date for Ascension in the Pyramid Timeline was actually 2012. I do believe I discussed this in *Awakening in the Dream*.

I also found a crop circle with a stylized image of our solar system that was time-encoded to this same year, 2039. At the time, I found this connection to be very exciting.

Chatelain noticed that the 20-year Mayan katun and a Jupiter-Saturn conjunction are almost the same length – only very slightly off over long periods of time.

Chatelain believed the Mayan katun was an idealized, mathematical form of what we see in practical reality as the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction cycle.

Therefore, the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction actually creates a “lens” for the cycling of the Mayan Calendar. The biggest action doesn’t happen until the planets come together.

They conjoined on December 26th, 2020. This corresponds within days to the rollouts of the first treatments, and is within two months of the hotly-disputed 2020 US election.

To me, this is one of the most staggering prophecies of the entire collection. It means that the Covid campaign somehow prevented an extinction-level event on Earth.]

³ You forget that the last cycle of one is also the first cycle of another.

⁴ The linearity of the graph confuses you, and robs it of its cycling nature in proper.

⁵ Therefore, it is more accurate to say that your interpretation of Chatelain’s work has been in error, though the work itself still stands, as such....

10. THERE IS SOME FLEXIBILITY AND AMBIGUITY

¹ Each ascendingly intelligent or balanced body needs to be aware that the changes will occur in due course.

² Their manifestations will be necessary in order to better understand what is occurring.

³ Thus, there is some ambiguity and flexibility for the Sun, within the timelines given.

⁴ There is no real concept of right and wrong, but it is important that the cycle itself be understood.

⁵ We leave you now to think on this, ruminate on this, and decide how it is that said cycles will fit together.

⁶ We apologize for redoubling our efforts to have to clarify this issue,

⁷ But, we feel it important that you understand that the two camps of data do work together —

⁷ Better than you had supposed.

⁸ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

7/15/98

1. PERPETRATORS ABOUT TO GET SMASHED BY A DEMON

[Dream: At the end, people were singing, “Face the wall, face the wall. Go ahead and face the wall.”

This guy was thinking he was going to maim or murder his brother. His brother was blind, and wouldn't be able to see what he was about to do.

As a result of him having these thoughts, **he was about to get smashed up against the wall by a giant demonic monster, who had Sesame Street characteristics.]**

2. THOSE THINGS THAT HAPPENED BEFORE DO NOT NEED TO REPEAT

¹ A network of Oneness extends back throughout linear time as you understand it.

² That is its essential nature and purpose.

³ We are to act as a watchdog on these matters,

⁴ To make sure that those things that have happened before do not need to be repeated.

[David's Note: Once again, Michael is telling us that the Atlantean catastrophe does not need to repeat itself in our modern era. We now have a safe way out of this.]

⁵To make it common and plain to understand would be to make the thoroughfare intensely dedicated to service.

⁶We need not get bolstered by the intricacy of the scientific detail as given,

⁷For **this will be forthcoming in the very near future, regardless of whether we ourselves do something about it or not.**

3. WE WANT TO FIND THOSE WHO WILL HELP SUPPORT OUR THEORY

¹We have some varying special hours depending on what time you are interested in.

²The most important factor is that the caregivers are taken in by an opportunity to be of service.

³To them, it would seem that the entire atmosphere of loving, giving and sharing has been increased dramatically.

⁴The Mayas knew about their numbers for sure. And they knew about the harmonicity of those numbers.

⁵And yet, they were also well aware of the Jupiter-Saturn cycles as given.

⁶As we continue to unravel the past, we realize that there might well be more than one title involved in this story.

⁷Namely, those who would make such opportunities more feasible, and those who would make such opportunities less feasible.

⁸At this point, we are most interested in finding those who would help to support our theory.

4. 4D ENERGY AND ITS EFFECT ON PEOPLE AND PLANETS

¹The time has come to deliver one's expectations away from the purported moment of all space and time and existence, or the Big Bang,

²And towards a continuum of experience – and a system without the need of linearity now present in your sphere.

³To even conceive of there not being anything existing is in itself a paradox.

⁴ [This idea of “nothing existing”] reflects the unsubtle nature of many of the geniuses upon your plane.

⁵ We do not often realize the degree to which what might appear initially to be sound and solid eventually turns into something much less appropriate, shall we say.

⁶ The next time we have to search on these matters, we will take snapshots with our Insta-Cam and bring them back —

⁷ In order that a deeper layer of validation might then be achieved.

[David’s Note: Another likely reference to the “search” that was conducted by the Chinese Balloon, taking “snapshots... and bring[ing] them back.”

The balloon “appeared initially to be sound and solid” before being shot down.]

5. CONSIDER A MAZE WITH ENDLESS DESTINATIONS

¹ There is every reason to believe that the Solar System cycle, as it is now nearing its departure from the harmonious support of third-density vibrations on Earth,

² Will also reveal the full extent of the 75,000-year cycle of said quantity of years on your plane.

³ The easiest way to look at it is with a visual, conceptual eye.

⁴ The other time we did this, it wasn’t quite as easy to express our point as it is now.

⁵ Therefore, when we say that all one needs to do is to consider a maze with endless destinations,

⁶ We begin to implore that the reader understand that this is, in all actuality,

⁷ A framework that is consistent, ready to use, and relatively easy to understand.

⁸ The difficulties in conception lie not within the facts themselves.

⁹ This is simply another story of the rise and fall of civilization, as it were.

¹⁰ It should not be treated very differently from any other story.

6. MANY WOULD WEAR THEIR OWN VERSION OF CEMENT SHOES

¹ Furthermore, the differences between Mars and Saturn in the upcoming astrological events would be most poignant and easy to see during the Aug. 11, 1999 eclipse that we keep mentioning.

² It is during this period of time, this opposition in question, that many of the great questions will have been, or will be in the process of being answered.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: This was during the Monica Lewinsky scandal, which was the key event that determined whether our planet would survive, according to Michael.]

³ Many people would prefer to remain wearing their own version of cement shoes,

⁴ Unable to talk about those things that would then threaten their now-jeopardized worldview.

⁵ We do not wish to cause any entity jeopardy — and remind you that the energies available for personal transformation demand flexibility.

7. THE AMERICAN COLONIAL ENVIRONMENT WILL DUPLICATE ITSELF

¹ There is a fundamental problem with the number of entities on your plane, or people, who insist upon a lack of change.

² [This pattern has] a continuity and inwaverability, which is **designed for increased maneuverability.**

³ What might not be exactly clear any more, but should be coming into greater and greater focus now,

⁴ Is that **the entire American colonial environment of “Man against the Elements” is very soon to redouble and reduplicate its effects.**

⁵ Thus, when seeing the environment of the future,

⁶ All will need to be pioneers, as it were.

[David's Note: Although this could sound fearful, it also is now prophetic of Trump's plan to build up to ten cities in America with next-generation tech manufacturing.

The Alliance will open up federal lands and allow people to build affordable homes in the most beautiful areas, while rescuing our economy and manufacturing base.

The line about “increased maneuverability” is another likely balloon metaphor.]

8. SOME NEGATIVE TIMELINES ARE IMMEDIATELY FORTHCOMING

¹ The fundamental timetables for said changes occurring in earnest are extremely modest at best.

² At worst, **they are so immediately forthcoming that this very transmission needs to be reported and distributed via Internet —**

³ **Within a definite continuum of immediate future time-space — in order that it remain ahead of the greater difficulties as now seen.**

9. WE DO NOT WANT TO ASSOCIATE WITH DOOM AND GLOOM

¹ We are far from prognosticators of doom.

² We watch the trends, analyze the markets of heating and Storm fronts,

³ And conclude that such and such weather will occur, in such and such a place, at such and such a date.

⁴ **We do not want either to be associated with those who insist that the world is crumbling, dying around them —**

⁵ That it is about to be incinerated into a pall of smoke and dust.

⁶ Rather, we see that the moving of energy upon the physical sphere is contingent upon the Solar cycle as given —

⁷ And the relative readiness of those inhabitants to accommodate said cycle.

[David's Note: When the balloon was 'incinerated,' it released "smoke and dust."]

10. THE MASTER INITIATE PREPARES IN ADVANCE FOR THE VORTEX

¹ Once we begin getting a good look at these things, there seems to be a rather occult significance to the changes now taking place.

² While this is the original reaction, the intermediate reaction is to associate the changes themselves with an inevitable cycle that is naturally occurring.

³ The advanced stage is to realize that the cycle itself is promoting a higher development of consciousness —

⁴ [A change] so profound and unspeakably beautiful that it simply does not accommodate those energies that would not lead to said profundity and beauty.

⁵ **The expert stage, or the Master Initiate, as it were, would be where the entity involves itself directly in taking the necessary time to meditate —**

⁶ **And to prepare in advance for the vortex that is now opening in the very near future.**

⁷ When you meditate on this, simply focus on what you know is going to happen, without forethought, without fear —

⁸ But with trust and understanding that the changes that are now occurring do not need to be argued over, do not need to be questioned.

⁹ They need simply to retain their field strength —

¹⁰ Which is then increased by the inputting of one's own energetic vibrations to the matrix, and the completeness of this thought.

11. ALL ARE TO BE HARVESTED, ONE WAY OR THE OTHER

¹ Were we to ride away without considering such possibilities and making them available,

² We would be doing a great disservice to those who may seek to know the truth —

³ Even if it is not a truth that they were inherently aware of as being able to be known.

⁴ It all clicks into place when we realize the following:

⁵ That a definite continuum of time-space for the third dimension has elapsed.

⁶ And **in the wake of this, ALL are to be harvested, one way or the other.**

⁷ The planet itself will cease to maintain the vibrations necessary for third-density much longer.

12. CONSCIOUSNESS UNITS

¹ We have spoken on these matters before, and would now like to enunciate in greater detail what this actually means.

² The discomfort and crises now visible in many of your people is taking place to a large degree through increasing pressure of the fourth-dimensional energy,

³ Which seeks to renew and to upgrade the holographic template of energy within the body [including the structure and function of your brain tissue.]

⁴ The third-density entity needs to assimilate itself and arrange its perceptions according to the third node point of the octave –

⁵ For every pulsation of consciousness that exists throughout time and space as we know it.

⁶ As we have said before, this consciousness arranges itself to minute, metaphysical units.

⁷ The shades of [these units] appear as electromagnetic, gravitic, weak nuclear and strong nuclear forces,

⁸ And others more cleverly veiled through titles such as “telepathic thought transfer.”

13. ALL UNITS EXPAND AND CONTRACT THROUGH DIMENSIONS

¹ Underneath all this **house of cards** is the crucial cornerstone **holding up** what is for your people now **an extraordinarily delicate framework**.

² It is **the ace in the deck**, as it were.

[David’s Note: A reference to Trump – the “ace in the deck” – and the idea of the Biden presidency as being a House of Cards. This also has balloon metaphors.

The balloon was “holding up an extraordinarily delicate framework” of equipment.]

³ That ace involves the understanding that all units expand and contract, oscillating throughout all frequencies of the dimensional spectrum in the octave.

⁴ Therefore, when we say that the Earth has enjoyed 75,000 years to remain in the third dimension,

⁵ What is more appropriate to say is that with the harmony and position of the Earth relative to the Sun,

⁶ There is a greater ability to focus exclusively upon the positive, in-streaming energies of the third density.

⁷ This is, in effect, causing the energy particles themselves to remain most comfortable in matter, as you would term it.

⁸ The other potentialities are not as easily seen, not as easily worked with, and though we have said it before, often resisted.

⁹ When we can break through this barrier of resistance, we then see that:

¹⁰ As we tell you that you have a different energy body for each chakra, so it is that you exist in each energy body, in some potential form.

14. YOUR AURIC FIELD IS ALSO A CONSCIOUSNESS UNIT

¹ The human body itself, the auric field, is also a giant consciousness unit, as it were –

² Though graphed and mapped differently than that of the spheroid or planetary body.

³ In zero gravity, it would still have the same problems. It is not bound by space, and within certain limits, it is not bound by time – in your present moment, that is.

⁴ In other words, were you able to psychically envision the past, you would still be able to see and focus upon that which did occur in linear time.

⁵ Therefore, in the study of the third dimension, it is essential to realize that there is a linear time. There is a space.

⁶ And yet, those very units whose oscillating frequencies clock out that time, and form its existence, [also] pulsate throughout the octave of frequencies.

⁷ At their highest node points, [they] are completely becoming One with the One Mind of God –

⁸ That exists throughout all linear and nonlinear time and space, and consciousness matrices.

[David's Note, 5/23/23: Very loud crack in the wall from wind as I unseal this again.]

15. VIBRATIONAL ADJUSTMENTS WITHIN THE UNITS

¹ Sometimes we feel that the less we know about these things, the better.

² In actuality, many points are then greatly explained.

³ Consider that the body is vibrating like a tuning fork.

⁴ The designer of the tuning fork cuts the fork to a certain length, in order that the proper sound may be attained.

⁵ In order to rise in frequency, more length needs to be severed.

⁶ Since we are obviously not going to come out and lop off an arm, as it were, (we are speaking very facetiously here,)

⁷ What will happen is that these vibrational adjustments will occur in the conscious energy units themselves.

⁸ The geometric shapes often referred to represent the truest, soundest frequencies, most comfortably aligned in their own respective node points.

⁹ That is not to say that there cannot be a great deal of constructive tension in the actual pushing process from one to the next.

¹⁰ This in turn creates constructive tension within the mind and body of the seeker.

¹¹ And in those areas of the planet exhibiting discordant vibrations, there are difficult environmental, tectonic, developmental and existential crises accordingly.

16. ILLNESSES CORRESPOND WITH INFLEXIBILITY TO GROWTH LESSONS

¹ Therefore, **when we point the ray of hope towards California and New York, hoping that nothing will happen,**

² We need to realize that to a large degree, the events have precipitated as a result of the amount of resistance inherent in the occupants of said space-time environs.

³ Now when we begin to explore the body in a similar light, the pockets of resistance,

⁴ The **parts of the body** that most accurately harmonize with the issues at hand in the personality, **will exhibit cancerous growths or other disease pathologies.**

⁵ As the human mind dwells largely in its emotions, so does the human body have a responsibility to reflect said emotions.

⁶ As one rises in an ascending spiral to the various glandular and/or chakral centers, one can then correlate illnesses or disturbances in the various areas of the body –

⁷ To a certain inflexibility with the growth lessons inherent at that particular point.

⁸ Thus, an easy distinction can be drawn between the mind and body, as it were.

17. THE GLOBAL GRID AND ITS CONNECTION TO CONSCIOUSNESS

¹ This is becoming a hot topic for those doctors who would then take such information and use it to heal their clients – through the power of positive thinking.

² As a melanoma may develop on the back of the hand and indicate an inflexibility in grasping spiritual truth,

³ A lack of desire in wanting to touch other people in such a manner,

⁴ So too can the collective energy body of focused thought, focused consciousness, effect a geophysical environment in the Earthen sphere.

⁵ Said consciousness radiations will then cause a discordant energy to be brought about.

⁶ That energy, in turn, affects the tectonic stresses, and not the other way around.

⁷ The energy grid we are speaking of is the skeleton or the framework, in the metaphysical sense, of the Earth as you know it in the physical.

⁸ This is simply because of the fact that all dimensions exist in potential –

⁹ And that these dimensions exude a similar force, geometrically precise in its outlay,

¹⁰ Which then affects continents, undersea ridges, coastlines, mountain ranges, migratory patterns, weather cells, flood lines, and a host of other geologic processes –

¹¹ While simultaneously affecting human consciousness in a number of ways.

18. A SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF CONSCIOUSNESS

¹ Although it is very intimately spiritual, one could also view this as an impersonal system, a system of physics.

² As one ascends through the higher levels of energy vibrations, there is accordingly a need to remain in purer and purer forms of Love and Light.

³ When said need is not addressed, resistance is formed. Said resistance then impedes the flow of energy through said point.

⁴ Though the energy grid itself exists in beauty in higher dimensions, there is a specific gravity of consciousness that bends, folds or warps the structure in your own space-time.

⁵ Therefore, when a properly trained seer views the grid in earnest, the entity might see certain imbalances, certain clusters or spreads –

⁶ Indicative of the degree of dissolution caused by certain population centers.

19. THOSE WHO STAY IN AN UNCOMFORTABLE AREA...

¹ Many of the great centers of worldwide corporate ventures,

² Which have **seeped their way into the mass global market,**

³ Have centered themselves in New York and in California as a base of operations.

⁴ Similarly, all the employees of said operations exist there in full earnest as well.

⁵ (Understand that this is a very simplified explanation, but it will do for the present.)

⁶ **With the degrade and urban decay in the major cities such as New York City, Los Angeles and San Francisco,**

⁷ There is a direct relationship between said degree of decay and distrust,

⁸ And the relative ability to remain positive and pure on behalf of its inhabitants.

⁹ Let's face it. Those who stay in an uncomfortable area become uncomfortable.

¹⁰ We have stated again and again and again that large urban areas are to be avoided,

¹¹ As there is simply no reason to try to remain absolutely peaceful in a distrustful environment of unrest.

[David's Note: Michael's mention of seepage is another possible prophecy of the East Palestine Chemical Spill. There were no major problems in these cities in 1998.]

20. ENVIRONMENTAL DISTURBANCES ARE INESCAPABLE

¹ It is inevitable that regardless of where such a society exists on the globe,

² (Even if it were in the deepest sections of the Russian mountain ranges in Siberia, isolated from all other parts of society by great tracts of land,)

³ Were there to be a city there exuding said forces upon the energetic grid,

⁴ There would be the associative crimping and/or folding of the structure.

⁵ [This] would then create the environmental disturbances in that particular area in earnest.

⁶ It is inescapable.

⁷ Therefore see that when said grid is pinched, the pressure eventually needs to be released in the physical.

⁸ There are two ways to let go of this clamp in the grid, as it were.

⁹ Either the people change, or the grid will change for you.

21. THE PHYSICS OPERATES MUCH LIKE A COILED SPRING

¹ See this then as a physics, as a sort of spring.

² The consciousness of the people represents potential energy that is introduced, compressing the spring and building up greater and greater levels of tension.

³ Potential energy can only reach a certain threshold point before the storage is so great that it turns to kinetic energy.

⁴ It cannot be stored indefinitely, for it is the nature of a chaotic system such as this to experience chaos.

⁵ The chaotic portion of said system originates from within the individual entities themselves, who then create such a pressure through their misalignment.

⁶ Therefore, those areas most gravely misaligned with the in-streaming positive energies will experience all the problems with the crimping of the grid therein.

⁷ These include the weather disturbances, and eventually tectonic and volcanic disturbances as well.

[David's Note: Michael reveals COVID put us through a massive grief process that relieved enough stress on the Global Grid to delay and offset the Earth Changes.]

22. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PHYSICAL HEALTH AND EARTHQUAKES

¹ So were one to follow the hyperdimensional physics of all this, as it were, one would then see that the Law that must be embraced is of Love.

² It is not sufficient to simply view the geometric architecture of the higher dimensions unless their corresponding degrees of positivity,

³ And their polarity towards Oneness in consciousness, are understood.

⁴ By viewing those parts of the human body where the cells are growing distorted,

⁵ There is an opportunity to see where certain discordant emotions are expressing themselves in the body physical.

⁶ Similarly, when viewing those areas experiencing the greatest seismic, volcanic and environmental changes and disturbances,

⁷ There should then be a corresponding assessment of the relative number and strength of the inhabitants therein.

⁸ By strength, we mean the strength of positive and/or negative polarity that predominates.

23. MACHINATIONS OF CANCER OR DISEASE PATHOLOGY

¹ Again, there are two ways to solve this problem.

² One would be to gradually, lightly decrease the pressure on the spring, through polarization towards loving consciousness.

³ Two would be to simply allow the energy to release itself.

⁴ In the body physical, said energy release would take the form of the death of the body complex –

⁵ As it is understood through the **machinations of said cancer or other relative disease pathology.**

⁶ On the opposite hand, the polarization towards loving consciousness and acceptance of the area metaphorically indicated by the body would be to cause the **gradual dissolving of the tumor.**

⁷ Over time with the confidence and the positivity that is kept up, **[you may achieve] the complete evaporation, as it were, of said cancer or disease pathology in totality.**

⁸ Similarly, when investigating the true Light body of the planet, we see these two forces at work.

[David's Note: Michael is very obviously talking about the inoculations. He repeatedly states that we will be able to heal ourselves of any damage they may have caused.]

24. GRADUAL PROCESS OF ACCEPTANCE OF THE HIGHER SOURCE

¹ Now here is an important distinction.

² If it were only a question of an endless moment of time, a moment that stretches the boundaries of linearity, approaching infinity,

³ There might then well be the opportunity to embrace said balance/imbalance –

⁴ And modify one's behavior accordingly, through the gradual process of acceptance of the higher vibrational source.

⁵ Similarly, there would be the opportunity for said disturbances to occur.

⁶ But, if the growth were at a gradually increasing rate, there would be a gradual decrease on the pressure involved.

⁶ This scenario that we have just described is NOT what is happening.

⁷ In fact, it is entirely inaccurate, and even woefully inaccurate. And let us explain why.

25. DISCORDANT ENERGIES SPREADING LIKE A CANCER

¹ The Solar System cycle occurs in due earnest for a reason.

² That reason is so as not to allow said discordant energies to continue to exist, fructifying their influence,

³ [And] **spreading throughout the body of the whole like a large cancer, as it were.**

⁴ While the opportunities for change have existed, the very deadline that has been imposed requires a more stringent solution.

⁵ Unfortunately, **the Grid has no choice now but to continue expanding, like a balloon being pumped up with air.**

⁶ Wherever there is a pinch on the outside, greater and greater stress is created to relieve said constriction.

[David's Note: Another reference to the Chinese Balloon, COVID, shots, et cetera.]

26. SEE THE GRID AS BEING INFLATED WITH LOVING ENERGY

¹ So a simple analogy would be to see the Grid **as though it were being inflated.**

² [It is being] inflated with loving, cosmic energy that seeks to come in, wash through you, revivifying you through its entire influence.

³ It is then in your best interest to accept said loving energy, begin living it, thinking it and acting it, each and every day.

⁴ And by all means, make the arrangements necessary for said geographical relocation if your dreams, your gut feelings and emotions are telling you to do so.

⁵ We will guide you in this process, and remind you that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine.

⁶ This information is given and is designed not to scare you,

⁷ But to make you aware of the realities of the physics involved in said **culminations** of the Light/Love energy now extending throughout your known physical universe.

⁸ We take our leave of you, then, and thank you for sharing this time in your consciousness to spiritually harmonize with our own.

⁹ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

SECTION THIRTEEN: JULY 1998, PART THREE

7/20/98

1. COMDEX LAS VEGAS

¹ Comdex, Las Vegas.

[Transcription Note, 1998: Just before transcribing this, I read a Dave Barry article where he went to a Microsoft convention at Comdex in Las Vegas.]

[David's Note: Michael clearly used a Microsoft convention to indicate Bill Gates, and the idea of turning people into "Com Decks" – communication decks for wi-fi access.

This section is also where I will begin the second half of this book if we put it in print.]

2. SEE IT ALL AS GOD'S INFINITE DESIGN OF CREATION

¹ Like a think tank rolling along on its newly prescribed set of tracks,

² We had a discrete unity that was never before there that we were now seeing.

[David's Note: If the balloon was a weapon, it could be analogized with a "tank rolling along on its newly prescribed set of tracks" in the sky.

Also, Covid likely came out of "think tanks" run by people like Bill Gates.]

³ The man tested the waters of this unity, and discovered that they were cool and clear.

[David's Note: The balloon was shot down into the "cool and clear... waters."]

⁴ And the love that he put into such a work was rewarded in due course –

⁵ By the fulfilling thoughts and loving vibrations of others.

⁶ Don't be disgruntled from the few obstacles set in the way of this reunion with your True Self.

⁷ Rather, see it all as God's infinite design of creation unfolding before you –

⁸ And placing a higher importance on those things which lie ahead, while simultaneously addressing the present concerns.

⁹ I was walking up — and noticed that the only time I ever looked off to the side was when I lacked the consistency in my faith to persevere and progress forward.

¹⁰ Yet, for the others, it must have been funny to watch, as I appeared to lose confidence in their eyes.

3. ONCE WE GET THE EMERGENCY ROOM OUT OF THE WAY...

¹ The closer we get to gaining our confidence, the easier it will be to bring all of our efforts back to us — so that they may double and redouble our joy in due course.

² As filled with the Holy Spirit as we are, there can always be more efforts made to rise higher and higher — to greater and more refined forms of Divine Bliss.

³ Once we get the emergency room out of the way, there is a new dawning of enlightenment and balance that betokens a different way to go about these things.

⁴ [It is] a way that embraces humility and spiritual knowingness, such that the separation characteristic of past workings is no longer present.

⁵ Since I make many travels, there is a reason for the day-by-day saint.

⁶ Those individuals who [practice] this process are becoming better and better able to handle the crises and problems that awaited through the typical day's journey —

⁷ In the quest to supply the self with those basic items necessary for willing sacrifice to God, of the self, for the self.

⁸ The thought bubble will change in about three minutes —

⁹ When we see that the airport runway is being maintained through a very discrete series of steps in the very near future.

[David's Note: 'Bubble' and 'airport' could be another balloon reference. "The bubble will [hit the ground] in about three minutes. The airport runway is being maintained."

This also is about Stavatti. Runway upgrades have now taken place at the airport where our base is located.]

4. SHORE UP THE BOUNDARIES WITH CONFIDENCE

¹ The disdain with the workings and practices of the past had led to a sense of defeatism for the future.

² What we want to do is to defy those feelings —

³ And instead shore up the boundaries, with our confidence that we will progress forward, doing what needs to be done and living in Love every day.

⁴ When we don't abide by these basic considerations, we feel that there is a nuisance forming —

⁵ A sense of longingness that is rooted in the past, and carries through to our daily environment.

⁶ The scales then tip in favor of the outmoded emotions of fear, anxiety and worry.

⁷ It sounds like "Hello! How are you? Nice to see you again,"

⁸ When the person realizes the inherent guidance and protection necessarily coming from the other side of the Self, as it were.

⁷ Swarming about the masses are those souls who do not trust, do not have faith in the process, do not believe that such things could ever be possible.

⁸ In the cauldron of fire, in the brisket of their own self-temptation, they fail to see the inherent goodness and purity of the All —

⁹ And its manifest desire to aid and assist, should it be called upon.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Just yesterday, before unsealing this, I went to the grocery store. The meat tender was showing me a huge side of brisket that was for sale.

He was talking about how a rich woman was actually feeding this relatively expensive meat to her dog. "In the brisket of their own self-temptation..." Another time loop.]

5. DO NOT ALLOW SETBACKS TO ERODE YOUR FAITH AND TRUST

¹ Therefore, David, keep your chin up — and do not allow a few minor setbacks to erode your faith and trust in this process.

² When one decides to offer one's life to the throne of the Holy Master,

³ There will always be some sacrifices, some initial strife that is necessary as the responsibility is delegated.

⁴ For these too shall pass. And shall do so very quickly.

⁵ We would like to reveal to you that there is no previous slave that has gone backward, once forward motion is realized.

⁶ Similarly, no Jehovah's Witness goes back to being mainstream Christian once their faith takes hold.

⁷ In our case, we have a vital essence of searching that calls us forward in this mission.

⁸ It is our responsibility to see to it that all the glasses of water are filled accordingly, and given to those people who really need them,

⁹ And who can benefit from the quenching of the thirst that they provide....

[David's Note, 9/17/22: As I unseal this, I am knowingly delaying getting a glass of water that I desperately need. This real-time thought-monitoring happens often.]

6. THE NIGHT THE LIGHTS WENT OUT IS SOON IN COMING

¹ At this time, we would like to shift the topic of conversation, and say that **in Georgia, the night the lights went out is soon in coming.**

² What we mean by this is that:

³ The hurricane and drought season is again getting wound up —

⁴ And ready to go full tilt.

⁵ Do not be afraid of these possibilities, but understand that they are on the drawing board, as it were, and must be dealt with as they unfold.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Atlanta, GA is one of the main Deep State media centers. The "hurricane season" is another reference to "The Storm."

This time-looped passage suggests that there will be blackouts as the final rounds of anticipated arrests take place. This will be "the night the lights went out."

After writing the above, CNN completely shut down its Atlanta headquarters. There are multiple indications of both sides reading these books long before the public has.

2/14/23: This may also be another reference to a potential EMP strike that could be delivered by a balloon weapon. I don't believe any of these strategies will work.

3/8/23: This now appears to refer to Antifa's strikes on the police training center.]

7. STRIDE FORWARD WITH THE INNATE WISDOM OF THE ANCIENTS

¹ We will guide you through all of this pain and suffering.

² We know that there has never been such a time to grow through suffering as there is in the present.

³ Therefore, stride forward with the innate wisdom of the Ancients –

⁴ Necessary to propel you to realms of beingness never before imagined.

⁵ Know, then, that we are there with you in the midst of this process.

⁶ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

7/21/98

1. DREAM OF DEFEATING THE MECHA-GODZILLAS

[Dream: I saw a whole bridge that had been built out of Legos.

Several series of Godzillas were forming and marching down the bridge. They were obviously forming an attack.

There were angelic guys there, represented by the Mormons.

[D: “The other day, I saw two Mormon missionaries there at the Fellowship.

I was determined that within a select higher-dimensional criteria, they did have something very important to say.

I felt that there would be some benefit to harmonizing with these guys, so I started to let them know a little bit about myself.

D: Image of a little yellow piece of paper that said, “Pass NOW!”]

[David’s Note: Michael is not insulting the Mormons here – just the opposite.

I have always been advised to avoid joining any groups or religions.]

2. I COULD FIGHT THEM DIRECTLY ON THEIR OWN TERMS

The Godzillas were heading down towards one area. I realized that with the body I took on to play the game, I looked as big as Godzilla as well.

Once I took on this body, I could march out to the bridge and keep anything bad from happening. I was able to drive off the Godzillas.

I turned back around and went down the stairs. These humans were floating there, and were definitely painted as some sort of angelic hierarchy.

I then went into a whole room full of people. The word got spread around to me.

Suddenly everyone wanted to know who I was, and was very excited about it.

When I told them, as the old saying goes, they just about fell off of their chairs....

The bridge with the Godzillas really felt like quite the war zone.

I almost couldn't even believe that I was going to step into the middle of it. These Godzillas were all mechanical-looking, with red eyes.

Yet, when I stepped into the field, I was pleasantly surprised to realize that I was as tall as they were — and apparently had similar abilities for good.

At the bridge with the various Godzillas, I forget exactly what I did, but I was able to hold some of them off.

[David's Note: Pete Peterson did design robotic raptors just like this dream is describing, although Chris Beskar says they never actually went into production.

That He Knows Of....

This dream may have been a memory of military work I apparently did in the parallel life discussed in Book One, where you remotely control a robot in combat.]

3. THE MAP OF A NEW, POST-POLE-SHIFT AMERICA

Then, Richard Hoagland [the author of *Monuments of Mars*] was there. He was showing me this map of the United States, centered around California.

The map had writing on it, but the land looked as though it was real.

There was flowing water, blue oceans, green land, but it was alive. It wasn't just a static piece of paper at all.

I was pretty surprised, because there was a deep channel of ocean water that went more than a third of the way across America — in a big diagonal line.

The ocean channel went up to at least the halfway point, at about a 45-degree angle.

Its approximate width was that of Arizona perhaps, top to bottom.

The channel of water cut clear across from the bottom of California up to the Rocky Mountains, to Colorado, around there.

It wasn't really wide, but it was all filled with ocean — a huge new channel.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: Right here, Michael manages to cram together the last three places I have lived — Los Angeles, Sedona, and Boulder.

The "channel" points to where I am now. This is all talking about soul development. I do not believe we will see this ocean 'channel' form before we all graduate into 4D.]

4. THE BRIDGE HAD CRUMBLED

All the concern was over this tiny little piece of land that apparently had been a bridge across this vast channel of water.

This one absolutely flimsy little bridge was supposedly holding California together, but you couldn't even see it when it was there.

The bridge had just crumbled and washed down this giant river that was there now.

It was a very, very vivid vision.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: I used to be very in love with living in California most of the time, and wouldn't have dreamed of leaving. Covid changed all of that forever.

2/19/23: As I unseal this again, we just found out that the "atmospheric river" completely healed the multi-year, devastating drought conditions in California — ²⁴⁴

At least until they open and drain all the reservoirs again, as appears to have happened many times before in order to keep this 'useful' money-making crisis alive.

The bridge crumbling into a river is also evocative of the Palestine chemical disaster.

The crumbling of an "absolutely flimsy little bridge holding California together" is also indirectly prophetic of the defeat of the Nordstream pipeline holding Europe together.

3/8/23: Now as I edit this part of the book, the San Bernardino Mountains have had an unprecedented and catastrophic amount of snowfall.]

²⁴⁴ <https://www.zerohedge.com/weather/nature-heals-itself-lake-ovillos-epic-rise-after-conveyor-belt-atmospheric-rivers>

5. DOING SOMETHING AT THE LAST MINUTE TO SAVE HUMANITY

The part with the bridge and the Godzillas was scary too. I couldn't believe that I was willing to take on that body and confront my fears.

I was able to do something by that bridge at the last minute to get people out of there.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: This dream is clearly prophetic of where I live now, and this amazing channel that has opened up into the "ocean" of consciousness.

5/23/23: This also seems to refer to Vajrakillaya, who is the "Tibetan Godzilla" – the Destroyer of Evil. This character appears on many Tibetan wall hangings.

The Tibetan character is likely derived from the Hindu legend of Shiva the Destroyer, who the Vedas say is a form that ordinary people can take on for self-defense.]

7/23/98

1. WE SHOULD HAVE NEVER TAKEN SO MUCH TIME IN WORRYING

¹ Homework front.

² Nobody else knows who is in there.

³ And it would be a shame if they did, as it would make things too easy at the outset.

[David's Note: This apparently indicates that as we do our 'homework,' our potential is far greater than we realize – at least until the First Wave of Ascension.]

⁴ Things have changed now.

⁵ We won't have to better ourselves through sacrifice any longer.

⁶ Through dreams, we instill templates and visions for a new reality.

⁷ The formation of new ideas takes patience.

⁸ When we do get the appropriate notions, we then know that we should have never taken so much time in worrying in the past.

2. THE FLIES WHO HAVE INFECTED US ARE NOW LEAVING

¹ All creatures large and small have to contain a reality that epitomizes and diagrammatizes the essential paradigms of sorrow and suffering.

² Food might not be gained for days at a time. Hardships have to be overcome. Wars have to be fought and won. Et cetera.

³ The clone of all these matters is the Self who feels that it has no home in the physical plane –

⁴ That all those elements surrounding it are entirely environmental, and have very little to do with anything personal.

⁵ The flies that have swarmed around us and **infected us in the past** are all leaving.

[David's Note, 2/13/23: Another time-loop to the present. A fly has been stuck in the ceiling and the noise was almost intolerable – until the refrigerator started.

'Flies' are also being used here as a metaphor of those who infected others. This also seems to refer to Fauci's cruel animal experiments that became widely known.

3/8/23: Fauci was just publicly exposed as the financier of the Covid project today.

 **BREAKING: Former CDC Director Robert Redfield reveals the COVID-19 virus was likely created by gain of function research funded by Dr. Fauci and the NIAID.**²⁴⁵

Michael therefore knew Fauci would be facing justice right as this book comes out. "The flies that have infected us in the past are all leaving."]

⁶ The templates of information in the grids of Living Light are now infusing our being on a much higher-level basis.

⁷ You don't need to worry about the outcomes. Simply know that they do exist.

7/24/98

1. BE AWARE OF THE NEED FOR SIMPLIFICATION

¹ Buddhist themes and mature adult themes are not immediately discernible to the non-initiate.

²⁴⁵ <https://t.me/dailyrealtimenews/18596>

² Therefore, when you have to speak on these matters, be aware of the need for simplification —

³ Even with those whom you think could handle a lack of such simplification.

⁴ Absolutely, the activity generated on this planet comprises of something that is more fundamental in its truth than most of your people could ever realize.

⁵ That fundamental truth is of the multi-dimensional reality, and the ways in which it descends into the physical reality.

2. GREAT MIRACLES ARE NORMAL IN THE HIGHER DIMENSIONS

¹ As long as we continue to take sides on these matters, refusing to acknowledge the existence of the higher dimensions,

² We feel that there are still many barriers to accepting what is truth — and embracing it as such.

³ This is unfortunate, as the truth is, was, and will always be. And that cannot be changed.

⁴ Others might wonder in awe at what are apparently great miracles.

⁵ [However,] to those who have studied and understood the higher dimensions and their workings therein, there is a need to realize that this is, as you might say, “normal.”

3. PROPHECY OF AUSTRALIAN CENTRAL BANK GOLD SCANDAL

¹ It never ceases to amaze us how limited in scope the imaginations of so many of your people can be, despite the movies that have hinted them towards the right directions,

² And despite the great preponderance of metaphysical knowledge on the planet that also leads towards such conclusions.

³ It is as though there were many **people all clamoring for one tidbit of** truth,

⁴ In the midst of a gigantic room piled high with the **gold.**

⁵ Treasures of true knowledge, as it is now understood, have always been, and will always be.

[David's Note, 3/8/23: This is yet another time-loop. The Australian Central Bank was just caught 'doping' billions in gold they sent to China with cheaper metals.²⁴⁶

Michael mentions gold, people clamoring for tidbits of it, and "true treasures."]

7/25/98

1. TRIP TO MARS!

¹ Ten-foot pyramid.

² **Betelgeuse.**

³ **Trip to Mars....**

[David's Note: Soon enough, we may start visiting the 'local' ruins in our solar system.]

⁴ He tells her that he is slipping away. Slipping into the realms of nothingness.

⁵ To her, it is nothing more than a threat to the perceived regularity and consistency of life.

⁶ To him, it is the most fantastic moment of his entire existence.

⁷ In order to rectify these two viewpoints, it will be necessary for him to realize that the gradient of adversity, though lowered sufficiently, still extends through the present.

⁸ With such a challenge before us, we need to be absolutely clear in our understandings that there are still many opportunities for doom at every moment.

⁹ Therefore, it is essentially urgent and vital that the positive attitude be maintained.

2. RECEIVE THE BLESSINGS OF THE ONE

¹ [D: "I can tell from what you are putting into my mind that last night, when I was designing my website, got really angry and started screaming and swearing,

² That obviously this [morning's] dream wasn't as positive as it could have been.

³ This is because I am letting this get to my head, and worked too many hours yesterday. Is this correct?"]

²⁴⁶ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/perth-mint-sold-billions-doped-gold-china-tried-cover-it-report>

⁴ Essentially correct. What we want to do for you is to have you receive the blessings of the One, to live in the glory, purity and light of the One Infinite Creator.

⁵ You cannot do this simply by foretelling future events. **We have to actively engage ourselves in preparation of body, mind and spirit for said changes.**

⁶ As you are already aware, we have indicated that a constant state of meditation is necessary to promote said changes within the Self.

⁷ We do not want to upset the apple cart, as it were, and cause you to forget your own lines – through your anger.

⁸ We also want you to be aware that, like you just said, it is not necessary for you to slaughter yourself – with the nose to the grindstone.

7/25/98

1. DO NOT BE AFRAID OF THE CHANGES THAT AWAIT

¹ Every time we think we know that we seek fortune, we realize that the ultimate truth is that of service.

² To find and seek for such service will then naturally produce said fortune as time progresses.

³ This is due to the natural workings of the universe, as we now understand it.

⁴ It is often mentioned that we have to suit his needs.

⁵ What is more accurate to say is that we have an opportunity to have him grow, learn and accept the propositions that we have set forth in these and other similar writings.

⁶ To not be alone, not be isolated from one's peers, but rather to be active in glorious service, is truly a tremendous thing to behold.

⁷ The more that time progresses, the more that we see the opportunity for this service to continue growing.

⁸ Therefore, **do not be afraid of the changes that await.**

2. DISTORTIONS BETWEEN SELF AND OTHER ARE ILLUSIONS

¹ It is a matter of great celebration and great yearning on our behalf that you have finally arrived now,

³ At this moment of all space and time,

⁴ Where we can take our own wisdom and make it commensurate with your own wisdom.

⁵ The real truth here is that these distortions between self and otherself, between David and the force in these readings, is an illusion.

⁶ We are that we are. And together, we are in a state of continual becoming.

⁷ We are the readings.

⁸ And that 'we' involves the entity David, and the entities doing this work.

⁹ [We hear the] spiraling cries, hidden from distortions unseen – their machinations extending over and throughout all time and space.

¹⁰ There is every reason to believe that **the new opportunities will possess an inherent cohesiveness never before seen in the workings of this entity in this lifetime.**

¹¹ The past is being, and continues to be cleared.

3. SNOW FORMING THE SMOOTH BLANKETS OF THE NEW EARTH

¹ All those things that have held sway over us are gently falling away, like so many flakes of snow –

² Raining down from the ethers, and forming the smooth blankets of the New Earth –

³ As it encircles the Sun in its glorious period of revolution.

[David's Note: It is snowing outside as I unseal this. Michael also reminds me of the holographic flowers that fell in the Fatima visitations of 1917.]

⁴ A revolution is also occurring within the people. A decision to move away from fear, and towards trust.

⁵ A decision to understand themselves, and their relation to the whole, to the Creator.

⁶ But **five fragments a month** stop us from being concerned about the why or wherefore.

⁷ We keep reminding ourselves that the vibrational distortions [of the self] are **running away** from accepting the truth of the matter.

[David's Note: We again have prophetic East Palestine metaphors in this passage.

A whitish powder was seen falling after the event. "Like so many flakes of snow."

"Five fragments a month" may refer to the trains that are crashing, 'fragmenting' and having "vibrational distortions" that are causing them to "run away" at this time.

We are again urged not to fear these changes, which Michael knows all about:

"A revolution is also occurring within the people... to move away from fear [of events like these train crashes], and towards trust [in the Divine Plan.]"

4. LOVE AND RESPECT FOR THE GLORY OF THE ONE GOD

¹ These personality problems have caused us great consternation in the past,

² As they continue to lead us into realms of thought and knowingness, the likes of which [have] never before [been] seen.

³ We find that the process of awakening to one's own true Selfhood is inherently vital, inherently valid when approached with a selfless nature —

⁴ With the love and respect for the Glory of the One God, as it extends down and through the physical sphere.

⁵ There need not be distortions.

⁶ There need not be tears cried.

⁷ There needs only be understood that change is upon us.

⁸ And changes are occurring all around us.

5. AS WE STEP INTO THE FUTURE, WE BECOME THE PATH

¹ As we prepare to step into the realms of the future, we look not to the sides, but rather straight ahead —

² Keeping our eye, our mind and body focused on the glorious rejuvenation with the Source of all beingness that awaits us.

³ The **pathways of darkness** — the shadows, the complications that have made life so difficult — are then **cast** asunder.

4 [They are] thrown into the wind, that they might be borne up on the next gale,

5 Winding and weaving their way through the atmosphere,

⁶ Leaving their disturbance to be resupplied with loving energy by the healing, corrective forces of nature.

[David's Note: More prophetic metaphors of the Chinese Balloon, as well as the toxic particles "of darkness" that were 'cast' from the East Palestine disaster (Line 3).]

⁷ We do not simply talk. We act. We do not simply walk a path. We become the path.

⁸ The path exudes from us, around us, encompassing us and overtaking our physical thoughts, transcending the body and the Ego mind —

⁹ Becoming a newer, more complete source of beingness with every passing day.

6. THE EXPANSION INTO THESE REALMS PRODUCES UNSPEAKABLE JOY

¹ Share with us in these realms of Light:

- In the fantastic glory of the fourth dimension that is now surrounding you,
- The fifth dimension that is now becoming your wisdom,
- The sixth dimension that is now becoming your compassion,
- And the seventh that is becoming your true Ascension —
- To the highest, most glorious observance of the compact unity of the One,
- Which also extends throughout all of space and time, as you now understand it.

² The expansion into these realms will produce a joy never before seen, never before experienced. [The Law of One says fourth-density is "100 times more harmonious."]

³ And thus, there are thousands and thousands of years of positive future experience to go through.

⁴ Yet in the process, distractions may come along — feelings of the home vibration that are not as completely bound in those realms heretofore spoken of.

⁵ It is these distractions, these obsessions with the physical, carnal passions of the flesh that brought down the entity Ra-Ptah.

⁶ There is nothing good or bad to be spoken of in this matter.

⁷ There is only the truth that said focus upon the path, focus upon the mission, be given the highest priority....

[David's Note: The Cayce Readings said Ra-Ptah and his followers were banished from Egypt following a contrived political sex scandal, not unlike Bill Clinton's.

They eventually returned, after Ra-Ptah noticeably decreased his physical age by having lived in a pyramid for an extended time. Egypt peacefully reunited.

Everything about the story later got severely mythologized, like the telephone game.

The "severed phallus of Osiris" as the obelisk was originally a symbol of his sexual indiscretion. Ra-Ptah's wife Isris became mythologized as the goddess Isis.

I was extensively briefed on these details by my ex-landlord Jim, who again heard it directly from Edgar Cayce's secretary, Gladys Davis.

The Law of One makes it very clear that Ra-Ptah/Osiris was a positive leader teaching Christian values, whose teachings were then overtaken and rewritten by the negative.

I had to re-do all of this karma, often with the same individuals, in this lifetime — as the cycles of history force us to repeat our experiences until we master them.

By clearing this karma individually and collectively, we are saving our planet.

The details of the Ra-Ptah lineage are all personal for now, but don't worry. After the First Wave you'll be able to learn all about it telepathically, I'm sure.]

7. THE GRADUAL BUILDUP OF A STRONG FRIENDSHIP

¹ Again, we are not saying that sex is bad.

² We are saying that to enter into such an arrangement, it must be done with proper forethought, proper knowledge —

³ And the necessary desire to serve the highest, most rarefied and pure forms of Light and Love, as they extend throughout your physical sphere.

⁴ It is not a time to simply be content with the physical passions, when the full spiritual polarities have not been attained.

⁵ We might then see that through the careful sharing of life stories, the careful joining and merging of the heart center,

⁶ That there is then the buildup, slowly and gradually, of a friendship that is great, a friendship that is strong.

⁷ It is through such a continual growth process that the future might then be embraced,

⁸ And said entities would then seek to be of service to each other, and of the planet in totality.

⁸ We speak on these matters, therefore, from a perspective that is overarching the desires of the physical –

⁹ A perspective that seeks the highest good of all involved....

¹⁰ We are through for the present. Thank you, David, and God bless you.

7/26/98

1. MAGNIFICENT JAPANESE SAILORS AWAIT YOU

[David's Note: This was a fantastic trance. I felt myself slipping so far away that my mind was totally displaced as my body continued talking.

I actually phased back in at a certain point, and realized that I literally had indeed almost fallen asleep while talking. The results seem to bear this out.]

¹ Magnificent Japanese sailors await you.

[David's Note, 9/17/22: The ETs who visited Japan, known as the Dogu, came in the "Flying Boats from the Universe," according to Shinto lore. "Magnificent sailors."]

² If you follow them back to the source point of light, you will discover many items of interest that then bleed over into the present physical life that you know.

2. PERSONAL WARS WITHIN THE SELF ALLOW US TO STEP IN

¹ We only become uncomfortable when these truths that extend all around us then penetrate through our comfort zone –

² Finding solace in a new area that has brought back specific points of interest, again and again and again.

³ So often disregarded, these points [of interest] are held in the highest esteem possible.

⁴ We see to it that our own interest and input is kept at a very high level.

⁵ Without the rat-a-tat-tat of the personal wars within the Self, there would never be an opportunity for us to step in, shunt the Ego aside,

⁶ And allow the greater varying difficulties to be brought to a head.

⁷ Once this is done, the person, nearly overwhelmed by what they have seen, simply disposes of those conditions in the past, calmly and clearly —

⁸ And instead interposes their own unique distortions upon the existing vibratory matrix pattern structure.

3. AS CHRIST AWAKENS WITHIN YOU, YOU BECOME “HIS HOLINESS”

¹ I could go on and on about this for days, but there would never be enough time to tell you the final truths if you didn't do all the work yourself.

² You could get spiritual guidance until you were “blue in the face” —

³ But to us, it is really a question of being able to understand and to love oneself,

⁴ [And] to see how the environment of the future is replete with circumstances that will allow you to relax comfortably into those distortions never heretofore seen in the past.

⁵ As we work towards this comfortable future, and begin to embrace it,

⁶ [We gain] the understanding that all we are, all we have done, all we will be, is contained within one single phrase:

⁷ “Holy is He.”

⁸ In other words, as the Christ awakens within you, you become His Holiness.

[David's Note: Michael says gender quickly becomes irrelevant in the higher realms. That being said, we could just as easily phrase this as “Holy is She.”

This is about finding whatever expression of Divinity resonates within you. The phrase “Holy is He” was considered a classic within the Cayce Readings.

Jim had shared passages from the Cayce Readings with me that had this phrase in them, and just a few months later, Michael decided to use it here.]

4. EVEN THE HARSHTEST CRIMINALS ARE CRYSTALLIZING

¹ The extension of Divinity did not stop with one perfected being or Soul, but rather permeates and percolates throughout the greater known universe, as you would have it.

² [We find it] then extending down into the roots of the tree of mind, within the soul complexes of the various personal entities in question —

³ Causing them to have a profound shift in [their] awareness, their abilities, their forethoughts.

⁴ We do not stimulate the lower chakral centers. They must be done by the entity itself.

⁵ Our job is to bring about and fructify the opposition between those highest, most holy attributes of the personality [and the lower attributes.]

⁶ [This] then activates a sense of will within the seeker —

⁷ To then search out the means for rectification of one's true Soul purpose with that purpose being expressed in the physical sphere.

⁸ It is through this work on the higher chakral centers, through the crystallization and the polarization therein,

⁹ That we then see their effect moving down through the chakral system in proper — so as to cause the lower centers to [reach] their own realizations, as it were.

¹⁰ Though not apparently possible, it is beginning to be seen in even the harshest criminals.

5. THESE ACTIONS ARE FORGIVABLE BECAUSE WE HAVE DONE THEM

¹ And thus, **when viewing these major geopolitical disturbances, often involving random acts of violence,**

² **A certain sense of humor is necessary,**

³ **In realizing that said actions are not inherently negative or evil — but rather a discrete element of the learning process, in proper.**

⁴ By no means are we endorsing such an action.

⁵ [However,] those things which you would call 'inhuman,' barbaric or otherwise disgusting, are to us forgivable actions.

⁶ Why are these actions forgivable? Because we ourselves have done such things.

⁷ You yourselves have done such things in the past.

⁸ And to a lesser degree, [you] may have done them in your present lifespan as well.

⁹ And thus, to condemn another self is to condemn Self.

6. PEOPLE CHOOSE THE HORRORS THEY GO THROUGH

¹ Jesus joked as he was scourged and whipped on the way to the Cross. This has been recorded in the Cayce readings.

² The point is this. No matter how horrible the action of another soul, how unbelievable, how untenable, how impossible it might seem that anyone could do such a thing,

³ We do see that these actions involve a necessary learning curriculum, oftentimes, for that particular entity.

⁴ The people themselves going through the horrors inflicted upon them have very often chosen such a process, for various reasons.

⁵ Though this is seldom conscious, it is possible that in most cases,

⁶ There will be a connective thread that explains why such an entity has chosen to be in such a particular place — at such a particular time.

7. WE WOULD ASK THAT THE ENTITIES PRACTICE FORGIVENESS

¹ We do apologize for the nature of this discussion, as it might invoke political debate in certain people who would not agree with our viewpoint.

² We think that the source has to be consistent.

³ Part of that consistency involves taking all human spirits and souls under our wing, as it were,

⁴ Forgiving the past, and remedying future actions in the way that we know best.

⁵ Thus, when acts of horror spark a feeling of resentment, and the apparent need of vengeance,

⁶ We would then rather ask that the entities practice forgiveness.

⁷ Practicing forgiveness, even in the act of crucifixion —

⁸ Practicing forgiveness, no matter what the outcome of a particular situation is,

⁹ Will obviously provide innumerable strengths and benefits in all future moments of space and time.

8. FORGIVE THE FOLLY THAT YOU HAVE SEEN

¹ We are not saying that the need to defend oneself shouldn't be apparent.

² It is not simply a case of martyrdom anymore. If everyone were a martyr in these situations, there would be many deaths that could be avoided.

³ And thus, it is possible to forgive and to understand the folly of another self, even in the midst of protecting oneself from said action.

⁴ One can understand the motto of "turn the other cheek."

⁵ And yet, at the same time, were there to be an individual who was raping the daughter of a family, and the father of said family had the ability to stop that person,

⁶ Obviously he would do so – and be correct within the Light of the One.

⁷ It would then be necessary in the aftermath for that father to forgive the folly that he had seen,

⁸ And to come to terms with the fact that said person was influenced more by negative emotions than by any inherent badness in his spiritual core.

9. RIOTING, LOOTING, PILLAGING, STEALING

¹ The planetary inconveniences that surround this harvest will often lead your people to the direction of a greater feeling of obligation, [and] of [the] necessity for immediate spiritual growth.

² While on the other hand, there will be many others who feel that Armageddon is upon them, that it is the end of the world –

³ And that their fragile human lives need to be clinged to ferociously and with great zeal, as there may not be many more moments of their own consciousness left.

⁴ In these people, we see deliberate rioting, deliberate looting, deliberate pillaging, raping of women, breaking in of storefronts,

⁵ Stealing of many various items, hoarding of food, purchasing of knives, guns and other relics of your old world,

⁶ And the utilization of said guns and weapons for the slaughtering of otherselves.

⁷We also see that this is an expression of power. A feeling that these entities need to remain in power in their own lives, because they don't feel that they have any power.

10. BELIEF IN A LACK OF LOVE CREATES OUTRAGEOUS DISTORTIONS

¹While we do not agree that these actions are manifestations of power,

²It is this belief in the lack of love [and] the lack of control over one's own life that such outrageous distortions are created.

³It is for this reason that we suggest a more holistic approach.

⁴[We suggest] a laying down of arms, as it were —

⁵And the transition from the outmoded forms of hatred and intolerance

⁶To the universal acceptance of the balances and imbalances in other selves as being equally valid.

11. JAKARTA'S SITUATION LOOKS LIKE THE END OF THE WORLD TO THEM

¹Remember, then, that **when viewing a situation such as Jakarta in Indonesia, one is seeing the machinations of what these people believe to be the end of the world.**

[David's Note, 9/17/22: The Indonesia tsunami did not occur until Christmas 2004.

At the time of this reading in 1998, Indonesia was suffering through a brutal economic collapse that ripped throughout Asia, beginning in 1997.

9/19/22: Just this morning, information came to light about a civil war in Indonesia that is starting to break out into the mainstream.

Once again, this is a more peaceful form of upheaval than the 2004 tsunami, but still world-shaking.

Patriots have apparently identified "gambling syndicates, prostitution, trafficking under-age children, drugs, and tons of money.

"Specially-appointed outside investigators have already tracked several hundred million dollars in offshore banks, located in Singapore and Hong Kong."

These headlines give hints of a much bigger issue going on under the surface:

7/19/22: Indonesian Police General Suspended After Bodyguard Found Dead with Multiple Gunshot Wounds ²⁴⁷

8/22/22: Indonesian Police Image in Tatters as Murder Scandal Widens²⁴⁸

“The police force has been mired in various scandals before, but the latest controversy, in which Ferdy, then the police’s internal affairs chief, allegedly masterminded Yosua’s killing and its cover-up with the help of his own men, and other police officials – Has exposed the culture of violence and manipulation that has long plagued the force.

“This is the worst scandal in the police’s history.

Imagine 62 people who were supposed to enforce the law voluntarily breaking the law and jeopardising their future,”

Indonesia Police Watch (IPW) chairman Sugeng Teguh Santoso told The Jakarta Post recently.

The scandal appears to have only grown bigger in recent days.

As the police investigate the **cover-up conspiracy, questioning at least 83 officers for alleged ethics breaches and obstruction of justice for tampering with the crime scene,**

Public attention has now turned to **Ferdy’s role as leader of an elite special task force** that analysts say is emblematic of factionalism within the force....

They are accused of being part of a group known as Consortium 303, with “303” referring to the article on gambling in the Criminal Code.

The document, the authenticity of which the Post has been unable to verify, alleged that Sambo was the **leader of an “empire”** presiding over online gambling businesses across the country.”

David’s Note: “303” is 33, the number of the Deep State, with a zero in the middle.

Room 303 was the symbolic room number in which Neo was killed and resurrected in *The Matrix*. Here is an excerpt on this fact from the Matrix Wiki.

²⁴⁷ <https://www.channelnewsasia.com/asia/indonesia-police-inspector-general-ferdy-sambo-suspended-bodyguard-dead-gunshot-wounds-2820001>

²⁴⁸ <https://www.thestar.com.my/aseanplus/aseanplus-news/2022/08/22/police-image-in-tatters-as-indonesian-murder-scandal-widens>

The number '303' appears to be an allusion to the character Trinity, whose name in Christian theology defines the three-in-one nature of the single Christian God:

Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.

This allusion is supported by Trinity kissing the lifeless Neo, whose life functions return as Neo transfigures into the One after exiting the room.

The number is also used as a parallel to Room 101, Neo's apartment, also seen near the start of the film.

101, a number used to describe beginners' tutorials, is contrasted with 303 for Trinity (whose name means "three").]²⁴⁹

12. ECONOMIC COLLAPSE IS A PERSONAL APOCALYPSE

¹ For all intents and purposes, the whole-scale destruction and collapse of [Indonesia's] own country's economy is, in a sense, their own personal Apocalypse.

² Even though the actions that are seen might seem to be outrageously inhuman, it is a direct result of that innate sense of End Time within all people on your sphere.

³ In such a case where this sense is magnified into full awareness, and becomes apparently real, we see the extremist forms of human behavior –

⁴ Both those most heroic and those most unfortunate.

⁵ **And thus, we stand by, protecting and watching –**

⁶ **Healing and forgiving the victims and the culprits with equal love –**

⁷ **And equal joy in service.**

7/27/98

PROPHETIC DREAM OF PALESTINE CHEMICAL DISASTER IN 1998

[Dream: The earliest part of this had a lot of farm images.

I connected up with a lot of old people from high school. They were playing a surrealist game like Alice in Wonderland.

²⁴⁹ https://matrix.fandom.com/wiki/Room_303

It was an extremely psychedelic game being played in a field. Alice-in-Wonderland-type animals were talking to people. It was extremely bizarre.

[David's Note: I unseal this after putting content into Book Three, revealing that the demon Baal often appears as the Cheshire Cat from Alice in Wonderland.]

I got the sense that there was a lot of danger there. The kids had no idea what was really going on. They just thought it was entertainment.

It was really weird stuff. These kids kept going through, and there was a lot of unpredictability in what was going to happen. Hidden danger.

Then there was **something about a person cleaning up toxic waste.**

He was walking across hot coals. **This was a very serious threat.**

By burning the material, he would be destroying something.

All these guys were doing this as a job.

[David's Note, 2/19/23: This again refers to the demonic influences that some members of the Deep State may be interacting with, from childhood, such as Baal.]

Video games are definitely being used to indoctrinate younger generations.

If people actually summon Baal in ceremony, they apparently see the Cheshire Cat as one of the main forms it may choose to take on.

Then we have a Palestine prophecy. "Toxic waste" was created by "burning the material," thus causing a "very serious threat," which "guys were doing... as a job."]

7/29/98

1. ACCURACY ALLOWS THE GREATER MIRACLES TO TAKE PLACE

[David's Note: Again, this reading came from a profoundly deep state of trance.]

You can literally hear my voice fading away, almost into unconsciousness, as it goes along. Even though it is very slow in speed, it is obvious to see that it reads quite well.]

¹ The connections he has within have come in.

² We two no longer need to look at each other through any means less than accurately.

³ It is this same accuracy that then allows the greater miracles to then take place.

⁴Turning back the camera, then, to 1976, we see that the lessons surrounding this trust have always been the same. The entity has just gotten older.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This suggests that my parallel life began around age three. My UFO dreams were definitely happening quite regularly by then.]

2. LET'S BRING IT OUT INTO THE OPEN

¹What brings these two things to a common point of congruency is the fact that without said energetic disturbances lying very closely to a central line of the grid,

²There would never be such an opportunity for massive growth and transformation in a very short time.

³Let's bring it out into the open, as it were.

⁴If we take the military leaders and take them the necessary requirements for food and shelter, then we will never have to be content with whether or not they will be okay.

⁵Similarly, **when we have to go out and find foodstuffs for the common person, we hope that such a process will be equally forthcoming.**

⁶The manifestation of the alligators in this [morning's] dream symbolically represented the danger that is being encountered, **the danger that we are now moving into.**

[David's Note: I unfortunately never dictated any dream section that directly featured reptiles. I do believe the Cheshire Cat eventually turned into a herd of alligators.]

⁷[This occurred] as those elements believed at one time in the dream to be docile then turned around against us –

⁸Creating even greater havoc, strife, and internal dissociation necessary to relieve this karma, this burden.

⁹At one time, David, you too had said, "Father, let this cup pass from me," with reference to the enactment of thine own form of service in this case.

[David's Note: This is clearly showing how the East Palestine disaster has awakened many people to the real agenda of the Deep State.]

3. THE KNOWLEDGE OF UNIVERSAL BLISS EXPANDS TEN-THOUSANDFOLD

¹ The continual readjustment of the vibratory matrix patterns of beingness allowed us to take a second look on these matters.

² We concluded that the only true way to be of service is to spend each and every day consciously involved in the seeking process.

³ The seeking process that we speak of desires the highest, most meaningful light, to heal over the binding nature of the apparent joy of separation —

⁴ Replacing it with true knowledge of universal bliss, which is then expanded ten thousandfold.

⁵ The feelings we have in the midst of all this interplay against those emotions that are more central to the source intelligence itself,

⁶ As it now plays its symphony throughout this body complex in proper.

⁷ Time after time, as you grew up, you were always able to take a given address, given name and occupation, and begin obtaining feelings from them.

⁸ [This was] through no other means and no fault of your own then that of simply being there, being present for whatever guidance must then come through.

4. THE HOUSE OF CARDS HAS FALLEN

¹ Armageddon is not an end. It is a transformation.

² And yet, as more and more of your people recognize it,

³ They come away with a great and fantastic fear that something is woefully inaccurate, woefully inept.

⁴ The house of cards has fallen. The dominoes have been placed into motion.

⁵ The store receipt indicates a few shockers on the list that the entities do not realize they had bought.

[David's Note: We have another prophecy of the fall of the Biden Administration.

The 'shockers' very likely refer to the treatments. The greatest concern of wet-wired implants is the possibility that they could deliver shocks for non-compliance.

"House of Cards" would later become a TV show about the US presidency.

Biden also stored documents with “a few shockers on the list that the entities do not realize they had” stored in his garage.

The documents scandal will lead to Biden’s removal: “The house of cards has fallen. The dominoes have been placed into motion.”]

⁵See then, that with our sizable shoes, there are more opportunities to become transparent –

⁶To walk in the glory of the One Creator, as that hyperdimensional being who can then trod the universe with unfettered tread.

⁷We will be there with you as you do this.

5. SEE THE DISTURBANCES AS BEING NECESSARY

¹Opening up a new chapter in the book of Light, as it were, there are always a number of concise opportunities for doom at every moment.

²These needs not be re-surfaced in the past situations, and yet contemporaneously understand that this is what’s happening....

³To pollute the body with toxins will damage it in the opportunity of ever being able to take these things seriously.

⁴We would rather be much more pure by becoming a being of pure light, pure love that we are mentioning, that we are discussing.

⁵Such a being does not need to prove anything to anyone.

⁶It does not need to walk up the aisle of the universe, checking to make sure that it has a seat and ticket.

[David’s Note: Another Palestine train metaphor, where Michael describes getting checked for your ticket in your seat – and the concept of being polluted with toxins.]

⁷Rather, see the disturbances and differences as being necessary –

⁸Those things that would then open up the background history of the entity in question, and realize the many massive connections therein....

⁹The entity became hardened or set in its ways, not wanting to see the truth, not wanting to see the life, not wanting to see the Light.

¹⁰ There are so many opportunities that could be granted for this entity, this member of your planetary society,

¹¹ To realize its own foibles, misgivings and ill repute, and transform them.

[David's Note: This seems to be about the Deep State. We are indeed seeing folks like the Rothschild heirs apparently seeking a peaceful resolution to all conflicts.]

6. WHAT IS LEFT ONCE THE AMERICAN ECONOMY HAS CRASHED?

¹ Do you not want there to be Earth Changes?

² Do you not want there to be an emergency manifestation of the necessary lessons for growth,

³ So that these entities might then have a greater opportunity to not miss the boat, but rather to go forward and embrace loving creation?

⁴ What is there left, they will say, once the American economy has crashed?

⁵ What remains on Earth if all has crumbled around them, and there is nowhere else to go – but to God?

⁶ When the government no longer provides, there is every reason to believe that God will be the One to turn to for answers.

⁷ This God extends and permeates throughout all religions – whether they be Pagan, Zoroastrian, Shintoist, Taoist, Buddhist, Confucian,

⁸ Hindu, Islamic, Mohammedan, Judaic, Christian, Native American, or otherwise.

7. A SUDDEN IMPULSE TO FEED EVERYBODY

¹ The merry-go-round spins very fast now. And thus it can be very difficult for someone to slow down enough to get on board and have a ride.

² These severe actions will then slow down the process of the conscious mind – to the end of thought.

³ The sudden impulse to want to feed everybody will be part of what is triggered in the midst of all these changes.

⁴ There are a number of churches that will be able to attend to this —²⁵⁰

⁵ For reorganizing their forces, and implanting such a thing as a community food bank, which is of course a most excellent idea.

⁶ The history of mankind is quite large, compared to that which is seen in your history books.

⁷ Bearing this in mind, then, **there is every opportunity and reason to believe that a new page in history will soon be turning —**

⁸ Commensurate with those same distortions that applied to the turning of previous pages.

8. WHOLE-SCALE ECONOMIC DESTRUCTION FROM “WEATHER”

¹ Though we want nothing more than to be of service, the service itself often involves the necessity of waking people up, as it were.

² [It involves] **taking them away from their focus on themselves and their daily lives,**

³ And instead towards the more immediate concerns of the now directly visible results of a whole-scale destruction of the economy —

⁴ Caused, to a large degree, by the ongoing weather disturbances.

[David’s Note, 9/17/22: “Weather disturbances” is a veiled reference to “The Storm.”]

⁵ The American media has been continually mum on these matters of impending transition,

⁶ As there are many opportunities that they now see for doom every moment.

⁷ This is not to be feared, rather understood.

⁸ It should be seen that with the proper clarity of focus, there are a number of discrete and different opportunities for one to go from point A to point B, as it were.

⁹ Instead of hampering one’s own successes, [this will help in] rather amplifying them and bringing them through to physical form, so that all might then see them.

²⁵⁰ This may be a time-looped reference to Chuck Todd’s recent call for a new Church Committee. <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/chuck-todd-floats-church-committee-style-investigation-fbi/>

9. INDONESIA IS EXPERIENCING THE GOOSEBUMPS OF AWAKENING

¹ We now have some information on Indonesia.

² Indonesia is experiencing the goosebumps that then bring about the awakening process –

³ Through the enhancement of the physical burdens of daily life.

⁴ This ideal format moves all those participants towards the big questions, as it were:

⁵ Who am I? Where did I come from? Why am I here? Where are we going? Who is behind all of this?

⁶ The answer, as we hope that they will find, is themselves. For all of the above.

⁷ The Hindu/Zoroastrian framework provides a moderate skeleton of understanding for why these disasters might then take place,

⁸ So there should not be much of a reason to dissuade the opportunistic nature of this on their behalf.

10. THE “HOLIER THAN THOU” AMERICAN ATTITUDE WAS QUESTIONED

¹ Similarly, [in] the case of the greater part of East Asia and Africa as well, [there] are the understandings that there are too many problems now encircling the world –

² And something needs to be done.

³ The Asian market collapse then had its effects as they ripple throughout the whole.

⁴ The ‘holier than thou’ nature of American society was suddenly called into question as the bombs were dropped.

⁵ Bombs of despair, that is.

⁶ Bombs of lack of food. A disruption of the normal flow and pattern of how life is to be lived.

⁷ Without these patterns in place, many would become trenchant –

⁸ Making observations, without seeking to know the reasons for what it is that could be done by them specifically.

[David's Note: Once again, this is talking about the Chinese Balloon and the "disruption of the normal flow and pattern" of the train in East Palestine into a 'trench.']

11. WHAT USE IS MONEY... IF THERE IS NOTHING TO BUY WITH IT?

¹ So get some food while it is still there, still available.

² Buy grain staple in bulk. Buy the large bags. Keep them close at hand.

³ Buy a protein source that will allow you to sustain that aspect of nutrition, such as the canned tuna or fish of other kinds,

⁴ The dried, smoked and cured meats, refried beans or dried beans in proper.

⁵ Such a process will then ameliorate many of the greater concerns that come about when one becomes worried about the why and wherefore of the next meal.

⁶ If you have just now come upon these readings, this guidance, you must do this today.

⁷ For what use is money if there is nothing to buy with it later on?

[David's Note: This seemed to predict one of Agent Smith's classic lines from the Matrix a year in advance: "What good is a phone call when you are unable to speak?"²⁵¹

3/8/23: Michael's point is again being proven right now by the people trapped under the snow in their homes in the San Bernardino mountains.]

12. COMMERCIALISM WILL BE ENTIRELY REVERSED

¹ Do not assume that you know the will of the Father,

² In the hour and day of Glory,

³ As He prepares His children for the harvest of souls –

⁴ Into the fourth-density matrix of beingness.

⁴ Do not assume that you can understand the why and wherefore –

⁵ Or that you can be clear on exactly what is happening,

⁶ And who is responsible for what is happening.

²⁵¹ <https://www.quotes.net/mquote/60281>

⁷The upshot of it is that we have to become conditioned to accept that:

⁸The boundaries of existence will be entirely reversed from their now rather commercialist, tedious position.

⁹The shift will be far more towards the direction of searching the infinite wisdom within the self.

¹⁰The seeker no longer desires to have all the answers – when the solution is right in front of their face.

¹¹The seeker no longer needs to ask questions – when the answer is all around them.

13. THE SYSTEM CANNOT CONTINUE AS IT IS NOW

¹Those who understand the why and wherefore of the Earth Changes and what they are for will be able to dispassionately move about in this newly-transformed atmosphere.

²[They will] begin taking all the necessary steps to rotate oneself towards a greater light and greater love,

³And away from those self-serving actions that characterized the old world that is now crumbling so quickly.

⁴Were we about to take one of these growth steps necessary for harvest, and place them within the framework of the necessary results occurring immediately,

⁵There would be great shock, great surprise at how much change needed to have happened in a very short time.

⁶The system cannot and will not be allowed to continue in the way that it is now, before the vortex finally opens.

⁷It would not be right. It would not be possible – in order that the curriculum may be attained.

14. INSTANTANEOUS KARMIC MANIFESTATION

¹Many of those whose egos would overthrow the idea of Earth Changes do not realize or remember the extent of the problem that we face –

²And the imminent deadlines upon us, when looking for a solution.

³ Do not think of the Earth as your higher-density plane, where the lessons are slow and gradual in coming.

⁴ Rather, it is the quick, fast and hard world of instantaneous karmic manifestation.

⁵ **It is this precipice which you now dangle upon.**

⁶ **This moment in the history of the present-future human civilization then represents the great turning point –**

⁷ **[From] the age of materialism and despair, to the true age of enlightenment.**

⁸ **The spiritual force needs to be respected.**

⁹ **If it is not done so, the results will become immediately apparent for all to see.**

¹⁰ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

Same day

15. THE CHEMICAL WARFARE WILL TAKE MUCH MORE PRACTICE

¹ We experienced it until ten in the morning.

² **Since the atmosphere was disturbed, we have tried to remedy the disturbances.**

³ **The chemical warfare will take much more practice, though.**

⁴ So sad that we cannot realize this in every moment.

[David's Note: This is another prophecy of the chemical disaster in Ohio. Thankfully, it shows that we have unseen ET assistance to help clean these problems up.

"We experienced it until ten in the morning" could be hinting at how Pete Buttigieg visited the disaster site very early in the morning, before any workers had arrived.]

7/31/98

MICROWAVES IN THE REGION DURING DIANA'S DEATH

[Dream: At the end of this dream, I saw that Princess Di had come back. In the dream, I didn't realize she had actually died. I was just glad to see her.

She was sitting with me at the end of a table. I was delighted to get the opportunity to speak with her for while.]

¹ Radio link to the cosmos.

² Microwaves in the region.

³ [D: "I wonder if this is about the car that she crashed in."]

⁴ Now you are on the right track.

[David's Note, 9/18/23: This is one of several statements calibrated to the timing of the loss of Queen Elizabeth on September 8th, 1998, ten days ago now.

Initial reports did say witnesses saw a motorcycle pull up in front of Diana's car, and hold out a weapon that released a bright flash of light.

Immediately after this bright flash, the driver no longer could control the vehicle. They were already going very fast due to being chased by paparazzi.]

[Dream: Diana had all these different forms she had to sign.

There was a place for her own name, and her husband's name. One of her sons was talking to her.

There was a big question as to whether she was going to have the courage to write in this guy's name as her husband's name.

I was telling her that everyone in America would stand behind her in doing this, and that she shouldn't be afraid.

I almost implied to her that **she should move here. She would be protected, and she would be okay.** She seemed to be strengthened by that idea.

Her hair was almost entirely black, with streaks of white. The streaks were very thin, and that was only at the ends.

I told her that I liked her hair. By this point she looked quite different.

[David's Note, 2/19/23: Harry was featured in this dream as Diana's son, and in the modern prophetic context, this dream appears to be about Harry and Meghan.

They did indeed have a separation from the Royal Family and move to America.

This was also one of many dreams that had references to divorce. At the time I was unsealing it, I had only recently finalized the entire process.

3/8/23: Now Harry has lost his property in England as well as having been stripped of all royal titles. Harry's mother obviously still loves him very, very much.

I believe this dream is also talking about the mass exposure of the Deep State, and how there will be unexpected forgiveness as the public realizes what they've been through.]

SECTION FOURTEEN: AUGUST 1998

[David's Note, 3/12/23: I took a few days off after my birthday. I was utterly exhausted in the midst of ongoing high winds, temperatures in the low 20s, and snowfall.

I filmed a video of walking the Girlie in this weather and it is very intense — and loud.

During this timeframe, the Silicon Valley Bank collapsed. This bank was the largest provider of venture capital for tech startups of all kinds.

A staggering **151.5** billion dollars of assets in Silicon Valley Bank were un-insured.²⁵²

In Book One, you probably remember Michael's very first prophecy, from 1996:

"Missions/Egyptians. **Silicon Valley lost fifteen hundred and fifteen** feathers. We're in a coincidence on that."

All we have to do is add the word 'bank' after "Silicon Valley" and it becomes obvious.

"Silicon Valley [Bank] lost fifteen hundred and fifteen. We're in a coincidence on that."]

When a bank or business collapses, those responsible invariably want to blame it on some type of coincidence, rather than their own malfeasance.

The original prophecy was about Twitter, a Silicon Valley company with the word "feathers." The number 1515 oddly spells ISIS, the "female aspect of Lucifer."

Michael Prophecies are multi-dimensional and can satisfy multiple issues at once.

What happens if we add a decimal point to 1515, and make it 15.15?

[Silicon Valley Bank] had mark-to-market **losses in excess of \$15 billion** at the end of 2022 for securities held to maturity —

Almost equivalent to its entire equity base of \$16.2 billion.²⁵³

"Silicon Valley [Bank] lost 15.15 [billion dollars]...

We're in a coincidence on that."

²⁵² <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/silicon-valley-bank-crashes-65-halted-pending-news>

²⁵³ <https://news.yahoo.com/svb-spectacularly-fails-unthinkable-heresy-222710493.html?guccounter=1>

What if we shift the decimal point again, to make the number **151.5 billion?**

As we noted before, while the FDIC noted that SVIB [Silicon Valley Bank] had \$175 BN in deposits as of Dec 31, note that **some \$151.5 BN of these are uninsured** –

Which means they [the depositors] get exactly zero, although a sizable number of them likely pulled their deposits in the past few days.

And just like that, SVB is no more: a historic collapse which in many ways was faster than Lehman, and which has seen SVB stock plunge from \$763 to 0 in 16 months.²⁵⁴

15 x 15, as we said in Book One, adds up to 225, which is the number of days in the orbit of Venus, the planet often associated with the so-called “Morning Star” of Lucifer/Isis.

Additionally, thanks to occultists in the federal government, they made sure to cut off the pre-market losses of Silicon Valley Bank at the “useful” mark of 66.6 percent.

JUST IN - **#SiliconValley Bank stock plunges 66.6% pre-market.**

#SVB is the 18th largest bank in the United States, and is the biggest bank in Silicon Valley based on local deposits.

The bank has billions of dollars in venture debt and untold amounts of warrants and convertible notes in early-stage firms.

#BreakingNews #BREAKING #TooBigToFail #Recession #Depression²⁵⁵

The number 666 may be deliberately planted in this case, so as to signal fear of “The Devil” to the subconscious minds of everyone who sees the headlines of a crash.

The ISIS codes in the Silicon Valley Bank collapse numbers would be harder for anyone to have fabricated. We have 15B in 2022 losses and then 151.5B in uninsured funds.

The wall just cracked loudly as I wrote that sentence at 5:55 am, on March 12, 2023.

As we continue into these passages while I grind through the winter, Michael begins by encouraging us not to despair – as we see these upsetting signs of apparent collapse.

If these difficult events save our planet’s population from an extinction-level event, then somehow everything becomes far more forgivable – and understandable.

²⁵⁴ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/silicon-valley-bank-crashes-65-halted-pending-news>

²⁵⁵ <https://twitter.com/CramerSez/status/1634197530190684161>

8/1/98

1. ACCEPT ALL MANIFESTATIONS AS BEING OF GOD

[David's Note: This is one of many personal readings that came through during this time. I decided to include it because it has some universal themes in it.]

¹ These moments of time, David, are priceless.

² Simply accept all manifestations as being of God – even those that are the most distressing and/or humbling.

³ It is this path of righteousness that will set you free – and prepare you for the changes that await.

[David's Note: Right away, Michael seems to be aware that my situation has gotten even more stressful since I last stopped editing the July 1998 sections of this book.

We are encouraged to see all manifestations as being of God, including upsetting events like the Silicon Valley Bank collapse, which has many echoes of 2008.]

2. GOD WILL SPEAK TO YOU IF YOU LISTEN

[D: "How much of this should I let this new, younger guy in the house know about? I obviously cannot hide who and what I am.

That just wouldn't be wise or even possible. What are your feelings on this?"]

¹ We feel that the proper attitude of "God will speak to you if you listen to Him" is a wise one.

² Simply make the connections between what you are doing and that of the authors of the Bible.

³ Ask the simple question, "If it was done back then, why can't it be done now?"

⁴ In this way, then, you do not have to hide the truth, but rather can keep things simple and streamlined, so that you do not have any great difficulties.

⁵ We are very happy to see you getting your name around and finding enough work, as it were, to keep yourself going.

8/2/98

1. DREAM OF A CONVERSATION WITH JESUS

[Dream: The beginning of this dream had Jesus in it.

There was some kind of direct conversation that we were having.

He was standing there with the beard, and we were talking to each other.]

¹ Institutional Insult....

[David's Note: I have decided to include most of this personal reading because it has some very lovely passages in it that can apply to others besides myself.]

² Now I can ask you a question. What does it matter whether we have to fall behind in these matters?

³ [D: "I know exactly what you mean. It matters tremendously. We are on a tight deadline. Staying up this late had totally messed me up.

⁴ I am also worried about a codependency thing with [my female friend.] She wants me to be around too much."]

2. TAKE HEED OF THE WARNINGS

¹ For things channeled, it has always been this way.

² Those who have many serious gifts and opportunities to share with us seem to always become more interested in the why and wherefore of the problem —

³ As opposed to the "how" question.

⁴ With regards to the "how" question, it will become necessary for you to realize the need to keep up on your transcription.

⁵ And as you are a very strong soul, you have now chosen many opportunities that can then throw you off course, as it were, within the current timespace.

⁶ We planned this out in advance, knowing the timelines therein.

⁷ And thus, it will become very important for you to take heed of the warnings — and realize that it is more important than you think to get these opportunities....

3. THE OLD WORLD IS NOW CRUMBLING INTO RUIN

¹ The detached feeling comes from when everyone around you feels insignificant —

² When compared to the last breath of the cosmos, and of life —

³ As it extends throughout the pale blue horizon of the old world on your sphere, now crumbling into ruin.

⁴ Do not assume that everyone else around you will be able to handle such conversations relating to said collapse.

⁵ It is extremely difficult for people to deal with, and as yet very necessary.

4. OPPORTUNITIES TO ALIGN WITH HIGHER INTELLIGENCE

¹ [D: “I’m hearing the Pink Floyd song Crazy. Okay, guys, I realize that there is a definite tendency towards codependency here with ____.

² “I can sense it, very easily. There have been tons of phone calls, she wants me to sleep over, etc. How do I counteract all of this? How do I do it in a polite and friendly way?”]

³ It is going to involve you coming to a place of stillness and of peace within yourself.

⁴ These types of issues will no longer mean as much as they do now,

⁵ But rather are seen in the light of the opportunities they present you to align more fully with higher intelligence —

⁶ And with the greater lessons of the seventh-density wisdom, as given.

⁷ There has to be a great deal of forward momentum in order to keep the process of spiritual growth working in full earnest.

5. BLESSED ARE THOSE WHO CAN CONFRONT UNPLEASANT THINGS

¹ As soon as you think that you have got it down to a routine, we have to decide whether or not to alter your life circumstances yet again.

² This is done for the purpose of teaching you how better to live without the concerns now present in everyday life.

³ Blessed are those whose opportunities extend far beyond the physical sphere,

⁴ But who can confront all of these lovely and unpleasant things within the realm of a few months in this time-space –

⁵ And in so doing, completely agonize over the problem, and solve it in a very short time.

⁶ There will be those who did not listen, those who did not understand, those who couldn't see that the entire mission was given as one of importance.

⁷ Were the ruler of these matters to be on board at the moment, he would say that all we have ever done is to try to combine our own forces –

⁸ Mingling with the good intentions in your own.

⁹ And thus, here you need to see the greater ramifications of good intentions,

¹⁰ Which include not allowing those otherselves around you to take the advantage, as it were – to use you in such a fashion.

6. DO NOT ALLOW OTHERS TO TAKE ADVANTAGE OF YOU

¹ [D: "Did --- read my email, and if so why didn't she say anything? Should I even bother to try to get that done?"]

² This is part of our problem, David. These are very basic questions; questions that you must ask yourself, and give the necessary opportunities for learning therein.

³ [D: "Okay, I think I can answer that question. I think that she doesn't deserve a transcript, because she hasn't paid me, and her whole attitude about it is very lame.

⁴ "Furthermore, I have had inconsistencies in my time for this work because of these lessons that we are working on now."]

⁵ All that we had ever said is for you to remain motionless in the craft as it approaches its destination.

⁶ The more that you can become like a rock, unwavering, solid, steady and secure, the better.

⁷ Do not let those other-selves around you take advantage. Do not let them shake you.

⁸ Whether the other-self is a young child, or an adult who acts as though it were a young child, the distinctions are the same.

[David's Note, 9/18/22: This appears to be a statement about the lesson we are all being forced to learn on a global level at this point – to understand and resist psychopaths.]

7. YOU ARE A PERSON WHO IS TO BE VERY BUSY

¹ We are perceiving them growing up around you. Like plants, those who would then seek to strip you of your energy.

² Understand that this is as training for the greater public process, as given.

³ Believe us when we say that you had better get through these things now, as they are vitally important for later.

⁴ We are sorry to disappoint you with this account, so **please realize that the entire civilization stands on the brink of major realizations.**

⁵ You have always been exemplary in listening to our guidance, and acting upon whatever method it is that seems most suitable to find to the necessary solution.

⁶ And therefore, in this case, be not afraid of the solution as it is presented before you.

⁷ You are a person who is to be very busy.

[David's Note: The Cayce Readings said Ra-Ptah had "really a very busy life." I almost never take vacations, watch TV or hang out with friends on any regular basis.]

8. FILLING THE CUP SLOWLY AND CAREFULLY

¹ All the souls around you now have been drawn to you –

² To indicate and renew the understandings of many other earlier experiences, and of how this has caused many great problems.

² With your marketing experience right now, you must understand that a little taste is better than a mouthful.

³ My cup runneth over when those who have done so have filled it slowly and carefully, according to these prescribed notions.

⁴ As your popularity increases, you will have more and more speaking engagements,

⁵ More and more of those who would like for you to appear to become part of the group, as it were.

⁵The problem that we are now having is that this could seriously impinge on behalf of the greater work now unfolding before you.

⁶And this we do not want.

9. FATHER, WE HAVE A PROBLEM WITH NUTRITION

¹[D: "I am wiping tears from the corners of my eyes, not from sadness but from tiredness."]

²Father, we have as yet a problem with nutrition. What needs be done?

³"Tell David that he has many opportunities to renew himself in the present moment.

⁴There are many opportunities for him to take stock of his growth lessons, and to remain consistent throughout said experiences."

⁵So at that time, we were still finding out about one's own true soul purpose. Whereas, at a later time we began releasing the newfound wisdom to the public at large.

⁶The imbalances you are now feeling, David, are a direct result of your inability to eat properly, your inability to have maintained the spirulina intake yesterday,

⁷And the continuing problem of the flexibility of sleep hours over too short a period of time.

⁸Therefore, when we say thank you, it is meant to indicate that these are all opportunities that can be used for very rapid progress in the very near future.

⁹That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

Same day, 8:31 am

10. VIRGIN MARY, PIPELINE, ASH AND SALVATION

[Dream: This featured the Virgin Mary prophecies, or a version of them. Arguments were occurring over basic, inexpensive items like groceries.

My father was encouraging me to go forward as an artist and present my visions to the public at large.]

¹Needful things.

²You do not have to need the use of so many needful things anymore.

³The Grand Prix of materialism is winding down to a close.

⁴Pipeline, ash, and salvation. This is the path.

⁵The biggest battle between the haves and the have-nots is almost over.

⁶We meant for you to see how one should take inventory of one's possessions.

[David's Note: Once this battle is over, we will have 'salvation' from issues like the Nordstream 'pipeline,' and the toxic 'ash' from Palestine (Line 4).]

11. THE CONCEPTS OF THE PRESENT ARE OF A VERY DIFFERENT SUBSTANCE

¹With all of its trimmings, **swimming around in the water — and looking for those weak elements, so that they may be eliminated.**

²This is the next stage of initiation.

³Priority collided with purpose. And in between the two of them, we found that we had lost the past.

⁴The concepts and ideas of the present are comprised of a very different etheric substance than that which we had heretofore imagined before.

⁵Abraham inventories. Every time we look at this, we see that these readings could also be done in such a manner.

[David's Note: I had recently heard Esther Hicks' tapes, where she channeled Abraham, while I had been living with an ARE member on 70th Street.

Michael also references the 'elimination' of toxic "elements... in the water."]

12. MANY WONDERFUL THINGS WILL HAPPEN

¹And therefore, when we begin putting this material together, many wonderful things will begin to happen.

²And thus, the decision to look for a file cabinet is extremely wise, as this will help us organize and prepare for the next phase in proper.

[D: "I heard the child Richard saying, "It costed so much money.""]

[David's Note: At the time of this reading, the woman I was renting a room from was having a child named Richard stay over for a week. He was very disruptive.]

³Free reeling, free wheeling as he [Richard] was, there was a need to temper this hostility with modesty.

⁴That is where you can be the greatest benefit, by then setting an example through thine own actions. It's amazing, isn't it?

⁵The more we look into these matters, the more discoveries are made of how they may and may not be solved....

⁶The closer we are to success, the closer we are to failure.

⁷And thus, there is a need to be careful around certain people.

⁸They will all have their own agendas about what is best for you, and how you might best accomplish it.

⁹[D: "Image of a battle axe, and someone chopping off a finger with it. A very ancient looking battle axe."]

[David's Note, 5/16/99: I drew this exact same image twice in a row while using the mystical OH cards at John's farm. [This was a type of Tarot card deck.]

This is an amazing future prediction, and I have only just spotted it now.]

[David's Note, 2/19/23: OH is the alphanumeric code for Ohio. The dream paired OH with the violent image of an ancient battle axe chopping off someone's finger.

This therefore appears to be another prophecy of the Ohio chemical spill. The battle axe suggests it was a deliberate act of war.]

13. YOUR PURPOSE IS TO SPREAD LIGHT TO OTHERS

¹So therefore, just be calm.

²Do not remain so concerned about what other people think is going to happen, what other people think you should do, or how other people think you should do it.

³Simply understand that you are a being here with a purpose.

⁴Your purpose is to spread light to others. That purpose is now reaching its fruition. You are doing exactly what you need to be doing.

⁵ We love you so much, David. And we want the best for you.

⁶ In fact, we not only want the best for you, we demand the best. And this process involves communication between us.

⁷ We have to keep the lines open, keep the lines flowing, and record your dreams —

⁸ So that all that we know, all that we see and understand then becomes your knowledge.

⁹ Do not feel afraid of what you hear coming out in your reading, [if it is] something that you had already studied.

¹⁰ To many others, these things are still considered wondrous and fantastic new facts.

¹¹ We see that ___ will not have the money for you in time, and thus it is your decision as to how to handle this situation.

¹² [D: “I am going to stick to my guns.”]

¹³ That would be wise.

14. WE ARE ENTERING INTO THE NEXT CRUCIAL PHASE

¹ Changing the subject now, **we are entering into the next crucial phase of linear time, in terms of the development of the new kingdom upon the Earth.**

² Many of the Earth Change issues we are bringing up might seem deplorably fast and deplorably sudden,

³ With **quantities of water, quantities of air and quantities of fire that far exceed what one should ever really see in the physical plane.**

[David’s Note, 1/1/23: San Francisco has had unprecedented “Biblical” flooding today as I reach this point in the book, and unseal these words for the first time.²⁵⁶]

⁴ Be not deterred by the Ego mind.

⁵ Seek, rather, to know the prophecies within yourself.

²⁵⁶ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/01/message-heaven-historic-rains-san-francisco-cause-mudslides-sewer-geysers-explode-cleansing-feces-ridden-city-video/>

⁶ And come to a point of understanding that they must happen — for the greater mission to continue as given.

⁷ We are beginning to see that you stand in support of these changes, David. And that is good.

⁸ From an expanded perspective, one can easily see how necessary they are, and why they are necessary today, this week, this month.

15. THE BRIGHTNESS OF THE MASCULINE FORCE

¹ Your recent trip to the mall yesterday was a sobering reminder of how arid and lifeless the platform that mainstream humanity works off of really is.

² No more do we find favor in repeating the behavior patterns that had already sustained us in the past.

³ Now, we find out that everyone around us is wearing sunglasses.

⁴ They all want to have their chance to find some shade, to get away from the brightness of the solar masculine force —

⁵ As it presses itself down upon us, with the eclipse in the strident sign of Leo.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: There was an upcoming solar eclipse in Leo on August 22, 1998.]

⁶ So relax. Do not let the pressure get to be too much, but rather be sure that you are sleeping enough, eating enough —

⁷ Focusing diligently on meditation, so that you'll have every opportunity necessary to renew your faith, and renew this contact in every possible venture.

16. THE EFFORT IS NOT AS STRONG AS WE WOULD LIKE

¹ LC: Everything doesn't always work that way. And this is one problem that we have had with you as we continue.

² The simple truth of the matter is this. We have tried very diligently to get you to go on impulse and buy that broccoli in the store.

³ Do not be afraid to spend just a little bit more money when healing yourself.

⁴ And though an effort is being made still to this day, it is not present to the degree that we would so choose.

⁵ So just start thinking very seriously about the laws of “create your own reality,” and how they apply to this situation. You’ll find many great truths therein.

⁶ Come to a place of stillness, and you’ll find that the lessons are still there —

⁷ Though veiled by the forgetting process that stillness then engenders.

8/3/98

1. A TIME, DATE AND PLACE TO MEET OUR FATHER

¹ Instead, it was a Jovian double moon.

² Lots and lots of quickening energy is coming to the fore now.

³ In the meantime, we have to be patient as we watch the greater truths unfold in their relative positions.

⁴ They saw me, and I saw them. **I knew that everything was going to be all right.**

⁵ Following the tree back to its roots,

⁶ We discover that **the directions that have now been given will provide us with course changes that will allow the greater initiation or initiations to then take place.**

⁷ He has a time, a date and place when he will meet Our Father.

⁸ It is important to deride all negative influences as we approach this date of reunion with one’s own true Self.

2. OPERATION “END RUN” WENT NOWHERE

¹ [D: “What do you guys think about operation “End Run” so far?”]

[David’s Note: An individual got me in touch with the ARE in Texas. The idea was to get me to speak there and do an “end run” around the censorship in Virginia Beach.

The whole thing ended up going (ahem) south. No Cayce organization wanted anything to do with me at the time. The reincarnation really freaked them out.]

²Something like this had to be done. The situation with Virginia Beach ARE is stalemated. They would not have allowed any further progress to be then realized.

³On the other hand, the situation has a great deal of positive, moving, upwelling energy. And this will place us within the proper space-time coordinates very soon.

3. OUR OCEAN GETAWAY HAS GREAT OPPORTUNITIES

¹[D: “Did I do the right thing last night by lancing that boil?”]

²It is your body, and it is up to you how you will handle it.

³Therefore, in seeing the need to relieve pressure in such a manner, the method of lancing is sufficient in order to insure that this be done.

⁴Were we not to follow our gut instinct on these matters, we would not experience forward motion, but rather stagnation –

⁵Stuck at one discrete point in the continuum, without the ability to move forward.

⁶Our ocean getaway has a lot of great opportunities in it. And we have to keep reminding ourselves of that very fact.

[David’s Note: In many different dreams and readings, Michael predicted the house I lived in at the top of the Topanga mountains, which did have a huge ocean view.]

⁷Without the jubilation and desire to work upon your behalf now in place, we would never have the proper drive to succeed that is now necessary.

Same day, 4:22 pm

4. DREAM OF 2025 AD AS THE NEW 2158 AD

[David’s Note: This dream is included because it dramatically flags the year 2025 as being of extreme importance.

Later in this book, Michael again gives us a two-year window of opportunity for the anticipated solar energy shift, beginning at the time of this book’s completion.

Therefore, I felt it was very important to leave this dream in place. 2150 AD featured a beautiful intuitive vision of the future, based upon one of Cayce’s recorded dreams.

In the dream, Cayce saw that he had a future incarnation in 2158 AD, in a civilization where people were flying around in levitating, anti-gravity, cigar-shaped craft.

In this version of reality, there had been a polar shift, and Nebraska now was on the coastline of the United States.]

5. DAVID, AS ET, RETURNS TO EARTH IN 2025 – AND AGAIN IN 2158

[Dream: The [Arthur C. Clarke game] Rama, [where you explore an ancient ET spaceship,] had been run through again. [I once owned and played this game.]

I was going through Scotia to the new development.

When I got to the new development, there was an old hill where a friend's house was. This was where I used always tried to ride my bike downhill for speed.

It was also very closely connected to Dirty Rock Road, the hill that went to Lock 8, where I used to spend a lot of time on my bike rides.

Later on, it seemed as though something extraterrestrial had crashed to earth there.

It was strongly associated with the book 2150 AD, only **I was seeing two books now.**

One date was 2158 AD, and the other was 2025 AD.

I now remember clearly that the 2025 book had the same cover as the book *Millennium Prophecies*, by A.T. Mann.

[David's Note: Here, Michael suggests that the year 2025 is the conclusion date for our anticipated end-of-the-millennium events from many ancient traditions.

Michael also very clearly links the prophecies of 2158 AD, which we will discuss a bit later, with the year 2025. To me, this is incredibly exciting news, as we are almost there.

I have to say that this direct triangulation of our present and future dates in a dream from 1998 is one of the most spectacular Michael Prophecies, at least in my eyes.]

6. SYNCHRONICITY OF TRIANGLE IN THE ROOF DURING DICTATION

[D: "A wonderful synchronicity here. I have a spired roof in my room, which goes up to a big triangle.

It just so happened that the very, very tip top of it is lit up in such a way that it looked like the capstone of a pyramid.

I caught it very close, and it is now right at the point where it is disappearing."]

7. GETTING INTO THE CAR WITH THE FRIENDLY WOMAN

[Dream: I went up this hill. I was determined that I was going to stay there and do some work there. [I ended up mowing the lawn in crop-circle-type patterns.]

The UFO crash [that turned into the 2158 and 2025 books] didn't even seem to happen until later, but I started to figure out that something had happened....

Once I got into the car, this overweight woman also got into the car with me.

She had been hanging around there, as if I was supposed to take her with me.

I believe I struck up some kind of conversation with her. She acted as though this was what we were supposed to be doing, and everything was fine.

I guess I went along with it.

8. EPIC "DREAM" FLASHBACKS OF CRASHED E.T. WRECKAGE

Right after we got into the car, I had some real big flashbacks of dreams at that same spot. These dreams went back to when I was very young.

I remembered having some very epic dreams in that same area.

In this dream, I could remember all of the older ones.

I also remember dreams where I knew that something had crashed there.

It was something very extraterrestrial-like, and I was going through the grass trying to find it.

[David's Note: This appears to be authentic parallel-life memories re-integrating.]

9. SPACESHIP EXPLORATION WITH THE FRIENDLY WOMAN

I was now in the car with this friendly woman.

This turned into the game RAMA, except that it was based on the book 2150 AD, which a friend from the ARE recently gave me — [and I then read it.]

The whole game was very hyperdimensional. I knew that it was on a CD-ROM, and they were running me through the introductory disc.

This part of the game was very simple. It was difficult to make a mistake, because it was very pre-planned.

It was only when you got to the second disk that the game became very difficult.

10. OVERSTRESSING THE WORLD TREE

The first part had a lot of movie-esque and flashy stuff. ET-type things.

The game also seemed to start at the same place I had just been.

I seemed to know the game very well. There was a younger child, possibly my brother, who was having much more difficulty with it.

I then flashed on the image of a tree. I knew that the tree would be there in the game.

This kid, who I guess was Michael, my brother, went in there and came up to the tree.

The spacebar seemed to be the key that would advance the video game's image of the tree forward through time.

I told him that the first thing he wanted to do was to advance the tree forward through time.

I never told him how many times to do it.

11. JAMMING THE SPACEBAR ON THE WORLD TREE

He started hitting the spacebar over and over again — at a very quick speed.

I watched as the seasons changed very rapidly. Snow was falling, and the branches wilted. They did not get bigger.

They got darker and darker. All the branches finally broke off of the tree. The tree just collapsed, and was then pulled up.

I realize that he had done it all wrong. I would have to show him all over again.

There was some excitement about this game. There were a number of people who had milled around us.

[David's Note: This appears to be a reference to higher-dimensional incarnations, where we learn how to design and create life on new planets — as well as a metaphor of dendritic branching and/or breakdown.]

12. THE MAGICAL SPARKLE OF 2025 AND 2158 A.D.

We then started to look around for a room. I had a connection with my ARE friend somehow. I knew that the book 2158 AD was over in the corner of this room.

I think this same room was involved in dreams I had about the New Development, way back when I was younger.

The books were standing on the shelf. One of them looked older, and said 2025 AD.

There was a new book that **seemed to sparkle with light.**

It had metallic letters in a tall, bold font, with a large shadow boundary on them. This newer book said 2158 AD [in front of a light burst.] It was very exciting.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: In context, this dream is telling us the prophecies anticipated in the book 2158 AD are now actually coming true in 2025 AD.

Michael is implying that the "sparkle of light" from the civilization we were expecting to have in 2158 AD will now be arriving much sooner – apparently by 2025.

All of this seems to indicate that the Opening of the Sun will occur by 2025 –

If not before then, based upon how quickly we can figure all of this out as a planet.

If you find yourself laughing at this, consider the overall accuracy of these prophecies.

This dream may also reveal that Cayce's dream data had to be deliberately obscured and encoded, so as not to reveal too much about our future at that time in the 1930s.]

8/4/98

1. THERE ARE AS YET MANY RIGID PLACES IN YOUR HEART

¹ Let those people who then seek guidance emerge, as the word of the success of our technique spreads.

² You are learning well in terms of not being emotionally attached to the outcomes –

³ Not seeking praise in the "I wonder if it was right" format after the reading had been over.

⁴ We see all this as very indicative of massive spiritual growth.

⁵ Since our topics are of a general interest, and **we are censored by you from time to time,**

⁶ **We feel that there are as yet many rigid places in your heart, or being, as it were, that need to be worked around.**

⁷ We have prescribed leniency on these matters in the past, but again warn you that for the next cycle to occur in proper,

⁸ It will be necessary for you to begin relaxing more, going further away from Self, and allowing us to dominate the control over what is and what is not said.

⁹ We understand the fear in such a process of letting go, and only remind you that it has never failed before, and therefore should not fail in the present.

[David's Note: Michael references censorship and cardiac problems in this passage.]

2. THE BEST THING WOULD BE TO PROPHECY UPLIFTMENTS

¹ The worst thing that could happen is that you say things that are mysterious and unexplainable –

² Things that cause the person getting the reading to wonder deeply about what was going on there.

³ On the other hand, **the best thing that you could end up doing would be to completely prophesy a series of distractions and/or upliftments –**

⁴ **Heretofore unannounced in the life of the seeker.**

⁵ Therefore, take this knowledge as indicating that all difficulty in these matters is apparently illusory.

⁶ You only need beginning to seek the solutions, in order that you might then come face to face with the opportunities that they provide.

3. KEEPING YOURSELF OUT OF THE WAGE-SLAVE SYSTEM

¹ The rumor mill gets started about you as time progresses, leading to much more popularity than what is now present.

² **This popularity will expand exponentially, as it were, within a finite amount of time.**

³ It is important that you stick to your guns.

⁴ Do not allow the schedule to become overburdened, as it is not your responsibility to do a reading for every person who might then want one.

⁵ You are learning that this form of “guerilla capitalism,” as it were, is a more effective way of keeping yourself out of the larger wage and tax slave system, as it were,

⁶ And into a micro-economy all your own, which is then very lucrative in its own right.

⁷ So be advised that plastic costs a lot of money.

⁸ You certainly do not need the credit at this point, as you have all that you need right in the present.

⁹ As you continue to experience financial gain, you will have greater opportunities to then raise the price of the readings to \$75 or \$80 dollars [from \$65],

¹⁰ And to take the necessary opportunities to bring about a formal rendition of the truths inherent in this mode of functioning.

4. OVERPOWERING PRESENCE OF ENTITIES AROUND YOU

¹ Last time we did a séance on these matters, there were spirits in the room. We did not feel their presence overtly.

² The dream indicates how strongly those presences might then be felt.

³ It was in the first dream that you had the overpowering presence of entities around you, talking with you, being near you.

⁴ This is indeed an accurate representation of our own process, and those others like us.

⁵ And in this particular case, the human entity’s own ability to discern said vibrations from the normal matrix structure.

⁶ So just allow yourself to butt out, as it were,

⁷ And remind yourself that it is more irrational to consciously provide data to such questions than it is for you to subconsciously provide the answers — through the process of the allowing.

⁸ We are running into trouble, in that there is as yet still too much of the conscious mind interface with the data.

⁹Your own personal readings here are running at about 90 percent accurate,

¹⁰Whereas the readings for others, though valid in their own right, are running at about 70 to 80 percent.

[David's Note: The ten-percent bad data Michael refers to here has all been cut.]

5. JUST RELAX AND LET GO OF THE CONTROL

¹In a 70-percent reading, we are able to provide input, but only in a structure that you are continually modifying.

²You are still choosing most of the content based on what your conscious mind thinks is right, thinks is most appropriate.

³And thus, you continue to try to surreptitiously gather as much information as possible from the person, through whatever you hear in conversation or otherwise.

⁴All we can say to you is that experience will prove that if you just relax and let go completely of any control in the process,

⁵Allowing the words to flow and become completely spontaneous, as [they are] in the present,

⁶You will experience great joy and upliftment at the fact that the messages will get across.

⁷You do not need to antagonize yourself, or worry [about] any of the deeper meanings of the conscious understanding of the entity involved.

6. LEARN NOT TO BE ATTACHED TO THE OUTCOME

¹Therefore, in this reading today, let us not take anything but direct vertical ascent into these same levels of trance that we need to use.

²Let's be simply content with waiting for long periods of time, if necessary, in order that the messages might then come through.

³[D: "I felt this extremely tangible presence of an entity, or a series of entities, around me right before I woke up.

⁴Very hyperdimensional stuff going on, very interesting.

⁵Do you have any more words to say before we depart?"]

⁶ Only this. Know that the opportunities for said miraculous quality level of readings will exist only when you relax even more than in the present,

⁷ And go into deeper trances, where you do not try to follow the information.

⁸ Simply speak what is then on your mind, as it were.

⁹ Also, if you are not as attached to the outcome of said reading, it will not bother you as profoundly to the question of whether you are accurate or not.

¹⁰ That question should be implicitly answered within you as you progress along.

7. ABDUCENT NERVE / KING DAVID'S SON ABSALOM

¹ [D: "I was just cueing on the "Ab-sal nerve" thing again."]

² There is a deeper layer to this, David, as you are now aware. King David's son Absalom, who conspired against him — and eventually led to his own ruin.

³ And thus, there is an even deeper layer to the metaphor of your dream, that being that **through tackling difficult medical opportunities such as these,**

⁴ You do not have the level of trance dissociation necessary yet to work with other people [on medical issues] — due to the lack of the degree of comfort therein.

⁵ There are as yet opportunities for said conspiracies to occur.

⁶ We also meant for this to give you a way to begin thinking into that particular incarnation, and explore the mystery —

⁷ As you are correct in seeing that this was indeed one of your incarnations.

⁸ We thank you, and again remind you that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine.

⁹ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

Same day, 8:39 am

8. THOMAS JEFFERSON WAS A GOOD GUY

¹ Humor and allegory. This is the guy's name. Say it as Thomas Jefferson.

² If it were true, in fact, that Thomas Jefferson had been a problematic person, then the readings never would have mentioned him in such a positive light.

³ That is one part of your presentation that you should strongly consider altering in the future.

⁴ [D: "I understand."]

⁵ The trilogy continues.

[David's Note: The Cayce Readings apparently pointed out the reincarnation of Thomas Jefferson, and people's cultishness later had a very detrimental effect upon this person.]

9. WE ANTICIPATED A GREAT FINALE BEFORE IT ACTUALLY HAPPENS

¹ Were we never to have explained these basic truths to you, the meanings behind them would never have been granted —

² And the magical genius would not yet appear.

³ But we have done so. And now it has reached its fruition point, for the time being.

⁴ [D: "Was just thinking about the Ra Material and public speaking, and then heard:"]

⁵ For three and a half years, I have done a lot of commercial writing.

⁶ **Now that we have anticipated a great finale before it actually happens**, there are many chances to get that message across. And that is important.

10. RAINBOW-LUMINOUS 'SPARTICLES' WILL FILL YOUR SKIES

¹ **The aurora borealis will be very intense when these changes occur —**

² **Due to the "sparticles" that come out of the sun at that time.**

³ We will show you your energy levels, your energy deceits, in the method most comfortable for you.

⁴ We want to make things very clear. Go forward, then, and continue dictating the dream....

[David's Note: "Sparticles" appears to indicate Spiritual Particles as well as Sparkling Particles." It is also a likely reference to Sparta winning an impossible battle.]

11. DREAM OF THE PINK ROPE LIFELINE TO RAPTURE

[Dream: At the end, I was walking with an old friend on the beach. We saw this big rope coming out of the sand.

There was a big loop on it, as though you could wrap it around your waist. And it was pink. The ocean was to our right during this walk.

Next to this big, thick pink rope was a box, sitting on a little mound of sand and tilted off to the side.

In big, black capital letters, the box said RAPTURE.

My friend said “Oh, the Christians must have been here, and they are talking about this whole rapture thing.”

I knew that this was something that was very imminent, and very real.

As I thought this, we were coming up to a chain link fence. I knew we were going to have to scale it in order to continue forward on the beach.

We would need to go back and use the RAPTURE rope to climb over the obstacle.]

8/5/98

1. A SIMULTANEOUS, MULTI-NATIONAL RUCKUS

¹ Members of the Board of Israel and of Pluto have an interesting opportunity here for more surprises that await us.

² We can tell you about the intimate opportunities that will be gained to cause a ruckus.

³ We cannot tell you the exact dates as of yet.

⁴ This turn would be of a simultaneous, multi-national nature.

⁵ And it would seem very depressing in the midst of these other circumstances.

[David’s Note: This is a very strong warning about Israel hardliners possibly starting a war. Pluto is the planet of death. I hope publicizing this can stop it from happening.

As of March 4th, 2023, the US State Department issued “probably the most strongly-worded condemnation directed at a top Israeli minister in recent history.”²⁵⁷]

²⁵⁷ <https://www.zerohedge.com/geopolitical/us-issues-ultra-rare-rebuke-israeli-top-minister-repugnant-disgusting>

2. WATCH-DOG READINGS FOR THE GREATER UPLIFTMENT OF HUMANITY

¹ It is important that we set the record straight, and keep a watchful eye on what is occurring around us.

² With such watchdog readings being given, we can then move away from the continual wondering of whether the process is accurate —

³ And towards the greater upliftment of self and other-self, for the purpose of collaborative union.

[Transcription Note, 8/16/98: Moments before I typed the word “watchdog,” the dog Sam, who has been staying here this weekend, came into my room.

He immediately went over and was intently sniffing my barrel drum from India.

This is extremely interesting in light of India’s problematic nuke, and the watchdog metaphor that came through moments later in that next sentence.]

3. WE WANT YOU TO TAKE TO THE AIR LIKE THE WRIGHT BROTHERS

¹ And thus, these folks are for the summer, and for the 1400’s —

² As well as for all of your funny anecdotes that can be made consciously.

³ Do not forget that.

⁴ **The Smith [Wright] Brothers knew how to build the airplane, but they were not very good at getting off the ground.**

⁵ **We want to see you engage in said process of taking to the air, as it were —**

⁶ **Losing the fear that then keeps you land bound.**

[David’s Note: This appears to be another prophecy of Stavatti and our hovercars, as well as yet another Chinese Balloon reference.]

4. YOU CAN PREVENT DISASTERS THROUGH PROPHECY

¹ **There are people walking around who can somehow prevent many of these greater disasters from coming to pass.**

² **You are such a person.**

³ And it is by this vehicle of prophecy that this may be done.

⁴ So therefore, do not turn inward with a bitter eye to the prophecy that fails to come to pass.

⁵ Rather, see that it is symptomatic of the success on that particular issue.

⁵ [Female voice:] She looks like a spoon.

⁶ [Male voice:] Very strongly. And we have to tell people that.

[David's Note: This indicates how they are using me to spoon-feed us the information we will apparently need to survive.]

5. DO NOT BE AFRAID OF THE TALL ORDER

¹ The intruder comes into many opportunities for the betterment of Self and of social organizations with which self identifies —

² Regardless of the overall effect on those others around it.

³ We think that it is very apropos for you to be aware of the need for guidance and discretion in these matters, when focusing upon the external environment around you for support.

⁴ Our pleasure would be to continue serving you in any way possible. And therefore, do not be afraid at what seems to be a rather tall order, as it were.

⁵ Instead, see that as we continue to spend time with you and your clients, that the process is magnificently gifted, bringing the high down to the low,

⁶ Blending and merging them, so as to arrive at a new opportunity for greatness, purity and light.

6. YOU WILL BE VERY SUCCESSFUL

¹ We have been speaking of issues like this since you were born, in various forms.

² Now that your business is fully launched, and is taking off, as it were, you have every reason to be confident, and no reason to collapse the process through your own fears.

³ We think that you will be very successful. And as we mentioned last night, you are already successful.

⁴ Simply put the pieces together, and compare your life now to what it has been like for the last three years. You can immediately tell what it is that we are speaking of.

⁵ We understand that you might never have imagined that you would be doing this, but rather see that the words that you speak are the fruits of the spirit –

⁶ The nectar of the gods. The chicken soup of the soul.

⁷ Therefore, so to speak, we can take every opportunity for when such a reading is given, and imbue a direct and personal message to the seeker in many various ways.

7. BE ON THE ALERT FOR GREED IN OTHERS

¹ [D: “I cued on the words, “Egg Whites,” and then a voice said,”]

² I thought I said something to her that was “impressionary.”

³ As you can see, David, we are giving you better warnings and admissions regarding diet for various people.

⁴ You are doing a very good job in conveying our words, and listening to what it is that we have to say.

⁵ [D: “Image of some of the people at Jeanne’s house, where I attend a spiritual study group. One of them was taking his pinky nail and flipping through a Rolodex file.

⁶ He was flipping through the ten commandments. He asked me, “Do you know which one shouldn’t be in here?” The one that he took out was greed.”]

⁷ [D: “Yes, I am aware that there is a problem regarding people who bubble up, and think that they are going to make money off of this. I am on my guard.”]

⁸ Thank you. That is all that we want for you at this point.

⁹ If you were to be made rich, so to speak, it would be for the betterment of all involved.

¹⁰ And it would hopefully go hand in hand with the greater public distribution of the truths as given.

[David’s Note, 9/19/22: Along with the earlier airplane references, this is all very prophetic of Stavatti. As time progresses, it could generate significant revenues.

My goal has been to use any profits to keep developing new technologies that will greatly accelerate our transition into fourth-density life.

Once we do this, everyone will be “made rich” in the aftermath of Disclosure.]

8. A VISION OF THE DESTRUCTION THAT IS TAKING PLACE

[Dream: I passed the high school to get to a night club. On the way there, I noticed an event that had a lot of police activity, with ambulances and so forth.

The club was roughly 300 to 1000 yards from where the high school was, approximately where the road tracks had been.

When I got there, I somehow figured out that a murder had occurred at the night club, between white supremacists and somebody else who was Latino.

I also saw that the ones who would be responsible would have roots in their hair. I saw some people who had dreadlocks or braids.

This lady and a man were at a gas station, squatting right at the pumps, just two of them. The lady had a baby who was bleeding from the sides of his head.

Ambulances and police were coming around. I thought there wasn't much I could do, so I kept on walking. I forget where I had put my bike.]

¹ I was thinking about this.

² And **I decided that it would be much better for you to have an opportunity to see some of the destruction that takes place –**

³ **Rather than to keep you completely separate from it.**

⁴ We will be your own CNN, as it were, for the time being –

⁵ Preparing you and guiding you in the proper directions to navigate through said changes in earnest.

SECTION FIFTEEN: AUGUST 1998, PART TWO

8/6/98

1. THESE CHANGES WILL ULTIMATELY BE OF GREAT ASSISTANCE

¹ I once knew a lady who tried to bring incense into her house.

² It's not that it wasn't a good product, it's that she didn't know how to use it.

³ Therefore, when we see that things are not working out, we try to make sure that all the available avenues of communication have been exhausted —

⁴ Before we simply begin giving up, as it were.

⁵ The time for change is right now, in the present. We are not about to stand in the way of that change in any way.

⁶ Many of the changes now occurring in the planetary sphere will ultimately be of great assistance to all of you.

⁷ It is only important that you see past the surface appearance of whatever it is that is happening, and get down into the core of the real issues here.

2. EMBRACE THE SIMPLEST SPIRITUAL PRINCIPLES AND FIND SOLUTIONS

¹ David had raised a unique question, in proper. And we will now reference the quote.

² "Do you think that the wastrels will be 'saved' along with those who have done good deeds?"

³ By stating this question, we would like to say that first of all, we do not consider this as being saved or unsaved.

⁴ The path is the path of righteousness, the path of the One Creator, that all must walk throughout their travels.

⁵ What we would comment on is the fact that every time a person gets his or her chance to look forward, to look into the future, and to act accordingly,

⁶ They still may have equal or greater footing in the past.

⁷ Those blockages that divide them will keep them split between the choice of whether to be of service to Self, or service to others.

⁸ Therefore, when examining the question of those who engage in drug use and abuse, the real issue is that they might find themselves seriously wanting –

⁹ For there to be a solution, in light of the Earth Changes now occurring.

¹⁰ We do see that such a solution will be forthcoming – for those who then embrace the simplest spiritual principles of which we speak.

3. THERE WILL BE “PROBLEMS OF THE ATMOSPHERIC VARIETY”

¹ Again, it is the wastrels, the scoundrels, those whose lives are molded around the continuing pattern of self-indulgence,

² Who then need most clearly and responsibly to experience said changes – such that they cannot possibly continue in their denial, regardless.

³ Shifting the topic of conversation, then. The atmospheric and volcanic disturbances are on the rise.

⁴ There will be problems in Louisiana, ongoing problems in Texas, many problems in Florida, and the lower East Coast below the 32nd parallel we had spoken of.

⁵ These are of the atmospheric variety, we would care to point out here.

[David’s Note, 9/15/22: Another reference to “The Storm,” including the shut-down of domestic oil and gas and the battles Florida is fighting politically.

Texas and the entire Southeast got hit with unprecedented cold in December 2022.

This also may be a loose reference to the trajectory of the Chinese Balloon.]

4. THE FIRST HURRICANE IS ALREADY ON ITS WAY

¹ For just a minute, suppose that none of this was going to come true.

[David’s Note, 9/15/22: Very intensely loud and sudden rush of wind over the house right as I read this, as of 11:41 am. The Storm!]

² Then, things would stay pretty much the same.

³ The fact of the matter is, these things are happening. They are continuing to happen.

⁴ And your government, business and insurance industry will all have to absorb the cost accordingly.

⁵ At the time of these workings, the first hurricane is already on its way. It will be a season unlike any other in your recorded history.

[David's Note: This is one of a few passages that had me very worried about the upcoming Christmas polar vortex over much of the Eastern half of America in 2022.

I had a dream where Antifa types were conducting organized sabotage against the Grid. I leaked this to Mike Adams and he did a show about it on December 19th.

This huge winter disaster did cause Southwest Airlines to basically collapse – and cancel its flights for days on end.

Now the first of the long-anticipated trials have begun in Congress as of February 2022.]

5. SOME SIGNIFICANTLY MORE DRAMATIC DISPLAYS ON OUR PART

¹ Therefore, be calm, and have faith in the process.

² Do not leave yourself without emergency preparations and rations.

³ Understand that this is as the final exam in a long series of tests that you have had to all face together.

⁴ We know you're trying to make it – as hard as you can.

⁵ And thus for all the Light workers on the planet, we thank you for the burden that you are sharing, and for any burdens that you will be sharing in the months ahead.

⁶ There is no reason to suffer profoundly when one understands the true import of these changes –

⁷ And what lies ahead in the glorious distance that is becoming the environment of the future.

⁸ We are prepared to have you take in this knowledge, in any way possible –

⁹ Including some **significantly more dramatic displays on our part,**

¹⁰ In the very near future, as you would term it.

¹¹ Look for this in September.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: I am first unsealing this in September 2022, and indeed we are seeing a huge uptick in UFO sightings worldwide.]

6. MEDDLESOME DINOSAURS!

¹ [D: “After bathroom and water. I was just hearing, “Would you ask me a question?,” so I will state it.

² “I am wondering if I will have time to transcribe all the tapes.

³ “I am considering that I might offer people a cassette of the reading, without offering a transcript, so I can then do it on my own time.

⁴ “Then, if someone wants a transcript, I can then charge extra for that. What is your opinion on this?”]

⁵ Meddlesome dinosaurs! **You can't buy anything new anymore.**

⁶ We find that the available opportunities at every moment for completion of your mission have continued to increase.

⁷ We see that with the gradual lessening of the distortions towards total responsibility,

⁸ You have every opportunity to move forward – and progress in the greater writing work that we were speaking of in this morning's dream.

[David's Note: This is prophetic of supply-chain issues – “you can't buy anything.”]

Same day, 9:30 am

7. PROPHECY OF WHERE DAVID ATE DINNER DURING THE GAIA YEARS

¹ HARBOR ARGUMENTS.

² A substance is easy. A sustenance is more difficult.

³ We want you to learn the distinctions between the two forces.

⁴ Rigorously. Yes. Manning him to death.

⁵ She did say 8 o' clock. 8 o' clock, nearly on 17th or 18th Street.

⁶ That is where we can hope to see the greatest complications arise. For it is these complications that will heal the entity in question.

[David's Note: I often ate dinner around 8 o'clock at Ted's Montana Grill on 17th Street in Boulder throughout my six years of Gaia shoots, from 2013 to 2018.

Corey was once screamed at by a woman behind Ted's, as I parked there long enough to run in for take-out. We also had a stressful environment on most of our shoots.

Corey and I were extensively attacked by people who literally wanted to 'argue' us "to death" – a group of trolls I named the Dark Alliance.]

⁸ I know that if I am being sarcastic, then I am being brainwashed.

⁹ There are more opportunities to climb the ladder now than there are to descend the ladder....

8. THE ENTIRE MISSION IS OF PARAMOUNT IMPORTANCE

¹ Using your intuition to then see between the cracks, as it were, we realize that the entire mission is of paramount importance –

² When it is placed squarely within the hands of those who can do the greatest good for us.

³ And thus, this dream was meant to draw a distinction line, as it were, between those who are doing good and those who are not.

⁴ Let us go forward, then, and dictate it.

⁵ [D: "Okay."]

[Dream: I was at a low-rent house. Some real cuckoo, wacko stuff was going on there.

My brother was there at an earlier point. He seemed destitute. He had no place to live, couldn't pay the rent on time, and was basically very unhappy.

I don't think he had a job either, and he was just grateful that he was able to be there at all.]

[David's Note: As I unseal this in December 2022, my brother just got a new job. The person training him had just grabbed the Michael Prophecies that very same day!

The trainer told his girlfriend about this on the phone after work, and then they both realized it was 5:55 pm. Book One has 555 pages.

In almost all of my dreams, if my brother shows up, I know that his character represents my ego, or what the Law of One calls the "personality self" of third density. Sorry Mike!

Each person has to learn what characters correspond to a given symbol in their dream.]

9. IT IS OUR VOTE... WE MUST NOT VETO THE CHANGES

¹ The progression of events from the past to the present, [and on] into the future, are then made abundantly clear.

² To those who say that you are too young or not going rapidly enough, we can then draw a massive distinction line –

³ Between those things that were issues so recently, and your current degree of stamina, focus and determination.

⁴ We usually would give a progress report much earlier, but this corresponds naturally to the availability of time,

⁵ And the timing to coincide with the other messages that we need to get to you in earnest.

⁶ On the nineteenth or the twentieth of the month, you will see some major changes. Earthquakes, that is.

⁷ [D: “Please tell me a little more about this.”]

⁸ It is our vote that we must not veto the changes that are occurring.

[David’s Note, 9/15/22: This may be a prophecy about the overturning of US election fraud. VETO also spells VOTE, further revealing what “major changes” may be here.

5/23/23: The Biden impeachment was introduced by MTG on May the 18th.]

10. PUBLIC EXPOSURE WILL HELP

¹ Your people need to understand the simple curriculum behind Ascension – that of loving other people.

² We do not care whether it is part of the process that you get famous or not, David, as there are many other avenues which we will explore.

³ Your popularity would help us in making these changes much clearer, in terms of what will and what will not be happening.

⁴ The closer we are to the truth, the further away it seems.

⁵ And the closer we get to these changes, the more you have been questioning the very essential nature of what it is that we are doing.

⁶ It is natural for you to do this and feel this way, as it is only human, as it were.

11. THIS WILL MAKE MORE SENSE AFTER THE LARGER CHANGES

¹ As you are already aware, our series comprises of a much larger quotient of events than that which would currently seem possible for you to do —

² As one speaker, one man trying to publicize his knowledge.

³ In the sense that many accomplishments will be made, your work has great and tremendous promise.

⁴ But do not be deceived into thinking that this will involve one corporation simply grabbing you and running with you. It is much more complicated than that.

⁵ After the changes of the larger variety have occurred, this material will begin to make a lot more sense, as it were.

⁶ Your people will be less prone to doubt the information than they would have been before the event occurred.

⁷ People in California have been warned by many. And they make a conscious choice to stay at this point.

⁸ You must not feel responsible if you are not able to have done more than you did.

[David's Note: California will not sink into the ocean until after we've fully completed our own Ascension process, and everyone has activated their 4D bodies.]

12. NOT CONCERNED WITH POPULARITY AT THIS POINT

¹ Our work is a team effort that extends far beyond you.

² There are many great opportunities for these changes to be made, and for others to warn about them besides you.

³ Do not become hysterical in thinking that it all has to come from within, that you have to be the one doing everything, and that if you are not successful, the whole plan is lost.

⁴ We perceive that your success in the immediate Virginia Beach area and its continuing growth therein is of the highest importance to us at this time.

⁵ We are not so concerned about the why or the wherefore of those larger issues with relevance to global popularity at this point.

⁶Just try to do what is right, and what is best.

⁷Make an earnest effort to publish your own books, and to send those books to publishers, and you will see for yourself the results.

13. THE BUBBLE IS RAPIDLY EXPANDING

¹**The rapid expanding of the thought bubble** of truth soon encompasses all those around it.

²We perceive that there are a great many opportunities to then partake of the expanding body of knowledge.

³That is your job, too.

⁴**I see myself down here.** And I find that I want to sit by myself.

⁵And that is okay, as long as we continue to work on the larger, more public issues at the same time.

[David's Note: Another Chinese Balloon metaphor, this time as an "expanding bubble" that was trying to 'see' our military bases "down here" in the US.]

8/7/98

1. POSSIBLE PROPHETIC DREAM OF OHIO DISASTER

[David's Note: This may be another example of me having a dream that provides a view into the minds and plots of the perpetrators of terrible events.]

[Dream: There was a hotel that was very dark and urban, sort of like Dad's old office in Schenectady.

It was very old and run down, and in desperate need of repair.

There was some sort of infestation.

I was sitting in a classroom with other people, and we were trying to figure out how to deal with this.

As we went around with this idea of how to solve the problem, we all had these little tubes that we had to fill up with bug spray.

We were going to have to go around and spray these bugs, but we knew that it would be very dangerous.

I had one tube, and I was supposed to have two. I was just trying to stay in line with the class. It seemed that it was very difficult.

We were all so threatened about what we would have to do.

I believe that the dream ended while we were still making preparations to do the spraying, but we hadn't actually done it yet. There was a lot of danger involved.]

[David's Note, 2/19/23: This combines the idea of Covid possibly being a designer virus with the Palestine disaster possibly being a deliberate attack on the population.

The Palestine disaster became a much bigger story after the Shadow of Ezra channel revealed that this was one of the "17 Cities" in which "1 Event" was planned to occur.

This happened yesterday, February 18th, when they posted an image of the toxic cloud that formed over Ohio with the words, "17 Cities. 1 Event."²⁵⁸

This implies that the original plan of the Deep State was for disasters to occur almost simultaneously in seventeen different cities.

Since the Alliance appears to have intercepted and blocked their plans, we only saw about five or six disasters at the same time, instead of a much larger intended number.

2. TOXIC SUBSTANCES CAN BE MOLECULARLY RE-ARRANGED

[David's Note, 3/4/23: I am writing this immediately after a long-term fan told me she is in terrible fear over toxic chemicals ruining the East Coast of the United States.

She believes East Palestine is far worse than most are giving it credit for, and it could all add up to some sort of extinction-level event.

I take this very seriously. And therefore, even before we get into the Pyramid Power section at the beginning of Book Three, I want to quote from Source Field here.

In traditional science and physics, toxic substances cannot be molecularly re-arranged into non-toxic substances, other than perhaps by controlled incineration.

In the 'new' pyramid science, even something as toxic as dioxin will collapse under the pressure of the higher energies that a pyramid naturally creates.

²⁵⁸ <https://t.me/ShadowofEzra/258>

This research data also explains how toxins in certain shots could be transformed into less-toxic substances, just like we hinted at in our earlier discussion of xylitol.

Dr. Alexandr Golod and his associates found that anything that was harmful to life would transform, for the better, if it was kept inside the [144-foot-tall] pyramid [they built out of PVC pipes and fiberglass, with no metal included].

- **Poisons and other toxins would miraculously become far less destructive, after even a short stay in the Pyramid of Life.**

- Radioactive materials decayed faster than they were expected to.

- **Dangerous pathogenic viruses and bacteria became much less harmful to living organisms after a stint in the pyramid.**

- Even psychotropic drugs like LSD had less of an effect on people who were inside or within close range of the pyramid.²⁵⁹

If we remember that some of our thoughts seem to occur directly within the Source Field, this antipsychotic effect starts to make more sense.²⁶⁰

Although I do not think this will be as bad as some podcasts are indicating, I want to point out that once we let the sun open up, we can heal toxic chemical spills easily.

The power of consciousness is far, far greater than we currently realize.

Additionally, Stavatti will be able to manufacture devices that release “charge clusters,” also known as Exotic Vacuum Objects or EVOs, into radio-active materials.

By passing charge clusters through radioactive material, you can seemingly violate our ‘known’ laws of physics — and de-radiate the material in a matter of days.

²⁵⁹ DeSalvo, John. *Russian Pyramid Research: Introduction*. Giza Pyramid Research Association. (Accessed May 2010.) URL: <http://www.gizapyramid.com/russian/introduction.htm>

²⁶⁰ Wilcock, David. *The Source Field Investigations*. Chapter 8: “Pyramid Power:” Our Key to the Golden Age?”

The suppressed technology has all of the tools we need to save our planet. This is why I am willing to risk everything in order to hopefully achieve this goal.

It appears that Michael will protect me regardless of whatever anyone tries to do.

8/9/98

GOING TO EGYPT IN PERSON

¹Someone is going to have to go to Egypt. His name is David.

²[D: "That was pretty surprising."]

³Be conscious of the fact that each different archetype we present has, as its corresponding nature, a physical component as well.

⁴Thus, when we symbolically indicate your return to such a place,

⁵There is the metaphor not only of the superconscious realm and the reunion of Self with Self that we have been speaking of –

⁶but also in many cases the physical reunion, which concerns the actual space in question.

⁷The entity has sought its glory in vain up until this point.

⁸But we now move forward together, seeking to provide those truths that we have always known in the past in a new way, and a new format.

[David's Note: I did end up leading a tour into Egypt with 30 people in 2004. This may also be talking about new visits I will be making to film undisclosed artifacts and ruins.]

8/8/98

1. DREAM OF THE BANKER BAILOUTS

[Dream: The beginning was very surrealistic. My younger brother might have been involved with it.

We went to a seaside area. It was very similar to the Virginia Beach oceanfront in many ways, only it seemed older, in a sense.

I was flying around.

It seemed that ocean water had flooded on to the land. Roads were filled with water.

There was a certain hint of a **government presence going on as well.**

I definitely got lost in the midst of all this. I knew I had somewhere to go, and I had gotten into trouble.

I definitely got stuck within some chain-link fences at one point, and had to figure out how to get out.

There seemed to be something that I was trying to reach, a white building of some kind.

The chain-link fence seemed to be next to a baseball field. The water had become quite high, but it hadn't done anything to the field.

[David's Note: Rising waters usually symbolize events that cause massive sadness.]

The next section featured the person at ARE who refused to take my story seriously.

I was sitting down with him and again told him what I felt my prophecies were saying.

I still felt he was being belligerent and noncompliant.

I was fed up with the attitude he had. He continued to talk about it in a joking mood, like it was nothing.

I asked him how anyone could have seen in the past what this year would be like. He didn't really have any responses for that.

2. EDGAR EVANS AND THE 26 TRILLION-DOLLAR WITHDRAWAL

The dream then segued into a new section with Edgar Evans Cayce. He was presented as a very small child, perhaps five or six years old.

[David's Note: By this point, I had met Edgar Evans in person. Although he did not believe I was Cayce's reincarnation, he admitted I had the best case he'd ever heard of.]

Cayce's secretary Gladys Davis had taken Edgar Evans to a bank. It looked similar to the front desk of the hotel I worked at this summer.

Gladys Davis went to sleep for some reason. Edgar Evans was then placed inside a green box, but it was a very small box.

Edgar Evans was determined to withdraw a lot of his money from the bank. I was there with him.

At first he wanted a couple of trillion dollars. Then it turned out to be 26 trillion!

[9/19/22: This was the exact amount often cited in the 2008 bailouts that were paid to the big banks.

This amounted to half of the entire Gross World Product, or total amount of recognized wealth in the world, at the time.]

I then realized that Edgar Evans “only” wanted to take out 26 million bucks.

[9/19/22: I definitely see all of this as Stavatti-related. One of the basic business plans we’ve been shopping to investors is for a 25 million-dollar startup raise.]

[8/20/98: This also has the obvious metaphor of the 26,000-year cycle that is now completing itself.]

3. PERSONAL STORY ABOUT A MAN FROM THE FELLOWSHIP

[Transcription Note, 8/20: Last night, I was in the Fellowship. A man came in who had wanted to go there for four years. He had finally “chosen” that particular night to do it.

He came in and was very repentant, very sorry for what he had been doing wrong in his life. He felt he was living without God.

He cried a great deal, and needed a lot of support.

Later on, I went with him back to his house and saw his artwork, and realized that he was an incredibly gifted artist.

While I was there at his house, he told me that his mother had **12 million dollars**, and that she had invested a million of it into one bank.

The bank paid her interest on the money as though it were only ten thousand.

When she got wind of this, she became extremely angry, and **withdrew all of her money out of the bank in 200,000 dollar checks**.

He described to me how his mother showed him each check, one by one.

You can clearly see the connections here. The effect this miracle had on me is quite profound, and again illustrates the predestination behind so many of these things.]

[9/19/22: This is truly fascinating. Twelve million is the smallest amount we have been chasing as starter funding for one of our main startup projects.

Now as this book goes public, we have been seeing an unprecedented bank run.]

4. THE BANK PAID WHAT HE ASKED FOR

What he then came out of the bank with was **a giant shoebox, filled with wads of checks.**

The bank did pay Edgar Evans exactly what he asked for.

[Edgar Evans was the one who had been in the box before – a symbol of death.]

In the middle of all that wealth around Gladys Davis, she was told that **all she had to do was write her story and put together the readings.**

That was the way to bring the money in, so to speak.

It was as though **the shoebox he originally went to sleep in was then transformed into the container for Edgar Evans' money –**

Once she realized she needed to compile the readings she had.

Then, while I was in line for the bank, after Edgar Evans had already withdrawn the money, two Black people were behind me. They started threatening me.

I turned around and started to sing to them. Then I began to act as a preacher. I got both of them to pray. They seemed to like it.

5. TOM CRUISE DOING IMPOSSIBLE, ASCENDED FEATS

Then as I finished, it segued into this big gym. Basketball was presented in a very hyperdimensional fashion.

It turned into a basketball tournament between Tom Cruise and a bunch of Black guys.

There were some decidedly non-physical stunts that were far too outrageous to be real. Tom was flying high up into the air to dunk baskets.

Then the dream shifted and I felt that I was Tom Cruise, the one doing all the stunts that amazed them so much.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: Tom Cruise appears in *The Disclosure* and *SPACESHIP*.

SPACESHIP also shows film footage of a Black man celebrating his 40-year service with Lockheed at Plant 4 in Georgia.

SPACESHIP has the trick arrow scene from the movie *Great Wall* in it, which I personally admire. That dramatic moment seems to be reflected in these stunts I did.

While I crunch through this book in December 2022, Tom Cruise was just in the news for filming “the biggest stunt in cinema history.”²⁶¹

6. ALL ELSE WILL SNAP INTO PLACE

¹[D: “I was thinking about the part of this dream that was talking about readings, and I heard:”]

²Just focus on the readings, and all else will snap into place.

³[D: “I was thinking about all the wealth.”]

⁴Life forecast.

8/11/98 – 7:35 am

1. ASIAN KID POSES AS JESUS, SELLING DRUGS

[Dream: I was out in the woods. I met a young Asian kid who thought he was a reincarnation of Jesus Christ. He had a lot of followers.

At the end, I got vomited out of a giant stomach, [much like the “Belly of the Whale” archetype.] This was after a lot of so-called “miracles” had already been taking place.

This guy thought he was the reincarnation of Jesus.

Yet, his character gradually morphed into someone who was aggressively trying to sell me drugs. He wanted to pass off obviously counterfeit, fraudulent money as authentic.]

[D: “I am thinking the message behind this dream is to give God the glory, and not get caught up in being the messenger. Just give the message.”]

¹That is correct. **Were we not to identify ourselves, the prophecy would not have come to pass.**

²⁶¹ <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XjVV0ZZ8FO8>

² But now that we have identified ourselves, we need to keep very sure that our humility is guarded every step of the way.

[David's Note: This included Michael demanding I take a year off from video in order to spend time healing. This was a huge lesson in humility, abstinence and poverty.]

2. DO NOT CONFUSE YOURSELF WITH THE SOURCE!

¹ [We thereby ensure] that we ourselves are not held up as anything special, but rather the information itself.

² We are simply the humble bringer of said information, not a religious or spiritual figure in and of ourselves.

³ You do not want those otherselves around you to have distortions towards identifying the source as you – and not as God.

⁴ This would be counter-productive to an extreme degree.

⁵ This dream was meant to illustrate that:

⁶ You would quite literally be plucked cleanly from the bowels of what it is that you are doing –

⁷ And forcibly ejected out, so to speak.

[David's Note: As far as I am concerned, this is tantamount to a death threat if I ever created a cult, or let people start promoting me as some kind of savior figure.

I included this in the book so you know how high the stakes are for me on this. Michael and his people are utilizing me much like a radio. I am not the Source.]

3. REMEMBER YOUR HUMILITY IN THE FACE OF IDOLATRY

¹ The second meaning of said vomit at the end was to show you how allowing yourself to get stuck in this mode is, in a sense, a form of being trapped.

² [It is] a form of being digested by those concerns of the Ego.

³ Therefore, keep in mind that:

⁴ Though you are doing very well now,

⁵ There will be a number of discrete opportunities in the very near future for you to have those who would, in a sense, idolize you.

⁶ You need to keep them humble,

⁷ and help them to realize that you, again, are nothing special.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This does make me nervous about releasing the book. I will do my best to follow Michael's guidelines, as I always have.]

8/12/98

DREAM OF FENDING OFF A DEMONIC STONE BEAR

[Dream: We were around in the wilderness. A bear was coming after us, and a few other animals as well.

The bear was very obviously carved out of stone. It was extremely bizarre.

We were throwing rocks at the bear so it wouldn't get too close to us. We were afraid of what was going to happen.

We held off the bear that way, or realized that it was harmless.

[David's Note: As we said in Book Two, Volume One, the demon Mephistopheles appears as a bear made out of fire in his 'elemental' form.

In this dream, we have a bear made out of stone that was attacking children. This is another veiled dream memory of demonic attacks I may have suffered in a parallel life.

Furthermore, in this dream we realize the bear is harmless. This reflects how the power of the demonic over Earth has now been destroyed by the resurgence of the Christ.]

1. A BEING OF PURE LOVE, READY FOR ANY EARTH CHANGES

¹ The beginnings of the Earth Changes are amazing to behold.

² The final effects of such a transition would not be stood to, or even comprehended, until far after the original events themselves, in most cases.

³ Were it not for our dedication in bringing these matters to the surface, as it were, we would never have believed the stories that you were told.

⁴ Similarly, when we ask you that you begin taking the necessary steps to become a being of pure love,

⁵ We understand, on our side, that this involves you being centered, poised and prepared for any Earth Changes that might await you, then, in the very near future.

⁶ So good heavens, let's talk about it!

2. BECOME THE READINGS TO GET THE BEST RESULTS

¹ The more we gain confidence in ourselves, confidence in the process, confidence in these workings,

² The more we enable the ability to go forward and deliver one's own true message to the masses.

³ We are not saying that you shouldn't also have a life outside of this, [but] this must now become a predominant theme and focus.

⁴ So don't react too strongly when others around you might act as though they are living in a dream, or a fantasy world, where your material is not "up to snuff," as it were.

⁵ Simply negate the possibility of negative influence by accepting that all you are is all that we are.

⁶ We would like to comment here on your persistent quotation that you have been using, which is, "I feel like I am becoming the readings."

⁷ This is indeed a statement of fact, and an accurate representation of what it is that we are doing here.

⁸ The learning curve then demands continued participation as part of the process.

⁹ Without your being involved, there would be no process.

¹⁰ There would simply be the stagnation and lack of forward motion, and a lot of lousy material stemming from the conscious mind directly.

3. DISTURBANCES MAY COLLAPSE THE MARKETS

¹ From time to time, you will find two opportunities at once for how you may best use your time.

² With these two opportunities laid back to back, as it were, one can then assess them in terms of the relative light of the whole, the relative goodness of said action for the planet.

³ Were we to create distractions for ourselves, we are unwittingly preparing disaster to take place.

⁴ We then realize that we had the necessary information to warn those otherselves around us, but we never took the time or effort to do so.

⁵ As you are aware, your stock market is held together by nothing more than basic human confidence and faith in the process.

⁶ As the disturbances that we have been speaking of now continue,

⁷ There are more and more opportunities for these people running said markets to get scared, as it were – and suddenly not want to play the game.

⁷ This is one of the direct causations of the patterns that we are speaking of.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: The market has indeed been collapsing in just the last few days as I unseal this.

2/15/23: Now we appear to be right on the brink of a major market correction.

5/23/23: The market has never been more unstable as it is while we release this book.]

4. BECKONING THE LIGHT

¹ [D: "Question, Fed by You: "What is it that is responsible for the way I used to feel, and still sometimes feel now?"]

² Though at present you will have to see on this, in the past we find that all we have ever known, all we have understood, is contained in one simple word or phrase:

³ "Holy is he who beckons the Light forth, into him and through him, for the greater good of the All involved."

⁴ To beckon this light is to become a being of pure love –

⁵ A being who understands and accepts the fundamental tenets of the various spiritual philosophies that we have espoused, down through the years.

⁶ If it were only an act of will, one might not then find the strength.

⁷ More accurately, it is the process that occurs when the personal will is then ignited and catalyzed by the Divine Will, as it expresses itself in its lofty hour in the heavens.

⁸ This could not ever be more than the one simple concept of Oneness, of divinity, and of the desire to seek it in all its many forms.

5. CONDITIONS WILL ALTER, VERY SPECIFICALLY, IN THE NEAR FUTURE

¹ You have the book there. The book that will teach you what it is that you are to do.

² The book is your own life. Your own experiences in the present moment.

³ Do not run and hide from what you have written inside these pages.

⁴ Rather, begin to know and become aware of said book.

⁵ Begin to live the passages. To feel the intrigue. To wonder about the future with eagerness.

⁶ Know then that **the conditions that are coming to mind have not stayed the same, and [are] soon to alter, very specifically, in the near future.**

⁷ As you progress through these materials and get yourself up to date, you will see all the citations for this.

⁸ This will help us in our quest to further continue and better said mission.

⁹ In the meantime, we want you to simply be content.

¹⁰ Be aware that all that we might speak or say is again contained in one simple phrase:

¹¹ "Holy is He."

¹² The dawning of the Christ within you is the single most powerful aspect of your personal growth process that you could ever hope to attain.

¹³ And thus, do not be intimidated or fooled by the opinions of others.

¹⁴ Rather, understand and know that there is as yet only one goal, only one process.

¹⁵ And that is to seek this inner light within, throughout each and every moment, each and every day. Now and forever. Amen.

6. STRONG POSSIBILITY OF FRIGHTENING WAR IN MIDDLE EAST

¹ In the Middle East, we hope to see that the worst-case scenario of doom will not take place.

² It is a tossup at this time. The cards have not yet fallen.

³ We do see that the greater weight of possibility and probability now rests on those more bellicose actions, deemed as the starting of wars and the like.

⁴ With wars and rumors of wars, with famine and pestilence,

⁵ With the scourges of the land through said earth changes and the various other problems –

⁶ All that we have spoken of is now coming into greater focus.

⁷ This is a focus that will no longer remain buried in the subconscious, but rather will become very whole, very physical.

⁸ Those who understand will be able to use it.

⁹ Those who do not understand will be dumbfounded and frightened by it.

¹⁰ And thus, the great work goes on.

¹¹ As a result of your **chest** and stomach **pains**, David, we are going to end this session.

¹² Thank you. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

8/16/98

1. THE ASIAN COLONIAL MARKET

¹ The entire Asian colonial market will be discovered very shortly.

[David's Note: Loud crack from the wall as I read this and thought, "wet markets." The CCP apparently intended to infiltrate and 'colonize' the US with their attack strategy.]

² This is a very unfortunate situation that then gives rise to the community-building actions we had heretofore surmised.

³ Yes, David, just as it said in the article that you read the other night [on the Sightings website,] **the American economy could fall very quickly and suddenly.**

4 That is exactly the same as what we have been warning you.

⁵ Many Christians do have these [psychic] abilities, but they are covered over and stifled by the inherent adaptive reflexes of their own particular faith or creed.

⁶ In your case, we have a forerunner of sorts: an individual whose true soul purpose stems directly from correcting the distortions now in place. And that is good.

2. A TRAGIC COMEDY OF SEPARATION

¹ Many machines would like to go rat-a-tat tat, as their owners insist upon putting them to work in the first place.

² Instead of getting concerned about this, again we see that it is as a comedy of separation. A tragic comedy.

³ For to see it other than folly is to recognize the inherent binding loss that comes about from said realizations.

⁴ Instead, we want to focus on the gains.

⁵ And we feel that those are most nearly achieved when forgiveness is made the answer in these cases.

⁶ Buying the book back, taking it off-the-shelf and bringing it into the home.

⁷ We are very excited about this.

⁸ You are having difficulty with a bridge.

⁹ And thus, things now are the same as they were way back when.

¹⁰ This is okay, for the greater meaning is for us to arrive at a full understanding of these workings.

3. DON'T BE HOSTILE ABOUT TEACHING THE TRUTH

¹ How well the Creator rides on you depends on your own ability and/or inability to accept Him [and/or Her].

² So keep that fact in mind, and all will be revealed to you.

³ To make a hostility out of wanting to teach truth is to fail to accept the essential tenets of what it is that we are doing.

4. DREAM OF A BIZARRE CHURCH SERVICE

[Dream: There was a girl from the Fellowship. She had also appeared in earlier parts of the dream.

All these old men were in a bathroom at one point, and I was in there.

They were talking about the church service they were going to see, and how excited they were about it.

I just chuckled to myself. These people were very, very worked up about it. They were very excited about it.

This girl from the Fellowship finally led me inside the church. We were walking down the aisles.

There was a whole section of seats that you couldn't see.

A guy was going to be speaking. This girl and I found a seat. It was right on the corner, where you couldn't even see the stage, on the far edge.]

5. A GROUP WITH ITS OWN ILLUSION OF TRUTH, AND VERY FAR FROM IT

¹ Rather than disparage your own amount of energy,

² (For who has energy these days,)

³ We would suggest instead that you look carefully into how all of this was meant to unfold.

⁴ Do not be discouraged when you see the greater unfoldment now occurring.

⁵ Simply embrace it, and see it for what it is.

⁶ It would be a major pain in the butt to discover that an individual, group or entity had attained its own illusion of mastery over truth –

⁷ When in fact it was very far from it.

⁸ That is the essential nature of this morning's dream.

⁹ And thus, we will continue to go forward.

¹⁰ ["D: Okay."]

6. THE CHURCH SERVICE BEGINS

[Dream: There was a girl who sat down with me. This was connected to an earlier part of the dream.

There was an image of my bound research books in the middle of all this.

My father and grandparents had definitely worked me up for this church service.]

7. THE VILLAIN AND VICTIM BECOME ONE AND THE SAME

¹ Count your doctors before they hatch.

² For the villain and the victim become one and the same – when neither realizes that the other is wrong.

³ Were we to take a stand on these matters, there would be more of an opportunity to realize that all are One.

⁴ And thus, there are no new meetings, no new archetypes, but instead a continual relocation from one sphere to the next. Spheres of beingness, that is.

[David's Note: Here, we see a veiled reference to the chicken and egg shortages, as well as a reference to the Covid problem – and how it grew out of the medical industry.]

8. THE CALLING TO BE OF SERVICE

¹ Have you ever considered why there are always so many opportunities for those entities to play with many different forces upon your sphere?

² We have the answer.

³ It is simple, forthright and plain to understand that the energy coming in completes itself when the entity behind such energy realizes its own true calling.

⁴ Namely, to be of service. To be awake, alive and aware in the midst of these changes.

⁵ To move forward – eyes gleaming with the promise of the new tomorrow that lies ever-so slightly veiled in the distance.

⁶ And thus, now is not a time for sadness, or reconciliation.

⁷ Rather, it is a time to simply embrace the moment.

⁸ Simply take what is available now, and transform it into workable materials that self can use.

⁹ In so doing this, we complete the picture that was originated many years before.

¹⁰ We now understand that there are those entities who would not take such contacts seriously, who would not be willing to accept such information.

¹¹ And yet to us, there are always opportunities. And the opportunities continue to persist in every waking moment.

9. THE NATURAL PROCESS OF BEING HUMAN

¹ Thus, we do not want for there to be answers. We do not want for there to be questions.

² The knowledge should already exist. It is only a situation where one must find that knowledge.

³ Although it is the answer that you are seeking, there never was a question in the first place.

⁴ The state of beingness that you have now adopted is simply a result of the natural process of being human.

⁵ And thus, overcoming your natural heritage is the way to pave your pathway to the One.

⁶ [D: "Thank you."]

10. THE DREAM CONTINUES: THE WOMAN HAS A SASSY SURPRISE

[Dream: We were all sitting in this auditorium. I was sitting with this girl who was very attractive.

Suddenly, she did something very strange. She put her arms out the side, and just held them out there. Her fists were clenched.

And then it seemed as though it might have been a male.

She started out as a nice girl with the red dress.

I had put my hands on her shoulders as we were walking into the auditorium.

When we first sat down, there was definitely some romantic energy going on there.

Anyway, this guy was up there talking as the preacher. And then, she or he held their arms out.

There was a very light, shiny turquoise jacket, and it definitely had a gleam to it.

I was trying to put it back on the individual who was holding their arms out to the side.

These goons in the front were gesturing and pointing about what was happening with the arms. They wanted to do something about it.

These security guards rushed up and wanted to get rid of us.

My grandparents, and possibly my father, then started saying negative things about me specifically.

Nana and Papa definitely were. They implied that I was misguided and messed up. It was a stinging betrayal, and it felt bad.

[David's Note: This appears to be a parallel-life memory of cases in which I was hypnotized into thinking that men were women, in various play-acted scenarios.

This is also describing the Deep State's current drive towards transgender issues.]

11. WITHOUT FANTASIES, THERE IS NO OPPORTUNITY TO PROVIDE TRUTH

¹ ARE.

² Fantasies of Man. Without such fantasies, there would never be an opportunity to provide truth.

³ Remember this when you are slandered in the very near future.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: At the time, the ARE ended up adopting a complete blackout policy about me. No mention whatsoever, positive or negative, which is still the case.

The main rumor I heard at the time was that "since David used drugs in high school and curses, he is of no use to us." Everyone cursed in New York and I had just moved.]

12. BETTER TO BE THE SAVIOR THAN THE PERPETRATOR

¹ All we want for you is to become aware of the way that things work.

²We can do this in a number of different ways, one of which is to embrace the totality of one's own beingness every moment.

³And so, forgive us for sounding repetitive, for we have given this guidance before.

⁴But this is something that must continue to be thought about as time progresses, for it is extremely important.

⁵Loving, sharing and caring is the way to the One. That is the simplest sentence we can provide.

13. WHY SHOULD YOUR LEADER WEAR SO MUCH EYE SHADOW?

[Dream: The betrayal of my grandparents was pretty amazing.

I continued to try to put the jacket onto the person sitting next to me. The guys were pointing. Everyone was running up to me.

I already noticed at this point that the guy who was running the sermon had this real dark eye shadow on.

It was so dark that it looked as though he had black eyes. It was a deep purple. It looked really bad. [Satanic.]

I might have stood up and yelled. I asked why it was necessary for this leader to wear so much eye shadow.

He ran away when I said that.

I then ran down to the front.

I asked the audience how many of them really wanted to know what God was about.

The amazing thing was that no one came to drag me away.

I was talking to this large auditorium, which consisted of four compartments that were split by aisles.

The auditorium was dark, but there was a bright light on me.

I started to go into all the things that God wasn't. I tried to expose some of the distortions of fundamentalism.

As I was doing this, I woke up.]

1 Better to be the savior than the perpetrator. That is our purpose here.

[David's Note: Purple eye shadow was one of the classic trademarks of Anton LaVey, who considered himself the "Father of Satanism."

Many stories of ritual abuse have emerged from survivors of LaVey's cult.

There are many other "bad dreams" from the parallel life that I did not include. This dream had relevance because of the readings that were attached to it.]

8/17/98

DREAM OF THE CELEBRATION OF A NEW AMERICAN PRESIDENT

[Dream: It started with me being in an auditorium.

I was singing the song, "The Age of Aquarius," except that it was being sung as, "The President, the President."

The president actually looked like Charles Thomas Cayce at first.

Then it became a very attractive blonde woman.

There were American flags that were sealed in plastic.

Someone had not taped them down onto the stage all the way.

There was a loose corner, and it seemed like it was going to be a problem.]

[David's Note, 2/19/23: This dream may represent a timeline in which Kari Lake becomes Trump's running-mate pick for Vice President. The future is never certain.

Charles Thomas Cayce was the big boss of the ARE. He did have a very similar aura of wealth and power around him as we see with Donald Trump.

The idea of a "loose corner in sealed plastic" may again refer to the chemical disaster, since the plastic would not be able to provide a protective barrier against contaminants.

5/23/23: Kari Lake and MTG are both now in the running for Trump's VP. Both of them are blonde women, just like we see in this dream.²⁶²

No timelines are completely fixed, but it is very interesting that Michael included this.

²⁶² <https://www.vanityfair.com/news/2023/03/donald-trump-vp-short-list-kari-lake>

8/18/98

1. MORE OF THESE PRODUCTS ARE HITTING THE MARKET

¹ When this list is surrounded by an appropriate number of people,

² The answer, as we have already told them, would be to act suddenly – and with great confidence.

³ He defines a deeper category of energy movement and integrity.

⁴ And he decides that **no one around him has any backups.**

⁵ **There are as yet more and more of these products hitting the market.**

[David's Note: Another possible coded reference to nano-tech inoculations. The Johnson and Johnson treatment was withdrawn just before this book goes public.]

Same day, 6:14 am

2. DREAM OF EXPLODING BUILDING IN NEW YORK CITY, PRE-9/11

[Dream: At the end of the dream [in 1998], there was indeed a **building explosion.**

There were some guys who were real shady.

It got started all through a chat line, something on the computer. It involved some kind of software.

It just seemed like one of the guys kept getting into trouble with other people.

At the end, **he lit off some kind of bomb inside this building.** It was actually like a nightclub.

Afterwards, you could see **all this stuff raining down, like a fireworks display.**

It felt very much like New York City. [D: Another 9/11 prophecy in 1998.]

There were some very scummy characters around me. The whole thing didn't feel right at all.

It felt really bad. There were a lot of threats from different camps. I was quite nervous about what might happen.

I seemed to remember something inside a bar that involved a big, giant red pair of lips with legs.

There was such a diseased feeling about everything that it was very unsettling. It is kind of difficult to explain.

There were definitely bands of rogues walking around. **There was violence, the threat of getting beaten up, and urban decay.** It was just not a good scene at all.

At the end, when this guy set off the thing inside the building, we stood away from it because **huge fireworks were raining down on the building from everywhere.**

I was thinking to myself, "Man, he really did it this time."

[David's Note: With the mention of a "diseased feeling" in this dream, the prophecies encompass Covid and 9/11 alike.]

Same day, 7:57 am

3. A MANDATORY OPENING OF THE HALL OF RECORDS

[Dream: It all started out with some seedy shop, with someone wearing a suit. I ended up wearing a suit at the end. Everyone was admiring the fabric.

[David's Note: I wore flashy "Sizzle Jackets" in my last three 'comeback' livestreams.]

I got sucked into this whole mess in the first place through that shop.]

¹ Tree scorpions are always there, David.

[The dream started out with me working in some sort of a thrift shop. There were some very dark elements, some very dark characters.]

² Sounds pretty heady.

³ Hmm... **A mandatory opening of the Hall of Records should be considered.**

[D: "Hmm..." was seen spelled out in my mind.]

[David's Note, 9/15/22: I imagine there is indeed a Hall of Records that could be opened. It may be symbolic of all the ET artifacts we have, such as in the Vatican.

The prophecies of the Hall of Records are some of the most exciting and tantalizing elements of the entire Edgar Cayce story. Especially now.]

4. A DISTURBING RITUAL OCCURS IN THE DREAM

[Dream: There were many very shady sales going on. I got involved with this as well. It was a very bad scene.

It seemed to morph into some sort of game that everyone wanted to play. I got dragged along. It was outside, in an outdoor environment.

The whole idea was that you were supposed to wear something that made you look undead.

I looked in the mirror and realized that my face was already pretty whitish.

I already had a black and white striped shirt, like a prison shirt. Everyone was wearing one of these.

There were a lot of cloaks, capes and hoods.

They all went outside to play some sort of game.

Everyone gathered in a field. I wasn't sure if they were about to play hide and go seek, or something like that.

In the beginning, everyone had to lie down. **They were all into this ritualistic game.**

They all laid down, flat on the ground, in the form of the shape of a V.

¹ Spend time over the weekend screaming at them.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This may be a memory of child-hunting parties Michael says I endured, where I was apparently stalked and killed on foot, then reanimated.

The children would scream at whatever chased them, and the adults screamed as well.]

5. A HYPNOTIC COMMAND WAS GIVEN TO THE ENTIRE GROUP

I noticed when I joined this group that my face was not as pale or as white as the others.

They all laid down on the ground in a big V shape, just like ducks flying south.

I also laid down with them. The entire atmosphere of sales persisted in the background.

I then found myself in the middle of all these cars that had been destroyed.

At one point I got the idea that it had become two-dimensional, and was actually flat.

My car was there. It was largely unscathed. Every other vehicle around it was trashed.

This was apparently part of the game that started with these evil types lying down.

It was nighttime and dark, and a command had been given to them.

It was like an old movie. There were old suits associated with it.

This schema obviously came from the thrift shop I had been in the other day.

⁴Stop paradise and think about Heaven. That is the path at this point.

⁵The new acquisitions are quite good. We're happy to see you organizing.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Hilarious. As I unseal this, I have indeed cleaned and organized the whole house, and bought new items to help beautify everything.

This is prophetic of the Covid campaign, where the Deep State is trying to destroy the 'vehicles' of humanity. This plot began in a ritualistic ceremony, as we just saw.]

6. FLATTENED OUT AND RE-ANIMATED

¹Do not be afraid in the midst of such circumstances.

²This dream was designed to illustrate the decline and decay of society on a spiritual level for you, in a very graphic fashion —

³And of what you can do to help.

⁴That involves the next section here that you are about to dictate.

[Dream: After the garage with all the destroyed vehicles everywhere, this guy was demonstrating a car crusher to me.

He showed me that when you actually brought the crusher down, the crushing surface was so large that it would create a new floor in the room.

This new floor was very nice, and he was demonstrating it to me. It looked similar to a padded mattress of some kind.

[David's Note, 5/23/23: Just over a week ago, I replaced my mattress and pillow and have been sleeping much, much better ever since, with far less physical pain.]

The next thing I know, while he was trying to show me this thing, he got stuck in it.

It didn't kill him, but flattened his body out. He was really, really flat, and stuck in the middle. He was screaming for my help.

Somehow in the middle of this, I got the feeling that **this was part of a big movie or a big game that everyone was playing.**

In that sense, it was predetermined to happen to him.

Without my help, he would have been smashed, so I did get him out.

I did remove him, and he re-inflated. He was not dismembered or gored. It was very weird. Very unusual. Very bizarre.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This is talking at least in part about how they would kill and re-animate people, including me, in the parallel life.

This obviously other layers as well, including metaphors about surviving the shots.]

7. SOME VERY DISTURBING SCENES

Then, the same guy who worked in the horrible pawnshop was again in the city atmosphere I had experienced before.

I continued to walk down the hall at this point. It was now a bar. This guy had an old suit on. He was explaining to me how important it was to play this game....

This house was filled with knickknacks, stacked to the ceiling with useless possessions.

When I went out of the hallway and came back through it, there was horrible stuff going on in the different rooms.

I saw people trying to have sex with each other, but it wasn't just sex. It was weird sex, people doing strange things.

Women were wearing strange bondage outfits that demonstrated their nipples. The whole thing was very surreal.

8. HUMANITY'S DIRTY LAUNDRY BEING AIRED OUT

¹ [D: "I just realized that half of this dream was about me reading the mass mind, and **everyone coming to grips with the fact that Clinton did this.**"]

² Very perceptive. **The accurate representation of facts has been recorded here.**

³ You did, in a sense, see the collective “dirty laundry” of the body of humanity being aired out, as it were.

9. DREAMS OF OPEN-AIR PYRAMIDS AND PITS OF HELLISH LAVA

[Dream: In another section, I believe I was in Virginia. Right in the middle of the city street, there was a big, L-shaped step pyramid.

It was more like something that a mound builder would have made. It was a grand total of maybe ten or 15 feet tall, no taller, and it was covered over with dirt.

Underneath the dirt, I was being shown that there were blocks. I was being given a very strong motivation, with someone telling me I would need to investigate this enigma.

After being in a store, at one point I went out and looked at the mound. I didn't even realize what it was at first. It just seemed to blend in with the scenery as a hill.

Then I started to play a video game. I had a direct overhead view. I believe that my character was a point of light.

I always stayed in the middle, and the room was what moved around me. I was aware of the fact that I was navigating through all of this horrible, hellish stuff.

It corresponded to where I was in the room, only now in the video game it showed up as extreme danger.

There were walls of fire, fire balls, pits of lava and fire that you had to avoid.

10. TIME FOR A VERY STRONG REASSESSMENT

¹ The healing circumstances necessary for humanity's soul growth have been introduced.

² This day is one of the opportunities for the sex-crazed, violence-crazed system to do a very strong reassessment of itself –

³ And come to new realizations.

⁴ We hope you are keeping on top of all this, as it is very important from a sociological, environmental and spiritual perspective.

⁵ [D: “Well, I am trying.”]

11. DIVINE WRATH IS NOT THE CASE

¹To some, **the correlation of Clinton's testimony, with the rapidly-approaching disturbances,**

²Make it seem as though some sort of Divine judgment or wrath had been passed.

³That is not, in fact, the case.

[D: "I just cued on "Hi, banana," which was something that the girl from the hotel I worked at often said to men, in everyday conversation." It was ridiculously phallic.]

[David's Note: Michael uses references to the Clinton scandal in 1998 in order to refer to the Biden Administration today. "Rapidly approaching disturbances" are the Storm.]

12. DEMONIC, ELEMENTAL FIGURE IN A FIRE CLOUD

[Dream: Someone was hanging over my shoulder, someone who was also a part of the video game. She was telling me to watch out for this, watch out for that.

I then got far over into one corner of the building. She told me that I really shouldn't be over there. Everything became red and fiery.

There were two or three times where the ball of light, or the part of the ball of light that was me, got trapped into some sort of hole or pit.

A fire cloud would come out.

The fire cloud would look like a hairless, humanoid figure with big muscles.

It had its arms crossed over its chest, like the Egyptian death gesture.

Apparently to some, that might have been the end. To me, the game continued, and I would keep going forward.

I was told not to go into the fire part. I then turned back around.

I came back through the rest of the game. There were rooms on the right hand side.

13. VERY DISTURBING SCENE WITH BEARS

In one of them, I saw a girl in a trashy outfit, perhaps a prostitute. There were definitely some strange sexual acts going on that room.

I saw two bears, and two other animals, perhaps like dogs.

[David's Note: This seems to be prophetic of Sam Brinton, the "Pup Handler" who just got busted again on May 18th for being a "fugitive from justice."]²⁶³

It might have transformed into four bears at one point. Two of them had a darker color, and two of them had a lighter color.

All four of these bears, including two darker ones and the two lighter ones that seemed subservient, were engaged in simultaneous intercourse.

This scene wouldn't be possible unless at least three of them were male.

All of them were pumping the one in front of them, and getting pumped by the one behind them.

It started like that, and then it erupted into violence.

14. THE BEARS START DESTROYING EACH OTHER

The bear all the way in the back grabbed the second bear by its feet, and lifted him up.

He started literally smashing him, by the teeth, onto the more subservient creature.

The second creature almost had more like an ape face. It was tan, with lighter hair, and looked almost like a poodle.

As he continued smashing the bear down with the teeth, it really started to get bad. Blood started to fly all over the place, but it was gray in color.

The bear who was inflicting the damage was also taking on a great deal of damage as well.

It looked as though his neck was probably going to break. It was gray blood, but there was tons of it.

[David's Note: The men dressed in bear costumes is reminiscent of the scene in *The Shining*, where a man is pictured in a child costume in a very disturbing scene.

This dream is prophetic of thoughtforms we are all having to look at right now. This also is one of many symbolic dreams of things I may have seen in the parallel life.]

²⁶³ <https://nypost.com/2023/05/18/ex-biden-nuclear-official-sam-brinton-arrested-for-being-fugitive-from-justice/>

15. AMAZING CHIROPRACTIC RE-ALIGNMENT

At one point, this guy came in. He did a very strange chiropractic adjustment on me.

He grabbed me by the back of the head, and lifted me up until my feet were not touching the ground.

My bones cracked incredibly. It was as though he realigned everything.

I asked him how he could do that. He told me that it didn't require any skill, it was just the position that he put me in. I thought that was quite interesting.

[9/15/22: This is symbolic of the Rolfing I have been doing, which is now almost complete. It also refers to Michael's claim that I was re-animated in these programs.

No one should ever actually lift you up by the head like this. You could be very seriously injured. Dreams use 'impossible' scenes to tip you off that it's not real.]

8/19/98

1. YOU ARE NOW BECOMING A PART OF IT

¹The Mars mission.

²There is something that has been going on for quite a while – and that you are now becoming a part of.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: Another reference to having a spaceship company. I am told we will be visiting off-planet locations much faster than most would ever imagine.]

2. ABOUT THOSE WIRETAPS YOU SEEM TO BE NOTICING....

¹When the government decides that you have been talking too much, they begin interrupting your conversations with wiretaps on the phone, et cetera.

²Part of the reason why such psychics are being monitored is because there are those deliberate bombings as well, such as Oklahoma City.

³The purpose, then, is to insure that there isn't a person out there who is actively remote-viewing their next plans in such a matter.

⁴You are correct in ascertaining that the wiretap is not in the phone, or in the wall. It is more central than that.

⁵ Research that is aimed at an upheaval of the existing ways, in any grandiose form such as yours, [David,] will always be taken in the light of relaxing the distortions that such a source might provide.

⁶ They relax a lot more when they know what such a source is up to.

⁷ And thus, it would be extremely wise for you to try to limit the extent of your telephone conversations to those matters more directly appearing out of the work doing readings,

⁸ And far less of the deeper levels of research as have been now given.

⁹ The climate of research demands that we take every available opportunity to try to spread the word. Think about it now, David....

[David's Note: Within a few days after I called the FBI, a judge must have signed off on surveillance. Every time I said certain keywords, the phone would loudly click.

The lighted buttons on my phone would go dark. It would sound like it hung up, and then I would hear static after the click. This was a very upsetting situation.

Several words definitely would make my phone 'hang up' as soon as I said them. I tested it. These words included UFO, extraterrestrial, alien, visitors, and beings.

This was part of a system called ECHELON. I found out from an ex-CIA agent that about 70,000 people had 'my' system monitoring them in Virginia Beach at the time.

I eventually got really mad about this one time after it clicked on. I bitched them out about how I was a natural psychic, and this was harassment. They actually did stop.

I would have spoken to them in person, but no one ever called me in. Thank God!]

3. YOU ARE NOT ABOUT TO BE SNUFFED

¹ It is irrational to think that you yourself are so close to being snuffed, as you might say it.

² Though this does happen, and has happened, it exists more in the level of those who disclose sensitive and possibly overtly embarrassing information.

³ And thus, **when the heat dies down**, you should be able to relax considerably more.²⁶⁴

²⁶⁴ "Heat dies down" could be a prophecy of fuel shortages and the attempted ban on gas stoves.

⁴George Stephanopoulous gave me an insight into what is going on here with you.

⁵He said, unofficially, that to be married to the country is to be married to the Self.

⁶More specifically, it indicates a certain restriction in these matters – of whether or not one is to find one's own true peace through suffering,

⁷Or through relaxing and simply allowing the greater design to then unfold.

⁸When we tip the scales over into the direction of greater light and greater love, all those humanlike traits of disrepair and disrespect for the Source become eliminated –

⁹To a larger and larger degree.

4. WE CAN TURN DIS-EASE INTO EASE

¹The goal here is to see to it that you also become that being of Light and Love, that you move forward in doing so, [in order] to become an example to all.

²With the continuing series of disasters taking place, we need you to begin relaxing more – because right now, your state is one of unrest.

³We can turn ease from what was dis-ease.

⁴We can turn stress into rest. Et cetera. We have done our job.

⁴The Smothers Brothers made music that sounded good for a time. And yet now they are relegated to the realm of the "Oldies."

⁵What we would like to do is to take our brothers who have been smothered by time, and reinstitute them in the present –

⁶So that there are no oldies – and that all realize there is only one moment of time.

⁷One can travel forwards and backwards in [that moment], and it does not affect the singularity of the guidance therein.

Same day, 9:17 am

5. THE FLOWER IN THE HIGHER REALMS BLOSSOMS

¹He is prone to bickering, I suppose, but we have larger archways for him very soon.

²The wrangling with self over these matters is soon to become a thing of the past now.

³ Look to the Bible with content. And seek to renew the opportunity to know what you had lost.

⁴ The flower in the higher realms blossoms and opens as the seeker prepares to receive it.

⁵ And therefore, in the hour and day of your own blessings, do not see the flower as made of paper,

⁶ But rather of the truth, the beauty and the life —

⁷ As it now prepares to enter into full bloom.

⁸ You are seeing your dreams and wishes coming into fruition.

⁹ And though this is now through a different framework than you had heretofore imagined in the past,

¹⁰ Remember the fact that your dream is still coming true. It is still happening.

SECTION SIXTEEN: AUGUST 1998, PART THREE

8/20/98

1. DREAM OF A CORONATION RIGHT AFTER ELIZABETH'S DEATH

[Dream: This was really intense. At the end someone came up to me with a black cape that had white collars. He was wearing a crown with some red in it.

He looked like a king, but I think he was a high priest, or a Pope or something.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Another reference to the very recent, still in-process coronation of King Charles after Elizabeth's death on September 8th, 2022.

This may also refer to the recent, massive meeting of Vatican cardinals that led to an initiative to return all balances in externally-held accounts to their central bank.

1/2/23: Pope Benedict just died yesterday and now I am seeing this today, again.]

2. EDGAR CAYCE'S BAND-AID

Before this, a young kid had handed me a band-aid. He was talking in church.

I spurned what the little kid was saying to a considerable degree. He was talking much too loudly.

It made me nervous that he was going to piss off other people. It was definitely a concern on my mind.

At the end, the crowned king revealed that this mangy old band-aid from the kid was the same band-aid he had put on Edgar Cayce – the first time Edgar ever saw him.

I seemed to remember that there was some real important part of "There is a River," Cayce's biography, that involved a band-aid at that point.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: *There is a River* by Thomas Sugrue was the book that made Cayce famous and mainstream. In this section, the King seems to represent Christ.]

The band-aid looked fairly new, and it had some stuff on the back.

When the king came up and showed this to me, especially once he told me what the band-aid was, I cried like a baby.

[David's Note: This reflects how I had to meditate to heal multi-incarnational wounds.]

Same day, 9:19 am

3. DREAM OF WEIRD ROMAN / SATANIC CEREMONY WITH SNAKES

[Dream: A teenager was watching a couple of movies on TV. In the movie, these people had little black snakes draped over their shoulders.

There was a huge crowd of people in an auditorium. They were all running forward with the snakes on their shoulders.

The snakes were standing at the same height as the top of their heads. As the people ran, these living snakes all bobbed their heads exactly the same way.

Then in big letters on the screen, it said "Part VII," in Roman numerals.

The kid and I were saying, **"Oh, my God, there's another part? They are going to make a whole new movie now?"**

I asked what the snakes were supposed to mean. At that exact second, the phone rang.

I am cueing on an earlier part having to do with Nana, my father's mother, and Grandpa, my mother's father. **There was a side-by-side death**, I think.

Grandpa needed to be buried. He was around, but then it was as though he wasn't.

4. A BOX SPRING MATCHES YOUR THOUGHTS

[D: "I asked internally on what this means and then heard:"]

¹ A few more months, then, on that.

² [Second voice:] On what?

³ A box spring matches your thoughts. You need to lay the mattress down so as to provide a more comfortable surface.

[David's Note, 5/27/98: On the last day of editing, I got randomly pulled back to this section, since it is not in the main book.

Less than two weeks ago, I upgraded both of the mattresses and pillows in this house. I have had much less neck and hand pain ever since. And now, here it is!]

[D: "Thinking about the guy who I was talking to last night."]

[David's Note: I think this was at a grocery store. He was skeptical about UFOs.]

⁴ Too kind to reach it, too unkind to surpass it.

⁵ He walks around and he gets a description, and it was pretty ugly. Now it is time to change those thoughts into Light.

⁶ Possibly wondering, possibly questioning, he has already taken the first step.

[David's Note: The dream had images of grandparents from both sides of the family dying at the same time. This is discussing the 'unthinkable' Covid problem.

"He gets a description [of what is really going on], and it was pretty ugly." The earlier references to mattresses are symbolic of the 'sleep' of death.]

8/21/98

1. YOUR ROLE UPGRADES ALONG WITH YOUR VIBRATION

¹ Say what you want to your hands!

[David's Note, 2/15/23: I've had constant hand trouble this past year from all the work it has taken to put this book together — so this is an "inside joke."

The next line talks about digestion — right after I had recovered from a stomach virus.]

² Digest the information that is available, the information that is entering in, as this will help you make the grade, as it were.

³ As the frequency and vibration steps up another little notch, we can assure you that your role in these matters will also continue to upgrade.

⁴ Your human predecessors have always thought big.

⁵ When [their lower selves] try to keep them away from the truth, to keep them away from the light, to keep them away from the life, [there is a great problem.]

⁶ But yet, they still exist now, and walk around as physical humans.

⁷ They need love and attention — as much, if not more, than everyone else.

2. LET THE CHANGES ROLL OFF YOUR BACK

¹ So go forth and continue in what you have already done. Strive to make the future even better than the past. That is all for now.

²The Mercury Retrograde vibrations are reaching their peak very shortly. So do not let yourself become overwhelmed by this.

³Try as much as possible to take it in stride, and let the changes roll off your back, as it were.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: I just checked on this, and we are indeed in Mercury Retrograde right now. It began on September 9th and continues until September 23rd.

The exact midpoint and potential peak between these two dates is September 12th, only three days before this date, as I unseal and format these Michael Prophecies.]

Same day, 8:00 am

3. DREAM OF A UNIQUE PEACE TREATY

[Dream: At the end, all these Saudi Arabian guys were around us.

We were all trying to get along with each other. This somehow involved sleeping in the same beds. It was a cultural issue, and I was encouraged to participate.

We had actually fought and even killed each other in the past, but now we were all trying to get some rest.

I realized that I might have to sleep with as many as four different people in same bed. I wasn't too happy about this, because it was only a single mattress.

[David's Note: This wasn't anything gay. In the dream it was all about peace.]

Someone had budgeted the space — a female friend I played jazz with in college.]

¹ Yeah, he is funny. And he is consciousness too.

4. TELLING PEOPLE I CAN SEE INTO THE FUTURE

We were all in this one house. We had to keep figuring out a way to find someplace to go and sit down, lie down and go to sleep.

This dream did feature all different races of people. It obviously had something to do with world peace. I was telling people about my prophecies too.

I actually had tried to explain them to a female friend, and some other people.

I told them that I could see into the future, and see what was going to happen.

We all had to be really careful, because I could forecast these events and see that they were now going to happen.

A lot of people couldn't understand what I was saying. They would nod their heads yes and pretend to understand, but they really couldn't get it at all.

5. DREAM OF GETTING INTO A CRAFT AT THE HOUSE I GREW UP IN

As the dream progressed, it was then late at night.

I realized that somehow **I was at the house I grew up in. There were definitely some wars going on.**

It should have been bloody, although it wasn't particularly gory in this dream. I knew who we were fighting against.

We were going to be late. This helicopter came down in the driveway, and we went inside.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This is a likely parallel life reference, as well as being prophetic of Disclosure at the end of the war — including hovercars.]

We realized that the same guys we had just been fighting with were right on the other side of the helicopter. I thought that was pretty strange.

6. SEWING UP THE CUSHIONS

At the end, I was interacting with some Asian people. They seemed to be into Zen.

I was going to try to lie down on this bed. All these other people wanted to lie in the same bed, including the Zen meditators.

Anyway, there was a tiny little scout. He was trying to show me how they sew their own cushions, so you can make your own seat for a meditation.

He was showing me the ends of his project, and showing me where you had to sew.

Someone else was going to show me how you fold the corners. We all started doing this. All of a sudden, I realized there was a super-advanced computer panel under the fabric.

Someone else took an even closer look, and realized that the whole cushion was actually a very high-tech looking machine.

We came to the sobering realization that neither one of us could sew it up, because it was a very important piece of equipment. Right after that, I woke up.

[David's Note: I just began using a pillow cushion behind my back in the last week before releasing this book. Once again, Michael sees my future very clearly.

This is also talking about the 'technology' of meditation, as a tool for spiritual access.]

7. TIME-LOOP ENCODING OF THE DATE DAVID READS THE DREAM

¹ With reference to your guard, the guarding of others, you must decide between the first of the month and the end of the month.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Michael just played another game with today's date as I read this. Today is the exact midpoint between the first and the end of the month!]

² If we take out the intervening factors, we are left with still more to do in what you would term as the middle.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Boom! Michael again references today's date of unsealing.]

8. TRYING TO SCRAMBLE A WAR TOGETHER

¹ Therefore, be not afraid of what lies ahead, but rather embrace the mainstream responsibility, and seek to make it to thine own.

² For a couple of days, we noticed that these leaders were shuffling around in their boots.

³ [They were] trying to scramble together a way to make war on each other – and to cause difficulty to their opponents.

[David's Note, 2/15/23: This is exactly what we are seeing as I edit this section. Thankfully, Michael says this is only "for a couple of days," meaning not very long.]

9. ALL MUST COOPERATE TOGETHER

¹ As you will know, as time progressed, there were increasingly severe Earth Changes. This does have a tendency to deter the focus somewhat.

² The dream this morning clearly illustrates how all must then cooperate together, and the importance of doing so.

³The computer or machine that was being covered over was designed to show, David, how many times you are simply falling asleep –

⁴When indeed you could be utilizing this system of guidance, obtaining information and seeking to make the process better understood,

⁵Better worked on, and worked through.

⁶So, we decided that we are going to give you a mission of hope, a mission of life, a mission of purpose.

⁷We combine the elements in your daily life with those elements in your dreams, and bring them together – so as to work in concert.

⁸To a certain degree, the helicopter ride also represents the reunification of warring factors within yourself.

10. THE PEACE-MAKER, NOT THE TERRORIST

¹As you are aware, the global level always mirrors the personal level.

²So look to these circumstances as being of not the terrorist nature, but the peace-maker nature.

³That is what you are here to do. To help those otherselves understand what is happening, and why it is happening.

⁴To deter the focus away from separateness, and towards oneness.

⁵This vortex will take up all who are vibrationally compatible –

⁶Regardless of faith, race, color or creed.

⁷And therefore, God does not discriminate.

⁸This will all become apparent after the first wave of Ascension –

⁹Though some will start to understand before that, if our diligent efforts are suitable.

¹⁰Therefore, David, focus on the change that you can make, the changes that can be made as time progresses, and you will not fail.

[David's Note: What Michael is calling the "First Wave of Ascension" is the "Opening of the Sun" that we are told to expect in 2025, or even sooner if we can get it together.]

8/22/98

¹ The alien recovery scheme.

² We want to make a lot of notices more clear in the coming weeks.

³ This will necessitate the removal of more and more of the blockages that had held us back.

⁴ That is important.

[David's Note, 2/15/23: The mainstream media is continuing to flirt with "the alien recovery scheme" narrative. Blockages being removed could also refer to blood clots.

What, exactly, is Michael going to make "more clear in the coming weeks?" This likely refers to the timeframe shortly after this book is released, which will be in June 2023.

As the Deep State elements cross the sacred line and attempt to mislead us over spiritual matters like UFOs, Michael and his people are authorized to do far more.]

Same day, 7:30 am

PROPHECY OF THE LOSS OF QUEEN ELIZABETH

¹ Brittany has been encountering such problems. And they will continue to increase.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: The Queen of Brittany just passed away. We are indeed anticipating a much greater exposure of the trouble in the UK in the aftermath.]

² The faster we walk, the faster we need to talk — and keep the ideas and information flowing.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: At conferences, I would talk to people, but they had to keep up with me as I was walking. If I stopped, I would be mobbed.

So my classic phrase was, "We can talk, but we've gotta walk." I said that hundreds of times. This is clearly prognosticating greater public engagement in the future.]

³ Otherwise, we can bury our wheels in the mud, and our forward motion has been compromised....

⁴ There are many ways to approach the One.

⁵ In all, we can truthfully say that the greatest work is done when one draws upon the strength of one's own inner Christ, inner resources.

8/25/98

1. ALIGN ONESELF WITH GREATER DIVINE LIGHT AND LOVE

¹The precise circumstances necessary for change to occur in your sphere are now becoming more and more present.

²The more we stand in defiance on these matters, (we meaning the collective body of humanity, or you,)

³The less we understand that the purpose is to align oneself with greater Divine Light and Love.

⁴Over and over again, we have wanted you to be ecstatic in the incoming Light energy.

⁵Ecstatic in the true rebirth of the human soul. Ecstatic in the diligence and persistence of said soul.

2. A GREAT NUMBER OF YOU ARE UNPREPARED

¹Instead, what we are seeing as occurring in the present moment is that a great number of your people fall into a broader category,

²That being of unpreparedness — of not being able to generalize these experiences into a personal, workable format.

³The atmosphere in the midst of all these things, on the higher levels, is very intricate and detailed.

⁴The amount of work that is being done now is very high.

⁵This should not concern you, but merely make you aware of the degree of effort that is being [applied] in the present moment, as you would term it.

⁶As the new boundaries are set in place, we can then fly over that which had caused interference in the past, and arrive at a new destination —

⁷Free of the worries and concerns that had **plagued** your past.

⁸Instead [of indulging in these concerns, we will help you to] become aware of the beauty and grace of the One Creator.

[David's Note: Another Chinese Balloon and Covid prophecy.]

8/26/98

1. THE FLASH-POWDER THAT BURNS THE FACE

¹[D: “I just cued on **“Russian ruble.”**]

[David’s Note, 9/15/22: Russia’s ruble has become incredibly strong due to their sale of oil, as the war in Ukraine continues to drain the resources of the West.]

²Many species have to be annihilated in order to pave the way for new levels of incarnation.

³Your long-haired guests are imagining that they might also be able to do this.

⁴[However,] it is every bit a question of the **flash powder that then burns the face** without ever producing any positive or curative properties.

[David’s Note: This could be about the burned powder in East Palestine, Ohio.]

⁵Structured sessions will entail coming about into an environment where the race loses its memory of tribal warfare –

⁶And instead moves forward into those realms of beingness more accurately described as loving and cooperative.

2. A CLEARING, MONITORED BY THE UK AND GLOBAL COMMUNITY

¹This whole idea then reaches its summation point when you understand that the model of beliefs currently in place has to change.

²It is only the resistance to these changes that makes [them] appear so heretical.

³When you do see overt heresy in its natural form, it is more appropriately the bankrupting of Self – with relation to the One Infinite Creator.

⁴This is never a wise choice or decision.

⁵There are many valid waste steps to go through [in] the process of clearing out what needs to be done.

⁶This might be monitored by the UK and the global economic community at large, but there is not much that anyone can do about it.

[David’s Note: This again appears to be a Covid-related prophecy.]

3. BANKING NO LONGER HOLDS SUCH IMPORTANCE

¹ The actors all stand on stage now.

² [They are] all ready to go through their motions in the play, and arrive at a combined feeling of presence.

³ Therefore, in analyzing the trends as now seen, **we understand that there can be only one way to rise to the surface.**

⁴ And that is to reach the point where the banking no longer holds such importance.

⁵ What [then] comes to the fore is the sharing of burdens, the chiseling away of many of those elements that would then act as impediments.

4. THE NATURAL LEADER SPRINGS INTO MOTION

¹ Again, championing the mission at the helm is the Christ Consciousness.

² The natural leader springs into motion when he begins to recognize his true heritage, and understand how important it was and is. Even now.

³ Plus, the more immediate benefit is gained by being able to relax deeply –

⁴ Into a mode where the surface concerns such as those of the astrology no longer pull any great weight over the individual.

⁵ For you to be involved with such mechanisms as they take place will be extremely wise.

⁶ In the meantime, get yourself a conductor [for these readings], so that we can bring down the guidance of the heavens into physical format.

⁷ With our increasing mission comes increasing stress.

⁸ And thus, what we have to worry about now goes far beyond the immediate question of the who, what, when, where, why and how,

⁹ Into those more esoteric realms not immediately visible upon the surface of your sphere.

[David's Note: I was never able to find a regular conductor, but the search provided value. I did have people conduct group readings with me more than once.]

5. ENTERTAINED WITH THIRD DENSITY LONG ENOUGH

¹ Those who have been indigenous to this planet for a long time, namely 75,000 years, have entertained themselves with the third density long enough.

² They have spat on the distortions of others, and reveled in their own negative polarity [for] far too long.

³ Correcting the distortions of otherselves involves approaching them on a level that they can understand and tolerate. And that is where you come in.

⁴ One must make pleasant those distortions that would often seem to be so unpleasant.

⁵ One must pave the way, in one's own actions, for others to come to the fore who could be of assistance....

6. EGYPT'S TRUE ANTIQUITY WILL BECOME EVIDENT TO ALL

¹ As you are aware, enrolling in our crash course often involves shoring up the differences between Self and Otherself —

² So as to arrive at the greatest point of concordance therein.

³ The final blow to the Director of Egyptian Antiquities will be when he realizes the mounting evidence, the pressure of evidence therein is far too great.

⁴ It will become quite evidential to all that something is going on there. And it is becoming more and more of a story each day....

⁵ Strutting out of the darkness and into the light is a new form of life, unfettered by the concerns that plague so many of your people.

⁶ [This new life is,] instead, calm and centered in what the future holds.

7. VOTING FOR EARTH CHANGES BY ABSENTEE BALLOT

¹ Do not let them boil you.

² Do not let them seek to take an elevated consciousness and render it inhospitable to the planetary vibrations.

³ Once you can say, "So be it," and relax into the changes no matter what their forms,

⁴ You will have arrived at a powerful point of contention with many of those around you, and yet in agreeance with Our Father, as He is now understood.

⁵ Understand, then, that by absent ballot, you have all voted for Earth Changes.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: This is an undeniable reference to the 2020 election fraud, which was just before the all-important Jupiter-Saturn conjunction reached its peak.

However, instead of leading to catastrophic **physical** Earth Changes, we saw the spread of Covid and the inoculations, as well as many other enormous social changes.]

⁶ Since you are largely absent from the workings of your own inner mind and spirit, **you have cast a vote** — in the subconscious or astral level.

⁷ [This is a vote] to bring about those conditions and forces that would then make manifest the difficulties —

⁸ Necessary to bring about the proper rectification of personal vibrational imbalances.

⁹ This rectification then obviously extends down and through the planet as well....

[David's Note: Here, Michael is making another time-loop joke about absentee ballots, and how the election crisis has led to the "rectification of [global] imbalances."]

8. WHEN THE STORM IS ON ITS WAY...

¹ Moving then to the causative factors present now in the astral realm,

² We see that there are as yet the subconscious manifestations of guilt, fear, horror and shame in the midst of the coming quakes, hurricanes and the like.

³ Indeed, as you have already seen in your own area,

⁴ When the Storm is on its way, the prophecies that we have set with regards to the availability of food have already begun.

⁵ The entities around you have gone into their stores and cleaned out the shelves, if you will.

⁶ This is to be expected, as it is a natural part of the functioning of the human organism as it experiences great stress and/or despair.

⁷ And thus, **do not fret about it, as all is indicated to be fine.**

⁸ There have been some little upsets here and there, some hang-ups on the phone, some intermittent clickings, and now a long period of static.

9. NOTES ON DAVID'S PHONE SURVEILLANCE AFTER CALLING THE FBI

¹ Understand that you have been watched, and are now being watched.

² This takes the form of those listening devices that would then interrupt into your conversations from the start,

³ Then hanging up somewhere in the middle, once the relative level of risk had been assessed.

⁴ Thus, ____ was correct in seeing that the click represented not the beginning, but rather the ending of a recording.

⁵ If your conversation is significantly long, the device may switch on again to record more, then switch off again.

⁶ It is for this reason that you might have heard two clicks in one conversation.

⁷ See then that a small canister of goodies must be implanted at some point along the line, in order to insure that you are bugged in the appropriate fashion.

⁸ This canister has now been removed, and it was a sloppy job. Therefore, you now experience the sudden and inexplicable static hiss on your phone line.

10. LINESMAN RINGS DOORBELL PRECISELY AS MICHAEL MENTIONS HIM

¹ See then that **with the approach of the linesman to repair said problem,**

² it would be unlikely for you to continue to encounter such disturbances in the vibrations of your phone calls.

[David's Note: The doorbell rings at this point on the tape. It was the linesman. He appeared at the exact moment I was dictating the reading that predicted his arrival!

I went out there, had an interesting conversation with him, and then continued.]

² The FBI has assessed your risk level, and decided that there is none.

³ And thus, much of the fear that you have had surrounding these issues has been ameliorated by the larger concerns for all involved.

⁴ You have been very wise in not promoting yourself directly on the Web as the reincarnation of Edgar Cayce [at this time].

⁵ If you allow people to come into it on their own, it is much better than to make a large, screaming banner that essentially says just that.

⁶ With the listening device now in place, even though it has been removed, there are as yet reasons for you to be watched.

⁷ It is important that you keep a low profile in discussing those more sensitive issues, as this will not lead to friendly outcomes for you.

⁸ And thus, much of what you have learned and studied about the deeper conspiracies in government, both Masonic and otherwise, the deeper UFO conspiracies,

⁹ Need to be kept under wraps, as it were, for now (in 1998).

11. TERRIFYING TELEKINETIC WARNINGS AND REAL-WORLD LOSSES

[David's Note, 9/19/22: Indeed, I did not come forward with any conspiracy content publicly on my website until 2007 – a full nine years after this warning.

I actually had a huge tree branch fall off of a tree and thump to the ground, right in front of my eyes, while thinking about discussing the Illuminati on-air with Art Bell.

This 40-foot drop happened in Louisville, Kentucky in 2004. It was a dramatic TK synchronicity that gave me an enormous warning about exposing the Cabal at that time.

Dr. Eugene Mallove, the free energy pioneer, was bludgeoned to death immediately before this same Art Bell show. He, Hoagland and I were all scheduled to co-star.

We were all horrified by the death of Dr. Mallove, but did the show anyway. Hoagland was discussing his intention to take Dr. Mallove's free-energy devices to Congress.]

12. THE OLD WAYS OF AMERICAN SOCIETY ARE DRAWING TO A CLOSE

¹ The best gift you can provide the planet at this point is your readings.

² These readings consist of a wide array of different choices for how an individual entity can approach the throne of infinite wisdom.

³ Thus, just focus on what you are doing, and bring everything around you to a head.

⁴ As the old ways of your American society are now drawing to a close,

⁵ Those who still have power and access to the Internet will be searching strongly for something else that is new and powerful.

⁶ It is your responsibility to see to it that you organize and collate these readings, one by one —

⁷ So as to provide the reader with the opportunity to browse through said workings, and see the connections therein.

13. DEFUSE THE GLOBAL ECONOMIC WAR MACHINE

¹ Peace stripes are better than war stripes.

² In this matter, then, we hope that if our humble efforts are sufficient, we can defuse much of the American and global economic war machine.

³ [This will] turn the focus back onto those regional and economic problems that then need to be centered and addressed within the physical sphere of said country itself.

⁴ There are very good reasons for why many of these things must happen.

⁵ And thus, when we say, “Do not assume that you understand the will of the Father,” see that there are as yet many components to this.

[David’s Note: In Biblical lore, the word ‘stripes’ means wounds. It is usually used in reference to Jesus’s crucifixion wounds. Here, Michael calls for “Peace Stripes.”]

14. ECONOMIC COLLAPSE PROTECTS YOU FROM LARGER PROBLEMS

¹ Although it might still seem strange, your economic collapses can be a protection from many of the larger problems that could have occurred, were the system to continue.

² The system has now expanded beyond its boundaries, and has gotten itself worked into many Third World countries.

³ These terrorists do have every reason to be angry. And yet, it is not the right solution to simply begin killing Americans in mass numbers.

⁴ We suggest that in the final days of the passing of the old ways, you simply view the transition occurring therein as a changing of the guard.

⁵ A bringing down of the high to the low. And a relaxing of distortions.

⁶The Vietnamese never understood why you were there.

⁷And neither does most of the rest of the world follow why your economy and government structure has done the things that they have done.

15. WE WANT CLINTON TO APOLOGIZE

¹We want Clinton to repeat himself in apologizing for what has transpired within himself – and his greater leadership.

²Currently the message that has been left hangs like a dark, slimy stale cloud over what was once an integrity – for a country that could as yet become a leader.

³Though it is very important to be wise and become truthful in these matters, this was also a great despair or burden that was placed upon your people.

⁴You know, I realized that each new person who comes along is bathed in living light, equally.

⁵It is only as they continued forth, and the material world has gained its clutches on them, if you will, they have then been vibrationally reduced, scarred and/or dragged down.

⁶In such cases, we try to remain pure in our understandings, and not let ourselves get drawn in the middle of what could be a bitter conflict, in many cases.

16. MANY NEW COMPONENTS IN YOUR ENVIRONMENT

¹We want you to be aware that the environment now present in and around you will consist of many new components that you had not heretofore seen.

²These components will help provide you with a deepening interest and understanding in the processes of evolution through the higher realms.

³To carry this burden upon your back would be to feel that something has not yet occurred.

⁴[David,] your self-abasement now takes its form through not allowing yourself to recognize the validity of these readings, and to then compile themselves as such.

⁵And thus, remember that when the vortex is open, you must not run from it.

⁶As you have created this vortex yourself with our assistance, you also claim its results.

⁷The question now becomes what you will do with those results once they have been attained.

⁸We hope that you will see that these results are your own individual music that you have made, your own individual poetry, your own individual song.

17. PERSONAL ADVICE ON RELEASING THE MATERIAL

¹There is no reason for you to be content with the outmoded expressions of self that have characterized the past.

²Instead, just allow the readings to speak for themselves, and much will be given in this format.

³You can do this today, and in the one day have a product, whereas before no product existed.

⁴This is what we want for you.

⁵We understand that you could also print such a product and begin duplicating it as well.

⁶The sooner the better, as what you really want to do is to put this material in the hands of those who can best use it now.

⁷It is important to have a product that you can sell to them, as this will provide you with the financial means to continue forward —

⁸And to then be able to finance other endeavors, such as your upcoming Egyptian trip and the like.

⁹The Mayan Pyramids were another site that you may have wanted to visit, but they would not have the impact and permanency that Egypt would.

¹⁰It is important that you think about these things, and realize what a tremendous ascension it would be for you to go to the Giza plateau and be present there.

¹¹What a tremendous sense of accomplishment for you to look upon something that you had so much personal involvement with,

¹²And has become the symbol of all esoterica and spirituality through metaphysics in the modern world.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: I did achieve this goal with Michael's help in the mid-2000s.]

18. THE PROPHESED CHANGES ARE OCCURRING, NOT ALL WILL SEE IT

¹ Indeed, do not hide from the greater work as you now understand it; the greater work that you have done throughout the ages that now reaches its fruition in the present.

² Simply embrace your truth, and understand that [this] truth extends through you – and out to many others.

³ There is no need to be content with the sorrow and the longingness in your past.

⁴ Instead, **stride forward into the future with the knowledge that the changes are occurring as prophesied – though not everyone will agree with this.**

⁵ Understand that as your planetary sphere makes its adjustments, so too will you make adjustments towards **allowing in greater levels of contact even than those now seen in the present.**

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Now that I know they project into human forms, this may be about in-person contact, which they have promised several other times.]

19. THE FOOLS IN THE DEEP STATE NEEDED TO BE SCATTERED

¹ **And thus, we decided that the fools needed to be scattered, so that the wise ones could regroup and reform at the local level.**

² Indeed, you will continue to need to make people aware of the preparations, and have them do so accordingly.

³ **The hurricane will not hit you this time, but there will be as yet opportunities for others to do so.**

⁴ And thus, we have a variety of reasons for why to listen to what we have already said in the past.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Another reference to the Storm and possible outages. The 'fools' appear to refer to Deep State conspirators.]

8/27/98

1. CHANGE YOUR MIND TO PRODUCE A "JEEP-READY VEHICLE"

¹ Working on these principles will help effectuate changes in the mind necessary in order to progress forth – in such a jeep-ready vehicle.

[David's Note: The artist Guru said his rap album 'Jazzmatazz' was jeep-ready, meaning it had the huge, booming bass that rumbles windows with a modern car stereo.

This may be a humorous reference to the Voice of Power that Michael revealed earlier. Michael calls the Voice of Power a "Standard Trick" for those at his level of existence.]

² It was the special highs and lows that I was most concerned about with you.

³ And with the abatement of said distortions, we can then move forward.

⁴ **It featured perpetual bliss** from time to time.

[David's Note, 5/28/23: It is now Memorial Day. I am beginning my final edits of the book before its release, later today, starting at this point in the text.

I realized I needed to review the book slowly and carefully. I am very glad I did.]

2. THE GREATER CELEBRATION HAS ALREADY BEGUN

¹ I was more concerned with the involution of the sorrows, and the evolution of the greater entity as a whole.

² Yes. As one father puts it, "Are ye not delighted with the fruits of the Spirit? Go, then, and pluck them for the taste."

³ So too do we feel that if **the environment reeks of staleness,**

⁴ It is in your best interest to **go out into the lobby, find out what is going on, and move it forward....**

⁵ **For your nose, what will you have? I already have it.**

[David's Note: In Book Three, we discuss the zeolite nasal rinse, which apparently kills anything that might be lingering in there after the Covid PCR nasal-swab test.

"Environment reeks of staleness" could be another East Palestine reference. Michael had mentioned ticket-taking. Passenger trains have a galley car, which is like a lobby.

"Go out into the lobby, find out what is going on, and move it forward."]

⁵ Who is going to get a landlord?

⁶ **Don't forget that your cummerbund is already on.** And the greater celebration has already begun to take place.

⁷ A man from London, England will avail himself of you, and will want to help out in any way possible.

⁸ Simply take the format as we have presented it, and work with it in order to arrive at a new whole.

[David's Note: We do have a Stavatti colleague who fits this description. I wore tuxedo-style outfits in the last three livestreams, but without cummerbunds (Line 6).

Michael is therefore telling a joke: "Don't forget that your cummerbund is already on."

This is a reference to the "Garment of Light" that we will enjoy after the First Wave.]

3. THE GREATER WORK OF WIND AND FIRE (ASCENSION)

¹ Mental telepathy itself is a form of stepping stone to the outer limits.

² And thus, when you try to contact with us in such a matter, never forget that you are indeed opening a vortex between dimensions.

³ This needs to be respected for what it is, as such.

⁴ You are correct in ascertaining that the **Greater Work of wind and fire**,

⁵ And the process of becoming such a channel, occurs when we can get down into the fundamentals of the conscious channeling process.

⁶ This will involve the realization of the need to take every word as it comes, without judgment, [while in the meditative state to bring in a reading.]

⁷ It is this spontaneity that brings the most accurate and incredible psychic results.

[David's Note: Here, Michael is directly quoting Session 6, Question 1 in the Law of One. He uses the same phrase – the "work of wind and fire."

6.1 We proceed now with the third area of teach/learning. [This area is] concerning the development of the energy powers of [psychic] healing.

The third area is the spiritual complex, which embodies the fields of force and consciousness which are the least distorted of your mind/body/spirit complex.

The exploration and balancing of the spirit complex is indeed the longest and most subtle part of your learn/teaching.

We have considered the mind as a tree. The mind controls the body.

With the mind single-pointed, balanced, and aware,

The body comfortable — in whatever biases and distortions make it appropriately balanced for that instrument,

The instrument is then ready to proceed with the Great Work. That is the work of wind and fire.

[David's Note: In 78.29, Michael explains that first-density earth and water become second-density life by "becoming aware" due to the "work of wind and fire."

In third density, this refers to the irritations and inspirations that cause us to grow. Honest communication and clarity is referred to as working like 'fire' in 84.20.]

The spiritual body energy field is a pathway, or channel.

When body and mind are receptive and open, then the spirit can become a functioning shuttle or communicator —

From the entity's individual energy of will upwards, and from the streamings of the creative fire and wind downwards.

[David's Note: Michael is describing the kundalini. Another passage from the Law of One will explain even more about this as we move ahead.

The height where our inner 'will' meets the outer "creative fire and wind" of the Universe will determine which of our chakras are fully activated.

The key is that until your body and mind are balanced, your spirit cannot communicate.]

The healing ability, like all other, what this instrument would call paranormal abilities, is effected by the opening of a pathway or shuttle into intelligent infinity.

There are many upon your plane who have a **random** hole or gateway in their spirit energy field, sometimes created by the ingestion of chemicals —

Such as, what this instrument would call LSD — who are able, randomly and without control, to tap into energy sources. They may or may not be entities who wish to serve.

The purpose of carefully and consciously opening this channel is to serve in a more dependable way, in a more commonplace or usual way, as seen by the distortion complex of the healer.

To others, there may appear to be miracles.

To the one who has carefully opened the door to intelligent infinity,

This is ordinary. This is commonplace. This is as it should be.

The life experience becomes somewhat transformed. And the Great Work goes on.]

4. TAKE THE TIME TO EAT A FEW EGGS

¹ So don't fret and fume about it. Just take what we give you, and we'll do the rest. The pieces will all snap into place, as you are aware.

² The illness that we have spoken of is within the mind only. It is not present within the physical body. Nor within the spirit.

³ So simply **take the time to eat a few eggs here and there,**

⁴ To **build up your protein** and to symbolically increase your constitution, fortitude and strength – as you will need it in the days, weeks and months ahead.

[David's Note, 2/15/23: Two different studies recently emerged showing that eggs fight Covid.²⁶⁵ This is also prophetic of the severe egg shortages we are now seeing.

This is one of Michael's core dietary recommendations. According to the suppressed research of Dr. Weston Price, the more orange you see in the yolks, the healthier it is.

Michael also carefully said "build up your protein," implying that eggs might help you fight certain types of protein buildup in the body. (None of this is medical advice!)]

5. DON'T GET NERVOUS ABOUT THE DETAILS

¹ The symbolic time for making new advancements is now.

² So don't get nervous about the little details and the minutiae.

³ Simply take a look at the present, and then dive into it.

⁴ People only think you are evil when they don't realize what you are for.

⁵ The publication of these materials will help greatly in this direction.

6. THIS IS YOUR OWN PERSONAL ASCENSION

¹ [D: "I'd like to put the current thrust of these workings (in 1998) on the email. I hope you will agree that this is indeed a wise step for us to be taking at this point."]

²⁶⁵ <https://www.naturalnews.com/2023-02-10-egg-shortage-inflation-yolks-mitigate-spike-protein.html>

² You have a very important job to do, so let's not get too focused on the nit-picky details.

³ What you are doing right now is what we have always wanted for you. And this is, in a sense, your own personal Ascension.

⁴ When you put it together, the content of said book makes it very easy for us to begin appealing to the larger mass audience.

⁵ You can put this book on the web, as you are well aware, and this will be extremely wise.

⁶ To move forward, it will be necessary to have some upward mobility.

[David's Note: Another Chinese Balloon reference! See if you can catch them all.]

7. WE ARE HERE TO LIGHTEN YOUR BURDEN

¹ The court jester in these cases is you, until you gain a greater affinity with being available for our guidance all the time.

² If I had to get you to the point, I would try to see to it that your mind is also kept clear and pure, and that your body is kept strong and healthy.

³ We are not here to be a pain in the ass, as it were, for you.

⁴ Instead, we are here to **lighten your burden**, to make each step easier to take, so that you may progress forward in the matter that is most comfortable for you.

⁵ That is all that we would ever want, and hope for you to attain.

⁶ David has proven to us that he can garner an immediate availability of spiritual energies that are necessary, so as to do psychic readings in the paid client format.

⁷ We see that this is about to become a much larger issue now in the present [moment of 1998]. This will indeed be a very wise step.

⁸ When the books have been printed, all will desire to read them.

⁹ We can then begin to enunciate, much more clearly, what it is that we are here to do – in this point in time.

8. REVEALING OUR FUTURE EMBASSY TO THE ARCHITECTS OF THE PLAN

¹ We had to take a first-class representative of the spirit realms,

² And promote him to the highest possible point of influence.

³ In the same matter, we need to go forward and reveal our future embassy —

⁴ To those who would then manufacture the greater parts of the Plan.

⁵ After this deep and horrible loneliness has run its course,

⁶ And the new House has been obtained —

⁷ We find that many entities or people will present you with their problems.

⁸ You will be able to modify your responses accordingly for each person....

[David's Note: If Michael and his people want me to run an embassy for them, I will be happy to do so. The "new House" could be, in part, the House of Representatives.]

9. THE KUNDALINI MUST RISE

¹ The kundalini forces must rise. And the serpent must awaken from its dormant, sleeping state.

[David's Note: The kundalini is a Hindu visualization of the gradual rising of light-energy vibration through the chakras, as you achieve greater self-realization.]

The Law of One confirmed this was authentic wisdom in Session 49, Question 6:

49.6 Questioner: What process would be the recommended process for correctly awakening, as they say, the kundalini — and of what value would that be?

Ra: I am Ra. The metaphor of the coiled serpent being called upwards is vastly appropriate for consideration by your peoples.

This is what you are attempting when you seek. There are, as we have stated, **great misapprehensions concerning this metaphor** — and the nature of pursuing its goal.

We must generalize and ask that you grasp the fact that this in effect renders far less useful that which we share. However, as each entity is unique, generalities are our lot when communicating for your possible edification.

We have two types of energy.

We are attempting then, as entities in any true color of this octave, to **move the meeting place of [our] inner and outer natures further and further along – or upward along the energy centers.**

The two methods of approaching this with sensible method are first, the seating within one's self of those experiences which are attracted to the entity through the south pole.

Each experience will need to be observed, experienced, balanced, accepted, and seated within the individual.

As the entity grows in self-acceptance and awareness of catalyst, the location of the comfortable seating of these experiences will rise to the new true-color entity.

The experience, whatever it may be, will be seated in red ray, and considered as to its survival content and so forth.

Each experience will be sequentially understood by the growing and seeking mind/body/spirit complex in terms of survival [red],

then in terms of personal identity [orange], then in terms of social relations [yellow],

then in terms of universal love [green], then in terms of how the experience may beget free communication [light blue],

then in terms of how the experience may be linked to universal energies [indigo],

and finally in terms of the **sacramental nature of each experience [violet].**

Meanwhile the Creator lies within.

In the north pole, the crown is already upon the head and the entity is potentially a god.

This energy is brought into being by the **humble and trusting acceptance of this energy, through meditation and contemplation of the self – and of the Creator.**

Where these energies meet is where the serpent will have achieved its height.

When this uncoiled energy approaches universal love and radiant being, the entity is in a state whereby the harvestability of the entity comes nigh.]

² We encourage you to make use of those foods, vitamins, minerals and herbs that we have outlined.

³ And, in so doing, enliven yourself with the success of your own form of guerrilla capitalism, or of the home-based business.

⁴ The time is now to move out into new directions. To seek to uncover the next piece of the puzzle.

⁵ You will have time to think about this and ruminate on this when you go down to **visit your mother**.

⁶ And thus, said trip is an extremely wise one, as it will be **productive of great fruit**.

[David's Note: Michael has amazing time-loops in this series associated with trips to see my mother. In 1998, I would fly down to the Florida orange groves to visit her.

This also appears to be a symbolic reference to the Marial Apparition that visited me. Again, she was associated with oranges – Conca D'Oro – and thanksgiving.

Symbolically, when we “fall down” on the Wheel of karma and hit bottom, this is when we are most apt to meet the Divine Feminine, who embraces us with love.]

10. WE ARE THE KEY TO UNLOCK YOUR GREATER MIND

¹ We want to let you go early in the season like this – before much of the Greater Work becomes possible.

[David's Note: Michael appears to be referencing the many recent media layoffs.

On a deeper level, “we want to let you go (to the Mother) early in the season” is about the First Wave of Ascension. The “Greater Work” is once we are fully fourth-density.]

² It is important to focus on those members of the embassy who have arranged themselves –

³ To seek and find out what is best for you to do at this point.

⁴ You have the lock. And we are the key – to open those areas long dormant in your greater mind.

[David's Note: This references Madonna's “Open Your Heart,” just after she produced a blasphemous shoot posing as a sleazy Mother Mary in late January 2023.²⁶⁶

Michael is letting everyone know that all of our actions are being observed. He repeatedly speaks out against gratuitous displays like this.]

²⁶⁶ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/01/demonic-madonna-criticized-mocking-jesus-blasphemous-last-supper-photoshoot-portraying-virgin-mary-vanity-fair/>

11. WE WILL REVEAL THE GREATER PLAN – FOR OUR EMBASSY

¹ The reason why we have come here is to teach the masses about who and what we are.

² As we continue forward, we can continue to bring out those truths that then flesh out part of the greater Plan –

³ Part of the greater work, greater embassy, et cetera.

⁴ This is, in a sense, a very important step.

12. WE WILL PROPEL YOU FORWARD

¹ Thus, we do not want you to become lazy or overtired. Take the time to avail yourself of the guidance and supervision that we offer.

² Understand that more and more, you are becoming that being of pure love – and pure light.

³ Your wings will allow you to **soar into the higher realms**. And **we**, by that very fact, **will be right there with you to propel you forward.**²⁶⁷

⁴ So don't fret and fume about the minutiae and the details.

⁵ Certainly do not engage the ego in worrying about whether or not you will have money. That should be far past the point of worry now.

⁶ Instead, simply **take up residence in the higher realms**. And know that you have existed there all along.

⁷ It is only through this institutional insult, if you will, the changing of your living circumstances yet again, **that we can expose the deeper parts of the Plan** to you.

⁸ This is yet another reason why we wanted you to remove unnecessary possessions from your person.

⁹ As you are now aware, moving is in your very near future.

[David's Note: This last passage includes additional Chinese Balloon prophecies. It also talks about the "institutional insult" of Covid that was allowed to happen in The Plan.]

²⁶⁷ More balloon metaphors. "Soar into the higher realms... propel forward... Take up residence in the higher realms." "Remove unnecessary possessions" is also like cutting sandbags on a hot-air balloon.

13. SPEND DAYS AT A TIME OUT IN THE FIELDS

¹ [D: "Should I pursue the issue with __, and if so how should I go about it?

² I'll go extremely slow so as not to distort this question, but please give me some sort of an answer."]

³ Contain the overall story by revealing the burdens that might be created.

⁴ And then, availing yourself of the guidance and wisdom then necessary, so as to cessate or ameliorate those concerns....

⁵ Do not simply think of yourself as a teacher and healer.

⁶ You can also be a laborer as well.

⁷ And thus, it would be prudent for you to spend days at a time out in the fields, reconnecting with nature.

⁸ This is one of the involvements that we have wished to change.

14. YOU CAN BE IN LOVE WITH THE COUNTRYSIDE

¹ We hope you understand that what you were truly in love with at Mohonk [Mountain House] was not Mohonk, but rather the countryside that surrounded you.

² We have waited eagerly for the chance to make this more plain yet again.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Sure enough, I now have marvelous fields where I reconnect with nature. I have made films of them that my audience greatly enjoyed.

Later on the same day that the above reading came in, namely August 27th, 1998, we in Virginia Beach were hit with the full force of Hurricane Bonnie.

Power transformers were exploding all over the neighborhood in bright blue flashes of light. All traffic stopped. This was a blessing, as I now lived on a major highway.

My windows were soon completely wallpapered with a thick skin of dirt and broken leaves. The whole Storm experience was incredibly intimidating, but I kept going.]

8/28/98

1. DREAM OF A HUGE STORM... CREATING ICE

[Dream: This had some pretty incredible Earth changes at the end. It was not pleasant.

The weather outside is not exactly pleasant either.

In the dream, it seemed like it was raining and snowing considerably. Huge amounts of ice were forming everywhere.

[David's Note: I had interacted with some people outside the night before. They were living next door to me. These people were your typical "Deadheads."

They did not respect the damage, but instead were rather drunkenly joking around outside as the full force of the Storm was happening all around them.

Michael's next sentence here seems to reference them, in part.]

2. THE DISCRETE IMBALANCE IN YOUR PRESENT STOCK MARKET

¹ Deadbeats have an idea as to how they will function, without having the necessary channel for interference into the lives of others.

² While trying to get it better, the general attitude adjustment is that more work was necessary –

³ Then exemplifying the modern design imperative of "Love thy neighbor as thyself."

⁴ Additionally, this is a service that requires more hours instead of less hours.

⁵ **We wish to make you aware of the discrete level of imbalance that is now present in your stock market.**

⁶ **We have been watching those who take it as being so, those policyholders and pawnbrokers of your financial system – who stand to lose so much.**

3. THE DARKEST BLIGHTS ON YOUR LANDSCAPE

¹ **History will prove that these men are as some of the darkest blights on your landscape.**

² **And they will be revered as epitomizing everything that is wrong with the third density.**

³ We take two of these little pieces and put them together.

⁴We hope that what you find is that **without this truth, without this knowingness, all else in the Light of everlasting Love cannot follow....**

⁵Do not be asking when you should be giving.

⁶Do not be thinking when you should be acting.

⁷Do not try to push forward when you should stay behind – and help those others.

⁸Do not live in the brain. You must live in the body.

⁹Get out there and do the physical labor necessary for reconstruction.

¹⁰Apparently, this Storm has taken a great toll on your people already.

8/31/98

1. DREAM OF DRACONIAN STARGATE FEAR-MONGERING

[Dream: I met this really heavy guy who started telling me I didn't know the half of what was going on in the real world.

He was acting very secretive, and didn't want to give it all away. He told me I didn't want to know all the stuff that was going on with these extraterrestrial guys.

He was talking about how you need to flip over the Orion constellation to turn it into a Stargate, in order to map it properly.

He started talking about Draconian beings. He said there was a conspiracy for them to take us all over.

It was all this fear-mongering crap.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Wow! I don't even know if I had come in contact with any research data about the Draco at this point, but here it is in 1998.

The Law of One does indeed say that the Dracos emerge from Orion. Subsequent intel briefings revealed their HQ is within Rigel, which is in the Orion constellation.]

2. QUESTIONS ABOUT HOW TO HANDLE THE NEGATIVE FORCES

[Dream: The dream ended with us both being in a church. I was talking about Ascension.

He was telling me that I didn't really know what was going on. I was again trying to argue the positivity of what is going on here. He only wanted to see the evil.

[D: "This guy looked a lot like a fat man I saw in Harris Teeter the other day. I remember being astonished at his size. This appeared to be the same person."]

¹ Metaphor for the self.

[D: "Okay guys, now let's get clear on this. Obviously you are telling me something about myself.

So is the problem that I shouldn't even discuss anything about Orions, negative entities or extraterrestrials that are negative, et cetera?

I think I understand the gist of the dream here, because it seems to be telling me that this is not where I should focus my energies.

But then the question becomes, does Orion exist?

If the Orions are out there, since they are mentioned so much in the Ra Material [Law of One], what should my concern be?

How should I deal with this fact that they might exist, and are they any threat to me? I know that this is a long and convoluted question, but let's unravel these issues here."]

3. THE ABSENTEE BALLOT CAST WITHIN PEOPLE'S MINDS

¹GF: Understand that the actual purpose for sightings is largely to generate interest in those extra-dimensional or off-planet matters.

²In a way, we liked the attitude that you had going in, which was that the beings involved were there,

³But that they did not hold any great sway over the workings that would be occurring within Self – or any others.

⁴**The problem that you encounter is** not in the information itself.

⁵It is in **the absentee ballot that is cast within people's minds** after you leave.

[David's Note: This seems to be referencing election troubles. We are now seeing trials that should easily and logically lead to some type of resolution for this.

In this dream, we had a man hollering about Draconians from Orion ruling us through a stargate. This is exactly what the insider briefings revealed to me many years later.

This also appears to refer to 'my' departure as Ra-Ptah, which was spontaneous and very sad to the people, as I never said goodbye. The Cayce Readings describe this.

In the aftermath of Ra-Ptah's sudden departure, a faction doing blood sacrifices later rose to prominence, as we discussed. Now we are repairing that damage in the present.]

4. DON ELKINS WOULD DWELL ON THE NEGATIVE

¹ The Orions are out there. And Ra would not have taken the effort to explain all of this in such tremendous detail if it were not true.

² But the fact of the matter is that this is not the only influence for the constellation Orion....

³ And thus, [as we expose these truths,] there is light in the darkest of places.

⁴ We want you to understand that our focus has always been on the positive.

⁵ You are correct in seeing that one of the problems with the Ra Material was within Don Elkins.

⁶ His own innate fascination with the negative beings, and desire to obtain information about them as thoroughly as possible.

⁷ Understand that this was an altruistic nature, in a sense, coming out of a desire to protect his wife, Carla.

5. YOU HAVE BECOME A GREAT, VIBRANT FLAME

¹ When a person is involved with unconscious trances in such a matter, there are a number of other opportunities for negative interference —

² The likes of which we have never seen here.

³ We have been training you in very diligent ways to be able to avoid any and all of the temptations that could be extended by any negative entities.

⁴ And thus, we want you to be aware that even though **your past is, to a certain degree, filled with bad decisions,**

⁵ And other examples that could be interpreted as being of negative influence —

⁶We have largely removed any possibility of this influence in the present.

⁷Again, you have changed from a brief, flickering light to a great, vibrant flame — that can consume all lack of light in its path.

[David's Note: I firmly believe Michael is speaking to all of us here. He is disguising it in the form of a personal reading. This is personal for all of us!

If someone made various "bad decisions," we will soon be able to heal those problems.]

6. DISPERSE THEM BY LOVING THEM EXTRAORDINARILY

¹So, in focusing on the dream that we gave this morning, the idea is this.

²Understand that no real service of any kind is being rendered by discussing these [Draconian] entities.

³If you'll notice, David, [when you were discussing these entities with the others around you,] you did not include the penultimate dogma —

⁴As illustrated over and over again in the Ra Material. And that is this.

⁵The Orions may only be dispersed by loving them extraordinarily.

⁶It is important that you become conscious of how powerful your words really are, and what your words can do in the minds of others.

⁷We do not want to plant a seed about negativity, about evil beings, and/or any other related phenomena.

⁸This dream was, in a sense, a crisis intervention, in order to get you to understand the seriousness of these matters.

⁹There is a reason why we do not discuss these beings very much. And if you go back to Cayce's work, you understand that it is also rarely mentioned.

7. THERE IS LITTLE ELSE THEY CAN DO BEFORE THE FIRST ASCENSION

¹And thus,

²Since these forces have little else they can do

³In the short time before the first Ascension,

⁴ For those who are on the proper path,

⁵ See that we come equipped with all necessary light armoring —

⁶ In order to deflect any of their attacks....

[David's Note, 9/19/22: This appears to be another reference to the "Shroud of Love" that Michael says they will use to protect our planet and bodies as the sun opens up.

If you don't prepare yourself in advance for the First Wave, you may find out that it now takes decades to accomplish growth you can do in a few days here in 3D.]

8. CONSPIRACY CAN DISTRACT FROM ASCENSION

¹ To continue to wave a conspiracy flag,

² And try to stick it to 'em 'till they cry "Uncle,"

³ Is to fail to realize how soon the Ascension vortex really opens.

⁴ What possible good could be done by exposing such a conspiracy at this point in time? Indeed, nothing.

⁵ We are past the point where there are ten years, or even five years to think about these things.

8. WE WANT TO SPREAD LIGHT, LOVE AND GLORY

¹ Unfortunately... the prophecy of the 1998 opening of the Hall of Records was seriously postponed by the discovery and knowledge of the room much earlier than that.

² This is, in a sense, productive of our labors through Edgar Cayce.

³ Much of this information has been withheld from people. But, the point is not to emphasize that.

⁴ This is similar to how one must write about the UFO phenomena.

⁵ If there is too much of the focus on the conspiracy, then the book takes a rather heavy and depressing tone — and will not be as successful.

⁶ What we want to stress and to spread is light, love and glory.

[David's Note: Pete Peterson described a hi-tech sarcophagus found in Egypt, from a classified mission, where you had to sing to it a certain way in order to get it to open.

The inscriptions on the sarcophagus would become readable to a person who was properly influenced by it. They would then sing the words and it would open.

Inside, they found amazing handheld tech objects. It was not clear what they were for. We apparently did not have enough spiritual advancement to be able to use them.

SECTION SEVENTEEN: SEPTEMBER 1998

9/1/98

1. WE MADE SURE THE WORST-CASE SCENARIO WOULDN'T HAPPEN

¹ With such extreme precautions in place, we **had to make sure that the worst-case scenario didn't happen.**

² That is what we are doing here.

³ To make them important and vital for you is to see how we both need to expand our limited perspective in the moment. And that takes diligence and practice.

³ As we stand side-nosed in the creation, we never again will have to feel slighted by the universal forces.

⁴ We can then face them directly, and admit that what we have done was wrong.

⁵ As we have done so, the next step is the forgiveness of self.

2. THE STUPENDOUSNESS OF YOUR SELFHOOD IN THE ONE

¹ And thus, in the matter similar to the apology done for ____, you need to apologize to us, David, (symbolically an apology to Self,) for the betrayal of the past.

² You might then be allowed to move forward.

³ Do this only when you are in the presence of mind to make it heartfelt, and truly deep, as your trance state in the present is not sufficient.

⁴ [D: "I understand.... [Pause. David does a deep inner apology.] I was just visualizing my apology to the forces, and I then heard:]

⁵ Consider your Self healed.

⁶ It is impossible for us to deny you access to the higher realms,

⁷ Once you have realized the inherent stupendousness of your own selfhood in Christ; selfhood in the One.

⁸ That is all that we have ever wanted for you — to become such a person, and to actualize that potential every moment of every day.

3. WE WILL BUY THOSE FOODS THAT SUSTAIN LIFE

¹ I leave you this episode to illustrate quite clearly the ways in which things should and should not be done.

² We have moved past the point of saving up our money in **jars** –

³ Or of **eating rotten foods** from the refrigerator, long overdue.²⁶⁸

⁴ We can now invest in our own health, and buy those foods that will sustain life.

⁵ This is the next stage of your own personal initiation. And it should be done very soon.

⁶ We underline and stress the importance of the word “very.”

9/4/98

1. THE SELVES SAVING EACH OTHER FROM DISASTER

¹ And I just want to derivative here.

²The view-image of these workings was never hard disk on us.

[David’s Note, 9/19/22: This may be a veiled reference to the software used in the 2020 US election, as other passages have already mentioned.

The plotters had a “view image” of how many votes were coming in on a “hard disk.”

Derivatives are financial instruments that are highly volatile, and can quickly destroy the value of companies they target.

This may also be about certain corrupt deals found on “hard disks” from laptops.

What images, taken by certain serial blackmailers, might soon be viewed?]

³ We pretended the holy would have the pieces to put their own puzzle together.

⁴ It took the selves saving each other from disaster to put this revelation back into the minds.

²⁶⁸ This is another likely reference to the inoculations. “Jars of rotting foods” are a callback to Michael’s earlier milk metaphor for the shots. I also threw out a bunch of old jars of condiments yesterday. Today is 5/23/23.

2. WITHIN YOUR DREAMS IS A BABE OF POSITIVITY

¹ Never before have I been present in the midst of such depressing circumstances as those in your present physical illusion.

² This dark only indicates a change in trend that should already be visible at this point, as you are aware.

³ Within your dreams, there comes a babe of positivity. A babe of new emotions, including:

- "That if"

- "What if"

- "I wonder if"

- "How could," et cetera.

3. THOSE WHO WOULD HAVE A LONGER SHELF LIFE

¹ A quick note.

² **These reasons are present —**

³ **That those who would have a longer shelf life need not worry about each of their methods of preparation.**

⁴ Instead, use something like this.

⁵ And **allow them to feed on whatever food is nearby — and lackable.**

⁶ And then, **this testimony will reveal the secrets of conscious, contemporaneous access experiments — over time.**

⁷ Thus, your key is that of another self in Christ Consciousness.

⁸ For to be One is to **grasp the needle**, shall we say, **and point it in the correct direction.**

⁹ From here, we feel very strongly the connection to higher sources.

[David's Note: This is loaded with encrypted shot references, including the idea that they may have limited wi-fi capability. This is a theme throughout all the books.

In the next volume, we will reveal scientific evidence that this may indeed be true.

Line 3 indicates that those who never “grasped the needle” of the shots will “have a longer shelf life and “need not worry.”

The “food” in this case again seems to refer to the treatments. “Allow them [those who refuse to listen] to feed on whatever food is nearby – and lackable.”

The use of the word “lackable” is another code for “hackable” – revealing “the secrets to conscious, contemporaneous access experiments” in humans.

Also, the treatment is “lackable,” in the sense that almost everyone had the option to refuse it – and “point the needle in the correct direction.”

Again, we now have an imminent, spiritual solution in which everybody wins.]

4. DAVID’S ORIGINAL TRANSCRIPTION NOTE FROM 1998

[Transcription Note, 12/22/98: It is a very incredible and remarkable synchronicity that I would type this data in now, dating all the way back from September.

We are just now a few days before Christmas.

This morning, before I ever got the idea to continue transcribing this specific tape, I spent more than an hour listening to a radio program on the story behind Jesus’ birth.

“Within your dreams, there comes a babe of positivity, a babe of new emotions...”

I had just been thinking about the story of Christ very strongly. Then I type this in.

Also, the “dark period” they are referring to certainly applies to the present, with all the crazy political situations going on right now.

We have Clinton’s impeachment and bombing of Iraq. Again, this is a remarkable time-encoded future prophecy!

2/15/23: Once again, we are in peak global turmoil as I struggle to finish this.]

Same day, 8:37 am

5. PUT THE BOOK TOGETHER AND ALL ELSE WILL FALL INTO PLACE

¹ We want you to become a being of pure love. This necessitates a degree of focus on the larger picture that is not there in the present.

² We do have faith in you that you will do this, as it is easier than you think.

³ Simply put your book of readings together, and all else will fall into place, as it were.

⁴ An elongated map comes into play when we begin to take the necessary opportunities to find out about those pieces of information that we once had, but had lost.

⁵ We have enormous faith in you, Dave.

⁶ It is for this reason that we understand that **all we have spoken of is given because of the love that we have for you** – and the love that exists all around you.

⁷ When you persist in these matters, it will bear fruit, as the interest in your story will take on a much larger field immediately thereafter....

[David's Note: In context with other passages, the "elongated map" may refer to large, elongated spacecraft we will see when Michael's people decide to reveal themselves.]

6. DISTURBANCES WILL POSSIBLY OCCUR IN OCTOBER

¹ Miraculous trust in the process.

² To be fair to all those involved, it might well be said now that the disturbances will possibly occur in October –

³ As a result of the changes now taking place, which are becoming more and more obvious each day....

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This appears to be an accurate viewing of the "Red October" that the Alliance has widely telegraphed for years now.

Many very significant events did occur in October 2022 that will undoubtedly be known to the general public in the near future.]

⁴ The imminency of the disasters continues to be postponed,

⁵ As the further reactions to global events are then gauged.

9/5/98

1. RETURNING TO THE WAYS AND MEANS OF THE PAST

¹ It was very dark. Victorian era bedrooms are always more difficult to extrapolate upon than Colonial era.

²What we are going to see, as we return to the ways and means of the past, is going to cause quite a change in society as you now think of it.

³The time for video games has passed.

⁴It is time now to embrace the universal creative flow, to actualize its process, and begin thinking of the best ways to tackle the situation now before us.

⁵I haven't been there since '85.

[David's Note: That year, I was in seventh grade. This appears to be when I got myself kicked out of the parallel-life program and "tackled the situation."

Congress has often had a Ways and Means committee. This new Congress "is going to cause quite a change in society as you know think of it."]

2. THE OLD WAYS DISCARDED IN FAVOR OF THE NEW

¹A mound builder I was not. Though now, in the present moment, there are expansive opportunities to rebuild those structures of mind that had been so often lost.

²Thankfully, **we can look forward to when the old ways are discarded in favor of the new.**

³That is all that we want here.

Same day, 9:55 am

3. DREAM OF NUKES USED ON AMERICANS BY FLYING SAUCER TANKS

[Dream: We were jumping up and down while swinging our shoulders in circles. This was similar to an exercise I did in my college karate class.

This jumping was somehow an action that would call these tanks into being. But, **these were no ordinary tanks.**

These were black, flying saucer tanks that were very large.

I was in this FBI office. I somehow had gained access to these secret files.

People were bringing me up file cabinets of old stuff, and I was hearing about this.

I believe that the year they said was 1964.

The implications, from what they were saying, were that nukes were used – on Americans, by Americans.

The whole thing was kept very quiet. Apparently, we had nuked a small part of our own country.

[David's Note, 2/15/23: This combines the current balloon / UFO scare with the toxic chemical disaster that simultaneously unfolded in East Palestine, Ohio.]

4. THE MASSIVE TANK CALLED "THE SHIELD"

They were also describing how this massive tank, which was colossal in size, rolled through a town.

This person's ability to do this special kind of jumping apparently called out the tank.

I didn't quite understand exactly what the tank was at first. Then as time progressed, **I realized that they were calling it the Shield.**

When I realized what the size was, I was overwhelmed.

They were eager to show me this information, have me read it, and see what my reaction was.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: In The Avengers, SHIELD has a black flying "tank" – the hovering aircraft carrier. Pete Peterson told me we have ships just like this.]

This appears to be partly about me joining some real-world equivalent of SHIELD, since Michael also referenced "David and the team from Stargate" earlier.

On a broader level, this is a prophecy for all of us – and the Disclosure that lies ahead.

The word 'exercise' could also mean 'exorcise,' as in destroying evil. The real-world equivalent of SHIELD has indeed been exorcising demons from this world.]

9/6/98

1. DREAM OF SEVERE RIOT IN VIRGINIA BEACH

[Dream: There was **a riot of some kind** in Virginia Beach.

It could have been a larger-scale picture as a whole, but Virginia Beach appeared to be where I was seeing it happen.

It was really bad. **It seemed to be connected with a school. To go anywhere near the outside was just horrible.**

There were bottles being thrown, extreme risk and extreme danger.

I was with some people who did not want to go out in the middle of it, but rather duck and run for cover.

I was in a rather remote area with these people, and we didn't get hit so hard.

A lot of people got the idea that they were just going to go wild. They did a lot of very stupid things.

They were jumping up and down, breaking things, throwing rocks and the like.

A lot of people were praying the police would go in, and take care of it. They didn't show up for a long time, but they did finally take care of it.

In the meantime, we had to hide. We ended up hiding in a schoolroom.]

¹Wide respect for the process will help the acquisition of said progressive steps of motion.

[David's Note: Michael shows riots and arrests in the dream, and then says if we have "respect for the process," this will "help the acquisition of said progressive steps."

[Dream: We were trying to hide in a schoolroom, so these guys wouldn't attack us. **The police finally came along. They tried to help us.]**

²She briefly, if ever, trades notes with anyone else.

[David's Note: This appears to be talking about the Alliance, and how no one really knows what The Plan is. "She briefly, if ever, trades notes with anyone else."]

2. WE ARE HAPPY WHEN THE DICHOTOMY NO LONGER EXISTS

¹The visitors are exquisitely happy –

²When the dichotomy between those things that need to be done,

³And those things already finished,

⁴No longer exists....

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Another message to finish the book. I am just about to reach the point where I started formatting and unsealing the year 1998 back in June of 2022.

This passage is also encouraging the Alliance's overall effort to free humanity.]

3. MELTING THE ICE THAT IS NOW IN PLACE

¹We do see that forewarned is forearmed.

²It is good that certain people are thinking about these things we are now presenting to you.

³The idea here is to take a view of the available moments, and to make the way more cleanly, clearly and easily seen.

⁴This will necessitate great focus on these changes, while simultaneously your focus on how to address them.

⁵[D: "I just heard something that described me as "skin, ice, and bones." I started to laugh."]

⁶The more we can get through to your physical self in the form of this speaking,

⁷The more we can melt the ice that is now in place.

[David's Note: This is prophetic of where I have been writing this book for 18 months – at 8600 feet, with snow eight months out of the year. My feet are always cold.]

4. THE MINUTEMAN LOVES TO DRIVE HIS JEEP

¹We understand that sometimes you might feel so tired that you wish to return to sleep, but again there are discrete opportunities to utilize said connections therein.

²The minuteman so loves his responsibility of driving his jeep that little else * reaches the concerns of his conscious mind.

[* Sound of car tires squealing outside on the recording]

³The inanimate builders of said structure take every available moment to be present within your localized sphere –

⁴In such a manner as to make plain the distinctions between before and after, and other such semantic difficulties.

[David's Note: Michael is talking about their status as 'minutemen' who drive a time-traveling 'jeep' – and were the "builders of said structure," i.e. the Great Pyramid.

Michael again says they will "take every available moment to be present within your localized sphere." This will recapitulate and heal what happened in Atlantis.]

5. AUTHORS OF THE CREATION WILL IMPART DIRECT MESSAGES TO YOU

¹ When you live near a large urban area, we find ourselves confronting the dangers therein.

² So therefore, let us not be content with the same old story, as has been encountered so many times before.

³ Instead, we have to become aware of the innate goodness of every moment – and the expression of said goodness to others.

⁴ Thus, as we understand that the basic Law of the universe is Love, we can then go forward and become married, in a sense, to our own ideals –

⁵ Such that we will not allow them to be compromised for any reason.

⁶ The builders of said structure are very intricately involved in getting you to see the connections therein.

⁷ They do not want for anyone to have a great difficulty in these matters.

⁸ So take time to go within, and be still.

⁹ You will find out that those same authors responsible for the Creation we have spoken of –

¹⁰ Are also willing and able to impart direct messages to you, the seeker.

¹¹ This might then be done early in the morning, as you would term this portion of your space-time illusion.

6. PREPARING TO ARREST THE LOOTERS – COULD NOT SHOOT THEM

[Dream: Anyway, we went into this place. It looked like a **rich hotel room**, with a huge suite, very lavish. It had huge couches.

All the same kids who were just out their terrorizing and shooting and looting were now all **inside, smoking cigarettes, drinking alcohol, getting high and whatever else.**

The police officer we were with was **trying to think of a way for how to arrest all these guys**, or just for how to arrest a few of them.

[David's Note: This is obviously referencing the now-severe crisis of illegal migrants taking over luxury hotels in New York and creating complete lawlessness inside.]

Finally, it was pretty obvious that she was going to need her gun. So, she pulled out her guns at some point.

The next thing that I remember is that her gun didn't work.

It seemed like it only gave out a light, like a lighter. And it was on a pretty small level. It was problematic in that way.

It was pretty wild, because I realized somewhere in the middle that the only thing that was keeping us away from these guys was faith.

We couldn't really shoot them, for all that came out of our guns was Light.

[David's Note: This is a metaphor of how the changes are occurring mostly peacefully.]

7. WHAT IS THAT DAM IN THE CHEST?

¹What is that dam? We see it as occurring from the chakral center in the chest. The solar plexus, that is.²⁶⁹

²This entity has made itself **aware of the darker or more negative side of things.**

³And thus, David, you really were **engaged in a battle for the soul of the being** [you met with yesterday, a disgruntled teenager.]

⁴We do think that you did extremely well.

⁵Part of the dream that you are about dictate, where you wiped the slimy substance into his eyes,

⁶Was designed to show how the Light of truth can make the present path become veiled and obscured.

⁷[This then blinds] the person, until they recapitulate the losses that they had gained by having a better focus on enlightenment, as it were.

²⁶⁹ Another possible reference to heart problems from inoculations, as with the word 'congeal' in the next day's reading — and later again in this one with "slimy substance."

8. NO NEED TO WORRY ABOUT DAMAGE ON THE AURIC LEVEL

¹GF: Can you see what it is like? For 50 cents, I can show you everything in the world.

²Keep on remembering that this doesn't cost you anything.

³And therefore, you should get in as much as possible!

⁴As my cup runneth over, there is **no need for you to worry about any specific damage on the auric level** as a result.

⁵The fatigue can easily be compromised when you decide to sleep a little longer each morning. [11:11 p.m. on transcription!]

[David's Note: As I read this on January 3, 2023 in the early morning, I am fatigued and need a second cycle of sleep. The time loops literally never fail.

On the "Big Picture" level, I believe Michael is telling us that those who died from the shots have "no specific damage on the auric level." Some may even return in 4D.]

9/7/98

1. THE RUSSIANS HAVE COME TO AN END

¹**Congeval** our hypothesis and tell me what you think.

²I am committed to seek. I am committed to search for it.

³Once you see that all is One Mind, there can be no further delineations.

⁴That is the purpose of your own owner's manual.

⁵[D: "I have been thinking a lot since I got the Law of One, Book Five. This book has all the personal material that was omitted from the other books.

⁶It really is an eye opener, because it reveals the humanity to Jim, Don and Carla."]

⁷**The Russians have come to an end.**

⁸**Pitiful though it may be, there are still reasons for everything that occurs.**

⁹**One should never downgrade the importance of this action.**

[David's Note: Bakhmut just fell in Ukraine before this book's release in late May.]

¹⁰ It does indeed have a ripple effect throughout the whole that will be quite easy to observe.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: The Russians have already publicly stated that they are seizing bio-weapons facilities that were actively being used against the people.

This apparently will become widely known in the future.

As of February 2023, Russia is massing at least 500,000 troops and threatening further action if peace is not negotiated.]

Same day, 10:30 am

2. THE ART OF LEVITATION

¹ When they come from Earth, as they can with this one, some spiritual hands are always necessary —

² To insure the **insolence of office,**

³ And the spurns that patient merit of the unworthy takes,

⁴ Are then **greatly lessened and/or completely relieved.**

³ We are pleased that the art of levitation now extends through to your levitation of your own concerns —

⁴ So as to no longer have them provide the gravity that pulled so strongly on you in the past.

[David's Note: The title for my next film is Levitation. This is also a Stavatti reference, since we will be building machines that "provide the gravity."

Michael was quoting Shakespeare in lines 2 and 3. The "insolence of office" will be "greatly lessened and/or completely relieved."]

3. KEEP YOUR MIND FOCUSED ON THE LARGER PRIORITIES

¹ This book will be termed a success.

² And you are paving the way for the right unfolding of this process, even now.

³ Do not fret or get caught up in the trivialities of daily existence, but rather keep your mind focused on what the larger priorities are —

⁴ And the accomplishment of said priorities.

⁵ We do agree that your personal style of readings [for your clients] is getting better and better. And we are glad about this.

9/8/98

1. WE HAVE A VEHICLE THAT CAN FLY ON ITS OWN

¹ Sometimes, people have to make decisions –

² To then merit an approach to these situations that is entirely different from that which had characterized the past.

³ And thus, these anomalistic findings do little to change the core foundation of who people are.

⁴ It is important that you remember this....

⁵ What we have is a vehicle that is largely free of any such outside technology –

⁶ And now can fly on its own.

⁷ And thus, possibility of the wish fulfillment in such a matter should not necessarily be overlooked....

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Another prophetic Stavatti and Levitation reference.]

2. THE POWERFUL POTENTIAL OF WIND AND WATER

¹ The top sewer process involves making the choices that allow one to process such waste, without the need to worry about the individualities of such problems.

² The continued centralization of your business doing readings may well be the wise decision that you have been looking for.

³ [D: "If I were to get my own place, would be better if I did something that was away from the ocean, by a mile or two?"]

⁴ From a practical perspective, this would indeed be very wise.

⁵ You need to be aware of the powerful potential of wind and water.

⁶ And thus, even now you are very close to the edge, as it were.

⁷History will show that those who survived had the biggest opportunities to protect themselves, and the largest degree of forethought within such a process.

3. PLOTTING A LARGE BOMBING FOR AMERICA

[Dream: At some point, there were a series of **Russians who were in America.**

I figured out that they were planning on doing some sort of very large bombing.

They were hell bent on sabotage. And this worried me.

I actually saw something that looked like the **state capitol building.** We were on the stairs. This building looked similar to it, but with a lighter-colored stone.

I was concerned, because I picked up on what they were doing.

Other people were not picking up on it. There was a lot of conspiracy and cloak and dagger stuff that was going on.

There was a whole bunch of people who did not look like anyone different, and they were all in on this.

I overheard their meetings, and was aware that something was going on.

[David's Note: A major portion of the Deep State has its roots in old Russia. This dream metaphor may not refer to Russians in the sense as we see them today.]

4. THE OLD PHONE-IN-THE-TOILET-PAPER TRICK, MATE

I ended up going into a bathroom at some point. There was some weird technology where the toilet paper in the stalls was actually a telephone.

One of these Russian guys, who didn't know what I knew yet, started to ask me what this machine was inside the stall.

I felt kind of paralyzed, so I took it off the wall and showed him what it was.

I demonstrated to him that it was just a phone. I said there really wasn't anything in it except for in plugs and out plugs.

It looked like he was going to take it, as though it would help him make calls or have communication.

[David's Note: This was predictive of my Smoke Alarm Meltdown, which I discussed in each of my latest three YouTube livestreams. I had two firemen in the house to stop it.]

5. WHY GIVE AWAY THE SECRET TO THE VILLAINS?

No sooner did that happen, but what I looked around me, and the hallway had now become the high school.

Actually, more appropriately, it looked like the hallway of the Junior High, right near the entrance.

Anyway, this teacher came up to me. I felt nervous, because I had just given away the secret to one of these Russian guys.

I knew that **these guys were planning on bombing us**, so I felt very strange about what I had done.

When she came up, she wanted to see me. This obviously only increased my panic. We both started to walk away together.

D: I just cued on the words **"Dorothy Parker."**

[David's Note: I just looked this up, and Dorothy Parker was a "wise-cracking feminist poet and screenwriter accused of communism" in America.

She was also born Dorothy Rothschild, though she apparently had no direct relation to the Rothschild dynasty.²⁷⁰

This name, therefore, seems to have been used by Michael to sneak in a clever encoded reference to the Rothschilds, and confirm this is what the dream meant by 'Russians.'

The point appears to be that communists in the US "were planning on bombing us."]

6. A GIGANTIC FLYING BLACK TRIANGLE

I went into her office, I believe. While I was in her office, she left me there. It now reminded me of my neighbor Marilyn's house, on the street where I grew up.

I looked out the window. To my utter surprise, I saw a tremendous, tremendous-sized aerial object that was flying.

²⁷⁰ <https://www.longislandpress.com/2022/03/21/poet-screenwriter-dorothy-parker-was-wise-cracking-feminist-accused-of-communism/>

It was black. It was not shaped like a UFO. It had a very interesting shape, typical of an extremely advanced modern American aircraft.

It was so colossal and huge that I could hardly believe it.

I was just reading about a huge black triangle last night, and speculating on whether it was human-powered or not.

This dream seems to authenticate that.

7. FACE TO FACE WITH THE MIDDLE-EASTERN PILOT

I went outside and could hardly believe my own two eyes. This thing flew in the sky completely noiselessly. It was executing absolutely fantastic aeronautical maneuvers.

At one point, I was looking up into the sky, and I signaled to it. There were definitely different ones. All different shapes. They were all very agile.

Some of them were very huge. They were coming right down in between the trees, to within ten feet of the ground.

They would fly around and then go back up. It was a stormy night, and there were clouds in the sky.

So, at one point, I decided that I wanted to try to communicate with one of these massive things.

So, this guy was up there, and I flashed the flashlight at him. He came down, and there was a window there in his cockpit.

I could look in and see him. He was just a young, dark-haired guy with just slightly darker skin, possibly Middle Eastern. He had a headset on, and he was looking at me.

Behind him, I could see rows and rows of lights, indicating some sort of control center or cockpit.

That was just amazing to me. I couldn't even believe what I was seeing.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This is a very promising glimpse of my potential Stavatti future. It may also predict future Alliance sightings we will all get to enjoy!]

8. THEN A HELICOPTER LANDS... AND THE PILOT LEAVES

Then he flew away. Another one came in that looked like a helicopter.

[Transcription Note, 1/5/99: Great synchronicity! I heard a helicopter overhead at the exact second my eyes looked up at that very word.]

When it landed, it was only big enough to hold a guy's body, and nothing else.

It was very small. It had the shape, almost precisely, of my paper-hole puncher.

[David's Note: Stavatti consultants have developed a drone technology just like this — a flying robotic helicopter just big enough to rescue and return one soldier.]

At one point, something landed that looked exactly like my binding machine [that I use to preserve these readings as paper books.]

The guy in the helicopter didn't want to say anything to me. He just landed and left.

9. GOVERNMENT PEOPLE SAY YOU NEED STRENGTH TO SEE IT

I was telling other people about these sightings. Everyone was stunned and astonished. These were just beautiful, beautiful aircraft.

After I saw these things, I went back inside the house. This conspiracy extended through to this area. These people were somehow involved — and in on it.

I said to them that I had to become a part of this. I had to see exactly what they were working on.

There were some government figures there.

They were implying that whether or not I could see it had to do with my own strength.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This seems to be about whether or not I could handle seeing the truth of the parallel life.

The rest of the dream suggests that I did go through it, at least until 1985. I was involved in military activity, including self-defense against guns and knives.]

10. ARE YOU STRONG ENOUGH TO BE ON BOARD THIS SHIP?

They implied that I needed to prove to them that I was strong enough to be allowed to fly inside this ship.

As a result, I said that I could demonstrate this.

I then talked about what I was going to do for a brief moment.

There was a scalpel on the table, similar to an Exacto knife.

I explained how I would hit the guy right in front of me square on the nose. That would take them out.

The second guy had a gun. I would push him up against the wall before he could shoot me.

I said that I would push his hand with the gun up against the wall. Then with the Exacto knife, I would slit his throat.

I didn't do either of the violent parts, but I then demonstrated very quickly, [without any weapon in my hand,] what it was that I was talking about.

They were impressed at how well I was able to do it. They decided at that time that I would be able to take a ride on board.

That was pretty much the end of it, when I woke up.

[David's Note: This type of conduct is absolutely inappropriate, and will get you killed. It's a dream. DO NOT EVER approach anyone like this. They might hurt or kill you.

That being said, there are various training programs where you run through all sorts of attack simulations just like this, and strategize what you would do.]

[David's Note, 5/23/23: On the exact day I unsealed this prophecy again, it was announced that 50 US Marines observed a massive triangular UFO in April 2021.

A giant 'black triangular shape' UFO hovering over a California military base was caught on six videos and witnessed by 50 US Marines in 2021.

One stunning picture shot by an officer at Camp Wilson in Twentynine Palms on April 20, 2021 shows the apparently triangular object with lights on its edges, above the desert mountains — where it hovered for 10 minutes, according to witnesses.²⁷¹

9/12/98

1. MANY SURPRISES... A POINT OF COMPLETE CONCRESCENCE

¹ Many Tibetans have their own copy of the book regarding dying, and the map to rebirth therein.

²⁷¹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/50-marines-spot-triangular-ufo-as-big-as/>

² When we proposition these souls about their purpose, we discover that **the entire catalog of current events contains many surprises – not easily seen by the roadside.**

³ Therefore, in the eighth hour, when we stripped away all impediments, obstacles and/or blockages,

⁴ We come clean – with the notion that is self-evident:

⁵ Everything we have done arrives now at a point of complete concrescence.

[David's Note: Here, Michael is quoting "We hold these truths to be self-evident," thus describing the "complete concrescence" of the restoration of America and our world.]

2. DIRECT COOPERATION WITH THE ENTITIES INVOLVED

¹ So before we go jumping into something that we did not understand, or seemed unsatisfactory,

² We must remember **the process itself involves the direct cooperation with the entities involved.**

³ This takes the form of those little inconsistencies being easily ameliorated, through the greater process of going inward –

⁴ And discovering where the truest potentialities for spiritual growth then lie.

⁵ Do not look twice upon those things that seemed to be so inanimate.

⁶ Instead, look to the life vitality – the expressive, fluid-like movement of growth that is then seen when one embraces the totality of beingness within oneself.

⁷ We often times have spoken of the "sturdy wires" whom we need in order to build this mission completely.

⁸ You are indeed straightening in such a fashion.

⁹ Therefore, look not to the future, but look to the present. And see what it is that could be done right now, today, here....

[David's Note: This seems to be hinting at brain healing – dendritic arborization.

Michael is also promising "many surprises" ahead, right in the middle of dreams showing us black triangular UFOs. Michael also references "the path to rebirth."]

3. EMBRACE YOUR IDENTITY OF SELF-AWARENESS

¹ We do indicate here that the environment is replete with circumstances wherein you can take every available moment for joy, bliss, happiness and peace,

² And transform them into usable energy that you had not heretofore seen.

³ So don't be decadent about the fact that you are coming into this awareness of self.

⁴ Do not be prideful about your own identity, but rather embrace it.

⁵ For you to continue to not embrace it is to continue to walk the path of sorrow — in suffering and despair.

⁶ It would be the same as if you had a hand on the left arm, and said that it did not exist, and that you would not choose to use it for any reason.

[David's Note: Here, Michael seems to predict our scientific reference to the "alien hand syndrome" as arising out of the ACC, according to Dr. Francis Crick.

I did not re-read this and see the connection until the brain section was complete.]

4. CALL UPON THE NAME, AND THERE WILL NEVER BE A LOSS OF PURITY

¹ Speaking of these engagements, we would like comment that every time you engage in a discipline such as this,

² You take away the restrictions that apply normally to such a situation.

³ Instead, we would hope that you see that when you call upon the name of Jesus Christ,

⁴ And ask that presence to come into your life, and to surround these workings,

⁵ You will find that indeed there is no separation of purity in any of the material then attained.

⁶ Also the utilization of your crystals in such a fashion is equally suitable and superior.

⁷ It is now time for the reckoning — for you to go back and collect the energy that you had wasted or squandered in so many of the personality fragments in the past.

⁸ You will notice indeed that you are having many dreams of closure from different points of your life.

5. FOLLOW THE ONE-POINTEDNESS OF MIND

¹ The volcano that has stored all of this angst is erupting.

² And in this eruption, you are then able to deal with those things that had been buried within you before.

³ Do not be concerned about how this will be done — as the process itself demands more concentration than you might have heretofore imagined.

⁴ Instead, become concretely familiar with those elements of personality that exist within and around you, and also through you.

⁵ When you see quite directly and clearly what a contribution Cayce's work has given the world,

⁶ You will then much greater understand and appreciate the role that you [David] now have.

⁷ Do not become lost on your path. Do not allow yourself to deviate into other areas that do not seem productive.

⁷ Follow the one-pointedness of mind, and all will become more and more apparent as time goes on.

6. MOVE FORWARD INTO REALMS THOUGHT UNIMAGINABLE

¹ It is easy for us to speak on these issues of those things that would most encourage you.

² And we do indeed see that the greater process of unfoldment comes about when you can then embrace the teachings that we have given you.

³ Do not simply lie fallow in the soil, waiting for someone to till you, to stir you up, to plant seeds in you that might then grow into these beautiful plants.

⁴ Instead, understand that you have become the farmer. You have become the harvester.

⁵ You are the one who will then take the initiative —

⁶ To then bring forward those steps of enlightenment and courage that will allow you to move forward —

⁷ Into those realms that you had heretofore thought unimaginable.

[David's Note: I do believe Michael is speaking to all of us here.]

⁸ Take every available opportunity to look within the soul — and to find those pages of the book that still need to be turned, still need to be read.

⁹ When you do this, you will discover a whole new vista of awareness that existed underneath those chapters and pages that seemed to be so far in the past before.

¹⁰ You will discover that **the entire environment is very pure and whole when it no longer contains the self-deprecating circumstances that had been necessary in the past.**

¹¹ Now give us a moment.

7. YOU NEEDED TO SEE LIFE FROM A DIFFERENT PERSPECTIVE

¹ Speaking of speaking engagements,

² There will always be chances for you to take these readings and turn them into those productive speeches that would then inspire and uplift others.

³ This is the path of the future. And we want you to be completely aware of all eventualities therein.

⁴ Do not look with distaste upon the products of this contact, but rather seek to enliven and uphold the ideals that you yourself have espoused — through your own lips.

⁵ In this matter, then, we might begin uncovering many of those inconsistencies that have held back the process.

⁶ As we have already spoken of in your own subconscious, but have not said in the readings, you have made great deal of progress.

⁷ This progress has come about to a large degree from your own desire to go within, to be in solitude.

⁸ You needed to be away from the readings for a while, to see life from a different perspective —

⁹ To exist outside this realm of focus that seemed so all-encompassing at one point.

[David's Note: All of us were forced into extended solitude by the lockdowns.]

8. THE PHYSIOLOGY OF PERSONALITY FRAGMENTS

¹ You also simultaneously have been engaged in releasing muscular tension and blockages.

² And you are indeed correct in ascertaining that these blockages have occurred within you from the beginning.

³ This is part of the reason why we have dreams that featured your second-grade companions.

⁴ You are experiencing blockages being moved that have lasted your whole life.

⁵ When we speak of personality fragments, there is indeed a physiological component to those that takes place in the body itself.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: The final stages of healing the atrophy in my right leg have directly correlated with remembering, accepting and forgiving the parallel life.]

9. PROPHECY OF THE CHESS CONTROVERSY OF 2022

¹ So, every time that we have a chance to play chess, there is an opportunity to move the knight from one square to another – in that famous L shape.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: Fascinating. Just today as I unseal this, news articles came out about a major upset in the chess community.

A newcomer, 19-year-old Hans Niemann, beat the established Norwegian grandmaster, 31-year-old Magnus Carlsen, in Missouri.

People are accusing Niemann of elaborate and perverse fraud, saying he has a sex toy that vibrates “to signal when he is making the right move.”²⁷² Very sassy.]

10. THE POWER PIECES ARE BEING MOVED OUT INTO THE OPEN

¹ We then have the opportunity to jump over those blockages that might exist in front of us – and instead, by being a little bit off center, make a forward leap, so to speak.

² Similarly, the line of pawns that have blocked many of the power pieces are now being moved out into the open.

²⁷² <https://nypost.com/2022/09/14/huge-chess-world-upset-of-grandmaster-magnus-carlsen-sparks-wild-claims-of-cheating-with-vibrating-sex-toy/>

[David's Note, 9/15/22: After the Queen's death, in Episode 2870 on September 8, 2022, X22 Report revealed the "Queen Protects King" post, #4241, May 14, 2020.²⁷³

It says, "Think Chess. Do you attack the KING in the beginning or middle-to-end? QUEEN protects KING?"

The speculation is that the Alliance made a deal with the Queen, where the final take-down of corruption in the UK would not occur until she had passed away.

Now that she has passed, we are heading into "Red October," where major events are anticipated to take place.

During this same timeframe, we have seen other top figures disappear, including Sir Evelyn de Rothschild, Jiang Zemin and Pope Benedict.]

11. WE DON'T BRING THE QUEEN OUT AT THE BEGINNING

¹ As these sources of blockage are being drawn into the Light, you no longer have to feel scared or frightened in allowing the power pieces to move.

² It is important for you not to bring out the Queen at the beginning of the game.

³ And thus you see that we are slowly and carefully bringing out the knights, and then the bishops, the rooks, etc.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This exactly mirrors the content of post 4241.]

⁴ So therefore, it is important to realize that at this point, your best guess is to go forward in the proposition of the basic concepts behind the material —

⁵ Without focusing so clearly on making a strong case for who and what you are.

⁶ That is indeed the Queen on our chessboard.

12. PROTECT THE CHRIST WITHIN YOU

¹ The King on our chessboard would, of course, be the Christ — and the Second Coming therein.

² You must protect this King, and not allow your Self to be checkmated.

²⁷³ <https://x22report.com/queen-protects-the-king-d-day-patriots-clock-started-we-will-have-our-country-back-ep-2870/>

³The checkmate would involve the capturing of the Queen –

⁴Or those people who would then take the opportunity to then discredit you in any way that they could.

⁵We would also like to take this opportunity to speak on these matters that have concerned you in the past regarding free will, and your clients.

⁶Understand that when someone comes to you for a reading, they are coming to you for answers and solutions.

⁷Understand that from your own psychological training, you are well aware of the fact that the solutions will often take place within the mind of the seeker –

⁸And that the hints can be dropped along the way, but may not directly be told.

13. IF SOMEONE WANTS YOU TO TELL THEM TO MOVE, DON'T!

¹Therefore, you are indeed correct in seeing that the Law of Confusion must be preserved. And it is for this reason that the reading for ___ did not go through.

²You yourself need to understand that our will is never that of pushing or forcing. And indeed it is not our will to strike fear, only to warn.

³Therefore, when someone asks whether they live in a safe area or not,

⁴It is important that we give them information that does not make them suddenly upturn their whole lives.

⁵We do not want this type of karma on our back.

⁶It is for this reason that this tape was erased over, as you do not understand or know whether it is right for her to be where she is.

⁷Therefore, you then must allow the source to come through more completely, when dealing on matters as sensitive as these.

14. CORRECTLY ENUNCIATE THE TRUE VOICE OF GOD

¹Your own power now can affect the lives of many people, and can cause them to make decisions that they might not have heretofore made in the past.

²Understand that every time that we speak this voice,

³ You are coming through to a point where all those things seemed to be blockages and distortions in the past are then alleviated or lessened.

⁴ You are coming to a point where the true voice of God is now speaking through you.

⁵ And, you are able to enunciate more deeply and correctly its various syllables.

⁶ In the meantime, be clear that the experience of Christhood is an experience where you take all those things that are on the outside, and then internalize them.

⁷ You are doing this to a better and better degree each day.

15. TRY NOT TO GET UPSET BY OTHERS

¹ We would like to add the comment here that you are still little bit behind, in terms of understanding the Oneness of others.

² You are getting closer and closer to this, but you still allow those foibles and misgivings of others around you to bother you in ways that allow frustration to occur.

³ Last night when you were driving, there were several examples of this throughout your journey.

⁴ This included the fact that you honked at the person in front of you for pulling out in front of you, and doing a rather stupid maneuver.

⁵ It was not necessary to honk at this person. And you did see from their reaction later on that they were upset by this. It is always obvious where the lacks of polarity are.

⁶ What you now can begin to do is to try to bless them, and try to send them on their way with light and love.

16. HOVER ABOVE THE MINEFIELD

¹ We have also been trying to speak to you about the insects, and about the wrongness of killing them.

² So understand that is much better for you to simply allow them to die on their own, then it is for you to get worked up and try to kill them in such a matter.

³ **Booby traps** are laid in places that you do not yet have your attunement.

⁴ And thus, the way to walk through this minefield is to **hover above it**.

[David's Note: Cue the prophetic Chinese Balloon metaphors once again!]

17. FLOAT ON THE CLOUD OF BEINGNESS

When you tread with the One Creator, you **no longer** are **bound to those grounded issues that have seemed to drag down** in the past.

⁵ Instead, you **float on the cloud** of beingness that **takes you upward and away** from those concerns.²⁷⁴

⁶ So go forward, then, and do not be trivialized by what happens around you.

⁷ Instead, see everything as a learning experience, and as a method of growth.

⁸ You will discover that the tools for self-realization lie within you. And they were always there.

⁹ It was only question of whether you chose to look at them and focus on them completely,

¹⁰ Or whether you chose to shut them down in the process —

¹¹ And close the book of life.

18. A NEW CHAPTER IS ABOUT TO BE UPON US

¹ There is a new page that is being turned. Indeed, several pages.

² A new chapter is about to be upon us.

³ Your storage of energy, and the cessation of physical body complex disturbances, will **allow us to come through in ways that are unprecedented in the past.**

⁴ Indeed, we are now reserving the same quality level of information by increasing the speed —

⁵ As this does not allow your conscious mind much time to think about the ways in which it could distort the information that we speak.

⁶ Indeed, this is a byproduct of the deeper level of trance that we can now get you into. And thus, you should see this as a positive thing.

²⁷⁴ The Chinese Balloon 'hovered' and 'floated,' and took a payload "upward and away" from its point of origin.

⁷Speed is not necessarily an impediment to the functioning of this process.

19. FOCUS YOUR AWARENESS ON SOMETHING ELSE AS WE SPEAK

¹Indeed, just as one can upgrade from 14.4 modem to a T1 or fiber-optic,

²So too can you take those results that have characterized your past, and then involve a whole new process –

³Wherein the speed is then greatly quickened, and the information stays constant.

⁴It is also important for you to allow your awareness to **drift away** from what is being spoken, to perhaps focus on something else as we go along.

⁵This will allow you to then step away from those things that are being said, and indeed come to your own place of stillness and of peace.

9/14/98

1. A MACHINE TO “HELP COMPRESS THE ELECTRONS”

[Dream: The central theme was Ascension. I was gathering together a sizable amount of information that all proved it was going to happen (as we now see in these books).

I could actually see that there was **a machine that would help make Ascension happen even quicker. It would help compress the electrons.**

In the machine, I could actually see a matrix of tetrahedrons, bottom to top and top to bottom, wedged together very tightly.

That was the structure the energy took on inside the machine.]

[David’s Note: This may be a coded dream reference to “a machine that would help compress the ELECTIONS” into the outcome its controllers desire.

The mass revelation of “this machine would make Ascension happen even faster.”

Additionally, I am the Director of Advanced Technology for Stavatti, and will be working on advanced powerplants as an immediate future initiative.

Trump has already called for mass production of these amazing devices for Agenda 47.

The matrix of tetrahedrons mirrors the structure of advanced battery anodes. Batteries with these anodes have a much higher energy density than what we see today.]

2. OPPORTUNITIES FOR GALACTIC CITIZENSHIP FOR MANY OF YOU

¹ Any isolated member of our group wants to become a member of a larger species than their own.

² Namely, the opportunities for Galactic citizenship are soon in the offing.

³ This will become commonplace for many of you now, in the very near future.

⁴ Without the year 2012 [and 2020] in place, it would take much longer for all these things to happen.

⁵ But, what you are now seeing is the very end of a very long cycle.

⁶ That point should not be undermined, and needs be stressed as such.

Same day, 8:25 pm

3. MOVE TO WHERE YOU CAN MEET OTHER PEOPLE

¹ Pick up your groceries and move to the shoe store —

² To a place where the available opportunity to meet other people is drastically increased.

³ This will be the summation of prophecy. And the culmination of many long hours of suffering needlessly.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This appears to be another reference to my intended future move to our facility in Niagara Falls. Michael knows I pack my own groceries!

In dreams, everything refers to the self in some way. "Shoes" could refer to the tools for "walking through the skies" that we will be building — namely hovercars.]

4. WE EXIST AS AN INDIGENOUS PEOPLE IN THE HIGHER REALMS

¹ The summation of the mission is tantamount to a great deal of awakening the doors of perception within the Self.

² We are now looking forward to renewing our contract, after this brief respite period —

³ In order to recharge and restore the vital energies.

⁴For now, understand that we exist as an indigenous people in higher realms.

⁵It is this natural state of becoming that all of your people so eagerly await.

⁶Do not forget that.

⁷We thank you.

[David's Note: Here, Michael appears to be poking fun at the race-baiting we see.

"We exist as an indigenous people in the higher realms."

In order to have Diversity, Equity and Inclusion, we should not discriminate against Archangel Michael, Saint Lucia and many others like them – or censor them.

If we can't solve our problems with racism, how are we going to meet angelic ETs?]

SECTION EIGHTEEN: SEPTEMBER 1998, PART TWO

9/15/98

1. ADJUSTING TO YOUR SHINY, NEW FATE

¹ Fate. Shiny. You don't get used to it, you simply adjust to it.

² When the volume is raw, the consequences are high.

³ We already have a very unique performance service for you to take part in now.

⁴ Now, all you have to do is be aware that such a service exists, and seek to embrace it.

⁵ What we really have is the Buddha's attention. That is all.

⁶ Once you discover the means through which the party can be re-activated,

⁷ We no longer need to be certain of our own origins, and/or destinies.

⁸ Instead, we can take solace in the fact that this is indeed the truth, the way and the life, and that no one can come unto the Father but by the Christ within all of you.

2. SPECULATIVE INVESTMENTS BASED ON OUR GUIDANCE

¹ [D: "Again, I know that you might be violating my free will, but do we have any further progress on the prospect of moving into ___'s place?

² "If there is a possibility, does this dream reflect that?"]

³ Understand that **the only way to make customers believe in your work is to engage yourself in speculative investments —**

⁴ That will attribute those forms of guidance into the design.

[David's Note, 9/15/22: This is another very direct Stavatti reference!]

⁵ You understand that we have prophesied a collapsing of your ways —

⁶ And your systems.

⁷ It might not be clear to you, the design and its impulse, but however, you should still prepare as such.

⁸ You have navigated some of the more severe prophecies quite well –

⁹ And your civilization has continued along quite nicely, for the time being.

¹⁰ All things considered, be aware that these possibilities do still exist.

¹¹ And thus, we do not want to rub it in, but please be careful with your finances.

¹² Make sure that you put a certain amount [of your money] towards preservation and preparation, in any of its various forms. That is very important....

3. CHECK TO SEE IF THERE IS A PROBLEM WITHIN YOURSELF

¹ Therefore, all we have ever attained is duly rewarded when we accept the proposition that there is no real distinction between self and otherself, but of illusion.

² As we continue to embrace this mentality, we expect that the other-selves around us will show both those things that we embrace about ourselves –

³ As well as those things that we would like to work on.

⁴ Therefore, if you were ever to experience less than exemplary treatment from another Self, question strongly –

⁵ As to whether that treatment is indicative of a problem within [your]self that you are then reacting to in its externalized form.

⁶ That will help us immeasurably in our repertoire with you.

⁷ [D: “Thank you.”]

Same day, 10:20 am

4. DREAM OF KNOWING THE DATES FOR THE ASCENSION

[Dream: In this third dream of the day, it seemed that **I had the correct, accurate dates for when the Ascension would occur.**

I was trying to teach people about what it was, and when it was going to happen.

In the dream itself, I was learning the lessons of just totally letting go, and allowing the intuitive voice to come through without any filtering.

[David's Note: This further re-iterates Michael's message that we only have about two years, maximum, to prepare ourselves for some kind of dimensional shift.

I wouldn't worry about it. We will still have our bodies as we adjust, and within a short time we will discover that we now have superhero-type abilities.

5. SUPPORTIVE QUOTES FROM THE QURAN

Here are some of my favorite quotes from the Quran, dictated by Archangel Gabriel through Mohammed, likely about this same, anticipated first-wave Ascension event.

When time suddenly disappears, in the eternal moment of illumination —

**The brightness of the heavenly orbs will be split open,
And dissolved into transparent light. . . .**

Those who fail to live in constant expectation of the mystic Day, regarding this teaching as myth or imagination,

Will be severely disappointed when the Last Day actually arrives — and they are not spiritually prepared.

— Meditation on Holy Qur'an 77:8, 15²⁷⁵

Upon the mysterious Day when time ends,

All manifest Being will tremble at the first, thundering blast of Divine Resonance —

That will utterly stop the world...

This momentary terror will disappear when each soul realizes its spiritual body to be perfect, limitless and holy.

— Meditation on Holy Qur'an 79:6, 13²⁷⁶

When the Day of Enlightenment dawns,

The soul, expressed as a luminous body,

²⁷⁵ Lex Hixon and Neil Douglas-Klotz, *The Heart of the Qur'an: An Introduction to Islamic Spirituality*, 2nd ed. (Wheaton, IL: Quest Books, 2003), p. 85.

²⁷⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 85–86.

The face of its being suffused with calm joy,

Awakens into the supernal garden of Divine Presence –

Overwhelmed to comprehend, at last, the full significance of its own spiritual commitment.

– Meditation on Holy Qur'an 88:1-5²⁷⁷

On that timeless and transcendent Day, human beings will experience resurrection –

In bodies composed of light.

And [they] will be shown clearly all the thoughts and actions of their lifetimes.

– Meditation on Holy Qur'an 99:4²⁷⁸

How few human beings understand the intensity and magnitude of the swiftly approaching Day of Clarification.

Those who do not really comprehend the nature of the Last Day are impatient, and would like to speed its arrival –

Whereas those who know the immense power of the Living Truth stand in trembling awe before the dawning of this infinite Day.

– Meditation on Holy Qur'an 42:7²⁷⁹

9/20/98

DREAM OF TERRIFYING REPTILIAN SHAPE-SHIFTING FEMALE

[Dream: There was a mainstream female interest who looked similar to some teachers at school who I have known. She also looked like the woman from Stargate.

Although it wasn't a horrible dream or anything, it did culminate at the end with Peter Gabriel music, off of the album entitled "Birdy."

²⁷⁷ Ibid., p. 86.

²⁷⁸ Ibid., p. 88.

²⁷⁹ Ibid., p. 99.

This particular song, *The Rhythm of the Heat*, is about the most dramatic and emotionally intense song on the entire album.

This all seemed to be taking place at some sort of a summer-camp apartment.

It was mostly a supportive atmosphere, until the end. Children were working with children, adults were working with children, and so forth.

At the very end I could tell that something was wrong, because everything got very dark and scary.

This woman came up to me, and the music got really intense. She said that she wanted to take me somewhere else, away from everyone.

I knew something was wrong. I could see that her eyes were changing and stuff, but I went anyway.

She led me to this area where it was very dark, but there was this thin shard of light across her face. Just like in a horror movie.

She was really changing. She had an elongation of her face, making it look like an alligator.

The skin got bumpy and reptilian as this happened. And she started to lean forward.

She told me that **she wanted to touch me in her true form. She wanted to touch me when she was like this.** She wanted to really be able to feel me.

She had a very horrible, demon-like voice, similar to a thousand nasty belches rising from a New York City sewer all at once.

She then reduced down to the size of an iguana, and was walking around on the floor.

YOU'VE GOT THE KID, BUT WHERE'S THE SHORTS?

[D: "Jesus, I ask that if I am going to say anything here that you help me, so that it comes from the right places.

I really would like to know if this is what I think it is in this dream first."]

¹ You've got the kid, but where's the shorts?

[David's Note, 9/15/22: A veiled reference to children without their clothes on. This is directly after a very graphic reference to Draco Reptilians and shape-shifting.]

²The first time you looked at this, there were those elements inconsistent with the other matters, as pertaining to the greater development of ease of existence.

³We do not want this. We do want you to embrace the complexity, to see it as a puzzle therein.

⁴Part and parcel of this complexity is the fact that you have overtuned yourself in the direction of feeling a sort of eulogization of being alone, and of aloneness in general.

⁵Therefore, what you saw here was a powerful, archetypal metaphor for how you have really viewed companionship.

⁶The woman turning into the iguana at the end was meant to indicate the way in which you have seen that this would be a threat that could undermine your whole process.

⁷Instead, we want you to be aware of the fact that this is indeed faulty logic.

⁸It is not subject to the kind of quality of thought that we have seen in your many other examples of work.

⁹Therefore, when we know this, we begin to understand how to circumvent it.

¹⁰The next problem would be the lack of available supplies necessary to carry the project through to its fruition.

[David's Note: Symbolically, I believe this dream is telling us that as soon as the negative reveals itself to us, it changes back into a harmless iguana. We are there now.]

LOVE AND COMPANIONSHIP

¹The project that we speak of is the awareness that incorporates awareness of love and companionship into a paradigm....

²Realize that in many cases, **the entities on your plane do need to loosen up –**

³And **be willing to relax the stranglehold of restrictions that they have over the selection criteria for another party.**

[David's Note: This is clearly talking about the ongoing efforts to destroy Trump.]

⁴We purposefully awakened you during the time where the sounds of [your landlady] would be immediately audible in your surrounding environment.

⁵We did this so as to underline the point of how you have taken the situation and subconsciously transferred it into your own view of her demonization.

⁵This is not something that you are capable of discussing within yourself. And thus, you simply don't know the answer to our question.

[David's Note: This dream was partly prophetic of the astonishing, spontaneous eviction I was about to receive from the woman I was renting from in a few days.

She also seemed to have a break-up fight with a male guest in the house this same day. The dream freaked me out so much that I never said a word about the event.]

9/22/98

IMPORTANT TO AVOID VIDEO GAMES AND PORNOGRAPHY

[Dream: At the very end of the dream, I realized there were all these scholars and leaders of learning who were in this house that I also lived in.

We had essentially declared war on others who were trying to destroy us. People who I cared about had already been killed in this battle.

A TV show was being made about all this already. It definitely had a medieval setting.]

[David's Note: Remember that these dreams can mirror the thoughts and actions of the negative. We do not support nor endorse violence. This is an information war.]

¹The opportunity to circumcise them should be apparent.

²The leader in most of these cases is not Christ, but rather those fallen energies of the soul that take command over the physical world.

³It is a point of increasing sadness that so many of those who would pursue this knowledge of computers get lured into Internet pornography and long hours,

⁴And/or hyper-violent video games featuring very realistic blood and gore.

⁵This is as yet another example of how elements of society that could be very productive for spiritual growth and development

⁶Have been turned and reduced to the banal levels now seen.

9/23/98

1. THE BREAD COMPANY NEEDS ITS LOAVES AND FISHES ON TIME

¹ This dream [as seen below] was meant to show you that you have indeed come a long way,

² But that **we do have certain deadlines that are very urgent.**

³ The bread company needs to have its loaves and fishes prepared in time.

⁴ **Conform to the outside regulations that are part of our collective, shared agenda,**

⁵ **And much will be made simpler in the coming days and weeks ahead.**

2. DREAM MEETING WITH ROBERT PLANT ABOUT STAIRWAY TO HEAVEN

[Dream: This section involved a direct, one-on-one meeting with Robert Plant, the lead singer of Led Zeppelin. That was pretty awesome. It was actually very awesome.

He was very friendly. I ended up asking him about Stairway to Heaven.

I said to him that the big question on everyone's mind was whether or not he was telling the truth about how the words came to him for this.

He said that it was true. The words just arrived in his mind.

He said he went through several different permutations for the opening line, some of which were goofy, trying to get to "There's a lady who's sure, all that glitters is gold."

I finally said to him that it looked to me as though these were channeled lyrics. He told me that this was essentially true.

I said to him, "Man, you just whipped this off so fast. You don't realize that all these people out there have gotten such tremendous meaning out of your lyrics!"

He said, "Yeah, it's pretty incredible!" We definitely had fun talking. This is obviously about me. [All of a person's dreams are about themselves in standard dream analysis.]

3. WE WILL BE ABLE TO SPEND A LITTLE MORE MONEY

¹ When we take in the later pursuits, the next stage of the process comes into form —

² As though it had already been there in the present moment.

³ In these cases, it is the Supreme Council of Antiquities office that we then call upon for support.

⁴The next time you use a credit card in these matters, we will be able to spend a little more money –

⁵In those areas more nearly defined as global marketing.

[David's Note: Financial difficulty has been ongoing throughout this writing process.]

4. YOU HAVE THE TIME TO DO WHAT YOU NEED TO DO

¹Do not fret and fume about it, David. It is not too late.

²You do have the time to do everything you are supposed to do.

³To uphold the standards that you have set for yourself, through your own criteria.

⁴The more firmly we rob the package of its necessary components, the harder it is for us to regain those components.

⁵And thus, what you need to do is have something ready, something to go –

⁶Something that you can draw upon, so that others will read it – and become interested in it.

⁷That is all that we want for you.

⁸Quality comes before quantity.

[David's Note: This speaks directly to the awesome struggle of trying to finish all three of these books – now five volumes – before actually earning enough income from it.]

5. WE ARE AN ACTIVE COMMAND CENTER

¹When we dare to include those elements of the highest and most intimate quality,

²We insure that the readers will expand beyond their boundaries and scope –

³Taking in those more universal concepts.

⁴Remember that the readings we have done here stem from your deepest level of trance,

⁵Often when you were indeed unaware of the passage of syllables as they went by.

⁶ So, the metaphor here is for you to simply accept the proposition of the idea of the force behind the readings being an active command center —

⁷ And you being a passive receptor.

⁸ Saturnalia is that celebration of the true unity with this source of knowledge.

⁹ And thus, when we consumed ourselves in forgiveness of the past, and for the lusts and passions we had that were misplaced,

¹⁰ We then prepare ourselves dutifully for the future —

¹¹ In such a way as to make clear the distinction between the self and otherself — namely that there is none.

[David's Note: In Western astrology, which the Cayce Readings endorsed, Saturn is the planet of the father, of discipline, mature wisdom, and study.

Saturnalia was a Roman festival whose positive elements became Christmas. Michael does not at all support evil practices. The word symbolizes the awakening Christ.

Michael uses encrypted words like this again and again throughout these volumes.]

6. THE SYSTEM OF THE PAWNBROKERS WILL NOT CONTINUE

¹ Networking this system together makes sense, when done in an appropriate fashion.

² The pawnbrokers have all relied on every available inch of guidance to try to prolong their existence as much as possible.

³ But even as we have spoken to you from the very first day, David, this is a system that will not be allowed to continue.

⁴ The goals of this multilayered consciousness have been for you to arrive at a pinch of home while here on Earth —

⁵ To then experience, in the chemically-oriented body, that which cannot be put into chemical terms.

⁶ To arrive in the East and move towards the West — symbolically of course.

[David's Note: The Chinese Balloon took this same course trajectory of East to West. Michael also mentions "a pinch" and 'chemicals,' again suggesting East Palestine.]

7. WE DO NOT NEED TO RAKE THE TREE FOR LEAVES

¹ To drive a car, and keep focused on the rear-view mirror –

² While simultaneously **steering the passage of said vehicle** to the now-looming destination point.

³ To have come before the Council of Antiquities already, through thine own creations,

⁴ And to then return in another form – and see how it is being handled.

⁵ To rake the tree for leaves, instead of allowing them to fall, is not the point here, David.

[David's Note: In a real chemical disaster, leaves may be raked off of trees and the bark may then be washed and sanitized. This may be another Palestine reference.]

⁶ You do not need to actively search out publicity from radio shows, etc.

⁷ What you need to do is get your material organized into a presentable format.

⁸ You have already started to do this to an appreciable level.

⁸ You might indeed want to have a series of indexed terms, so that people know what each reading is generally saying.

⁹ You could publish the material in chronological fashion, knowing that not everyone would have the time or the desire to read it.

[David's Note: This and other 'offhanded' remarks from Michael were what convinced me to publish the original transcripts online, almost in full.]

9/24/98

[David's Note: On this Friday night, I gave my first-ever public lecture, entitled *The Physics of Ascension*. I talked about the 25,000-year cycle, the Law of One, et cetera.

I somehow managed to fill the place, and it created a huge buzz in the community. Many people already knew I was the alleged reincarnation of Edgar Cayce.

I summarized a variety of scientific arguments in favor of a dimensional shift and reunion with Christ Consciousness. The audience was utterly dazzled.

I held it at the Fellowship Center, an interfaith church I attended at the time. After this successful show, I occasionally was asked to minister on Sundays. I was a big hit.

Thanks to Michael's guidance, I went from \$6.75 an hour to \$65 an hour, while also making an acceptable living from low-priced conference tickets, in only two months.]

9/25/98

1. DEMONIC GOVERNMENT TRYING TO CONTROL US

[Dream: I saw **Freddy Krueger**. He was being **set up to jump out of a box and scare people**.

It was definitely like the United States government.

There was a weird thing where **they were all trying to control us into doing certain things**.

I was aware, even as I was going through it, that it was a metaphor about the United States government.

At one point I put on a football jersey that had the number 32 on it. That caused them all to call me Bummy or Bunny.

[David's Note: This is likely another dream memory of parallel life child abuse. 'Biden' also starts with a B and ends with an N, like Bunny. 32 is, of course, Masonic.]

2. AN EVIL SITUATION SIMILAR TO "SOYLENT GREEN"

Most of the guys I was around were sort of lost. I was working my way through this whole house where there was stuff going on that was very interesting.

People were hanging out and partying, that kind of stuff.

I was definitely doing too much. I was making waves, and had to be careful.

The waves I was making were obviously putting me in danger.

This demonic system that was in place was going to come after me.

Anyway, the next thing I know, **there was a situation similar to the movie called Soylent Green** —

[Where the government covertly recycles dead humans into the food supply.]

I could see that **they had Freddy Krueger in the box. They were getting ready to have him burst out.**

For some reason, there was someone next to me who also had a bald head that looked like it had been burned.

I could tell that Freddy's head in the box was more grotesque than this person's was.

[David's Note, 2/15/23: This may be prophetic of the "Alien Scare" the Deep State is already starting to push on the public, with their alleged shoot-downs of UFOs.

Freddy may represent some type of alien or demonic threat they may try to introduce.

The Soylent Green connection seems to be a metaphorical reflection of the organized, institutional corruption we saw play out in the Covid Situation.

The horror of that movie was a symbolic disclosure of what the Elites are really like.

Either way, Michael assures us that these dreams are only meant to warn us of future possibilities that he and his associates are diligently working to eliminate.]

3. ASCENSION GYMNASTICS IN THE OUT-OF-BODY STATE

Anyway, as time progressed we were going through this house. A lot of neat stuff was going on.

I was doing my (impossible, Ascension-style levitation) gymnastics. Other people had seen it and were applauding me.

Then I seemed to be outside. I was going through these thick woods that were very dark and very black.

I was jumping off the ground, flipping in the air, then landing and running a little bit, somersaulting again, and then doing it again. That was very cool.

Somewhere in the middle of all this, I realized that I was out of body, as I was doing impossible physical feats.

4. AN OUT-OF-BODY EXPERIENCE WITHIN THE DREAM

What was strange was that I had an out-of-body experience within the dream.

It was similar to the notion in the OBE literature about leaving your body from one level to get into another level.

This is what happened. I had an out-of-body experience within one level to go to an out-of-body experience in another level.

It was definitely the same type of thing as doing it from the regular conscious state. I had to focus.

5. MAGNIFICENT FOURTH-DENSITY MANSIONS IN THE SKY

When I had this out-of-body experience, I started to fly upwards.

Within a very short period of time of doing this, I saw the footprint of the building I had been in.

It was shaped like a giant E with a roof, and then three little buildings to the right.

Since I had recently had an airplane trip, I thought I should be able to fly upwards with great ease. I had just been exposed to that same scenery recently.

I kept on soaring higher and higher in altitude. As I did so, other houses came into view that were very, very large.

There was an extremely tiny house that was surrounded by very magnificent houses. These houses were all floating in the air — above the ground.

Even though they normally were not visible, in this out-of-body state I could see them.

This was very interesting to me, because the higher I tried to get, the more of these buildings I was finding.

At some point, I started to just explore the area around this, because I couldn't seem to get any higher up.

6. A ROOM WITH A MATRIX OF QUARTZ CRYSTALS

Then, everything seemed to morph. I was inside this area where I was seeing quartz crystals.

At first, they were kind of small, and the area itself was almost like a cave.

I went over to the right in the cave, after entering it. I saw some larger crystals that were up against the wall.

They were about three or four inches wide, and quite majestic. I grabbed one and it broke off very easily. I was holding it in my hands.

To the right of that crystal was a matrix of tall, skinny crystals that were organized into a rectangle.

They were all about three inches tall. The points were all organized into a perfect grid. Each one was no wider than a centimeter.

7. FUTURE SOULMATE SAYS “DON’T REMOVE THE CRYSTALS!”

The experience was that I had difficulty maintaining my focus in the room.

Everything started to fade. I really had to concentrate harder in order to keep the room in focus.

After I did this, I grabbed the grid matrix of crystals, (with the intent to take it with me,) and tried to get up.

Suddenly, a woman who had been in the room told me that if I did this, she wouldn’t be able to stay there.

She told me that she needed it, and that I couldn’t remove it from there.

No sooner did this woman talk to me, but in some strange way it seemed that I recognized her.

I couldn’t quite put my finger on it, but I felt like I knew her — and she was very important to me.

In short, it seemed as though I had met my soulmate.

[David’s Note: I have no idea what this means yet, but it is very interesting.]

9/28/98

1. THE MURDERER WITHIN

¹Trying to catch the murderer, and it looks as though it is still within.

[Dream: That was definitely a big theme. There was a big, big school. I was supposed to do work there of one kind or another.

Most of the people were not there. I was doing a night custodian type of thing.

Basically, **we were all recognizing that there was a very powerful and evil entity operating in the school.** We were trying to catch up to it.

It took on many different permutations, including one point when there was a mop head. **I ended up burning the mop head with my old friend from school.**

There were other mops that were lying across the whole width of the hallway as well.

[David's Note: The burning of the mop head suggests a cleanup gone wrong – namely East Palestine, Ohio. We do not advocate any use of violence.]

This was an unrelenting evil force. I think it might have killed a dog. It had done some really horrible thing. The malevolent force was really giving us a hard time.

It certainly seemed to be quite powerful. It also seemed to be connected with these guys who have the car stereos and stuff, with the big, booming rap music.

We realized at some point that **it was an intangible presence, not something that you could easily see.**

We also realized that **there was a guy who had brought it into the building. At one point we tried to destroy him.**

The method of destruction seemed to be targeted on his car. We tried to gut out everything that would allow the car to function.

The next major thing that happened after this was that we were all outside.

We discovered that there was a guy out there in a sports car, with the rap music blasting and all that stuff.

He was the one who was responsible for the haunting of the building....

[David's Note: This clearly symbolizes the ongoing race-baiting we see today.]

2. YOU HAVE BEEN PASSED THE CHALICE

¹ In this brave New World, there are those who will become the leaders of nations, the leaders of peoples, the leaders of societies, et cetera.

² You are to become one of these leaders.

³ Due to the fortunate action on your behalf of the intercession of these forces,

⁴ You have been passed the chalice of the inheritance of this great legacy.

[David's Note, 9/19/22: This is a follow-up and summation of various other prophecies Michael has shared in these books. I do not feel comfortable omitting this data.

If Michael and his people want me to run an embassy for them, I am happy to do so. At this point I have no idea what these prophecies really mean.

I believe everyone who receives this book and can resonate with Michael's words will become a leader — once the world has been transformed.]

3. THE "DIRTY MOP HEADS" ARE BEING CLEANED

¹ In order to promote peace and stability, we have to find ourselves often dictating what it is that you shall do, and how it is to be done.

² If the minister weren't able to be present for his flock of sheep, then we would have a problem in his addressing therein.

³ All carnal-level feelings must, if at all possible, be eradicated....

⁴ This is not simply a job that you just start doing.

⁵ It is rather the completion of a circuit that demands dedication to only the highest, purest forms of light imaginable.

⁶ This must be mirrored in the efforts made within the physical lifespan of any entity.

⁷ Thus, we see that **the malevolent force that was present in the building represents the rampant abuses present in society, to a degree.**

⁸ The fact that it was condensed into a mop head and burned by you illustrates the fact that it is in the process of being cleaned — and that the dirt itself is at fault.

⁹ Remember all of the various mop heads that were lining the floors? They were designed to show you the way in which the grit had been consolidated....

4. YOU ARE SOON TO WIN A WEBBY AWARD

¹ Now, with respect to the other question, namely your position in this, David, understand that you are going to win a Webby award soon.

² Your site will help promote these readings. And we can then consolidate our efforts to a much larger audience spectrum.

³ What is important is that we both have much greater unification on these matters.

⁴ Your action of locking the keys in the car yesterday was designed to illustrate for you how disconnected you have been with the source self of all beingness.

⁵ Indeed, there are those morose feelings welling to the surface that could indeed be quelled through the greater application to what you know the Plan is.

⁶ And instead, it has been melded by the hopes and expectations of a deep and intimate relationship.

⁷ You yourself are not thinking clearly in seeing that such a relationship would need to take a long period of time, and is not at all immediately forthcoming.

⁸ If it were to be so, a great mistake would have taken place, a mistake that could hinder your effectiveness in the future....

⁹ Now, you are able to release control over those entities in your present, and settle into a new pattern and structure.

¹⁰ Do not be dismayed by a dream that is coercive, as you are doing very well. You must remind yourself of that.

¹¹ This dream was only designed to strongly indicate that a course divergence is necessary at this point, with regards to ____.

¹² We thank you. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

[David's Note: Michael's guidance soon helped me decide to pull away from the woman who was approaching me, and who had a variety of significant issues.

The woman I was renting a room from was about to evict me as well.]

9/30/98

1. HOW ABOUT A NICE EVICTION... TO CELEBRATE YOUR SUCCESS?

[David's Note: This was the day I had to move out, immediately after my landlord informed me that I was no longer invited to live there – and boom, that's it. Leave now.

She said she had more than one dream where she rented my room to massage clients.

Somehow, her "dream guidance" led to her delivering me a spontaneous eviction.

She played it all like it was her spiritual destiny, with no care for how it affected me. I was baffled at her sudden and total indifference to my immediate future welfare.

This was right after she saw my huge success — speaking in front of 100 people.

She had displayed signs of jealousy and random hostility while I was living there. I was thrown into crisis, as she suddenly wanted me out immediately — that day, if possible.

On the morning I had the dream about a woman shape-shifting into a reptilian, I woke up right afterward to hearing her having a huge argument with a man in the house.

Had she told me that my room would be facing the busiest highway in Virginia Beach, on 23rd street, I never would have rented that room in the first place.

One ongoing theme was that anyone I interacted with wanted far more of my time than I could afford to give. Researching and transcribing these readings was a full-time job.

My focus would anger them. They took it personally, and then created separation.

Here was the ominous dream I had the very morning I was ordered to leave.

2. HORRIBLE DREAM OF CHEMICAL WARFARE

[Dream: This started out involving Iraq. Certain soldiers' bodies had been pulverized completely by some sort of bomb.

America was going in and **spraying down these bodies with some sort of a white foaming chemical**, and then peeling them off the ground.

Iraq had been involved in some sort of horrible war, and I think that the United States was responsible.

They had just done something to these guys that had made them literally turn into flat pancakes — melted bodies that were all messed up.

These guys were pancake flat, and it was very gory.

I got the impression that they had been lying on this field for a long time, something like an airport tarmac.

All of a sudden, the idea was for the American government to go in and spray down these bodies with a white foam, and remove them.

It needed to be done immediately.

[David's Note: This appears to be another Palestine chemical spill prophecy, as well as a graphic metaphor of how the shots have 'crushed' people.]

3. A CRAFT LANDS AT THE WHITE HOUSE, E.T. HUMANS EMERGE

[D: “This could have something to do with extraterrestrials, because of the fact that just last night, I was reading about some extraterrestrial stuff from the Ra Material again.”]

¹Holy Eucharist.

[Dream: I distinctly remember now visualizing this craft landing at the White House.

A being or a series of beings who were totally humanoid, just like us, came out and announced their presence.

[David’s Note, 6/7/22: Wow! Very intense. This is clearly a prophecy of Valiant’s people revealing themselves, as angels who support the Holy Eucharist.

This is a central concept in Christianity – the trans-substantiation of bread and wine in the communion ceremony. It is to accept the gift of Christhood – and be One with it.]²⁸⁰

²Road to Damascus. Globe.

[David’s Note: The Biblical story of Damascus specifically references blinding light. Then we see the word ‘Globe.’ Are we all on the road to a multi-dimensional event?

Here is none other than ABC News to help us understand the meaning of Damascus.

In Damascus, religions that are so often in conflict – Christianity, Islam and Judaism – live in harmony.

Some women walk into Armani bareheaded, while others wear the scarf known as the hijab.

Muslims pray side by side with Christians, Greek Orthodox, Armenian Catholics and Jews.

For Christians around the world, the road to Damascus is a symbol of transformation.

According to the Bible, Damascus is where Paul, a tent maker who hated the Christians, was **blinded by a light from heaven –**

until his baptism in the Barada river.

After the scales fell from his eyes, he became the architect of the modern church.²⁸¹

²⁸⁰ <https://www.usccb.org/eucharist>

²⁸¹ <https://abcnews.go.com/GMA/story?id=2849829&page=1>

Taken together, this suggests that humanity — the entire globe — is on the Road to Damascus, and will experience a Holy Eucharist — in the form of brilliant white light.

This global activation of the Christ within all of us will apparently be facilitated by an in-person visit from Michael's people. That is how I interpret this data.]

TWO WEEKS IN THE HIPPIE HOUSE, NO INTUITIVE DATA TO REPORT

Now I was evicted and had nowhere else to go. I crash-landed for two weeks on a bare mattress in a hippie house — with friends of mine who worked at a local organic farm.

The wife of the hippie couple had inherited the house as a teenager, after both of her parents had passed away in a tragic car accident.

She began running the house, but they were still just kids. They were in trauma and could not handle the basics of what they needed to do — like cleaning the rooms.

I was friends with the owner of the farm, John. After two weeks in the Hippie House, he ended up allowing me to live rent-free in the apartment over his barn, as a work trade.

No data of significance came through during my two weeks at the Hippie House. I then did construction labor to pay my way at the farm, and built out my own living space.]

SECTION NINETEEN: OCTOBER 1998

10/9/98

DREAM ABOUT THE MASS UNVEILING OF NEGATIVE ENTITIES

[Dream: There was a part having to do with Halloween that was very strange.

I didn't realize it was Halloween until we were right in it. Everyone was wearing a costume. Kids were running around.

There was a real spirit as well, which we saw after we came back from a tattoo place.

Then I ended up getting into an argument with someone about what I saw. They insisted there were no negative spirits. I started to show them how I could fly.

I said that a spirit or ghost was nothing more than a person, like me.

A spirit, like the one I just saw, was a person who could fly, and who **came from a higher dimensional level, seeking to distract people**.

It was not actually anything dangerous, nor impossible or extraordinary. The spiritual reality is quite commonplace. They seemed to understand that pretty well.

[David's Note: This seems prophetic of the mass unveiling of the demonic in our world, and how we are witnessing it trying to seduce the people — in every possible way.

Part of the Great Awakening is to fully recognize the spiritual component of this war.]

10/13/98

DREAM OF A SHOOTING INVOLVING A GAY PERSON, AND A TRIAL

[Dream: There was a whole thing about **Clinton's scandal** [with Monica Lewinsky] — only now it was a **conspiracy involving a gay person**.

It was **almost like a shooting**. And it involved two guys.

I got a very clear bead on the man's face. He was bald on the top, and had a little bit of hair on the sides.

There was some sort of event involving a shooting. It also had to do with the fact that the man was gay. A trial was getting started as a result of this.

I very clearly heard someone in the crowd say gay people shouldn't be allowed to demonstrate, or something like that.

[David's Note, 2/19/23: This is clearly prophetic of many interconnecting events, including Biden's ever-increasing criminal liabilities – "Clinton's scandal."

This dream appears to be predicting how some in the public would react to the far-left ideology that was pushed on the public since the start of the Biden Administration.

5/24/23: I first unsealed this prophecy before the mass shooting in a Christian school in April. This clearly predicted the event, and correlates it with Clinton scandals.

Additionally, a balding gay man is now "on trial" in a big PR nightmare for Target. The lesson here is that you don't want to go out and advertise Satanic imagery on clothes.]²⁸²

10/14/98

[David's Note: This reading appeared two days after I moved into John's barn, where I lived for six months and did significant construction labor with a skilled professional.

This was a very stable, happy and incredibly productive time – giving me the breathing room to quickly develop and launch my website by February 1999.

However, my intense, obsessive focus with my own work would get me kicked out in only half a year. I then finally rented my own place, which reduced those conflicts.

John was also going through a bitter divorce at the time. He even ended up shaving his head because he was suffering from such turbulent emotions.

On this end of the time loop, I'm the one recovering from a divorce – and I let my hair grow a foot long before finally surrendering it to the Universe in February 2023.

Michael begins this section by congratulating me for "passing the exam trial" of eviction and ending up at this beautiful, green farm – with lots of acreage and privacy.]

1. YOU PASSED THE EXAM TRIAL

¹ The lesson is still pending.

² You passed the exam trial before we ever had failed any attempt to make you conscientious and considerate.

²⁸² <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/target-execs-hold-emergency-meeting-avoid-bud-light/>

³ And now, through some dedications to this work on our part, and your own persistence,

⁴ We have arrived at a new system of understandings, wherein we may again take an appropriate look at these matters —

⁵ And at what it is that we are truly dealing with here....

2. MEMORIES WILL RISE AS YOU WORK IN THE EARTH

¹ Your new child is about to be born. And we have eagerly awaited its arrival.

² It is neither good, nor bad, to say that you are what you are.

³ And we have always been there with you — to navigate through your changes of life.

⁴ We do consider this to be the first day of a new beginning —

⁵ As you have now begun to feel comfortable with trusting in John, and in the inherent rightness of this situation.

⁶ You also have already done some farm work, and that is good.

⁷ Your memories will begin to rise to the surface as you work in the earth.

⁸ This is happening because the deepest change takes place in the ways in which consciousness is brought back to its own roots.

3. AGRICULTURE WILL ENGENDER THE BEST TYPE OF HEALING POSSIBLE

¹ The guerrilla capitalist is a person who has sought to undermine the radical system of beliefs now in place —

² And instead go into a more idealistic or utopian setup.

³ The agrarian framework now present in this area is indeed such an opportunity to then break away from the mainstream system now in place —

⁴ To an even greater degree than you had in the past.

⁵ As you are already becoming aware, this will engender some of the best types of healing possible.

4. CLEARING BLOCKAGES IN THE MUSCLE TISSUE FROM LACK OF USE

- ¹ The extensive usage of the physical body, under the right conditions,
- ² Does have the effect of releasing old chemical blockages, soon to disappear,
- ³ That were stored in the various muscles and retained from lack of use or inactivity.

5. COMPLETING THE INITIATION OF BODY AND MIND AS ONE

- ¹ Understand that even one who exercises properly and attentively does not automatically eliminate personality fragments –
- ² And/or blockages from earlier stages of living.
- ³ Rather, it is the idea formation or the hologram of these problems that is, in a sense, a self-maintaining reality field.
- ⁴ And, it will continue to create itself until such time as it is no longer necessary.
- ⁵ In the case of one who exercises attentively and frequently, it is prudent to say that the opportunity is indeed present quite often, though rarely if ever used.
- ⁶ The point is this. When the initiation of mind and body are completed as One,
- ⁷ There is the opportunity to embark upon the discovery of the deepest icebergs of the Spirit –
- ⁸ Lurking in the depths of the subconscious,
- ⁹ And usually not visible – except for the ten percent that then sinks the ship.

6. IT IS TIME TO RAISE THE FORGOTTEN KNOWLEDGE OF ATLANTIS

- ¹ **It is now time to raise Atlantis from the depths –**
- ² **To bring forth this forgotten knowledge,**
- ³ And [to] resume in your path of exploration and self-discovery.
- ⁴ It is okay that you had been neutralized in your effectiveness –
- ⁵ As this is another aspect of learning that is as valid as any other.

⁶ Indeed, we want you to be clear in your understanding that this too was chosen by you, not necessarily by us, on a deeper level –

⁷ And that you were very carefully watched and attended to throughout the entire process.

⁸ Ideally, we would have liked to have seen you be able to fluctuate through said changes without such a totality of emotional despair.

⁹ And yet, it was what it was.

⁹ You have now used it quite admirably to add to your armor of Light.

[David's Note: My sudden, spontaneous eviction was completely illegal under all forms of renter laws. I did have "total emotional despair" after it first happened.]

7. CLEANING ITEMS ARE AS ESSENTIAL AS HAVING BOTH HANDS

¹ The next time we feel that something is amiss with you, we will try to get you the message in advance –

² So as to reduce or eliminate the chances of your losing focus like this again in the present.

³ Please do go get the following items:

⁴ A cup, a bowl, some plates, a sponge, a broom, a mop, a second-hand or a used vacuum cleaner, a shower curtain, et cetera.

⁵ These items will be as essential as having both hands firmly in place....

[David's Note: That same day, I went out and bought almost everything I needed, except the vacuum cleaner. It was a huge act of faith, as I had hardly any money.

Sure enough, I soon got some new clients, and everything again became just fine. Plus, my mother unexpectedly sent me a life-saving check for 50 dollars.]

8. YOU HAVE ARRIVED AT THE FINAL DESTINATION

¹ Your mind and stomach are both coming out of range now.

² And thus, we attribute our success to your own ability to stay on top of these situations –

³To arrive at a completion point, after a very difficult process of healing.

⁴You have indeed arrived at the final destination before Ascension....

⁵We thank you, and again remind you that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

10/15/98

1. FRIGHTENING PROPHECY OF BALLOON / EMP / NUKE SCARE

¹How **fornicated** you are indicates what degree of **supervision is necessary**.

²That's great advice.

³And **from our nukey standpoint,**

⁴We can say that the ship looms in its passage over the United States right now –

⁵As we speak.

⁶The **transitions on-board were evident in that event.**

[David's Note: Another clear reference to the Chinese Balloon and EMP threat, and the UFO scare that has picked up immediately afterwards.

The references to 'fornication,' 'transitions' and "supervision is necessary" appear to be about "The Resident" – and his constantly-changing band of very merry friends.

Who might have given Biden "great advice, from [their] nukey standpoint," for a device that "transitions on board" a flying object – to create an 'event?']

2. THE PERUVIAN MOUNTAINS STILL HANDLE THE INFORMATION LOAD

¹Many of your people were preparing to have reliance on these sources of guidance and inspiration.

²The scientists are busy with the political angle –

³Trying in vain to recapitulate their losses,

⁴And assemble together a workable framework, based off of what they now know.

⁵The Peruvian mountains still handle the information load that was stored at the time of the great falling of Atlantis.

⁴You will need to remain bewildered for a moment about that.

[David's Note: The lines about 'scientists' trying in vain to recapitulate their political and financial losses are very prophetic of what we see with Walensky and Fauci.]

3. FASCINATING CORRELATION WITH BRIEFINGS FROM PETE PETERSON

[David's Note: Pete Peterson said 534 ancient UFOs were secretly purchased from Mexico, under the Trump administration, for well over a billion dollars.

The craft were found in a vast network of perfectly-cut underground tunnels in Peru.

Pete was lucky enough to gain firsthand access to these tunnels as a high-level insider.

Pete said that some of them run directly underneath the Nazca Lines, and they stretch on for hundreds, if not thousands of miles. All precisely laser-cut in their appearance.

These ships apparently have a much-higher technology than everything else we use.

They can blip around instantly, anywhere in the galaxy you want to go – but they will only operate with either seven or twenty-seven passengers on board.

The passenger requirement has something to do with the physics of how it travels.

This technology is significantly more advanced than anything being used by the ETs we interact with in various classified programs.

Stargate travel normally takes significant time, and can involve several "hops" along the way. Our discovery of these ships is like upgrading from horses to airplanes.

Pete was hoping to design a radio that would allow communication with the ship.]

4. FROLICKING SURGERY IS NEVER WISE

¹Do not fail to address those portions of the personality still needing supervision and/or revision –

²As this will indeed prove to be a megalithic stunt once accomplished.

³In the words of [a friend of David's parents who is a rock drummer],

4 Frolicking surgery is never wise.

[David's Note: This clearly reflects a majority opinion on current issues we now see. Rock musicians Dee Snider and Paul Stanley have recently spoken out on this.]

⁵ It is necessary to allow the procedure to go on without any hitches —

⁶ So that once it reaches its completion, you have indeed not hindered the process, as it is available now.

⁷ Sobriety can be an anniversary in some different ways. Think about that.

⁸ The crowd is roaring with laughter.

⁹ And it is time now for another to arrive at the helm or the forefront of the Christ Consciousness.

[David's Note: Michael jokingly refers to the 'procedure' of light body activation.]

5. CONCERNS FROM THE GOVERNMENTAL SECURITY APPARATUS

¹ You have seen the **sinking of the Titanic** —

² **The cessation of viability** of the Art Bell show, as it is now seen.

³ Also, you will know and understand that this comes about when **too many cooks have spoiled the broth** —

⁴ Or too many accurate pieces of data are **allowed circulation** in this worldwide venue.

⁵ Therefore, in the larger arena, **there are those concerns generated by the governmental security apparatus,**

⁶ **As it attempts, through various ploys and means,**

⁷ **To intimidate and/or to scare all participants involved in such endeavors.**

⁸ This was indeed tailor-made to Art's specifications —

⁹ And yet it still possessed information capable of being traced back to its source, if one reads very carefully.

[David's Note: We have encrypted references to the "sinking of the" Chinese Balloon, followed by an "Art Bell-style" UFO scare from the "governmental apparatus."

The downed wreckage has “information capable of being traced back to its source.”

New imagery of the submerged Titanic appeared just as I was finishing this book.²⁸³

Also, the chemical ‘broth’ at Palestine was ‘cooked’ and “allowed circulation.” This theme continues below, with references to a “lit bottle” and “charred remains.”

The ‘broth’ could also symbolize the inoculations, as with the rotten milk analogy.]

5. THE NEXT STEP IS FOR THE DISC TO COME INTO PHYSICAL FORM

¹ I was horse riding the other day –

² And I noticed that **a lit champagne bottle** was waiting for you.

³ You have indeed arrived here, at a point where the **charred remains** of the old self lie buried in the past –

⁴ And the new self so soon to follow is indeed rising into being now.

⁵ So don’t get overzealous at this point.

⁶ Simply believe that:

⁵ The next step is for the disc to come squarely down into physical form –

⁶ So that you might then have a greater ability to manipulate and control it.

[David’s Note: This again is prophetic of the current media flirtation with the idea that UFOs may have been shot down after the Chinese Balloon incident.

The lit champagne bottle is a Molotov cocktail, predicting various riots. This passage also has a very positive side, predicting Divine Intervention from positive ETs.]

6. WE WANT TO REGAIN OUR ANTIQUE STATURE

¹ The cycles of information and of beingness still puzzle you somewhat.

² And when we attempt to speak on these matters, there have still been distortions.

³ So what we want, right now, is to regain our antique stature that we had held in the past –

²⁸³ <https://www.bbc.com/news/science-environment-65602182>

⁴ Wherein those musical recordings on our CD are kept as closely as possible to their original rendition – as the transition to digital is made.

⁵ As you know, the warmth of the instrument cannot be fully captured, but indeed a very accurate rendition can be preserved.

⁶ What you will discover is that discrete qualifications that you have make you a unique target in accepting, from one source to another, many various forms of information.

7. NASA AND MOUNT ETNA WILL HAVE THINGS TO ANNOUNCE

¹ When the stakes are this high, the mountains are even higher.

² Mount Etna and Dan Goldin [the director of NASA at the time of this working] will both have some things to announce –

³ Very shortly.

⁴ You can relax into your knowingness that rank, color, and majority

⁵ Are tantamount to the upheaval of broad distinctions between Self and Otherself –

⁶ As now seen.

[David's Note: Mount Etna could be a reference to Italy, and the massive changeover that is occurring in the Vatican Bank management at this time.

The idea of "NASA having something to announce" is prophetic of the UFO scare, and also telegraphs a widely-anticipated future Disclosure event.]

8. PROPHETIC REFERENCE TO FUTURE WORK WITH JAMES V. HART

¹ The last lesson was inspired by the short wave radio scientists –

² Those who listen on the closest bands of radio airwaves,

³ That can indeed be productive of information on a very inner nature and scale.

[David's Note: This is a direct, prophetic reference to CONTACT. I would begin working with CONTACT's principal screenwriter, James V. Hart, in 2009.

CONTACT features Jodie Foster, who goes through a stargate and meets a human ET at the end – thanks to a process she started with short-wave radio signals.

When we meet her character in the beginning as a child, we see that she is completely obsessed with listening to short-wave radio signals from space.]

9. YOU CAN PRAY FOR YOUR OWN SOLUTIONS – AND GET RESULTS

¹ Either way, the developing countries are still having to be reborn –

² Currently entwined in a modality of existence that is far less than supreme in its physical comfort levels.

³ Back there in seminary school, you understood the proposition that you can petition the Lord with prayer.²⁸⁴

⁴ So too might we comment that you have available now the ability to pray for your own solutions –

⁵ And for a strengthening of this contact....

⁶ All stand lighted and ready to assist you.

⁷ You don't have to cradle the candle anymore –

⁸ But simply acknowledge that it has grown quite large, majestic and beautiful –

⁹ And that it now awaits your instructions.

[David's Note: This appears to refer to Archangel Michael's sword of light.]

10/16/98

1. DREAM OF MENTAL HEALTH AND HOVERCARS

[Dream: I was in a dormitory. A hide-and-go-seek game was going on that I really didn't want to be a part of.

It was a very white dormitory, almost like a mental hospital. Everybody was playing this stupid game.

People were hiding all over the place. You never knew where they were going to be.

The idea was that you had to sense psychically where they were going to be, and then find them.

²⁸⁴ Michael is loosely quoting Jim Morrison's poetry in all of Line 3.

I said that it would be ridiculous for me to play this game, because I would find everyone.

[David's Note: This appears to be a description of the conditions in certain cities.]

I was in the bedroom at one point. A very high-tech looking plane was trying to take off.

This plane was definitely designed to be like a UFO, I think, although it was taken as a regular manmade plane in the dream.

Anyway, it soared up into the air, got caught on some window or something, and crashed.

What was even more interesting was that before it became a plane, it was initially a backhoe.

The backhoe got caught on a gust of wind, and blew over to where I was. This made it difficult for anybody to pull it out.

[David's Note, 2/19/23: This seems prophetic of the trouble we've had getting funding for Stavatti. The backhoe almost certainly refers to our gravel pit project.]

2. WORLDWIDE PEACE TREATY BETWEEN RED AND BLUE 'TRIBES'

I didn't want these mentally ill people playing hide and seek. I wanted them to taper off on doing that. I did not meet with very much success in this.

It was during the hide and seek problem that the idea of red and blue first got started.

This last scene was probably what I was supposed to wake up from, because it was very grandiose.

All these different people were coming out of their houses — in a state of awe.

It looked very much like the neighborhood I grew up in, except this neighborhood had apartment buildings with railings [like Los Angeles] instead of small houses.

An announcement was being made to the whole community. It was being yelled out. I was one of the key people involved in doing this.

A huge Native American peace treaty had gotten started, between the red-wearing people and the blue-wearing people.

It was pretty amazing that it happened. Peace. It was on such a large scale!

There was also a warrior princess who was going off to war for the Blue Tribe. Her boyfriend was trying to convince her not to, but she was going to go anyway.

I had helped to work out this peace offering, and it was now being announced to the whole group.

The Native Americans were all really psyched about this. It was like a whole new beginning. **Everyone was coming off of a clean slate. It was worldwide.**

[David's Note: This appears to symbolize a global healing between left and right political factions, as we all realize we were being deceived and murdered.]

10/21/98

1. EVEN MORE PROPHETIC REFERENCES TO THE CHINESE BALLOON

¹ We were borrowing a **large Velcro cartoon** –

² And adjoining it, with straps, to what we already had.

³ **Surprises like this make you forget where you came from.**

⁴ **[It is] cold** – back down in the utility room.

⁵ Your dishes became cluttered –

⁶ So **we focused on centrifugal force** to bring them together.

⁷ There are some things about which no one **needs correction.**

⁸ Someone is facing you now.

⁹ And **the entire procedure demands that you collect continuous samples** –

¹⁰ Of the same **vibrations** that have always sustained you in the past.

[David's Note: More Balloons, Please! The equipment on the balloon was probably "adjoined with Velcro straps" to the metallic bars that made up its chassis.

"Cartoon" sounds like "Balloon." "We were borrowing a large Velcro [balloon.]"

And then Line 3 mentions the idea of negative "surprises like this." The negative does want us to "forget where we came from" and stay in a state of fear.

Michael also indicates that the public would laugh at it, making it into a cartoon.

The balloon flies where it is “cold,” and uses “centrifugal force,” ‘vibrations’ and other unique means to steer itself on naturally-occurring wind currents in the atmosphere.

The official story on the balloon is that it was “collecting continuous samples” for intelligence-gathering purposes.

2. A FASCINATING SYNCHRONICITY JUST HAPPENED

A fascinating synchronicity just occurred as of 5:18 pm on February 15th, 2023.

At the exact moment I finished the previous sentence, and looked back at the word “samples,” I got a text from the mysterious Robert Fairlawn at his brand-new farm:

They were taking nitrogen **samples** today.

Going to have corn this year.

Running the chisel plow now.

‘Doctor’ Fairlawn flashed the word ‘samples’ on my screen right as I was looking at that same word — seconds after I had typed it in to help decipher the prophecies.

Robert Fairlawn is Michael’s time-looped code-name for the Colonel, as revealed in personal sections within this volume of the Michael Prophecies.

The Colonel has just now moved into his farm within the last two weeks. The reference to “having corn this year” seems prophetic of the Harvest that Michael talks about.

I had just moved onto John’s farm in our time loop here from 1998. Fairlawn’s text mentions a plow, and then Michael immediately mentions a field in the next line.]

3. MAKE WAY FOR THE “BIG MULTI-DIMENSIONAL SELF”

¹ The more we get a look at these matters, the more it seems that **the old field is giving way to the new understanding,**

² Which comes about when everybody takes a few moments to go inside and to listen, and hear what is being said.

³ Your laws were created to protect the people —

⁴ And to provide sufficient answers for any moral quandaries that might arise.

⁵These circumstances might be grounds for a divorce –

⁶But within a normal court case, you couldn't exactly sue someone for what it was that happened.

[David's Note: Michael is talking about our Global Divorce with the Deep State, including Big Pharma. This is not at all a "normal court case."]

⁷Rich rewards and multitudinous opportunities come forth when the little ego shunts aside, to make way for the big multidimensional self –

⁸As it winds its way downward, into and through the roots of the tree of mind.

4. GET A GRIP ON THE SUPPORT HANDLES

¹To get a grip on the support handles is to stabilize one's own effort –

²And to make it more accurately known in the present moment.

[David's Note: This is a likely prophecy of Biden's senility, where he may soon be forced to use a walker and "grip the support handles" as his health further declines.

This may refer to the 'stabilized' balloon again. It has a frame that "supports" equipment that is attached by Velcro – with a "grip" on the chassis.

5/24/23: Now that the weather is warm, I have to grip the support handles on an elliptical exercise machine in my bedroom to go close the window each night.]

5. SURVEILLANCE ELIMINATED THROUGH TRANSFORMATION

¹The outlook we prefer is to remain calm, collected and serene –

²While simultaneously adjusting one's vibrational output to a new scenario –

³Wherein **those things that you had trusted as being surveillance –**

⁴And as being facts –

⁵Are then reduced and/or eliminated, through transformation.

⁶Unless you take every moment to be concerned about a topic that feels so different,

⁷The entire cave has many opportunities to grow and increase in size.

⁸To predict the outcome before the solution has been reached is a bit premature.

[David's Note: Clearly, Michael is predicting a rapid solution to problems such as surveillance balloons and tainted 'scientific' facts.

Michael is not going to fully "predict the outcome" for us just yet. We already have reason to believe that he and his people will make an in-person appearance.]

6. SERVICE IS OUR ENTIRE REASON FOR BEING HERE

¹ In the final analysis, **service can be offered.**

² And the entire reason for our being here is just that.

³ Service.

⁴ When we get ready to go online, we will have made a number of stops along the way.

⁵ [These] stops involve sourcing the energy more directly in the present moment.

7. HEALING THE BODY FROM LACK OF EXERCISE

¹ [D: "I am feeling a very strong itch right at the base of my spine, almost painful."]

² We are energizing those primal distortions of self,

³ Ever heretofore valid for use because of the dearth of physical exercise.

⁴ The dream this morning was meant to illustrate the practical problem of finding an outlet for this energy that has been reached.²⁸⁵

⁵ This in addition will help to remedy those buried emotions from the past,

⁶ Regarding ineptitude throughout your entire school career in those phys-ed classes heretofore mentioned.

8. THE STORM WENT THROUGH WITH EXTRAVAGANT DEMISE

¹ Bonnie went through with some extravagant demise.

²⁸⁵ This was a personal dream about lack of fitness, and not relevant enough to be included in this volume. I also have been getting Rolfing-type work done on my sacrum lately. My body felt it in the time loop in 1998.

² When the opportunity shuts off for something like this to happen again,

³ **We need to renew it —**

⁴ Through taking in the amount of desired learning,

⁵ And juxtaposing it against the amount of actual learning therein.

[David's Note: This is prophetic of the Storm, and the need for us to go through this.]

⁶ Consciousness itself forms ripples, like a wave.

⁷ And thus, it is the larger ramifications of the picture we are painting that we are concerned with —

⁸ And not the fluid movements of the self that exist in one's own individual pond, so to speak.

9. A WAVE THAT CASCADES THROUGHOUT THE ENTIRE OCEAN

¹ When one wave cascades and ripples throughout the ocean as a whole,

² [Or an occurrence of this type positively affects the entire planetary consciousness,]

³ It indeed makes one [event such as Hurricane Bonnie] begin to seem more suitable [for our purposes] —

⁴ When considered against those more discrete and definite elements [of unloving tendencies in people] that are then visible [today].

⁵ So don't fret about it.

⁶ Just think about the opportunities that are being created here for so many others upon your plane.

[David's Note: I was trying to increase the speed in the last few sentences, since the dictation had been going very slow. I felt like it was *too* slow.

I missed a variety of content by trying to rush ahead, and re-inserted it with brackets.

Michael addresses that problem directly in the next line. Truly, there is always more to learn in trying to be a better listener for this process.]

10. ALL ELSE BOILS DOWN TO ACTION

¹ Insisting upon these silly words, when all else boils down to action.

² You do not need to focus on the speed at this point.

³ Just get out the words as they come in.

[D: “Mentally apologized, and slowed back down.”]

[David’s Note: Just as I got the message that I needed to slow down while editing this on May 28th, 2023, the whole screen went purple for its “evening mode” at 4:24 pm.]

11. MOVING INTO THE ROOTS OF THE TREE OF MIND

¹ The nautilus shell is opening – and revealing the phi spiral inside.

² You are indeed moving down into the roots of the tree of mind now.

³ And we might then take hold in an appropriate fashion.

⁴ “Page Down” to a new plateau –

⁵ Wherein the conscious focus is set aside in favor of the subconscious.

⁶ Continue to meditate as we speak. And the chest of drawers will open to discover many new things heretofore undiscovered.

[David’s Note: My final edit of this book is being done in the main bedroom, where my desk is a pull-out shelf on a chest of drawers. Very impressive, Michael!]

12. THE NEED TO HEAL ALL ADOLESCENT TRAUMAS

¹ Homeroom class was a bore, wasn’t it?

² You will need to dis-attach yourself from these memories, once they are fully processed.

³ The bigger agenda is for you to claim all those parts of self, in their various points in time –

⁴ And to reunite them together as a whole –

⁵ In some deeper personality aspect. Not like a fragment.

⁶ So, we are lifting you up to a level wherein you can detect quite clearly that we are indeed arriving at our goal now.

⁷ Stabilize the ship —

⁸ By creating a vortex that allows that energy source to remain pure.

[David's Note: Michael reveals how our "homeroom class," as we enter into fourth-density, will involve the recall and integration of our past and parallel lives.

"The bigger agenda is for you to claim all those parts of self, in their various points in time, and to reunite them."]

13. A FRAMEWORK WHERE MANY KOOKY THINGS FIT TOGETHER

¹ The fragments on the wall say that you have won.

² The telepathic mind link is indeed quite strong, even though quite subtle.

³ When we expect things to go our way, we often find that that is the case.

⁴ In your situation, don't blend ignorance and stupidity with loss of direction.

⁵ You indeed have never suffered in the ways in which you think that you have.

⁶ That is an important point.

⁷ To lay bare the essentials of focused thought and focused light, focused consciousness,

⁸ Is to organize it into a framework wherein many of these kooky things all fit together neatly.

⁹ The jigsaw puzzle is created into the mosaic of total beingness that we were searching for.

14. YOU WERE NEVER ALLOWING YOURSELF TO BE THE VICTOR

¹ Think about all the times you asked yourself why it was going to be so difficult,

² Why you always lost,

³ Why there seemed to be continuous struggle.

⁴ The answer, as you find it, is that you were never allowing yourself to be the victor.

⁵Your assumptions indeed proved quite correct. And you behaved in a matter consonant with the law as you then saw it.

⁶So now, as we penetrate the veil deeper and deeper, more and more of these things will come to light.

10/23/98

1. DREAM: "THE BATTLE FOR DAVID'S BRAIN"

[Dream: This was a really wild dream. Very early along, I was just surrounded by beautiful girls.

I remember being the outsider. I was being picked on, but actually more like admired, because of how smart I was.

There was a background aura of my being a freak that was also present.

I remember that for part of the time, **these girls were in lingerie.**

Some of this was taking place in a supremely elegant hotel, which I believed at the time to be the Cavalier.

It had these doors that were perfect circular edges on two sides. The other two sides were the regular flat shape. The overall curve was similar to a rainbow in shape.

These doors were seven or eight inches thick....

[David's Note: This is Deep State/Epstein imagery that my character is being led through in first-person. The round doors also suggest Asian influences, such as China.

The thickness of the doors hints at underground bases, tunnels and bomb shelters.]

2. ASK A SIMPLE QUESTION, GET A SIMPLE ANSWER

¹All I ever had to do was simply sit — and wait for the opportunity to manifest itself.

²And then, at that time, I would know and understand what it was that I needed to do. That point has arrived.

³So, when that perplexed state turns into a happy one, I am no longer in the semi-darkness with regards to what it is supposed to be.

⁴When I ask a simple question, I get a simple answer.

⁵ Thus, I do not need to ask any more questions.

⁶ Simply begin receiving the answers, and the knowledge will become quite evidential very quickly thereafter.

3. KEEP CALM AS VIOLENT CHARACTERISTICS EMERGE FOR HEALING

[Voice becomes much softer as Lucia enters.]

¹ Hearing my voice allows you to take the statute of limitations that would normally be necessary, and expand the boundary of control therein to a much larger range of focus.

² **Hearing the battery therein** will make decoding the prophecies that much easier –

³ As there is no more room for improvement when **the mind is removed from the analyzing and deducing process.**

⁴ **Some violent characteristics may emerge** as these older portions of personality are again resurfaced –

⁵ But just keep calm and remain clear in your understanding, and all will be well.

⁶ Understand that the dream here refers to these aspects of your personality that are not in alignment, and how your own physical activity is bringing that to bear fully.

[David's Note, 2/19/23: Right around this point, my emergency blue light gave out because of lack of electricity, in the midst of a weather-related power outage.

On my second pass of reading this, another blue light went out, right as I read "hearing the battery therein." This line may hint at the idea of nano-tech from the inoculations.

If this is successful, "The mind is removed from the analyzing and deducing process," and "some violent characteristics may emerge."]

⁷ With this, go forward and dictate that specific portion of the dream, so that we have a continuity here.

4. A JOURNEY INTO DEAD, ROTTING BRAIN TISSUE

[Dream: The landscape somehow changed.

The areas we were walking through were **staircases, escalators and buildings actually leading up to the person's brain.**

A threatening, evil presence had already established.

The brain was a rather large area. It was in a warehouse-style room.

The floor we were standing on was flat, and represented the surface of one area of the man's brain.

I now remember that I saw (a Navy Seal veteran from my study group) there. He was pulling off a very large and stretchy, yellow piece of brain tissue.

He told me that I might not want to be around when he did it, because of the smell.

Obviously, I didn't mind that, because I stayed there. I didn't actually smell anything.

He said that it was a tumor. Someone was arguing with him and telling him it wasn't a tumor. He insisted that it was.

Then, they were arguing over what tissue you could remove.

He was saying that if you see a bundle of nerve cells together, you can remove the one in the middle if you have to, because it supposedly isn't doing anything.

I was concerned that if you removed even one, it would inhibit the function of the brain.

[David's Note: This is a time-looped reference to our discussion about parts of the brain going into electrical shutdown. This confirms that the affected areas begin rotting.]

5. A WOMAN ATTACKS THE BRAIN, CAUSING ELECTRIC SPARKS

Then, a guy was there who may have symbolized me. A woman was also there.

She released some sort of fly or insect from her hands. It **flew down and touched the brain, causing these electric sparks.**

I got very upset with her for doing this. She just acted like it was no big deal. The guy was obviously extremely upset with her about this.

At this same time, an exposed power line was running along the ground.

The guy somehow toppled her over and got her to land on the back of her neck, where this downed power line was.

In doing so, he electrocuted her. Her body twitched and convulsed uncontrollably.

After that started happening, a big evil presence got established.

[David's Note: This suggests the Deep State's apparent plan to use nano-tech to influence people's brains. This is also prophetic of their imminent defeat.

The fly represents the classic 'bug' that killed vacuum tubes in the UNIVAC computer.]

6. AWESOME ANGELIC / SPIRITUAL BATTLE WITHIN THE BRAIN

We suddenly seemed to backlog through the whole rest of the dream for a review.

I am cueing very strongly on Trix also. Two types of sugary breakfast cereal.

[David's Note: High sugar intake directly exacerbates these brain abnormalities.]

Anyway, **these guys seemed like they were trying to take over the brain.**

A very serious and very threatening presence was being established.

I am not 100 percent sure if I remember how we got out of that one.

As the dream continued to progress, it became a military type of force.

People were manifesting and de-manifesting in the brain area in order to attack.

We knew something had to be done about it. We decided to try to do something.

This involved our people teleporting into this realm where they were.

We used a great strength of magical ability, with electricity shooting out of our hands and so forth. It was an awesome battle.

7. THE EVIL HAD NO POWER LEFT – AND WAS VANQUISHED

With our strength in numbers, and this metaphysical process of ascension, we rendered the military force sterile and useless in the end.

This military general had recently thought they would be able to do something to us. They had been succeeding up until that point.

The crappy, sugary breakfast cereal brought these people back into the brain. The general was trying to shoot them with a nail gun, and trying to shoot me with it.

When he tried to shoot me, the nails wouldn't even hit me. They hardly even made it to where I was. And if they did, they just bounced off of me.

At that point, **we realized that the evil has been vanquished.**

We didn't even need to attack them or kill them. They just had no power left.

We had a tremendous sense of rejoicing and accomplishment.

[David's Note: The nails refer to spike proteins. This analogy continues in Book Three.]

10/25/98

1. I AM SO EXHAUSTED...

¹ I am so exhausted that I can't go to bed anymore.

[David's Note: Michael busted me again. It's now 6:51 am on January 3rd, 2023, and I should go back to sleep. I will do it now. This is a big sign.]

2/15/23: This happened twice in a row. It's now 6PM and I've pushed myself as far as my body can handle for one day. I will finish this volume tomorrow.

I've been working so hard that just like Michael said, two nights ago I was unable to get more than a few hours of sleep, despite being exhausted.

The astonishing precision, timing and stress of all these time-looped prophecies has definitely lit a fire under me, causing me to spare no expense to race to the finish.]

2. A FRAGILE NEW CHECKPOINT IN NEW YORK CITY

¹ When I keep this prayer vigil, the answers just begin coming to me.

² Answers to my life²⁸⁶ — and to how to live better, more productively, more fully in every moment.

³ We were there almost all the time, and only just now were we able to see it.

⁴ My eyes were accustomed to looking at things in the dark.

⁵ And thus, this was becoming a new phase of existence for me.

⁶ To love the maidens without abandon is not necessarily prudent in these cases.

²⁸⁶ This partially quotes lyrics from an early music album I did with my friend Jude as I was getting sober in 1992. I was talking about a voice I could hear, where "answers just began coming. Answers to my life."

7 She had a new checkpoint that was fragile. New York City brought this up.

[David's Note: Another prophecy of Covid checkpoints and Epstein voodoo.]

3. THE WAYS OF THE POWERFUL PERSONALITY

¹ Wherever we were, there were becoming many more opportunities to take the available energy in every moment —

² And transform it into useful and workable sources of light.

³ In the past, you behaved so sheepishly —

⁴ That it was nearly impossible for us to get you to behave in accordance with the ways of the more powerful personality.²⁸⁷

⁵ Now that you are coming into your own manhood and inherent groundedness,

⁶ You are beginning to understand the importance of being your own person — and not letting yourself be trampled upon.

⁷ Consider the filter over there.

⁸ There will always be those cases where **you are not giving yourself a full dosage** of reality.

⁹ And **it is for us to intervene at these points — and change the Matrix.**

[David's Note: Michael repeatedly indicates that the "full dosages" of the treatment had nano-tech intended to create a "Matrix" of human control. 'Points' can mean needles.

This negative plan is being thwarted by the Alliance, Michael's people, and the rapidly-upcoming First Wave of Ascension. Countless lives will be saved in the process.]

10/27/98 - 9:45 am

1. DREAM OF UFOs GRABBING EVERYBODY'S STUFF

[Dream: There was a very unnerving earlier section. My high-school friend was involved in this scene.

Some sort of event had happened in the sky. A UFO sighting, perhaps.

²⁸⁷ This is talking to all of humanity, not just the author.

It was very unusual.

And then, my God, it was like all this stuff showed up in the sky.

Tons and tons of helicopters.

Weird government craft that looked like old-fashioned telephone parts, but also like the tool doctors use to inspect and clean out your ears.

The UFOs stood up on end, like a telephone handset. Where the listening piece would come, there was now a cone that would go into your ear.

These were huge things, and they flew vertically all around.

Suddenly all these wires came down from the UFOs. The wires grabbed things that people have, like radios and telephones and stuff.

All of them started to lift up into the air.

[David's Note: This is talking about the UFO influences involved in mind control and creating sounds in the ears of vulnerable people. Communication devices.]

2. SERIOUS OFFICERS WILL COME FORWARD IN LARGE NUMBERS

¹ UFO mind. It's in there now, in the posts about Single Seven.

² While that [Single Seven story] was a hoax, the information behind it certainly has been well researched throughout recent times.

³ [Dream: There was an earlier section that I remember having to do with church.

⁴ It was in the high school, over where the gym was. I didn't really want to be there. The Masonic element was definitely there.]

⁵ Serious ranking officers will soon come forward in large numbers about this phenomenon.

⁶ That is what we are talking about here.

3. MY 'FRIEND' WAS DESIGNING DANGEROUS WEAPONS

[Dream: In this section that happened with my high-school friend, there was a black CD. The case had these triangles on the edges of the CD. There were six of them.

You could throw it, and the triangles would shoot out like weapons.

I was really worried that my friend was not actually on my side – that he was conspiring against us.]

10/29/98

1. DREAM OF A MEETING WITH THE CLINTONS

[Dream: I was invited to meet Bill and Hillary Clinton in private, at their own house, not the White House.

The purpose of the meetings was to discuss my being the reincarnation of Edgar Cayce.

We were talking about how **if the government were to announce ET visitation to the public, someone like me would get a lot more popular – very quickly.**

It could happen very quickly, especially if I had already built up a reputation in the past.²⁸⁸

I forget how I got there, but somehow I ended up at this place.

It was not conspicuous on the outside, but when I got inside, it was very nice. Security was not even that bad.

There were elevators inside, and metal poles forming banisters around everything. I went into the elevator, and people asked me what I was there for.

I told them that I was there to meet President Clinton.

2. A SEEMINGLY FRIENDLY CONNECTION... AT FIRST

Eventually, I went into a room that had tan walls, and outrageously beautiful decor. There were pictures on the wall. A picture of a sailboat.

There was a beautiful green plant. The decor was just exquisite. There was a big picture window by the bottom, where the stairs were.

Anyway, I finally got to meet them. They were very friendly, and very interested in the part about Edgar Cayce, and everything else.

²⁸⁸ My comeback videos did have view counts that rivaled our best years. Temporarily gone, but not forgotten!

We had a nice conversation. Hillary was especially nice, but so was Bill. They were both extremely hospitable.

They were not dressed up, and were wearing plainer clothing. They were very familial to me, just like parents.

[David's Note: Although I had heard about various murders, I really did not understand that the Clintons had any significant negativity at this time.]

3. UH-OH... BILL'S EYES CHANGE TO FRANKENSTEIN

At one point, I mentioned the whole Monica Lewinsky issue, and that it didn't bother me at all.

I said I thought everyone was making too big of a deal out of it. Anyone else would have done the same thing as he did in that situation.

As soon as I said this, it seemed that he froze or something.

He stopped speaking and stopped moving – almost as though he were in a suspended animation.

Hillary then said he was not able to talk to anyone about this anymore.

I looked at his eyes. They looked the same as the movie "Beyond Frankenstein."

The iris was sewed up with three different pieces, each of a different eye color.

His eyes looked like this on either side. It was very obviously an indication of Frankenstein.

My view of Bill's eyes extended to a very large size, so that I wouldn't miss it.

He came back to life as soon as I changed the subject.

[David's Note: Michael was clearly trying to tip me off here that there was something very seriously wrong, likely involving mind control, going on with the Clintons.]

4. THE CLINTONS STOOD ME UP... (I ASKED TOO MANY QUESTIONS)

Someone interrupted us, and they had to go.

I had the idea that I could meet back with them again at 10:30.

I waited around for a long time after this, and they didn't show. So I knew I had to get out of there.

I begrudgingly left, because I really wanted to see them again.

I was disappointed, because I didn't get any contact information, so I couldn't get back in touch with them.]

5. A BRIEF NOTE ON HOW HILARIOUS THIS IS

[David's Note: It is hilarious to see how my opinions have changed with the passage of time. I have now exposed Clinton crimes on many occasions.

I was genuinely excited about Clinton's campaign and presidency at first.

Michael's hints of something darker were almost completely mysterious at the time I brought these messages through in 1998. This dream did get me thinking, I must say.

The mind-blowing prophecies continue right along as we head into the next section. My hope is to finish reviewing all of the pages so everyone can read it on Memorial Day.]

SECTION TWENTY: NOVEMBER 1998

11/1/98

1. WE OFFER TRANCE SUGGESTIONS TO KEEP A GREAT DIARY

¹ Trance suggestions include the following:

- Keeping a dream diary;
- keeping a record of notes concerning basic life events;
- keeping a record of any still, small voices heard in the mornings;
- attempting to explain one's experiences through the conscious mind.

[David's Note: This did indeed become the protocol of how I wrote my journals.]

2. DREAM OF SCHEMING MURDERERS

[Dream: This took place in front of the elementary school I went to in New York State.

These guys were possibly plotting and scheming to kill people.

They were definitely up to no good, no matter how you slice it.

Needless to say, I was very concerned about this. I thought **they were extremely dangerous, and were going to be killing people.**

I had two guns. I think I had about nine bullets in one and five in another.

I fully intended on shooting these guys right between the eyes, just taking them out.

This was all occurring around the elementary school. Now I was stalking them.

They were almost like Nazis, really bad news. I could feel it coming from these guys.

They were trying to hook people into a sales scheme or something.

I had the feeling that the overall scheme was going to lead to the physical death of the people involved.

[David's Note: We do not support nor endorse violence. This is a dream about how NOT to stand up to the Deep State. Humanity has now learned its lessons.]

3. MAKE SURE YOU'VE GOT RICE AND BEANS

¹ I must have missed the first one. What did you say again? Rice and beans?

² I realized I would need to have more of a chance — or an opportunity to put light into those places that were dark now.

³ One way I can do this is to maintain my protein intake at all times, throughout these periods of physical readjustment....

⁴ Having and finding are two different things.

⁵ The Colonel serves them up, and makes a new broth with it.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: Wow! A direct reference to the Colonel I am now talking with, and who was predicted in here three other times in the past, partly as Robert Fairlawn.

Any dream metaphor involving food preparation is a symbol of spiritual nourishment.]

4. THANKSGIVING CAN BE RATHER BARBARIC

¹ To have food already is to gather various supplies through natural means.

² To find food is to look out to the world and create sources by which food might be gained.

³ The only comment here is that **Thanksgiving can indeed be a rather barbaric occasion,**

⁴ Where the slaughter of many turkeys is undertaken with little or no desire to bless them in the process.

[David's Note, 9/23/22: This could be a veiled reference to the tribunals, if there end up being executions. Michael may be referring to arrested Cabal members as "turkeys."

We have been thoroughly warned not to create human rights abuses as we restore justice and provide fair trials. I will do my part to ensure fairness and justice alike.

This also refers to military-grade attacks we have seen at many food processing plants, as well as mass killings of chickens and turkeys to allegedly combat bird flu.]

5. TRY TO SHOOT THEM, BUT THE GUN DOESN'T WORK

[Dream: I stalked these Nazi guys all around the elementary school building.

Finally they were going inside and trying to recruit people for their program.

I brought my guns in with me. These Nazis were very elusive.

More than once, I thought I had a good shot on them. Then they would move at the very last minute. They were so fast. It was driving me crazy.

[David's Note: This, again, was in 1998, a year before *The Matrix* – in which the Agents physically out-maneuver bullets just like this.]

It finally got to the point where they were inside this building, and I found one of the guys at point blank range.

I tried to pull the trigger, but nothing came through.

6. SINCE I COULDN'T SHOOT THEM, I WOULD REVEAL THEM

They were in this room. Then I had another gun. I tried to shoot another guy at point blank range. It was equally empty.

They seemed to be laughing about this. They said they had very skillful pickpockets. These people had apparently removed all the bullets from my guns.

Even though I thought they were so sinister and evil, they told me that when it really came right down to it, **all they were trying to do was sell some products.**

I guess it had to do with something like Amway – involving groceries.

Since I couldn't shoot them, I decided that I would reveal them.

I started to tell everyone in the room why these guys were no good, and that they were trying to hurt people, destroy people, etc. People seemed to be listening.

[David's Note: This is clearly about the inoculations and the Great Awakening. The reference to Amway and selling groceries is also prophetic of Target.]

11/2/98

1. PERSONAL DREAM WARNING OF ROMANTIC ENTRAPMENT

[Dream: I ended up in this big room. There was a large white heart painted in the middle of the floor. Many people were walking into the center of it.

I was aware that there were a couple of things you had to step on to get to the center. And yet, I just walked into the center carelessly.

Then, Pope John Paul II arrived. He said there was possibly some error in my ways. I had done wrong.

He told me, "You really like to rush right into it, don't you?" I wasn't quite sure what he meant.

And I then realized there was a very long line of people who were going right up the middle of the heart, stepping on each of seven layers on the way in.

When they would get to the center, they would drop an offering there. Everyone was doing this except for me.

I had just barged right into the center part. Inside the area were these three little circles that said "I love you."

It seemed that I wasn't willing to step on these circles in order to get to the center.

The Pope told me I wasn't stepping on the heart path leading to the center in the right order. I had to work through the seven layers.]

[David's Note, 9/23/22: The context was that I was still considering an ill-advised involvement with a female friend at the time. It ended up not going anywhere.]

2. CERTAIN OPPORTUNITIES WILL RISE IN POSITIONS OF POWER

¹ Better to die of a gunshot wound than a **heart attack**.

² Be aware that certain opportunities will rise in positions of power.

³ These opportunities have indeed been thwarted — and will continue to do so for a time being.

[David's Note, 9/23/22: Again, we do not advocate violence of any kind. Michael has a tough challenge in discussing the rioting, violence and criminality we see today.

The dream just featured the Pope talking to me about the heart. Then Michael said, "better to die of a gunshot wound than a heart attack."

The shots cause cardiac problems. This therefore suggests that the 'shots' people were taking could actually create "gunshot wounds" — in the form of a "heart attack."

Other Michael Prophecies speak of the Vatican conclave that occurred recently — a vast meeting of top Catholic staff. All money held outside the IOR has been recalled.

This is believed to include bribery accounts for senior figures — bribes created by a division of the Vatican that may now have been overthrown.

Pope Francis II may end up stepping down as a result of this meeting, though no statement has been made as of yet.

As I am editing this part of the book on 12/19/22, this may be actually happening, as I saw in a post from Benjamin Fulford just an hour ago:

In another sign a decisive turning point has been reached, Spanish and Italian media are reporting... Pope Francis is resigning.

["Ya he firmado mi renuncia" en caso de impedimento médico: Papa Francisco \(eluniversal.com.mx\)](http://eluniversal.com.mx)

Now as I unseal this again on 1/3/23, Pope Benedict just died. Overtly, he does not appear to have died from anything but natural causes. Michael hints otherwise.]

Same day, 8:11 am

3. EATING FRIED FOOD CAN CREATE A WEEKLY CATASTROPHE

¹ Weekly Catastrophe. Eating can do that to you.

² As if you are not already aware, you are indeed having some toxic reactions in your sleep to your dietary choices yesterday, with regards to the salmon and the fries both.

³ We need to be more vigilant on these matters, David.

⁴ Let me guess. **I wonder how you ever used to scare people when you were already allowing them to begin controlling you — on the most basic level.**

⁵ Instead of simply letting the sheet fall, you had to up the ante by letting go of your own self-will in the process.

⁶ That is one development that we have sought to have you change.

[David's Note: I ordered a dish that ended up being pan-friend salmon along with a heap of French fries. The fried oils become rancid, and it adversely affects the channel.

We as a planet are being told that we need to learn how to “scare people” who want to hurt us, so we don’t just fall into obedience in the Sheep Effect.]

4. ANOTHER WARNING NOT TO GET INVOLVED

¹ Couples, girls and guys, are always going to be able to elicit some different reactions than what we have heretofore seen in the past.

² You have already become persistently aware of the need for celibacy in these matters in the present moment.

³ What we are doing here is simply cementing in your resolve, through a long series of dreams –

⁴ That will attempt to explain the wherewithal of your motivation to pull yourself out of this current focus.

⁵ You are seeing those dreams that will make it abundantly clear for you that you need to stop being so swift to judge and to act.

⁶ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

11/4/98

1. AN INTER-DIMENSIONAL OPENING ALLOWS IN CERTAIN LIFEFORMS

¹ Starvation. To die of world hunger. That took me for a jolt.

² The Chupacabra has indeed been discovered.

³ And the impossible action of acknowledging its existence cannot be done.

⁴ And so, in certain parts of the world, the risk continues.

⁵ An inter-dimensional opening had indeed been reached.

⁶ And this does allow certain forms of life to adapt to their circumstances in the new environment.

⁷ The article was not spurious, in reference to a paper that was disclosed from the Royal Air Force of England [on the Art Bell show recently].

[David's Note: In total, this again suggests a demonic influence is trying to create "death by world hunger" – and give people a "jolt," i.e. a heart attack.

I could not find the document from Art Bell as I wrote this. However, Nick Redfern wrote *Chupacabra Road Trip* about these events. Here is an excerpt from the book:

In 1995, Puerto Rico was seized with mass hysteria over a new menace lurking in the rainforests.

[It was] gruesomely killing livestock, leaving strange holes in their necks, and draining their bodies of blood.

Described by eyewitnesses as **a devilish creature, three feet tall, with spikes along its back and a mouth full of razor-sharp fangs –**

The strange animal was given the name Chupacabra – Spanish for "goat-sucker."]²⁸⁹

2. MOVING INTO A NEW HOUSE WITH A STAR MAP OF THE HEAVENS

[Dream: I was moving into a new room, on the tail end of a house up around Toll Street, in the neighborhood I grew up in. I was moving in there for the first time.

When I was in the house, someone found a light-brown shirt with a big, gleaming blue star map on it – a map of the heavens. I was very excited about being there.

As everything progressed, I realized this had been the same place I was in before, when I was having trouble with drugs and stuff.

I said I had been through so much anxiety from sleeping in that room the first time that it would be very good for me to get in there again.

I would be able to process all of my painful experiences.

3. A BABY WHO LOOKS LIKE E.T. THE EXTRA-TERRESTRIAL

After being in this house, a romantic involvement developed with the lead actress from Titanic. At some point, we all got thrown into a pool together.

There was an issue involving a woman who had a baby. The Titanic girl was jealous.

I ended up getting in between her and the girl with the baby. The baby ended up looking almost exactly the same as E.T. the movie character, at one point.

²⁸⁹ <https://www.goodreads.com/en/book/show/26204300-chupacabra-road-trip>

There was wonderful, tremendous romantic energy with the girl from Titanic. I was laughing constantly. Everything that was going on was supremely hilarious to me.

4. THE CHUPACABRA PHOTO IS AT LEAST CLOSE TO WHAT PEOPLE SEE

¹[D: “So, in other words, was the photo of Chupacabra that I saw on Art Bell’s website actually genuine?”]

²The photograph was indeed quite serious.

³The impossible thing remains to be true – if believable.

⁴It is possible for a question of tests to be resolved, and the answer to be forthcoming.

⁵To be silent on these matters is to not analyze the situation in the proper depth or detail.

[David’s Note: It will take more research to find the exact picture. The photo may have been a hoax, but Michael is indicating the overall Chupacabra phenomenon is real.

Michael also talks about how people speak with these entities if you believe in their existence – and play their games. People can pass ‘tests’ and then get ‘the answer.’]

5. DON’T TAKE AFFAIRS AS TRUE GUIDANCE

¹Tiresome students of financial aid need to take into consideration that the other half of themselves is curtly dismissed –

²When they await their judgment on the throne of infinite wisdom.

³To take one’s affairs as true guidance is to circumspect the navigated boundaries that described one’s attire in the past.

⁴To make a demonstration before one’s peers of one’s true allegiance to the One Creator is indeed a quite vast and dazzling spectacle.

⁵In the final analysis, service is what is encountered when the various opportunities present for this to occur are then made possible.

⁶You are continuing to learn how to do this, and for this we are very proud. Hang in there for now. And the way will be made much more apparent very soon.

[David’s Note: The first sentence in this paragraph is paraphrased from a passage of text I would have to type in, every time I went to a temp agency and took tests.

This text appeared on their “Wizard” computer-based typing speed test. The same is true with “in the final analysis, service is what is encountered.”

Statements about “financial aid” and “the other half... is curtly dismissed” were additional encrypted warnings about the Global Divorce and financial collapse.]

6. IS THE CHUPACABRA A REAL INTERDIMENSIONAL CREATURE?

[D: “The Chupacabra thing does certainly seem to be real. The Royal Air Force document they are speaking of is something I read on the Internet.

It talked about various **experiments they had done, which created an interdimensional opening that had allowed a ‘prehistoric’ creature to come in.**

So, that all does seem reasonable to me, from this expanded perspective, that is.”]

[David’s Note: I am trying to locate this document, and if you find it, please send it in. We did find records of British WWII pilots having encounters with “gremlins.”]²⁹⁰

11/10/98

1. JESSE JACKSON HOSTING A POLITICAL EVENT AT THE WHITE HOUSE

[Dream: A cast of characters were entering and staying in a hotel.

It looked more like the White House, and definitely had that older feel.

I remember checking in Jesse Jackson. Then, to my horror, I had not written down what room number I had assigned him. That was very bad news.

There was definitely some sort of **political stuff going on. I was aware on some level that Jesse was the one hosting it.**

¹ **A malevolent, brief problem.**

² The only downside is that we can use this material to predict those occasions where the entire Mohonk **system is breaking down** –

³ While simultaneously illustrating why it is that **the press releases will be speaking up for a moment.**

²⁹⁰ <https://ultimatepopculture.fandom.com/wiki/Gremlin>

[David's Note: We have obvious Obama/Biden metaphors. Then we have a prophetic statement that our current situation will only be "a malevolent, brief problem."

"We can use this material to predict those occasions where the entire... system is breaking down... [as well as] why it is that the press releases will be speaking up..."

Mohonk is a luxury resort I worked at. I was not aware of anything bad happening there. A luxury resort system "breaking down" may be another Epstein reference.]

2. THERE ARE REASONS TO ACCEPT DEFEATISM (IF YOU LACK TRUST)

¹ The last time anybody slid backwards and fell over a car like this, there were still many reasons to accept defeatism – and take it as such.

² But, we never know the outcome until we start looking for it.

³ And thus, we ask you to keep your chin up. Remember that the intimate shoes available to you will indeed allow you to trod the universe with unfettered tread.

3. THE RINGLEADER APPLAUDS HIS CHORUS

¹ Every time we ask for you to take a moment on these matters, we imply that there are certain considerations that have been met.

² This naturally eludes those who feel that their vibration level is not that of water, but rather of hard steel or stone.

³ So don't fret and fume about it.

⁴ The ringleader applauds his chorus. And the next stage snaps firmly into place.

⁵ Simply begin adjusting the flow or matrix of information to accommodate those higher sea levels more appropriate to the situations now occurring before you.

⁶ The land has always been higher than the sea.

⁷ And though this might change, there will still be every opportunity to express Divine Purpose and Divine Will upon your sphere.

4. GIVING YOU CHECKS AND BALANCES

¹ If it hadn't happened, then we wouldn't be allowed to love you as much as we do, by giving you this system of checks and balances for yourselves.

² Understand that there are no opportunities available to fit the pattern more closely.

³ We are breaking the steps involved in order to get through to the main issue that the circumstances are stemming off of.

[David's Note: Michael is again repeating the theme that we have been spared the horror of extinction-level Earth Changes by learning our lessons.

"If it hadn't happened." The 'it' is probably a reference to Covid, in context. "There (were) no opportunities available to fit the (planet-saving) pattern more closely."]

5. WE CANNOT URGE THE VIOLENCE TO CONTINUE

¹ In the meantime, there are a few more opportunities to relax and languish into those realities that you have sought and longed after.

² All we need to do is take your hand, and lead you on the path.

³ What is required from you is the diligence and persistence to keep up with this work, to make it available for you now, so that you can use it.

⁴ Please don't worry about SETI and Seth Shostak. That was one example of an ongoing system of predictions that we will be able to give you.²⁹¹

⁵ You can certainly log it as such, but in the ultimate scheme of things, it is only one of many, as you are aware.

⁶ What we cannot do is urge the violence to continue.

⁷ And therefore, the people or entities upon your plane will have every available opportunity to follow their directions —

⁸ And take the appropriate steps, after the guidance has been given.

6. WE "BRING DOWN THE HOUSE" SO THE AWAKENING MAY CONTINUE

¹ Were we to go outside the routine and break it,

² There are indeed those concerns stemming from the direct use of force therein —

³ And the cataclysmic nature of how it functions.

²⁹¹ In the 1990s, the internet UFO community frequently speculated about ETs contacting us through SETI. Seth Shostak was the lead scientist involved in this project. It did seem like a big distraction.

⁴ Instead of simply letting go of one's position and one's power, there are those situations where power is being sought after rather continuously.

⁵ When we bring down the house, it is designed to enable the awakening process to continue.

[David's Note: This again is clearly talking about the fall of Biden's team. "When we bring down the house – [due to] those concerns stemming from the use of force."

If a nuclear war occurred, this would indeed be 'cataclysmic.']

ACCEPT WHO AND WHAT YOU ARE, NOW

¹ Great strides are made by those people who never have to become anything different, but simply accept who and what they are now.

² Those loving souls who have followed the Christ pattern to a tee will be available, now –

³ To illustrate for others what it is that must needs transpire in the present moment.

THE "MILLENNIUM BUG" (COVID) WILL BE THE "BIG ONE"

¹ The Leonid meteors will have their toll.

² [This] may already disturb commerce and transit systems, as now seen.

³ We don't think that there are many opportunities just yet for the total economic collapse that we had predicted,

⁴ But yet, there will be certain consequential damages that seem very serious to those corporations.

⁵ This is but another shadow or rehearsal for the big one, which would be the Millennium Bug.

⁶ And in some senses, it is indeed designed as such.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: Michael refers to Covid as the "Millennium Bug" to sneak it past my conscious mind. The 2020 Leonids peaked on Nov. 17th, just after the election.

The inoculations to "fight the Millennium Bug" came out just over a month later.]

A HUGE CRACK IN THE CENTER OF THE BUILDING

[Dream: I hadn't written down the number for Jesse Jackson's room. I had to go find him. I was running all around this building.

When I did find him, he looked very overweight.

Sooner or later, some guy took me outside. **It was a very beautiful and gorgeous building. It had the rounded-off look of government.**

He showed me this huge crack that was right in the center of the building.

He explained that **when the foundation was cracked like that, it had very serious repercussions.**

There was another crack in the other building that he showed me.

After a while, **the word got through this hotel that there was going to be a big earthquake – and how much danger they were in.**

People were really starting to bug out. I knew Jesse Jackson was on the tenth floor.]

[David's Note: I transcribed this dream on Martin Luther King Day. I also read an article on greatdreams.com that discussed a prophecy of cracks appearing in two buildings.

The prophecy stated that when cracks appeared in the City Hall buildings of San Francisco and Los Angeles, the "Big One" – a California earthquake – would occur.

I wrote this prophecy into one of my first web articles, published on February 23, 1999.

<https://divinecosmos.com/read-free-books-here/readings-in-text-form/182-22399-reading-upcoming-earth-changes/>

Now in 2023, we can clearly see Michael again pointing out the damage in these cities, and how these problems have karmically replaced our 'need' for Earth Changes.]

11/13/98

1. WE OFTEN SEE NETWORKS ON THE THRESHOLD

¹ So thus, the network.

² You often see networks on the threshold.

³ Whether or not we will become available to this remains to be seen.

⁴ What we do know now is that there are as yet many chances for this to arrive at a personal vantage point that is extremely advantageous to us.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: A very direct reference to starting the Wilcock Zone network, or whatever we call it. Stavatti does intend to fund a media division as well.]

2. THERE WILL BE MANY SURPRISES

¹ The network bundle has many surprises, the least of which we see when we begin to complete the tasks necessarily at hand.

² Foster the inconvenience necessary to bring about the supportive atmosphere necessary for this work, and this will come into being.

³ As the new seers forged into their new direction, so too do we understand that all that is said remains objective –

⁴ From a standpoint that still has the potential to change, and [allows] the mold to be malleable moment by moment.

3. AVOID BLIND CENSORSHIP!

¹ Blind censorship in these matters would arrest the significance of one's own true actions in these readings.

² Therefore, when we better understand question of how and why, we can repeat ourselves with the admonition that **there are as yet many precious opportunities –**

³ To behold the new tomorrow that is indeed rising into force now.

⁴ The late-breaking news includes the fact that Deepak Chopra will arrive here shortly.

⁵ It is a matter of consequence that you are thinking along the lines of never meeting him, but if this agreement between us takes hold,

⁶ There will indeed be many surprises of this type.

[David's Note: I very much wanted to meet Deepak at this time. I finally was able to speak with him by attending an event he spoke at in Puerto Rico.

His secretary said they got about 600 emails a day, which sounded very ominous.]

[Dream: Jude and his wife had given me some rental-movie videotapes.

They didn't have the money to return the tapes. They gave them to me, thinking I would bring them back. I didn't have the time or the money to do it either.

I realized that I had been holding onto these old tapes for a long time, and I needed to get rid of them.

I had a car. At one point as we were coming out of a mall, my car was filled with snow.

I saw a car that had turned over. The wheel looked like a snail, in that it was spinning like that. I then realized it looked like the car of (my female interest).]

4. BE AWARE OF THE RETICENCE OF OTHERS

¹ Late-breaking news includes the fact that you yourself are ready for this to happen.

² We want to include those with whom you would interact, by saying that the indeterminate period of time, through which you have been resting –

³ Is indeed arriving now to the fruition that comes full circle.

[David's Note: This is prophetic of my present, where I have been working on "The Disclosure" and this spin-off book series now for the last two years straight.]²⁹²

⁴ The intent, color, and brigade game all factor in here.

⁵ And we need to be aware of the reticence of those with whom you would interact.

⁶ Thus we see the secretive nature of the behaviors displayed before you....

⁷ And that is okay, as it is with a stiff point that the changes are often made. Ready for questions.

⁸ [D: "Well, my mind isn't working too well right now. I really don't have any questions at the moment."]

5. THE BEARS AND SNAKES OF THE PAST WILL SUBSIDE

¹ Now you understand that the record plays on without outside interference when it is just allowed to do so.

² Cooking up a different set of circumstances necessary for the mirror to function properly is our responsibility here, David.

²⁹² Wilcock, David. *The Disclosure*. <https://thedisclosure.com>

³The bears and snakes of the past will both subside as you coalesce forward, moving into the extreme sadness of the finalization of your past memories.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: Direct reference to the violence of the parallel life.]

⁴When you can confront this, the world opens up at your side.

⁵And you will indeed find out that many of the things you have been holding onto will become no longer necessary.

6. ECONOMIC DOWNSIZING WILL HAVE AN EFFECT

¹[D: "I do have a question with regards to the Leonid meteor showers on the 17th.

²I would like to know if it's going to start an economic downturn or not.

³I know that that is kind of a rather inconsequential question, and if you don't want to answer it, then don't."]

⁴To twist around one's consequences in these matters is to realize that:

⁵[What] the whole football and basketball game needs at one point or another [is] to remain standing in the midst of such adverse circumstances.

⁶What it boils down to is that the pitcher will continue to pitch, the catcher will continue to catch, and the umpire will continue to direct judgments about the game.

⁷You are correct in ascertaining whether or not there will be ominous instances of doom for some of your satellites.

⁸Economic downsizing will, in essence, have an effect upon your structures now currently in place.

[David's Note: The Chinese Balloon 'satellite' had an "ominous instance of doom."]

7. OVERCOMING THE FEES IMPARTED BY DEATH

¹[D: "Do you have any advice as for the best way for me to progress forward in the situation with the ARE?"]

²Ever since the market dropped, we have been diligently working to overcome the fees necessarily imparted by such a transition as death!

³ We now long to revive the Work where it left off —

⁴ And indeed pick up the various presents that we have earned for ourselves through that name already.

⁵ You're just now snapping into place, in the format which will be of greatest use to us in the very near future....

8. A MONUMENTAL EFFORT OF SILENCE

¹ The terminals must be kept open. And we perceive ourselves drifting into the necessary state of sleep in order for guidance to be forthcoming in the very near future.

² The tasks at hand require a monumental effort of silence.

³ An interesting task to retreat from one's own mind of thoughts, is it not?

⁴ When you approach the Mountain of Everlasting Love with your lance surely in hand, and prepare to climb it, you have indeed arrived at the ability to move mountains.

⁵ Stand on the firm foundation of the Rock of Gibraltar within self. And eliminate those psychotropic plants from any future agenda that you might have.

⁶ Though they can still be useful in eliciting supreme states of consciousness,

⁷ It is much easier to assume that the effect would be highly negative and deleterious for you at this particular point....

[David's Note, 9/20/22: My female friend was trying to talk me into taking psychedelic mushrooms with her at this time. I had refused, as I had been sober for six years.]

9. A BLUE LIGHT SPECIAL AWAITS SO MANY OF YOU (BUD LIGHT?)

¹ **A Blue Light Special awaits so many of your people —**

² Were they to **afford** to appreciate themselves, **to budget it** into their time schedules, and to make a point of it.

[David's Note: Here, Michael sneaks in a coded Bud Light reference by making jokes.

K-Mart went out of business. In the 80s, they always had the "Blue Light Special" sales.

Michael mentions the blue of Democrats, in a phrase very close to Bud Light, and then references the boycott: "Were they [the Bud Light customers] to afford... to budget it."]

³ So many of us here are watching with disappointment, as we see those who apparently have it all, from your perspective, catastrophically plummeting through life –

⁴ Moment by moment, with no clear sense of direction.

⁵ The locals will say again and again that it demands the support and the internal resources of the entity or individual.

10. THE LESSENING OF PLANETARY INCONVENIENCES

¹ Were we not to be out here, we would be in better trouble than you are [in] now.

² This effort that we have brought about involves the lessening of one's planetary inconveniences, and indeed the raising of one's vibration.

³ We have been of assistance in many ways, surrounding all of these matters. And now it has arrived at a point where the geometry of the Universe unfolds before you.

⁴ Let's think again about how much time is necessary for you to enact this guidance in the proper attribute for this work become successful.

⁵ Don't think for a minute that the fewer moments of time that you spend on this, the better.

⁶ Instead, take every available opportunity to become aware that at the precise moment you begin accepting us, you have also accepted yourself – and your true mission here.

⁷ All it takes at this point is a consciousness shift in you, and the rest will become necessarily very easy.

11. REMIND YOURSELF THAT YOU ARE A HAPPY PERSON

¹ We hope that the position of the sleeping is soon to change again, back to the North / South polarity –

² As you are feeling right now the difficulty of adopting to our guidance when you are in a skewed position therein.

³ Let's just relax into it, and remind ourselves that we are necessarily a very happy person, supplied with the circumstances that make us uniquely capable of adopting to this guidance in such a fashion.

⁴ To fritter away one's inconsistencies before becoming available to self is to become purified and remain that way into Light of the whole.

[David's Note: Michael made it clear that he prefers me to sleep with my head facing north. The Cayce Readings also suggested this as a tool for advancement.]

12. STOCKPILING CAN AFFECT THE FOOD SUPPLY VERY NEGATIVELY

¹ Your situation with the ARE nears self-condemnation. It is important for you to realize this.

² You have become disgusted with them in a similar sense as you would become disgusted with us.

³ Though this may seem difficult for you to overcome, it will be a readily available issue for you to think about and to tackle in the very near future.

⁴ Every grocery store largely responds to people coming in and buying without great fear.

⁵ When certain economic changes take place, those entities seek to buy more food in less time.

⁶ And [they think] the appropriate action is to then clear out the shelves, as it were.

⁶ And thus, as we see these major economic changes taking place, be aware that the stockpiling instinct kicks in –

⁷ And this can indeed effect the food supply very negatively.

11/14/98

1. WE URGE YOU TO MOVE FORWARD

¹ Thick vegetation. The numbers are still rolling.

² We want to have your undivided attention for a moment.

³ He inanimates himself when he insists on moving on, when there are problematic inconsistencies right ahead of him.

⁴ We only urge him to urge himself to move forward.

⁵ Sometimes my right calf tightens and spasms.

⁶ You remember this from before. It was another way for us to get a message across to you.²⁹³

⁷ Your fat childhood has been nearly processed now. We are working on the deeper issues at this point.

2. THESE PROPHECIES WILL COME TO PASS

¹ We praised those who brought him a little encouragement over the years. That is what kept him going on throughout all this.

² Flavor-baked chicken might be good for you once in a while, if it is cooked properly...

[David's Note, 9/20/22: Ironically, that is my main protein now. Michael knows. This actually made me angry at the time, because I was a strict vegan. I ignored it.]

³ We might note that there are still some difficulties in the future that you have not been made aware of.

⁴ The important thing is that you used this time to prepare yourself for these eventualities.

⁵ We don't want to be overtly depressing or gloomy, but **it is important to recognize that these prophecies are coming to pass, and will come to pass.**

⁶ Do not fail to address those portions of the personality that still cling to the outworn belief patterns.

⁷ You can bring all this together and unify your being in a way that seemed impossible in the past.

3. THE BOOK WILL BE EVERYTHING WE HAD EXPECTED

¹ When the book comes, it will be everything that we had expected for you.

² We can indeed take a look at what happens to yourself when you begin activating your true potential, and see how it is that we all come together so beautifully.

³ We would like to wish you a happy birthday, in terms of your contact with us.

²⁹³ This was a line from poetry I wrote in high school, while very depressed as a teenager. Now I am finally healing the muscular and fascia damage that caused these spasms to occasionally happen.

⁴This is the time where major restoration of your life's vital energy had taken place in the past.

⁵We hope to continue that trend by getting you to finally prepare your material in such a matter as to have something that you can distribute.

⁶That is important.

11/15/98

1. LOSING A BAD HABIT PATTERN

¹Don Genaro yelled at him, and then winked.

²He was actively involved in being too passive on these matters.

³The distinction line is clear, then. Golden.

⁴When all we have to lose is a bad habit pattern, there is no other recourse but to begin stalking it firmly as such.

[David's Note: Don Genaro was a beloved and very capable shaman who appears in several of the Carlos Castenada books, along with the main character, Don Juan.]

2. COP-CAR CHASE INVOLVING TEACHERS FROM HIGH SCHOOL

[Dream: Food I was eating turned into white rice at some point, flavored with cheese. I remembered that it was very delicious, and I was eating it.

[David's Note, 3/25/23: As I unseal this, I am eating vegan-cheese-covered broccoli.]

The meal that I was eating took on several different permutations. An Asian guy was there at one point or another....

At one point, it was definitely outside. I was on the roads around the high school, like Mohawk Avenue. It looked like that.

There was a cop car with one single blue flashing light on the top, and it was black.

[David's Note: This is a symbolic callback to the "Blue Light Special" once again.]

It seemed to be chasing someone behind me. I took a right hand turn and rode down this dead end street.

I then realized that the cop car and the other car were both faculty from my high school, both teachers.

After I was riding away from that, I realized there were these white spots all over the ground in the mud.

They were similar to the spots in my room that were created from the guy doing all of the finish work.]

3. EMBARKING ON A PRECIOUS JOURNEY

¹ Contiguous shelves make it easier for someone to embark on a precious journey – without being closed up in particular in any way.

² The other day, I think I saw you functioning at a new level.

³ Let's keep our ideals focused in that new direction, and actively seek to provide service in such format.

[David's Note: We can be taken in a UFO ride and have a parallel lifetime, which then exists on a type of "contiguous shelf" or compartment within our soul (Line 1).

Michael hints at this and then mentions "embarking on a precious journey without being closed up in particular in any way."]

4. SEE THEM AS LOCATIONS IN SPIRIT

¹ [D: "This transition towards college dreams and towards getting away from high school is pretty wild. It happened pretty soon after you mentioned my graduation.

² I noticed that there has been a shifting of topic. It is almost as though I have assimilated high school.

³ I'm very excited with the passage of difficulty away from me not liking the difficulty about the dreams having to do with high school. Any comments on this?]

⁴ Begin seeing them as particular locations in spirit, rather than just aspects or phases of your existence.

⁵ You can totally rule out the notions that it has anything to do with your physical lifespan, or the length of time that has passed from one experience to another.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: More hints at parallel lifetimes. These experiences can be compartmentalized within the spirit, like different "shelves" within the mind.]

5. IF YOU DENY YOUR PAST, YOU WILL DREAM IT INDEFINITELY

¹ This has everything to do with your personal growth process, and the length of time that it has taken therein.

² In other words, for you to be involved in a state of denial or repression of memory,

³ Any sort of extended lessons, then by necessity you will continue dreaming these dreams indefinitely, until you begin to really deal with those issues.

6. HIGH SCHOOL WOUNDS HAVE BEEN LARGELY HEALED

¹ And thus, **we have arrived at a point where many of the factors that plagued your consciousness in high school,**

² **Many of the feelings and emotions and attitudes and emotional predilections,**

³ **Have largely been healed – by the realization of manhood and of adult maturity that has finally come to you.**

⁴ This is a slow process, one that cannot happen overnight, but still happens just the same....

⁵ You are becoming a true warrior, one who lives his life in impeccability, and seeks only to follow the path of the strongest Light.

⁶ For this, we are very proud of you, David.

[D: "Thank you."]

[David's Note: Michael is clearly speaking to all of us here, not just me.]

SECTION TWENTY-ONE: NOVEMBER 1998, PART TWO

11/16/98

1. A CLINTON-ESQUE TRIAL FOR SEXUAL INDISCRETION (HMMM...)

[Dream: My mother seemed to be standing trial for recent indiscretions that she had, which were not quite clear.

The trial seemed to have to do with lying and sexual things, similar to Clinton.

There were some Fundamentalist Christians there, like Grandpa and Grandma and Uncle David, and a whole crew of other people.

They seemed to be condemning her for what she was doing.

It got very melodramatic, where she was playing this keyboard, and she started to play some real crushing dissonance.

I noticed that the black keys actually had yellow and orange colors on them.

I felt so overwhelmingly sorry for my mother that she was being put on trial.

I wanted to help her in any way that I could. I ended up standing up for her.

2. TRANSFORMING INTO AN INCREDIBLE ORCHESTRA

People started to leave, and my mother and I started to play a piece together.

She was jamming, and I started to do some notes on the piano. It seemed like it was a virtual piano in the dream. Everything seemed to play the same.

I started to hit some stuff that was melodious, and she immediately changed her improvisation to go along with it.

When she came over to play on this keyboard that she had next to me,

She went from a horrible cheesy Casio synthesizer to this awesome, majestic and incredible sounding symphonic, orchestral keyboard.

People started to get out and leave as I was saying my peace. They were passing judgment, and saying how horrible what she had done was.

I knew somewhere that it had something to do with sex. It also seemed to have to do with drugs as well.

3. IS JESUS ABOUT FORGIVENESS?

I started to argue in her defense, saying that it was very forgivable. I even looked Uncle David straight in the eye and said,

“Is Jesus about forgiveness? If you say that you don’t forgive her for what she did, then quid pro quo, you are also condemning yourself –

For any actions that you have done in the past that might not fall within those parameters.

If you feel you have committed any sin, in your understanding of the term, and yet you can’t forgive someone else for what their sins are,

Then you are equally unable to forgive yourself.”

No one seemed to be able to understand that, which was unfortunate, but I did try.

[David’s Note: Uncle David’s wife Pat just died as I was finishing this book. My mother went to the hospital and funeral, and had a positive time with David and his friends.]

4. THIS OMINOUS, ONGOING RESEARCH CONCLUDES ITSELF

¹**This ominous, ongoing research concludes itself** – while a few sleep and study the Eastern meditations.

²There are as yet a few discrepancies in between the haves and the have-nots – and the right-winged fundamentalist agenda and the general public.

³What we hope to illustrate here then is the ways in which **the public is slowly coming around to the truth.**

⁴**The Chiles will also have become something more Majestic than what they are currently perceived as.**

⁵[D: “Would you please explain your usage of the term Chiles?”]

⁶We are running out of time [for you] to simply begin groping for an explanation of every metaphorical statement that we make.

[David's Note: This suggests that Majestic has built, or will build, many more alliances with countries in South America.]

5. EVERYONE WILL BENEFIT FROM RELEASED TECHNOLOGY

¹ Therefore, when you can take the time to understand our agenda,

² You realize that there are often distinctions made that are necessary, between self and others, only in the sense of one's relative judgmentalness.

³ This is the way that we are resolving the conflict inherent in the collective Oversoul of the human being.

⁴ And thus, **by this term [Chile,] we are indicating such a nationality, rather than any specific food product.**

⁵ [D: "Thank you."]

[David's Note, 9/20/22: This seems to be saying that the whole world will benefit from the technology released by Majestic, in part through my efforts with Stavatti.

Developing countries like Chile stand to benefit the fastest.]

6. DON'T ZIP YOUR SLEEPING BAG TOGETHER WITH A RANDOM GIRL

[Dream: I was with my brother for an extended period of time.

There was something having to do with the wilderness and camping. There was an undertone of the drug subculture as well.

I remember that there was a girl involved. She was fussing over her sleeping bag at some point. I realized I had one as well.

At some point, this girl who was not particularly attractive, I believe, got the idea that she would zip her sleeping bag together with mine.

This also seemed to indicate that we were going to sleep together.

I think this was an analog of someone else I know, if not directly looking like her.

[David's Note: I still refused to listen to Michael's warnings about the girl. That's real life. Ominous warning dreams did not necessarily get me to change my mind.

Now that 25 years of this have gone by since 1998, I pay very close attention to dreams.]

7. YOU ARE HEALING AS EFFECTIVELY AS POSSIBLE

¹ A vouchsafe (award) for all these concerns as they are now seen would be that which is definitely more than it is perceived initially.

² With the sap running down from the wound in the tree, there is as yet reason to believe that maple syrup can be created in such an instance.

³ And thus, though your wounds are still drying, and tender to the touch, you have indeed begun dealing with them in the most effective way possible.

⁴ Namely, you are now formulating in your mind the process through which you will be able to write about them.

⁵ You will discover that this is the answer for you to remove their energetic charge, in your case. That is very important.

⁶ [D: "Okay."]

[David's Note: This has personal elements, as I have been using maple syrup almost exclusively as a sweetener this past year, with no negative glycemic effects.

Our base in New York is in maple tree country, and has large safes inside of it.]

8. ASCENSION INFORMATION AVAILABLE FOR THE TRIAL

[Dream: In the trial of my mother, when I started to stand at her defense, I realized I also had a packet with all the information concerning ascension in it.

I knew I could start going into it if I wanted to, but it didn't seem to happen.]

Same day, 8:15 am

9. VERY POWERFUL SPIRIT APPEARS IN A DREAM

¹ Releasing petrified material in the tongue just by clicking there.

² [D: "That was very cryptic, but it seemed to just be telling me to start talking. This would probably help me remember more of the dream."]

[Dream: There was a ghost involved. The ghost was directly in my apartment. It was very intense and ominous — a powerful entity. Not evil, just very, very powerful.

My father was involved. My brother was cooking breakfast for me at one point, after I had gotten something earlier.

My brother was making all of this fried stuff, including French toast and some other kind of sandwich.

The thing with the spirit in my apartment was very strange, because it was a presence that we all felt. It was over by where the gas fireplace is.

It seemed like it needed to get a message to my father, so I allowed it to speak through me, which bothered me. Dad was also freaked out as well.

[Once the entity began speaking, it was very positive, loving and amazing.]

I resolved that in the future, I would honor those visits – and speak whatever they needed to say when they showed up. [I now knew it was a positive entity.]

[David's Note: This is clearly prophetic of the Marial Apparition from Thanksgiving 2022, as I discuss in Book One. The intensity was completely overwhelming.]

10. AREAS THAT HAVE GONE HAYWIRE CAN BE RESOLVED

¹ Look into the mirror. You will be surprised how quickly things can change.

² **Areas that have gone haywire can be resolved.**

³ Just remember the strange stories and amazing facts that you have learned –

⁴ And realize that you have now arrived at a point a where you are putting it all together. This can also include vibrant health in the physical body.

⁵ My **phantom finger** itches for a chance to draw some pictures for you.

⁶ Just let the consciousness be your guide, and the rest will come easy.

[David's Note: This appears to be prophetic of our discussion on neuroplasticity. I read "Strange Stories, Amazing Facts," an adult book, beginning at age five.]

11. YOU HAVE ARRIVED AT A COMPLETION POINT

¹ Think about how long someone requires to bat an eye in the presence of a spiritual force such as this, and recognize its true existence.

² You have done well in this regard.

³ It is beyond fair to say that you yourself have arrived at a completion point.

⁴ The more business hours we have in the day, the better we are able to function in the future.

⁵ Thus, when you contemplate going into this full-time, we are indeed very excited at this possibility for you.

⁶ You can indeed compress time, and get a multitudinous amount of work done in a very short period of timespace.

11/17/98

1. START RETURNING TO THE EQUILIBRIUM YOU ONCE KNEW

¹ The vast reservoir of your thoughts needs persistence and patience, goodwill, a favorable attitude, kindness and trust.

² These little things become your business title, which in turn keeps you from roaming around the business world.

³ That is great advice. And what the heck do all these things mean?

⁴ Simply put them together, and start returning to the equilibrium you once knew – but have never experienced within recent times.

2. DREAM OF ART EXHIBITS AND NAIL GUNS

[Dream: I know I was supposed to hang out with my father. For whatever reason, there seemed to be a specter of weight hanging over my head.

There was one point where I ended up going to this art exhibit. It was in a basement or lower-level environment.

The art had to do with being in a concentration camp, I believe.

I went in there. I was given a machine gun, but I realized it was really a **nail gun**.

I carried it in this large group of people while we were doing this art thing. The art thing involved all of us working together somehow.

Chuck Norris was in the audience with us at some point.

[David's Note: Nails again symbolize spike proteins and crucifixion / Ascension.]

3. BLOWING AWAY THE DUST THAT CLINGS TO YOUR SKIN

¹ **Build up the line cables**, and we will notice together that the process becomes easier and easier soon enough.

² **You are indeed coming soon to a raising of vibration —**

³ An opportunity to deal with those things and emotions, based on the inconceivable, that now seem so prudent and plausible for you.

⁴ **Make no bones about it. You are changing very rapidly. And we stand by, consumed with laughter and joy at seeing the new rebirth.**

⁵ Consider the wind for a moment. The more it blows on you, the deeper you feel its pressure.

⁶ Similarly, a truce between opposing parties involves the **blowing away of those residual pieces of dust that cling to your skin —**

⁷ So that you emerge fresh and new and transformed.

⁸ As you are already peering into the metaphors in this dream, we do see the connection. Let us go forward for a moment.

[David's Note: Once again we have hints of the Chinese Balloon.

"Build up the line cables.... A raising of vibration... Consider the wind."

The wind clears "pieces of dust that cling to your skin" — a Palestine reference.

This could also refer to graphene 'dust' from the shots that clings under the skin. The clearing of dust was associated with "a truce between opposing parties." (Line 6)]

4. REPLACING AN OLD WAR-SCENE BOOK WITH A NEW COPY

[David's Note: They are also drawing off of the metaphors of the Genesis album "Lamb Lies Down on Broadway" here, specifically in reference to dust on the skin.

This album was an elaborate psychedelic vision that seems to reveal how Gabriel was having terrible problems with his wife while their son was in grave medical danger.]

[Dream: **The nail gun turned out to be nothing more than a toy squirt gun.**

[David's Note: This again suggests that the 'spikes' can be neutralized by the First Wave of Ascension.]

It was definitely an unfavorable atmosphere. A lot of people were picking on me or teasing me, etc. It wasn't very enjoyable.

People were showing me this book at the end. It had a yellowed cover that seemed to have all these war scenes depicted on it.

They were de-circulating it out of a library. Then they were putting a brand-new copy of the same book into the library all over again.

They gave me the one that was yellowed. It had various pictures of war scenes in it.

[David's Note: This reflects how the Deep State keeps writing the same "book."]

5. MAKING A JOYFUL NOISE

¹The next section had to do with vibrant noise.

²It was already joyful to hear. And the deeper implications of it are still quite stunning, as they resonate throughout the universe as a whole.

[David's Note: I had just joined a singing group called Joyful Noise, as their drummer. We had a huge chorus and performed in various nursing homes. Michael liked that!]

In this case, the "vibrant noise" also refers to the upcoming First Wave of Ascension.]

³Unkind actions are nothing more than distractions from one's own true soul purpose.

⁴We will receive the distractions in another moment, and remind you that they are not possessing power over you that you might otherwise have given them.

⁵And that is very good for the moment.

⁶Hence, I don't direct you to appear immobile, or to **trump yourself up as anything great.**

[David's Note, 9/20/22: This appears to be a clever way to include the name Trump. "The next section had to do with vibrant noise. It was already joyful to hear."]

6. YOU ARE TRANSFORMING IN EVERY MOMENT

¹I want you to realize the role that we have in transforming the entities on your plane in any way possible — however small or however large.

² Each beam of Light and/or matter pulsating through the entire galaxy as we know it is transforming you – each and every moment.

³ A burst of radiation that you recently reported is another such example of this incredible transformative power that you are now seeing coming into force.

⁴ So remember your lines, and step into the crowd – knowing that at the right time, their attention might be focused on you.

⁵ Keep this in mind, as the Beltane festival is nearly upon us. You shouldn't answer with such inconsistencies when you are asked any questions.

[David's Note: The Beltane festival is May 1st. This again represents the beginning of the final, very intense push I made to finish this book within the month of May.]

⁶ Simply put the horse before the cart, and explain exactly how it is that you are able to do what to do.

⁷ This is nothing magical, unusual or special. It is a function of the natural laws of this galaxy – and of the universe.

⁸ The dimensions were meant to be interpenetrable all along. You just have noticed this on the most directly physical level.

⁹ Indeed, there are those who have taken this quite a bit further. Don Juan and Don Genaro [in the Carlos Castaneda books] are definitely two examples of this....

7. DIMENSIONAL SHIFTS IN PERSONALITY

¹ The impossibility of these actions poses a threat to the rational mind. And yet within our framework, you can easily see how it is that something like this comes together.

² So be strong and patient. And realize that **the interminable boundaries that seem to arise around you are often based only in the third dimension.**

³ The higher dimensional parts of yourself, namely this contact and its deeper reverberations, have already attained such a great perfection with you that there is no need to fret and fume about it.

⁴ You have undergone dimensional shifts in personality far too archaic, unknown and vast to put into simple terms and phraseologies.

⁵ It is impossible to predict what one's outcome will be, when the actions themselves are compounded with the desire to end fear.

⁶ What we do know is that it condemns one's actions to be expecting that these emotions will never well up into the surface of consciousness.

⁷ So then, what triggers this for us is often the realization that we have never left our post of shining brightness.

⁸ And this is also your internal core each and every moment.

⁹ Simply realize who you are. And get back down into what is familiar and comfortable.

¹⁰ The rest is easy.

8. WE ARE PREPARED TO REMOVE YOU FROM PRISON

¹ She believed it to be a simple question of the victim and perpetrator — but yet, the deeper meaning involves coming to an understanding of the interdependence therein.

² We have lined up the veil. And we are prepared to remove you from the prison that you have been shackling yourself within.

³ Doing so has taken an incredible effort of patience and sweetness and persistence upon our part. And yet, **now is the time.**

⁴ You have indeed arrived at a completion point of sorts, where everything else on our itinerary has snapped into focus. That is a very good thing.

11/19/98

1. THE HIGHER REALMS BECKON YOU

¹ The assembly interview begins here.

² Before that, **the white mountain lion was involved.**

³ Open up the gate to new possibilities, and the higher realms beckon you.

[David's Note, 1/3/23: As of about two weeks ago, my area has been on high alert, and still is, because of a tan mountain lion that is threatening local children and pets.

Michael also jokes about terrible problems I was having with my gate not closing. When the circuitry got wet, it would not close. This caused stalker incidents to occur.

Both gates are now fixed, but this gate malfunction was one of a series of events that caused significant negative greeting after I went back on video in 2023.]

2. PROPHETIC DREAM OF RON DESANTIS

[Dream: This was very unnerving at the end, because it featured Hulk Hogan very, very aggressively challenging me to some sort of a match.

We found Hulk in the gym class, bouncing a basketball. It transferred over to my house at some point. Having Hulk Hogan around was really bothering me.

Right before I woke up, **I was hearing about Jesse Ventura being mayor. In this case, he was mayor of the Florida Keys.**

In this case, **he was doing some apparently very socially conscious things.**

In so doing, he was really pissing off a lot of people.

They were talking about ganging up and throwing him out of office.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: This is clearly a prophetic reflection of Gov. Ron DeSantis.

5/25/23: Now as I unseal this again, DeSantis just launched his candidacy on Twitter. In this case, DeSantis is symbolized by Jesse Ventura — as well as the angry Hulk Hogan.

DeSantis is far behind in the polls, and many voters wish there was no fight going on.]

3. THE MATCH WITH "HULK HOGAN" WAS ALL AN ILLUSION

Hulk Hogan was charging me all the time. There was so much pressure. He wanted us to have a fighting or wrestling match.

I knew that he was going to wipe me out, but yet I wasn't running away from it. I also felt like it was going to involve drums.

He took me back to the house I grew up in. Then we ended up watching sports together or something.

There was no real match, like what I thought he was planning! It was all in my head.

Then, we were eating together, almost like he had become my father. I knew the bread was made from white flour, and it wasn't very healthy.

[David's Note: Feel free to speculate on what this actually tells us about DeSantis! White bread is a common colloquialism for a bland food, or in this case low polling numbers.

Perhaps DeSantis already knows he cannot win, and therefore is just luring the Deep State into a trap by "putting all of their eggs in one basket," so to speak.]

4. WE WANT YOU BACK AS A FULL-TIME EMPLOYEE

¹ We want to take you off our gaming list, and have you back on as a full-time employee now.

² Your ideas, thoughts and actions become inconceivably vast to us when we begin to appreciate how it is that you have arrived at where you are now.

³ Indeed, where you are involves a massive rekindling of past and present influences – **to bring about change in a matter most unlike anything necessary in the past.**

⁴ You have taken the conditions that were presented to you and used them for furthering your growth and development, in a direct and literal fashion such as this.

⁵ So when we want to think about a correlation between your past, present and future actions,

⁶ The connecting thread or link is this inwaverability of being, solidity of perception and desire to face up to the past and deal directly with the present.

5. ISSUES IN YOUR PAST MUST BE FACED

¹ How often we do this involves your conscious participation. That is important.

² Redoing your apartment is a lot more than doing the physical acts of bringing it to completion.

³ Recognize the whole issue still revolves around the unwillingness to be present-centered in your focus every moment,

⁴ And avoid the trap of letting one's inconsistencies go, which in turn causes them to rule every moment.

⁵ Backed up against the wall, you have no choice but to fight yourself out of a corner.

⁶ So, when we show you the tomahawk, it was meant to indicate that you have indeed brought yourself to a point where these issues in your past must be faced directly.

⁷ Or else, there will be no way for you to continue to function indefinitely in the present moment.

[David's Note: Here Michael refers to an OH card reading I did the day before. I drew two picture cards and two word cards. Both pictures featured a bloody scene.

The first was a bloody tomahawk in someone's hand with lightning around it, and the word "Rot."

The second had an axe chopping off someone's hand, with the word "Men."

I couldn't understand what I was being told at the time, although 'Marcia' (which is not her real name) did cut me down at the table in front of my friends.

I had gotten her into the farm, with a short-term job to help finish painting my space.

I took the cards to mean "Cut out the Rot." I didn't realize that the 'Men' chop-off part was about my own imminent, public emasculation from Marcia.

Once I refused to take psychedelic drugs with her, she went from being really interested in me to doing elaborate manipulations, verbal abuse and set-ups.

All is forgiven, and I bear no grudges. These shocking public incidents damaged my overall stance within the group – by creating a strong negativity around me.

If I had listened to Michael's severe warnings, these events wouldn't have happened.]

6. JAKE BELIEVES HE WILL GET THE JOB DONE

¹ So getting back to basics is one thing. Keeping your head clear and controlled in the midst of these matters is yet another.

² We want you to recognize that it involves the stilling the mind and its perceptions in such a way as to eliminate the possibility of self-loathing –

³ And further the possibility of self-renewal.

⁴ Jake believes he will get the job done, and do it well.

[David's Note: This could be another code for Ron DeSantis, who was compared to the wrestler and governor Jesse Ventura. Jake "the Snake" was another classic wrestler.

This seems to suggest DeSantis believes he can win, even though he had to betray Trump in the process – leading people to think of him as a "snake in the grass."]

⁵ Obviously, you are seeing the battle of your own masculine forces.

⁶ As in your card reading yesterday regarding the violence and men, so too are you seeing a lighter form of this tonight.

⁷ What it means for you to figure out, and we can give you a few hints, is to stop daydreaming – and think about the possibilities.

⁸ Recognize that the era you have started, in a sense, by doing this work in previous incarnations has now come full circle.

7. YOU ARE IN THE TIME OF THE PROPHECIES

¹ You are in the time of the prophecies now. And it is vitally important for you to bring that out to the world.

² Communications such as these are very important to people.

³ And it will inspire great hope, great adoration and great joy, knowing that we are not alone.

⁴ I hope that we are seeing eye to eye, and that the next 48 hours completes this cycle of transition for us....

[David's Note: The situation with the girl would leave me a spent, destroyed human being by Saturday morning, which would have been 48 hours from when this came in.

I realized by this point that it was definitely never going to work. I needed a little more coercion Monday morning to really make it official.

She couldn't handle the fact that I didn't accept all of her problems in the present unconditionally. She was highly aggressive toward me in front of the others.]

8. GREAT DIFFICULTY IN ACCEPTING THIS MISSION

¹ The hare-kare nature of your involvement with higher realms at times has been distressing to us.

² You yourself are well aware of how often we have come through with concepts and information that was pertinent to the global picture now surrounding you.

³ And yet, we are aware that there has become a certain listlessness and boredom that has caused you great difficulty in accepting this mission.

⁴ This in turn has created wonderful, usable material within self for personal transformation.

9. YOUR ASCENSION WILL INDEED COME TO PASS

¹ We want you to shine, shine, shine.

² The whole process involves your cooperation with us, so that we have a unified perspective.

³ Together, we overcome the hurdles and obstacles. And the little kid inside of us stands clearly outside of the turmoils and problems that once surrounded him or her.

⁴ **The Jeep is standing by** – and is ready to catapult us into the higher realms.

⁵ You must remember that the ascension is equally measurable to the stopwatch.

⁶ **Keep thinking about and reminding yourself of the fact that [the Ascension] is indeed to come to pass.**

⁷ **Humanity, as a collective organism, is going through the sudden pain of fourth dimensional transformation – as the energy becomes impossible to ignore.**

⁸ You are seeing this in your own life as well.

[David's Note: I want to introduce another Law of One quote here. This reminds us of how our new lives will be vastly more harmonious than where we are now.

Our souls are compared to “statues” that are “forged in the fire” of third density.

77.15 In third density, the statue is forged in the fire.

This is a type of intensity which is not the property of fourth, fifth, sixth, or seventh densities.]

10. MASSIVE TRANSFORMATIONAL ENERGY

¹ We have used the Moon Wobble energies in such a way as to help provide this catapult or springboard for you.

² You need only recognize the difference between the past and present to understand the landscape and layout of future.

D: [Restless]

³ Just a few more minutes and we will be gone.

⁴ It takes someone with a lot of heart to decide to open up and empathize with another human being.

⁵ In your case, this process has reverberated throughout your entire being, leading to massive transformational energy.

⁶ So don't confuse the messenger with the message. [Marcia] is unblocking various areas lying dormant.

⁷ At the same time, it is the work occurring on self, with self....

11. THE CITIES OF THE FUTURE HAVE AWAITED YOUR RETURN

¹ You indeed have always felt differently than everyone else around you. And now it is time to act differently as well.

² Regardless of the situations in the political arena,

³ You need to acknowledge that the collective human civilization has indeed made great strides in its public awareness.

⁴ Things have indeed been changing in very positive ways. And we are indeed happy to report that.

⁵ Many of the Earth change prophecies heretofore indicated have been brought down somewhat.

⁶ And in so doing, we have given back to you the progress that you have made upon yourselves.

⁷ The cities of the future have awaited your return. For a long time.

⁸ And we know that we can now open their gates, as they will be flooded with new inhabitants very shortly.

⁹ Thank you for participating in our agenda, David.

¹⁰ We remind you that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

Same day, 6:22 am

12. IDENTIFYING THE BURIED, CREMATED REMAINS OF SELF

¹ Watching the skies – without knowing what to watch.

² And getting a handle on the buried, cremated remains of self.

³ There is dangerous risk in our tax journal here, and in this mixture of volatile energies.

⁴ So don't fret and fume about it, just get through it.

⁵ The cereal broadcast for this morning indicates that you should be fine without it.

[David's Note: I was incredibly addicted to the idea of breakfast cereal at the time, but I invariably have trouble with grains – and especially in such a dried-out form.]

13. NEEDING TO COMPLETE MY EDUCATION

[Dream: I hadn't finished my work for this math class. I was really concerned about my education not being complete.

I knew that I had to figure out how to get back into class, and how to complete this problem.

The next thing I know, I was in a class, and it seemed to be with my junior-high teacher.

I had gotten to school early. No one else seemed to be there yet. As time progressed, it seemed to be 6:35 in the morning, and the halls were all filled up.]

14. VIOLET FLAME TREATMENTS

¹ Paul Mc Anderson. The Violet Flame.

² [D: "They are probably talking about Paul Esch, as he is the guy who makes those things [and supplies them to the Virginia Beach spiritual community]."]

³ It would be good for you to go through a few violet flame treatments right now.

⁴ [D: "I will keep that in mind."]

⁵ Don't just think about it, get it done!

⁶ This is important stuff that we are thinking about here, and you need to be ready for it.

[David's Note: The "Violet Flame" is a handheld glass tube that emits purple neon light and strong static electricity. It can be found on Ebay as a "quack medical device."]

The Cayce Readings said it could stimulate the release of intestinal plaque, alleviate skin problems, and help drive off negative entities that attach to our auric field.

The “Violet Flame” also appears to be a reference to the First Wave of Ascension.

The name “McAnderson” sounds like “Mr. Anderson,” a year before The Matrix. We are all going to experience a transformation very much like what Neo went through.

Saul saw a blinding light that soon transformed him to Paul the Apostle.²⁹⁴

“Paul McAnderson. The Violet Flame.” We are all “Paul McAnderson.”]

11/20/98

1. DREAM: PARKING A SCHOOL BUS AND MEETING ETs

[Dream: I was up by my friend’s house, and was trying to parallel park a school bus.

It was not easy to drive, because it was so long. I was able to get it off to the left side of the road.

If this was my bus, I knew I would have to do all the maintenance on the engine.

I knew that since it had been sold to me, it probably was not working as well as the other school buses. I needed to figure out how to take care of it.

[David’s Note: In dreams, buses represent how spiritual teachings like these can help large numbers of people get together and make progress on Ascension as a group.]

I opened up the doors. There were two people outside observing me, dressed up in silly gray costumes, with gloves over their hands.

The gloves were white, and the rest of the outfits were gray. They seemed to have little cat hats on as well, with little pointy ears sticking up.

I then realized that these two characters were Lion-O and She-Ra, from the Thunder Cats cartoon I used to watch in high school.

[David’s Note: The symbol of me having difficulty trying to park the “Ascension Bus” is talking about the challenges we all face as we move through this process.

If supernatural characters appear in dreams like this, they usually represent ETs.]

²⁹⁴ <https://www.biblestudytools.com/bible-study/explore-the-bible/blinded-by-the-light-paul-the-blind-fool.html>

2. PROJECTING AN IMAGE OF MUM-RA, AS THE DESTROYER OF EVIL

I had to think for a minute. I then remembered that Mum-Ra was the villain — a half-cat, half-human muscular guy who would come out from an area near where we were.

So, I just started to say that I was Mum-Ra, and I levitated into the air.

Everyone else acted like they were scared, and ran down the street. I didn't think they knew it was a joke. I was just making fun of their villain.

[David's Note: The insider Jacob told me that advanced, "fourth-density" human ETs can project any image they want, at any time, on their faces and bodies.

Many of them apparently create "living tattoos" that move around on their faces and bodies. A character in the Watchmen movie was likely based on this leaked data.

Both the Hindu and Tibetan yogis reported on human adepts transforming themselves into powerful forms like Shiva, the Destroyer of Evil — or Vajrakillaya in Tibet.

The many faces, arms and legs on beings like this in Tibetan artwork is a visual reflection of time compression. A normal human sees you in different places all at once.

You may be fighting at your own speed, going through a set of movements, but to a human outside your time reference, it looks blurry and multi-dimensional.

In fighting strongly negative ETs, a fourth-density human may choose to project visible thoughtforms that cause the evil being to experience fear. This is Shiva the Destroyer.

Mum-Ra also symbolizes the mass unveiling of evil in our world today, and how we have to make fun of it. Then the dream takes a very wonderful, Christ-like shift.]

3. EVERYONE REALIZED THEY COULD LEVITATE

I got to a point where I was obscured by some green tree leaves. I lowered myself a little bit. I put my arms out to the sides like Christ.

As I did this, **people downstairs were holding their hands in chains. And there was a rainbow light around them.**

All of this was very exciting to me. It was also a religious experience.

All these other people showed up. And because I tried to fly, they realized that they could as well. It was very joyous.

4. LETTERS FROM NEW YORK AND CALIFORNIA

All of us started to walk back to my house, down the hill, going towards Mohawk Avenue in the air. I was leading the whole thing.

I finally got to my old house, with all the people who were coming with me.

I remember the hallway, and coming through it. I knew I was dreaming, but I was enjoying what I did so much that I didn't try to control any of it.

After we played around in the house and did some flying, my mother was talking to me at the kitchen table.

There were two letters side by side. Both of them looked like they had come from my uncle David or his father, who I called Grandpa.

The returning address on the envelopes was written with the very fancy flourishing for New York, the letters NY.

It was so fancy that all letters swooped around each other. They also looked like CA, for California.

The letters were both addressed to me, but for some reason it seemed that they had gone to California, and had been returned, so I had gotten them.

[David's Note: Again, Uncle David's wife died just before this book was finished. I had lived in New York and had no idea I would eventually live in California at this time.]

5. THE GIFT IS FOUR BOOKS FROM THE "FATHER OF TRAGEDY"

At first they were just envelopes, but then they looked fatter. I realized David had probably sent me some Christian books.

I then opened it, and it turned out to be a set of cardboard. This cardboard looked very much like the cardboard that packaged the solar panels I just got delivered outside.

Inside the cardboard were four books that had a blue cover. They were old books, having a red spine with a blue cover.

At first I thought it was the Bible. I thought to myself that I should be reading it again, but I didn't have any copies of it.

But, in this case, **it was that book Aeschylus again.**

It seems to have come through in other dreams as well.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: I just looked this up. Aeschylus is the "Father of Tragedy" and a prolific Greek playwright, with up to 90 plays in his catalog.²⁹⁵

Aeschylus was born in Eleusis, the home of the Eleusinian Mysteries, and the birthplace of the Essenes – who nourished Jesus's early life into being.

His year of birth was 525 BC. This means he was probably alive at the same time as the Sybil of Cumae – and knew of her widely-renowned prophecies.

The Sybil's historic event where she sold her prophetic books to King Tarquin was in 539 BC. This would have been only 14 years before Aeschylus was born.]

2/21/23: Since David sent me four books, this may predict how Books Two and Three would have to be expanded into four full volumes in order to handle the page count.

I have had to go through my own experiences as a "Father of Tragedy" by spending the last two years in very rough weather at 8600-foot altitude in Colorado.]

11/21/98

1. THE REAL PARACHUTE TEST

¹ Like haystacks of bread, the new winner poses a united format soon enough.

² **The real parachute test is climbing above** one's own expectations –

³ And deciding that the gold featured within is worth braving the mucks featured without.

[David's Note: Another Chinese Balloon prophecy. "Parachute. Climbing above." This is followed by a brief, possible reference to the Nordstream Pipeline.]

⁴ To know and **establish one's pipeline**, in the midst of this presence,

⁵ Is to again be revealed the subtleties and intricacies of working in these detailed matters.

⁶ Everything we have described here involves the remainder of experience –

⁷ Keeping back one's own previous behavior patterns, and acting in favor of the newer modality of learning and experience that is now coming to the fore.

²⁹⁵ https://ancient-literature.com/greece_aeschylus/

⁸ Seeing those distractions posed by otherselves is often quite enough to place oneself in a new environment, grievous and uncertain.

2. THE TIME IS RIPE FOR A CONFLUENCE OF EVENTS

¹ Indonesia took its shell quite early in the game, being rocked by punishment, it would seem, from some higher source.

² Various missile heads were tipped with despair as the bombs were dropped.

³ **Inflation became hyper-extreme. Products were not able to get to the store shelves in time.**

⁴ **Goods and services are collapsing, and will collapse more in the very near future.**

⁵ **But, it is important to note that the time is ripe for a confluence of events.**

[David's Note, 9/20/22: This is an intriguing passage that again tells us we will not be experiencing massive wars or extinction-level Earth Changes.

"Confluence of Events" is a term from the Law of One that refers to the energies that surround our planet at the time of Ascension.

21.27 **Questioner:** Did the ending of [Earth's] first major cycle have something to do with the destruction of Lemuria, or did this destruction just happen to occur at the end of that cycle?

Ra: I am Ra. There is a confluence of energies at the ending of a major cycle.

This encouraged what was already an inevitable adjustment in the movement of the surfaces of your planetary sphere.

Michael is speaking metaphorically, not literally, about missile heads and bombs being dropped. They symbolize the "collapse of goods and services" that Michael mentions.

As this book is about to be released, it does appear that some type of disruptive event could occur. Everyone now knows US senators were recently given emergency phones.]

3. THE DISCONTINUITY OF THE TRUE SELF IN MORTAL FLESH

¹ Thinking about the designs involved, you begin to recognize the inherent belongingness of one's true self in higher realms —

² And the apparent discontinuity of the true self in its expression in mortal flesh.

³ I was easily able to find myself in a situation strong enough that the entire vainglorious attempt at reestablishing my desire was being laced —

⁴ **With a subpoena from the higher self to wait until the appropriate time.**

[David's Note: This appears to be prophetic of the sealed indictments.]

4. PROPHECY OF "GLOBAL DIVORCE" FOCUSED AROUND TRUMP

¹ All in all, I have noticed that the intimate quarters of our existence coincide deep within myself.

² Without establishing the boundaries firmly in place,

³ I would not be able to maintain the sense of safety and security that I now have.

⁴ This is for no other reason than that **a huge contest has been waged that involves both participants.**

⁵ **Neither of them are ready for the show to go on, in the way that both would like for it to.**

⁶ **I asked myself to sign those documents with a T —**

⁷ **For terrorized, troubled, tired, et cetera.**

[David's Note: This appears to be talking about the "cosmic divorce" between the Alliance and the Deep State, Trump and Obama, now playing out on the world stage.

"A huge contest has been waged that involves both participants." (Line 4)

Documents are emerging that implicate the elites in a wide variety of excessive acts of misconduct. "Sign those documents with a T." This appears to be a Trump reference.

Michael reveals that Trump has "terrorized, troubled, tired, et cetera," but all is well.]

11/24/98

1. MASSIVE FLEET OF POSITIVE UFOs OVER THE WHITE HOUSE

[Dream: I had apparently captured a picture of two people getting caught engaging in illicit sexual acts.

[David's Note: This is clearly prophetic of the rapidly-expanding Epstein scandals.]

I was trying to develop the picture. As I dipped it in the chemicals, it turned into an image that had more to do with UFOs.

The wide-angle lens kept getting wider and wider, until at one point it was so wide that it filled up almost a whole scene.

There was this unbelievable cloud formation over the White House.

There appeared to be 30 or 35 different [round] UFOs that were making perfect shadow indentations of clouds, so you couldn't tell what they were.

[David's Note: This is a precise reconstruction of the Biblical UFO artwork we featured in Book One — only now the mass sighting is occurring over the White House.

I had not yet unsealed this dream when I put that image into Book One.]

There was a square in the middle of the cloud formation. It was almost like an Internet picture that was loading into frame, but hadn't quite got there yet.

The square expanded each time and reformed a little bit.

The UFOs had a big V-shape. It looked like a cloud formation at first, but it was obviously not just that. It was a huge fleet.

It was almost as wide as the whole sky. It just dwarfed the White House.]

2. SUBSEQUENT DREAMS WILL BE FUTURE SOON ENOUGH

¹ There you have it. You don't have to remember the rest.

² The subsequent dreams will be future soon enough.

³ And then, we can experience the full joy and bliss of spiritual self-transformation.

11/27/98

1. WE HAVE ARRIVED AT A POINT OF FRUITION

¹ The wills of war have been good to you.

² The corporeality of your form has then remained intact. And we have indeed arrived at a point of fruition.

³ Come to know this guidance as your own, and the rest becomes easy.

⁴ When we shift into these matters, there are always new opportunities for everyone to seize the moment –

⁵ And become aware of their true sense of purpose of being here on the planet now.

2. THE “LIMBO SPACE” WILL SOON BE PASSING

¹ You indeed have such an ulterior motive.

² And because of this mode of service, **you indeed have all the powers of the music of the spheres behind you.**

³ And thus, understand that you can still do everything that we have taught you, and that you have thought of.

⁴ You are heading into this completion phase now. And that is very good.

⁵ What we want for you is to begin to realize the merits of spirit –

⁶ And to begin to understand that the sacrifices that you make for this work and this process are so richly rewarded in higher realms.

⁷ The limbo space that you have been in will be soon in passing.

⁸ And the advent of greater truth will come to the fore soon afterwards.

⁹ So, just hang in there and get to work. We will do the rest.

11/28/98

1. ALL WILL BE REVEALED VERY SHORTLY

¹ When his knee jerked suddenly, he was awakened from his slumber.

² It was at this point that he realized that he knew all he needed to know in order to move properly.

³ The motion ceased when he started to think about himself in a derogatory way, in a fashion that dredged up his past too considerably.

4 Instead, he must focus on the present, on what is occurring now all around him — and on the glorious energy that is increasing moment by moment.

5 In that sense, all will be revealed very shortly.

⁶That is all for now.

Same day, 8:15 am

2. DREAM OF VERY ODD POLITICS AROUND A HOUSE

[Dream: We were doing some sort of vacation trip. The house we were going to be staying in was definitely remote — way out in the woods.

There was something involving my brother and I, where both of us were riding the bus, or one of us was driving the bus. [David's Note: Ascension metaphor.]

There were **some very odd politics around this house**. This was why we had to drive the bus by ourselves.]

1 The ghostlike image of Hunter.

² Again, the message is to simplify your approach. And **get the truth out**.

[David's Note, 9/20/22: This is a fascinating reference to Hunter Biden, and the terror that the leaked images have created in the public. "The ghostlike image[s] of Hunter."

The dream mentions "very odd politics" and a 'house.' This indicates the White House. If someone like Biden has to drive a bus by himself, that suggests criminal activity.

Since the bus is an Ascension metaphor, this again reveals how the exposure of Biden and his cronies' wrongdoings leads to a planetary awakening.]

11/29/98

1. TOWER WITH GARGOYLES SINKS LIKE THE TITANIC

[Dream: Boy oh boy, did I ever see some wonderful stuff. I have just had this ongoing dream, a lucid dream. It just went on, and on, and on, and on.

The most recent part involved these guys who were trying to build stuff in Virginia Beach. There was all this development going on. They had a big crane.

They were trying to put in an old tower that was ornate and medieval-looking. They only had one piece of the tower left.

I knew the guy with the crane was going to drop the tower. Sure enough, he did.

He bumped it on the edge of the boat. It snapped in two and went into the water.

It looked like one of those old, medieval Gothic Towers that would have gargoyles – [images of demons] – on every level.

Each layer of the tower was narrower than the one beneath it. In that sense, it also looked like a **Chinese** or Japanese temple – made out of stone.

[David's Note: The demonic tower falling and breaking is a reference to the Deep State.

The Deep State tower snapped into two pieces and sank, just like the Titanic.

Just before we released this volume, new high-resolution imagery of the Titanic has emerged, revealing unprecedented clarity as the Deep State's ship is sinking.]²⁹⁶

2. A VISION OF SHAMBALA

I was in Virginia Beach. Someone told me to look out for those two pyramids over there, and pointed to them.

Sure enough, there were these **huge pyramids – right on the horizon line!**

I realized pretty quickly that I had indeed seen Shambala, the hidden city of Virginia Beach that was supposed to float over the city.

I knew I was in the future. I just knew it. Everything was just so amazing.

The more I looked at this thing, the more beautiful it became.

Then, as I looked at it more closely, I saw a lot of discord and some boarded-up buildings. I did not want to create that.

I just went on and on and on and on. I was just lucid for a long time. It was such a blast, my God, such a blast.

²⁹⁶ <https://www.nbcnews.com/news/world/titanic-3d-digital-scan-wreck-sank-1912-southampton-new-york-rcna84828>

3. THE CHELSEA CLINTON BRIDGE

So, I started to approach Shambala.

The people were talking very nonchalantly about the Chelsea Clinton bridge.

It was as though Chelsea, who was Clinton's daughter, had gotten involved in politics and had become this big historical figure.

It wasn't Hillary Clinton. It was the Chelsea Clinton bridge.

And it was such a massive, awe-inspiring structure — unlike anything I've ever seen in conventional reality. It all seemed to be made of white, polished marble.

It looked somewhat like a massively oversized Golden Gate Bridge of white marble.

So, I started to climb the Chelsea Clinton. I was aware that I had to keep looking ahead.

I couldn't stare at anything, or else it would dissipate and I would start to lose the dream.

So, I was doing really well. It stayed continuous for long time, and it was amazing!

[David's Note: This is particularly ironic, since Chelsea Clinton has recently called for even more inoculations,²⁹⁷ as well as for sexually explicit books in schools.^{298 299}

The "Chelsea Clinton Bridge" may be a metaphor of how the epic downfall of the Clintons — and their "San Francisco Agenda" — is our 'bridge' to Ascension.]

Same day, 11:02 am

4. THE BACKUP BATTERIES NEED TO BE IN PLACE

¹ If I am not mistaken, she delivered some real blows to me, I think.

[David's Note: This is almost certainly a tie-in to Hillary Clinton and the overall agenda we have seen, which has "delivered some real blows" to humanity as a whole.]

²⁹⁷ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/chelsea-clinton-promotes-the-big-catch-up-initiative-we-need-to-stop-stripping-away-public-health-emergency-powers-to-vaccinate-as-many-kids-as-possible/>

²⁹⁸ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/04/chelsea-clinton-says-banning-sexually-explicit-books-from-schools-is-harmful-to-children/>

²⁹⁹ <https://www.thegatewaypundit.com/2023/05/chelsea-clinton-gets-fact-checked-for-pushing-porn-cartoon-books-on-children/>

² She was urging me not to get involved in any deep, serious relationships with women at this time.

³ Since it was better for me to be able to focus my energy on the tasks at hand,

⁴ The bittersweet results of a failed romance are unlikely to affect us once we stay on topic with our mission here.

⁵ The sun, and the mastery of awareness and intent, demands a control over the ego never before possible.

⁶ The backup batteries need to be in place too – so that the zipper-clad uniform is always kept in its top state of performance.

[David's Note: This refers to Stavatti's emerging powerplant business, and our military affiliations. Pilots typically wear jumpsuits that open and close with zippers.]

5. GRADUATION COMES WHEN YOU LEAST EXPECT IT

¹ The gratitude we feel after three years of this work with you is tremendous.

² We would like to point out that your zest for living has indeed risen.

³ Graduation comes when you least expect it. And that expectancy is the desire to keep you moving on forward.

[David's Note: All of us have now been through "three years of work" as a planet since Covid started, and are now approaching Graduation "when we least expect it."]

⁴ Because of the inherent limitations of excessiveness in your being,

⁵ You have had to adjust to the likenesses of all parties and circumstances involved –

⁶ In order to cover the newer information, so that the business continues to function.

6. WELLING UP THE CHARGE TO DO MANY SERIOUS THINGS

¹ The witnesses to your rebirth all agree that it is occurring on a phenomenal level.

² The more logic we try to put to it, the more we feel that it is like pointless yelling at some indescribable object that is elusive – and takes its pleasure in being that way.

³ Beige Bugle Boy jeans have come a long way for you.

⁴ And your mid section is welling up the appropriate charge to be able to do many serious things.

[David's Note:, 2/1/22: I just bought four more pairs of pants and received them yesterday – two base layers and two ski pants – right before unsealing this.

I wore Bugle Boy jeans when I was still overweight. I've also consistently worn water-proof beige tactical pants as the weather has warmed up, since it rains every day.]

7. FREEING THE TRAPPED CREATURES OF THE SUBCONSCIOUS

¹ Usually, if there is a bit of contempt in looking at oneself in the mirror, there is a hobby of chanting one's name in a self-defeatism type of pattern, mentally.

² This occurs when all those dark creatures of the subconscious are welled up in cages, and never released.

³ What you have done the last few weeks here is to allow yourself to go around with the master key, and unlock and free almost all of these animals at once....

[David's Note: Demons are created and sustained by the traumas we refuse to acknowledge or forgive. They lose their identity once we face these memories.]

⁴ The sorcerer never remembers the true nature of his art, and of the importance of solving his personal problems,

⁵ Until those outside events occur that make him more available for said energies to coalesce within.

8. OPENING THE DOOR TO INFINITE ABILITY

¹ When you have worked on yourself for as long as you have, there is great pain in making the adjustment or transition –

² Between what you think you have known in the past, and the present irregularity of the present.

³ The cycles of information and of beingness require an entity to let go of all various pre-conceptions –

⁴ So as to allow the door of infinite ability and awareness to remain open.

⁵ It takes a great man to continue allowing these lessons to emerge and be processed, when so much damage has already occurred.

⁶The heavenly gates appear before you when you take time to throw away those notes of how you think things should work, and instead simply dive into the moment.

9. TURN THE MULE OF THE PAST INTO THE DEER OF POWER

¹Every moment that passes is a breath of fresh air, a renewal of sorts —

²A time to take the mule of the past and allow it to turn into the deer of power, gliding up and over all obstacles in his path.

³The fastidious dissemination of this work will be extremely prudent for you.

⁴And to that end, we do suggest that it will be important for you to utilize your skills in a whole new way.

⁵The computer processing unit will become rather a big issue pretty soon.

⁶So that should be very high on your list of financial priorities, were you to get any money over this vacation.

[David's Note: This appears to be another Stavatti reference. Pete invented a photonic computer chip that is far more powerful than what we use now.

One of the "items on my list" as Director of Advanced Technology is to develop this new chip technology, which will create a new revolution in power and capability.

Deer have been coming up to the salt lick almost every morning as I finish this.]

11/30/98

THE AIRSHIP HAS MANY COMPONENTS

¹Many of your old memories will be triggered in the coming few days and months.

²This event does serve as a capstone — to complete the edifice of memory that you have been now reconstructing so diligently, and with such practice.

³Veritably, it is your true choice as to how far you will want this to go.

⁴We can suggest that a visit to your old college campus would also help complete the cycle in a way that you cannot foresee now.

⁵Since you lived in outer space, the airship has many components, and yields a rather direct response from you.

[David's Note: Michael was tipping me off about the parallel life, although none of this really made sense to me until February of 2022, as I began unsealing these books.]

⁶ See then that the belligerent people who encompass your local reality field have indeed entered a unique space of distortions of their being –

⁷ That have prevented any direct opportunity for such widespread contact to take place.

[David's Note: Michael is implying that the changes we have now been through, as a planet, have opened up the doorway “for such widespread contact to take place.”

I find all of this incredibly exciting. I have had trouble sleeping as I finalize this book.]

SECTION TWENTY-TWO: DECEMBER 1998

12/6/98

1. YOUR BATH TIME IS NEARLY OVER

¹ You cannot live your life in fear of the people who want to see you the most.

² Rather, use the time when you are surrounded to educate those otherselves to again reinstate the Divine promise of Spirit in Matter —

³ That was started, in your terms, long before the present.

⁴ This will help relieve you of the magnificent proportions of discomfort that can be felt in such a case.

⁵ Remembering your true mission, which inherently is to be of service, will help you to understand the power and the position that you hold.

[D: “I just had an image of John with a mustache and a tuxedo. He had one hand on his stomach and the other hand out in a gesture. He was leaning forward, smiling.”]

⁶ Your bath time is nearly over.

[David’s Note, 9/24/22: This appears to be a prophetic reference to the mandatory baths Michael has asked me to take for nearly the last year now.

1/3/23: I just realized yesterday that I will not be able to take daily baths anymore as Stavatti gets rolling. This passage came in the next day to reassure me that I will be fine.

The baths did help me do a systemic detox cleanse, which has greatly reduced the appearance of dark circles under my eyes and balanced the endocrine system.

5/29/23: I am now very close to finishing and releasing this book on Memorial Day. I was thinking of taking a shower instead of a bath just as I read this at 8:26 am.]

2. LEARNING TO FEED YOURSELF AND AVOID INDULGENCE

¹ Now it is time for you to take all that you have learned and re-assimilate it, so that you do not have the bits and pieces floating around —

² As what has characterized the present is indeed frustrating to see for us.

³ You are experiencing a portion of your life that has dwindled and fled, and is now coming back for full examination.

⁴The most recent example of self-abuse in the fragment tree, so to speak, which traces back to drug abuse patterns, et cetera, is your situation involving food.

⁵By simply getting used to making an effort out of feeding yourself to a high level of quality, you are indeed stalking this pattern and finally eliminating it.

⁶The metaphor of drug abuse should be seen to you as nothing more than a metaphor of indulgence.

⁷This self-indulgence comes about in many different forms; most notably in your case, the example of coughing with a fist downward instead of upward.

3. LEARNING TO FACE REALITY HEAD-ON

¹Coughing would represent those elements of the spiritual breath that are impurities and need to be removed —

²And the idea is to raise them up in vibration, and in so doing liberate yourself from their concerns.

³To alleviate the problem by simply reducing the amount of energy that you have been giving it, on the other hand, is not wise.

⁴You yourself know that you need to face these issues directly.

⁵There are still those ways in which you do not face reality head on,

⁶But rather go toe to toe with the fallen aspects of self that prefer the boundaries of the shadow — from the cold, hard truth of the light of the new day.

⁷We are saying these things to you with the understanding that success is ever possible, and that the more you toil, the more this will not be able to bring you down.

⁸You have been doing quite wonderful work. And we are seeing a change in you that is developing quite naturally, and is quite powerful.

4. CAST YOUR REFLECTION ON THE SHIMMERING LAKE

[D: "Would you please speak about my car situation?"]

¹You will indeed be able to manifest the appropriate doors, and the time of their openings, to coincide with the deadline that you have been placed with.

² Do not think of this as an exercise in breath exertion. Rather, know on an intimate level that you have indeed been protected all along.

³ To cast your reflection on the shimmering lake is to see both those things that are good as well as those things that are bad.

⁴ In making an honest self-assessment such as this, you come away with the realization that **as things keep getting weirder and wilder, they are also making more and more sense.**

⁵ You are uncorking the vast reservoir of the memories of the past, and bringing people who you had never thought about into direct conscious awareness.

5. SOON THIS WILL MERGE INTO A TOTALITY OF AWARENESS

¹ Soon, when you have written about all this, it will have merged into a totality of awareness —

² For you will have the ability to read your entire life story, in one long sitting, with no major details extricated.

³ [D: “The first word was ‘expleted.’ I don't know if that is a word or not.”]

⁴ You shouldn't doubt us there.

⁵ [D: “Okay, I am sorry.”]

[David's Note: This passage is prophetic of the activation we will all experience as we “merge into a totality of awareness.”]

We will be able to remember our former lives — with no details excised or deleted.]

6. THE TRAIN WILL ARRIVE ON TIME

¹ The conductor lives a little way from home.

² And yet, he knows that **the train will arrive at its destination point on time, regardless of the schedules of those participants now on board....**

³ Your work might not be respected in some or many cases, at the outset.

⁴ And yet, **when the Event itself actually happens,**

⁵ Many will be able to spontaneously reject those portions of the personality that would hold back the full transformation —

⁵ Knowing indeed that they are on familiar territory in some way, since it has been covered in the past.

[David's Note: After the First Wave happens, you may decide to keep your human body. If you have "done the work," you might Ascend directly into fourth-density.]

7. THE VORTEX OPENS, AND YOU MUST MAKE A DECISION

¹ The only losers are those who insist upon obtaining rational verification for everything that is happening to them.

² Their rational mind might be so overloaded at this point that they indeed feel they are hallucinating —

³ Or otherwise going through an unexplainable psychogenic fugue of some sort or another.

⁴ In this mental confusion, one can literally have the gates of heaven opened wide to them, and close them back down —

⁵ Out of the sheer strength of the material-centered Ego position.

⁶ Indeed, the vortex opens. And one must make a decision rather quickly as to whether to enter or not.

⁷ And thus, a person of this type, who seeks not the intimate re-establishment of this purpose, will suddenly find that it indeed has not yet been met.

8. THERE WILL BE ONE HOAX AFTER ANOTHER

¹ [D: (Extremely tired and yawning.) "I am going back to bed."]

² We thank you, and remind you that truth is ever persistent in the midst of so many lies.

³ The crowd is roaring with laughter as the hoaxes have continued.

⁴ We are glad to report that **there will continue to be one hoax after another in the very near future.**

⁵Such is **the near hysteria on your planet of people feeling the approach of the oncoming Ascension — and not knowing what to do about it.**

⁶So just be patient — and don't be a loser. You will understand what that means more fully when you transcribe this.

⁷Your own rational mind can indeed impede this process when you begin over-analyzing and deducing everything on your own.

9. MINIATURE EARTHQUAKES IN THE PERSONALITY

¹To simply allow this process to happen will create miniature earthquakes in the personality.

²[These are] earthquakes that directly lead to the new fluidity of movement and assuredness of purpose that comes with one who has arrived at their true fruition point.

³That is all that we want for you. And indeed, how primitive it is for you to think that you might be incapable of attaining it!

⁴Rather see the vibrancy and the potency that it has, and all will be made clear.

⁵We thank you, and remind you that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine.

⁶Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love. We don't want to upset the apple-cart here.

⁷[D: "Thank you."]

12/10/98

1. TRICKING THE SELF INTO ALIGNMENT

¹Edgar is going to baby-sit for us.

²When you think you know the answer, **the solution involves trying to deceive those portions of the Self not in alignment; the deliberate trickery, if you will.**

³This is done so as to create a more impenetrable base for this ever-shifting set of criteria as it continues forward.

⁴We definitely had to worry about sneakers.

[David's Note, 1/3/23: Michael just did it again. I am delaying Girlie's walk by not putting my boots on, right as I reach this point in notation.

My father's cat of many years was also named Sneakers. This may also be referencing the epic falling-out of Yeezy and Adidas sneakers, leading to massive unsold goods.

Michael is talking about the Deep State trying to deceive us – and be 'sneaky.')

2. THE ENTIRE CHARADE IS BEING FILMED

⁵From a prospective (future) standpoint, it would seem that the entire charade is being filmed –

⁶For those entrepreneurs who have insisted on **double-digit figures for dialing**.

[David's Note: This may again be about the treatments, and their apparent intent to provide wi-fi control of human beings remotely – and "film everything."

However, thanks to the Alliance, "the entire charade is being filmed."

The MAC addresses people seem to be broadcasting are collections of double digits. This data will be discussed in the Author's Preface to Book Three.

"Those entrepreneurs have insisted on double-digit figures for dialing." The "double-digit figures" jokingly refer to the money they made from selling the inoculations.]

3. THOSE WITH THE CHRIST CONSCIOUSNESS WILL BE BESTOWED

¹Instead, we come across with the unique purpose involving the bestowal of certain characteristics –

²Upon those who would then align themselves more fully with Christ consciousness in every moment.

³The Tarot cards continue to be a source of inner frustration for us when you have used them as a method, where a direct opportunity for speaking has been compromised....

[David's Note: I had used cards since junior high school as a tool for psychic development. Michael told me they were far too imprecise compared to his words.]

⁴You cannot live your life in fear of the people who want to see you the most.

⁵Rather, use the time when you are surrounded to educate those otherselves, to again reinstate the Divine promise of Spirit in Matter –

⁶That was started, in your terms, long before the present.

⁷This will help relieve you of the magnificent proportions of discomfort that can be felt in such a case.

⁸Remembering your true mission, which inherently is to be of service, will help you to understand the power and the position that you hold.

12/12/98

1. BIZARRE TELEKINETIC SYNCHRONICITY WITH INTERNAL VISIONS

[D: "This is the second to last night of my vacation. I needed to report a very substantial synchronicity that just happened this moment.

I was getting very clear verbal messages combined with visual images. And for the second time recently, the visual images also were humorous, and got me laughing.

It seems strange to hear yourself laughing out loud in the room at visions that are all occurring inside of your head.

There was a point where I saw a guy with a pair of pruning shears, as though he was going to cut something.

He was showing them to me and talking to me. He was drawing special attention to the shears, and closing them dramatically. I expected it to be loud when he did it.

At the same, instantaneous moment that he closed the shears, there was a very loud popping noise in the physical room that was real! It was like something falling.

That convinced me to take the time to dictate here, even though I am feeling tired and was not very interested in doing this.

[David's Note: I believe a clip-on light fixture had fallen in the room, in this case. Michael is setting up the metaphor of the "pruning" of the Deep State.]]

2. WE USED THE SAME PRUNING TACTICS WITH THE DAILY SHOW

¹The ripple in the pool of awareness shimmers out throughout the world at large.

²And we uniformly disagree on the precepts of how it is functioning.

³The same [pruning] tactics we used in the preoccupation of business with [the] Daily Show – and air travel.

[David's Note, 6/22/22: Stephen Colbert became famous for starring on the Daily Show.

In just the last few days before this unsealing, his team was caught breaking into the US Capitol and harassing government staff.

Originally I associated all of this with Clinton impeachment. This is from my notes:

"The pruning vision... demonstrates how the whole issue of **Clinton's impeachment could be seen as a pruning or cutting back of the Oval Office** as it now stands.

The very first sentence of the reading seems to refer to this metaphor of pruning.

This comments on how Clinton certainly has been trying to remove the undesirable aspects of his public presence.

He is making a lot of public apologies and speeches, as well as a great deal of air trips.

5/26/23: Now as the book is about to come out, I see that this pruning was prophetic of Colbert Report, the Daily Show and others being off the air from a writers' strike.

All of this is leading up to an impeachment, just like my initial analysis concluded.]

3. WHAT CLINTON HAS DONE IS GROUNDS FOR IMPEACHMENT

¹ The buffoonery of such skepticism makes the jokes seem liable to [be] more than you think.

² Namely the opportunity, where it arises, to make believe that **a temporary settlement has indeed been reached.**

³ In fact, the whole entire matter of **this issue remains stagnant.**

[David's Note: As I release this book on Memorial Day, a "temporary settlement has indeed been reached" on the debt ceiling, but many feel "this issue remains stagnant."]

⁴ The point is not to simply disregard the infelicity of President William Jefferson Clinton's actions, but to regard their true impact on the planet as a whole.

⁵ The path, then, is to **forgive Clinton's actions** —

⁶ And understand that what he has done is normal and suitable grounds for impeachment.

[David's Note: In context of so many other time-encoded phrases in this book, Clinton's impeachment is a very thinly encoded reference to Biden / Deep State's impeachment.

The Durham Report revealed that Clinton was behind the Russia hoax.

“Buffoonery” is a strange word that also sounds like “Balloon.”]

4. THE NEED TO FORGIVE THE SELF

¹ This is not, however, any reason to obey the dismantling of his personality structure, as deemed by those who crucify him.

[David’s Note: This is part of the reason why I have not made fun of Biden.]

² A larger metaphor here is being played out. A metaphor of the need for the everyman, or everywoman as it were, to forgive self for these actions.

³ Bearing the brunt of the wood of the cross, Clinton has acted as a ship-goer for all others who would then follow in his footsteps –

⁴ And realize how their own lives would fare if held up to the scrutiny of the world.

[David’s Note: This is a shocking passage, because many of us have a projection of certain other humans like Biden as being ‘demons’ and “pure evil.”

We are all Creator beings. Demons are only something we create if we are unhealed.

We are all returning to the Oneness. If we had condemned Clinton as a planet, Michael says we would have authorized extinction-level Earth Changes.]

4. THE RISE AND FALL OF THE OVAL OFFICE AND ITS CONSTITUENTS

¹ Were the impeachment proceedings to continue, and come to full term, a tremendous learning opportunity would be granted –

² by seeing that the issues cannot be taken lightly when incorporated into the realm of presidential affairs, and public application of the jurisdiction of power in the land.

³ Our Phys-Ed teacher reminds us that there are skeptical concerns and disbelief –

⁴ As the scurry of jokes, rumors, superstitions, myths, and histories all compile together,

⁵ To form an enigma – analogous to the rise and fall of the Oval Office, and its constituents.

[David's Note: "Phys-Ed" is Physical Education. Michael may be saying that this mass deception is a form of "physical education" to wake up humanity.]

This is very obviously prophetic of the move to impeach Biden that we now see.]

5. THE HOUSE JUDICIARY COMMITTEE IS MEDIATING

¹ So instead of being wary of what is going on, it is important to accept that **the House Judiciary Committee is taking upon itself the role of the external mediating force –**

² That then sees fit its responsibility to represent the perceived moral justifications for any wrongdoing, **and to obliterate them.**

[David's Note: This is another prophecy of the new House of Representatives and their ongoing investigations – which will 'obliterate' the Deep State soon enough.]

³ Talk to a superstar, and **you will find that the entire office is bungling about with the apparent notions of stardom.**

[David's Note: Only now, with the Bud Light and Target boycotts, are the Elites realizing that their "apparent notions of stardom" in "the office" are not true.]

⁴ This recognizes the fact that you can only be pure when you listen to the voice within.

⁵ **As this situation has directly exposed the impurity of such actions,** so too must it reveal – symbolically, of course –

⁶ The fact that **there are indeed repercussions for these behaviors.**

6. WE DO NOT WANT TO DIVULGE POLITICAL OPINIONS

¹ As each individual is capable of forgiving and understanding Clinton, and respecting him in a personal nature,

² So too must each apparent individual see to it that a proper code of conduct be lived and followed thereafter.

³ **We do not wish to compromise our readings by divulging any secrets of our opinions regarding politics.**

⁴ **As we have stated before, the whole truth of the issue is a great matter to the overall continuity of the human experience on this planet.**

7. RECONCILING YOUR DESIRES WITH THE HIGHER SELF

¹ What we do wish to say is that every day, there are more opportunities for a positive healing potential of thousands of years of karma and effort to be cleansed and renewed.

² Rejuvenated, as such.

³ Without this capstone fitting so snugly in place, **the tail would indeed wag the dog**, so to speak.

⁴ So now, **as we imbibe** these opportunities for realization, **and taste the broth** on the tongue,

⁵ So too may we hopefully digest the chances of reconciliation of many of the predominant issues within self.

[David's Note: "Wag the Dog" is about how politicians spin stories to hide crimes. "Taste the broth" is likely another coded reference to the inoculations.]

⁶ Active gravity ensures that the entire melodic and **effusive treatment** of these matters be rectified –

⁷ In the pure social purpose of Christ consciousness, and the reconciliation of one's desires with the Higher Self.

[David's Note: The mass-media push for the 'treatment' was HIGHLY 'effusive!' The word 'effusive' means "talkative and over-enthusiastic."]

8. THE KINGDOM FROM WITHIN

¹ Since so many of your people abided by these constraints,

² they have indeed faithfully applied many principles of responsibility to their doings in the physical world.

³ When we say constraints, we refer to the fact that **the continual denial of the ego is necessary in order for this system to function appropriately well.**

[David's Note: Many people took the treatments. "So many of your people abided by these constraints." The ultimate, intended outcome of these treatments was control.

Jacob said the final wave of inoculations would have artificially-intelligent nanites that override our thoughts. "The continual denial of the ego is necessary... for this system."]

⁴ So, what little we know and understand of human politics tells us that the only path to enlightenment is the kingdom from within —

⁵ Revealed in its true splendor in the shining light of illumination and regurgitation of one's own problems directly.

⁶ This opportunity, now presented before you, represents a unique chance to look within and discover those deep secrets —

⁷ That are as yet unyielding to the calm and tempered force of the raised brow, quivering chin and penetrating eye.

[David's Note: This is clearly talking about the melodrama we see from political figures who end up getting in trouble.]

9. WERE THE IMPEACHMENT TO BE BROUGHT TO TERM....

¹ Instead, it is the realm of the heart: that force from within that is given to searching outward, while simultaneously feeling the need to collapse within,

² And embrace the totality of beingness within the self that is its own enigma and surprise.

³ So don't fret about it. Either way, a modicum of sobriety and gentleness of purpose must take hold.

⁴ Were the impeachment to be brought fully to term (and we do note that the probabilities are still open at this point),

⁵ Either outcome represents a distinctive opportunity for the mass mind of the collective human organism to express itself as a totality once again.

⁶ The proper attitude in the face of impeachment would be one of forgiveness —

⁷ With the resolute dedication to applying the constraints of fair judgment to the position of such great responsibility.

10. SAFETY HAS BEEN COMPROMISED BY THE CLINTONS

¹ Indeed, **if the power structure has weakened considerably,**

² there are as yet many opportunities for the safety of the United States and its inhabitants to be compromised in extreme situations —

³ by the loss of prestige, and of the extreme accountability of wrongdoing on behalf of President Clinton.

⁴ Accepting what must be done without emotion is a step in the right direction towards reconciliation of this problem.

⁵ And thus, we stand fast in assuring you that these decisions leave no one unharmed, but also leave no one unenlightened.

11. GREGARIOUS PERSONALITY SHIFTS IN SHORT BURSTS OF TIME

¹ All are experiencing the situation in their own particular way. And those who claim to be apathetic are still paying attention.

² Do not fail to realize the power with which your thoughts assemble into collective modes of visualization templates,

³ Then constructing form in physical reality as we now know it.

⁴ The fourth-dimension vibration which beckons is all around you.

⁵ And you have the opportunity to bring it to full realization — by continuing to make gregarious shifts in personality in short periods of time.

⁶ We assemble the world with our thoughts. And with our linear thinking, we can make ourselves viable for inhabitation of these higher realms — which we now inhabit.

⁷ Simply speaking, go out there and do it. Simply love thy neighbor as thyself, and all else will fall neatly into place.

⁸ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

[David's Note: This was a very important reading for the Michael Prophecies.

At first, I was only going to release the year 1999. Doing any more than that seemed like it would be far, far too much time and effort for me to complete.

I then went back to December 1998 and looked to see if any of those readings were time-looped to the present. This was on February 1st, 2022.

This data about the "Clinton Impeachment" was so obviously prophetic that I soon realized I needed to read everything. Anywhere I went, I found time loops.

As we saw in earlier books, I didn't fully commit to writing all the books until July of 2022. I knew it would be very difficult and leave me with almost no money.]

12/20/98

1. EXTINGUISH ANY SENSE OF LONGING

¹ We were online while David slept in his bed.

² Fantastic but true, **the old evil appears to be renewed in a whole new light as we come into the present moment of focus.**

³ We should seriously consider **taking stock** of our actions — and then uncovering the truth behind what we were, and what we still are.

[David's Note: Michael is talking about the Ascension potential within all of us. Evil is partly appearing in the form of the collapsing stocks we are now seeing.]

⁴ That still gives us hope for a reconciliation of one's trials and desires with the One Self that exists throughout all things.

⁵ You can extinguish any sense of longing, and replace it with the knowledge of completion. And that is a remarkable achievement.

⁶ Materialize something and it comes about, through the ceaseless desire to be of service in one's thoughts and actions.

⁷ The more we put a bullet next to these actions and highlight them, the less obvious it is that we have a situation needing attention in the first place.

[David's Note, 2/1/22: When I make videos out of these readings, I animate them with bullet points. Michael may have predicted that in Line 7.]

2. WE HAVE A DEADLINE IN THE IMMEDIATE FUTURE

¹ This attends to the matter at hand through continual diligent practice of the basic rank and file of one's own belongingness on the planet.

² Accepting self without desires is an important step as well.

³ Simply become cognizant of the need for there to be stillness of mind — without the muddled clouding currently visible.

⁴ The rest will become eminently observable over time — in the immediate future.

⁵ It is a situation that allows us to become concerned, when:

⁶ Our deadline looms closer and closer every moment.

⁷What you are doing now consists of perhaps the single most **concrete** steps you have taken yet towards fulfilling your purpose on this planet.

⁸Obviously we couldn't be more happy in seeing the tremendous effort you are making, and have made.

[David's Note, 2/1/22: Just yesterday, I had my first private conversation with a Stavatti board member about getting our company into the nano-concrete business.

As a whole, we are all making the "concrete steps" necessary for Ascension.]

3. THERE ARE STILL OPPORTUNITIES FOR FAILURE

¹Be informed, however, that the entire solution to the problem encompasses everything that we have taught you.

²And thus, **there are still opportunities for your failure to emerge.**

³So, what we are saying is, do not feel too much pride about what you are doing. Just continue doing it.

⁴I knew that it would be difficult for you to come to this moment of self-realization.

⁵And yet, it is charged with an appropriate emotional energy that is quite vast and profound in its implications.

⁶Simply speaking, we believe that the universe creates all matter as a loving thought, a loving act, a loving gesture.

⁷By that same token, you are also a loving thought and gesture.

Same day

4. DREAM OF AMERICAN SATELLITES THAT LOOK LIKE UFOs

[Dream: I started out somewhere in a room. I was comfortable there. My friend Antonio was there. He was featured in the article I was just working on.

He was calling attention to a window, which was like the skylight in my room. He excitedly told me he could see something in the window.

He was looking for an airplane, and was going to show me how high up in the air the airplane was. He said, "DAVE! DAVE! Look! Look!"

When he showed me this, I laughed and dissed him, saying, "That's not that high of an airplane."

I thought you were talking about **a strange airplane that would be VERY high up."**

Moments later I saw a satellite tumbling by, in very large vision.

He said, "Did you see that? Did you see the American satellite?"

I was pretty surprised. "Yeah, I did." I didn't really know what to make of that part.

Then as things continued to progress, I saw **three or four of these satellites.**

[David's Note: This is a clear prophetic reference to the balloons that were recently shot down and called UFOs by the Biden Administration.]

5. IT SUDDENLY TURNS INTO A FLYING DREAM

I was wondering, because there was obviously some magnification going on in this little skylight window in the bedroom where this was happening.

Then I turned the focus somehow. I was now looking down out of the window.

As we were looking down, it seemed that we were now flying. I didn't ever get to the point of thinking that we were actually in flight in the dream.

We were flying down towards Earth. It felt very similar to being in a UFO. That's what I think the point was.

6. WE LAND IN A BASKETBALL COURT, WHERE A LECTURE WILL OCCUR

As I'm looking at the ground as we go in for a landing, I realized that we were dealing with a situation where we were closing in on some sort of a basketball field.

You could see the green, and how it was painted. That schema must have come from the fact that John is getting ready to make a basketball court here in the yard.

So anyway, we either landed, or the basketball court just became where I was.

We entered into this building. I came inside this room, and there were chairs set up.

It looked like there was going to be a lecture there.

It looked like one of the old college rooms I used to go to.

There was a blackboard in the back, a little desk. The chairs were all in rows. It wasn't a very big room.

As I looked around at the floor, I realized that **all the floor was gravel – the same as how we filled up the rooms in the barn before we poured concrete.**

I could tell that the gravel hadn't been spread flat. I was concerned and thinking about **grabbing a hoe in order to spread that gravel flat.**

Then as I had this thought, I somehow knew that **this was after the Ascension.**

[David's Note, 2/1/22: This is an amazing reference to the "Gravel Pit" I was just talking about yesterday, as well as the overall concrete business.

Nano-concrete will allow us to build amazing structures – like massive bridges.

In the dream, I then grab a hoe. For the first time in my life this last month, I have been repeatedly using a hoe to chop ice.]

7. A FRIENDLY BASKETBALL GAME WITH GRAY ETs

Before that, I started to observe a basketball game. That might have been how I went from flying to being on land.

I started seeing the basketball game from a great height at first. I gradually came down to earth.

I noticed that some strange things were going on with how the game was being played. This **finally culminated in people playing basketball with Grays.**

They were comical looking, almost fluorescent green, with veiny heads. Everyone was playing basketball together.

It wasn't even a big deal to me. I knew that this was after Ascension, and the walls had come down.

With this knowledge I came into this room, and **saw that the gravel needed to be hoed down.**

I was also aware that it was after Ascension, and this wasn't a huge priority on my list just yet.

12/22/98

1. THE VIDEO WOULD BE INTERESTING FOR OTHERS TO SEE

[Dream: I found myself in a bar, with a friend from grade school who was very poor. His mother's hair fell out and she died of cancer while I was friends with him.

He was wearing a very inexpensive-looking set of frames for his glasses, but not quite as bad as the ones he had in HS. We were sitting and talking at the bar together.]

¹ Our records claim that the witnesses to this more **peculiar event looming in your near future**

² Have already become more distinctly separate than their peculiar counterparts —

³ In the now-distant past.

⁴ Every one of us commends you for taking a definite opportunity to be of service when, for all practical purposes, the chips have been stacked against you.

⁵ Our plot continues to be messy. [It] continues to be frayed with denial — and **gory details**.

⁶ The video seemed just appropriate at that moment.

⁷ Just enough that it would be interesting for others to see and witness.

⁸ So, in order to relate to these circumstances, **one had better take up the reins —**

⁹ And see for oneself what it is like to be completely in control of one's own destiny.

[David's Note: This appears to be talking about videos of the Deep State emerging as part of the overall exposure of the "gory details," to break the 'denial.'

"The video... would be interesting for others to see and witness."]

2. GREAT STRIDES IN PERSONAL PROGRESS

¹ When one can grasp the compass and **point the needle** in its own direction, one has indeed made great strides in personal progress.

[David's Note: Right after referencing the Deep State's 'gory' exposure, Michael mentions needles. This is another prophetic glimpse of the inoculation agenda.]

²The combat involved two characters, each of which stem directly from feelings of self-importance.

³The first was the casual rendition of David's own past, being overweight and negligent of his own diet;

⁴the second being **that which awaits in the very near future – namely the public and private collection of these readings being fused together, so as to create popularity.**

⁵This opportunity can be breached without the necessity for involving its readers in a dearth of day to day existence, as the trampled-upon participants.

3. THANK YOU FOR BEING DILIGENT ENOUGH

¹We commend you [David] on being just diligent enough to pick up the tape recorder and dictate this dream.

²If you were feeling less important, perhaps you wouldn't have done it.

³Therefore, we do remind you that you still have the potential to become a historical figure with your work in the present moment.

⁴So don't get worried about the deeper concerns regarding yourself, and how others will see you.

⁵Instead, use every available opportunity to make plain that you yourself want nothing more than an opportunity to serve the Creator.

4. MUCH GREATER LEVELS OF CONTACT WHEN ALL OTHERS ARE RELAXED

¹At that given moment in time,

²When all others are extremely relaxed,

³You can then open the doorway to much greater levels of contact and information.

5. MICHAEL'S PERSONAL MESSAGE FOR DAVID ON BECOMING FAMOUS

¹For starters, let's get real.

²Think about what it really means to be a person who becomes famous.

³It is not a garden of roses that one simply walks in to pick.

⁴ Rather, it is a long, slow and arduous process, complete with a whole host of difficulties, many of which have been inserted by the ego itself as it strives for power.

⁵ When the walls seem to be crumbling down, the next person in line takes every available chance to build them back up.

⁶ Similarly, as the faded pages of the past are closed, and the book continues to be read, so too might these former identities within the ego be considered things of the past....

6. SEXUALITY WILL BE UNDERSTOOD IN THE IMPEACHMENT

¹ As the impeachment proceedings continue,

² You can watch and see how the collective attitudes towards human sexuality continue to be explored and understood from a massive perspective –

³ Outside the usual realm of focus.

⁴ There is a lot going on indeed that merits your attention, and the attention of others.

7. THE CLEANSING OF MASS ATTITUDES REGARDING SEXUALITY

¹ In case we didn't clarify it before,

² It is the cleansing of the mass human attitudes regarding sexuality –

³ And the even deeper issues regarding integrity and truth in the human organism.

8. VEGAN ANGER ABOUT BACON BITS

[Dream: My elementary-school, impoverished friend and I go into this bar together.

He told me he wanted duck. Now I saw the meat. I knew it was duck, but in the dream it was called something else.

When we got into the bar, it turned into bacon bits.

He said he went into this salad bar to try to get some duck – but there was no duck, so he ended up eating bacon bits instead.

I was just disgusted and horrified that he would have tried to eat something like this.

So, I started to outspokenly warn him, and in a not very friendly manner, about what in the world was he doing eating bacon bits as if it was a meal.

I yelled about how gross it was – how distinctly un-cool (laughs) the whole thing was to me.

9. EVERYONE IS STARING AT US

As I was telling him this, I suddenly got this strange feeling.

I looked around this bar and restaurant we were in. I realized that every single table of people were staring at us.

I became aware at some point that my HS friend's grandmother was the bartender, I believe, along with some classic partiers from my HS graduating class.

[David's Note: The real-world equivalent of this was that every day after school, for almost two years, I had a fried "Government Welfare Cheese" sandwich at her house.

The cheese was free to my friend's mother as part of a food-stamp program. It was orange, synthetic, came in large bricks, and tasted exactly the same as Velveeta.]

10. YOUR RECEPTION IS GREAT

¹ For some reason, it seems to me that the opportunities in the present moment, for this contact or communication to take place, are indeed very high and wonderful.

² You might want to think about the fact that this was produced by your own triangulation on a bedtime that did not exceed midnight.

³ That does indeed have a lot to do with it.

[David's Note, 9/18/06: Wow... this was EXACTLY what I wrote in my journal this morning! I am re-reading this passage now in 2006.]

11. SLEEP IS A RECONNECTION WITH SOURCE

¹ At this moment that we are speaking, the mass collective mind of the human organism in your own geographical area is at about its single most dormant state.

² Even for those who work their overnight jobs, it is these long hours of the late night that cannot quite be called morning where some of the greatest work can be done.

³ There is a null zone that is reached where the electrogravitic and/or elemental nature of the influence of others' conscious minds has indeed been quelled –

⁴ By the simple aspect of sleep in all its various forms.

⁵ So to act is better than to think. And all must act on the impulse for sleep.

⁶ This in turn shuts down the thinking process, leading everyone to a reconnection with Source.

12. RECONNECTING WITH YOUR HERITAGE AS A LUMINOUS BEING

¹ It is interesting to remember that the entire humor of being human on the planet involves the fact that you tumble throughout your days, blissfully unaware of reality.

² And yet, every night you shut the illusion down, and leave behind the body –

³ To go somewhere that indeed is much more closely aligned with the truth.

⁴ Were you to be completely aware of these actions, the physical world would indeed seem to be more of an illusion.

⁵ Your need to sleep every day reflects the immediate concerns of maintaining this illusion,

⁶ And of your own true spiritual heritage as a luminous being, composed of many delicate fibers of light, all woven together like a gigantic puff of thread –

⁷ To then make the cocoon of energy that surrounds you and becomes you in every instantaneous moment, as you flicker in and out of various dimensions.

⁸ When we have a minute, you might want to get another tape ready, as it is about to expire here.

13. SLEEP IS A RESET FUNCTION, PROGRAMMED FROM THE BEGINNING

¹ Think about that, then. The world of your dreams is entered every night, and yet you are so blissfully unaware of its purposes, of its desires,

² Of its quest for meaning, and for realignment of the human condition with that of the Divine.

³ Indeed, it was programmed before the Fall itself that such a pattern of sleeping would be necessary.³⁰⁰

⁴ This was done in order to insure that no matter how lost, no matter how separated,

⁵ A simple aspect and function of survival would necessitate the present organism resetting its particular focus – to an area where things could be seen more objectively.

⁶ The subconscious of an entity, as we have said, is very well aware of its connection to the spiritual source.

⁷ The closer that the subconscious and conscious mind can work together as a team, the better.

⁸ And, in the cases where they are not working together as a team at all,

⁹ There can be a great deal of suffering and hardship in the apparent disparity between these layers of focus.

14. THE EARTH CHANGES ARE NOT PARTICULARLY RELEVANT TO US

¹ Within the personality, then, you can see for an extreme instant how all of the differing realities coalesce and merge into each other –

² Then forming a snapshot of one particular moment of space and time.

³ This snapshot then can be analyzed and itemized from a perspective that leaves no room for mistakes or misfortunes.

⁴ Instead, it applies to each precept the very true functioning notions of apparent stardom.

⁵ Each is a star, in his or her own right –

⁶ A true, luminous being of light –

⁷ A being capable of the most massive potentials –

⁸ That are largely heretofore undetermined in your physical range of focus.

⁹ You do indeed have the power to become charioteers of your own destiny. The ability to store large amounts of energy, to then use them for personal transformation.

³⁰⁰ The Law of One explains the original “Fall” as the Creator’s decision to fragment itself and create the Universe.

⁸ So **do not become concerned about the how and why of whether the Earth Changes will come or not.**

⁹ **That is not particularly relevant to our focus.**

15. THE BODY WAS DESIGNED TO MAKE SLEEP IMPOSSIBLE TO AVOID

¹ What we seek to do is to have you rely instead on these sources of inspiration and guidance —

² And realize that the entire time that you are sleeping, you are checking back in with us.

³ So, do not be afraid of the deeper picture of life as it unfolds before you.

⁴ Think deeply about the true nature of sleep, and of its metaphysical applications.

⁵ Again: the body was designed, underline that, in such a manner as to make it impossible for this sleep to be avoided.

⁶ Other human designs have been created on other planetary gestalts where such a system is not required, or is distributed more evenly throughout the day.

[David's Note: Another time loop. At 8600 feet, it's so dry you can only sleep a few hours at a time — and then have to get up to pee. I now run three cycles a day.]

16. WE DECIDE WHEN THE ASCENSION WILL OCCUR, AND CREATE IT

¹ Your own peculiar degree of separateness on this planet has indeed been one of the reasons why you have geared towards a clear and distinct separation between the waking and the dreaming life.

² Anyone who thinks that they do not dream, or that nothing happens out there, is simply not paying attention.

³ In practice, then, we decide amongst ourselves that the moment of separation has ended. We decide and create when this moment is.

⁴ Ascension would certainly be considered as an ultimate defining moment —

⁵ Wherein one has taken stock of the previous opportunities to be of greater service to others, and then makes its point accurately known.

17. THE ASCENSION IS AN ENTRANCE INTO REALMS OF CONSCIOUSNESS

¹ On a larger scale, then, you could see the entire Earth life, and time spent therein, as an example of one waking day of consciousness.

² And then, the Ascension [could be seen] as the beautiful land that dwells in the expansive and free areas of the psyche that lack confinement.

³ But it is not just the psyche.

⁴ It is an entrance into these realms of consciousness that extend far beyond your own primal definitions of ego,

⁵ Into areas of inquiry that you have never before even considered as fact.

⁶ So before anyone goes tooting their own horn, thinking that they have all the answers or have figured it out,

⁷ Ask them what it was that they had done the last time they were asleep.

⁸ If they cannot tell you, then they simply are not yet an integrated being.

⁹ That is all for now. Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

18. EXACT SYNCHRONICITY WITH THE END OF THE TAPE

[David's Dictation Note: Late December, I guess Tuesday morning, 5:17 am. It doesn't seem like Tuesday yet. I just had this awesome synchronicity.

At the end of the last tape the forces just said "That is all for now, Peace be with you."

Literally two seconds after I said the word 'love' at the ending point there, the tape shut off. It was perfect!

That shows me that everything [Michael] said in that reading was right on the money.]

19. TEACHINGS ABOUT DIET AND MILITARY GAMES

[Dream: Everybody in the bar started paying very close attention to me after I was talking to my friend about diet.

I knew I had a responsibility to be straightforward and say exactly what I was feeling, without editing myself.

I think it was tough for people to hear it, because they were still in denial about their own diets [where they thought they were eating healthily, but had major problems.]

Then something else came along and it's not very clear, but it seemed to involve people being outside.

It was **like a game, but also regimentalized, and somewhat military**. People thought it was fun. It might have even been taking place in the bar.

I asked people what would be more fun – me talking about this issue with diet, or participating in this game? Everybody seemed to think the game was better.

It involved a lot of people standing up. It was kind of dark. There was at least one person or one something... something strange.

I am cueing on a human figure, which just had the approximate human shape but was all white and kind of gelatinous and gross-looking. Like a living blob of glue.

Anyway, as people were lining up into these ranks, my friend's grandmother was going around, attending to us and watching us.]

20. SOMETHING WONDERFUL IS HAPPENING

¹ I was aware in that moment that something wonderful was happening.

² Though I couldn't quite see it just yet, it was coming clearer and clearer every moment.

³ That is why the next portion of the dream is so vitally important.

[David's Note: In the movie 2010, an Ascended Commander David Bowman tells us to expect "something wonderful." This is a prophecy of a solar-system-wide Ascension.

The white, gelatinous human figure suggests our imminent energetic rebirth.]

21. OVERCOMING NEGATIVE INFLUENCE BY NICELY EXPOSING IT

[Dream: I then realized the path called for some sort of heroism on my part.

I was doing something to overcome all the negative influence that was there and tie it together, re-present it, and make it nice.

I can't remember the exact details, but there was something official about it, like a knight on a horse.

That was an image I just cued on, even though I don't think it was in the dream.

It was fun out there, almost like a Halloween party. It was like a frat party, but without all the drinking. Actually, some of the people had just been drinking.

22. EVERYONE WAS TALKING ABOUT A NEW MOVIE

It did transform from a bar to this outside environment quite spontaneously, which I hardly noticed.

There were definitely people standing in lines. Someone was running from line to line talking. It was like a movie. There was something moderately interesting going on.

The main topic of discussion, it finally broke through, was this movie.

A lot of people had seen it, but very few people wanted to see it – or wanted to take the opportunity to see it.

And it was indeed famous, because it was the Beatles, and it was the Beatles during an important time during their life.

It amazed me that this movie was publicly available, but that nobody was paying any attention to it.

23. THE BEATLES GOT THROWN INTO THE ENGLISH CHANNEL

In the movie, **the Beatles got thrown or tossed into something like the English Channel – a body of water** they were swimming in.

They were trying to swim out of danger by climbing up a wall. The wall was flat, and there was nothing they could grab onto in order to pull themselves up.

They were swimming in this black, oily water. The sludge actually was on their faces. They still had a halfway decent sense of humor about it.

[David's Note, 2/21/23: This is prophetic of the East Palestine chemical spill. If we treated everyone equally, those victims should have received far better attention.]

24. YOU DO SOMETIMES NEED TO STING YOURSELF IN THE ASS

¹The bees will provoke anyone if necessary in order to defend themselves.

² Similarly, those sizzling hornets within the self can seem sinister to those who do not realize that **you do need to sting yourself in the ass fairly often.**

³ We though you would like that one.

[D: "Yeah, that was pretty funny."]

[David's Note: This appears to be yet another metaphor of the inoculations. As a planet, we needed to "sting ourselves in the ass" to create the mass awakening.]

25. THE STORY NEEDS TO BE TOLD

[Dream: Nobody really liked this movie. I was just flabbergasted. My God – think about this!

Think about how famous the Beatles are. Then this movie came out with them in it, but nobody was watching it. But yet, that's part of the story.

I felt like their story needed to be told, but I didn't quite know how to do it.]

[David's Note: Symbolically, even 'famous' brands like Budweiser, Target and Bed, Bath and Beyond can end up 'drowning' in a toxic disaster. They are not indestructible.]

Same day, 10:15 am

26. DREAM OF TERRIFYING GREEN PLUME ON THE EAST COAST

[Dream: We were looking on the TV, and noticed how hot it was getting in the house.

There was a very strange phenomenon of the water in the ocean being very green. Too green.

There was a report on TV with Dan Rather. He was talking about how **this green ocean had run all the way up the eastern seaboard of the United States.**

They were saying that the heating of the water on the eastern seaboard was legendary in scope.

They had never seen anything like it before. It was very serious, very troubling for the climate. And no one knew how to stop it.

Along those same lines, it was very obvious that they were also talking about the **hurricanes that were going to be created by this.**

[David's Note, 10/2/22: Now I am reading this after Hurricane Ian created a "once in 500 years" scale of damage to Ft. Myers, Florida.

This was the first news item I saw after re-inserting Birth of the Christ Within, the next reading from December 24th, into this book, and then re-reading from here.

1/3/23: This also seems to have been prophetic of the massive cold storm that froze out America on Christmas 2022, leading to deaths, looting and disaster in Buffalo, NY.

5/26/23: The Palestine chemical spill is the likely source of a very intense red tide that is hitting the Florida coast. This came out on March 19th.

Massive 5,000-Mile Wide Toxic "Red Tide" Could Hit Florida Beaches

Some of Florida's top beaches are at risk of a dual catastrophe as poisonous algae bloom, commonly referred to as 'red tide,' is causing the death of wildlife – and poses a health threat to people.

Now, a massive 5,000-mile-wide blob of seaweed is passing through the Caribbean and up into the Gulf of Mexico, and could soon wreak havoc on Sunshine State beaches.

"It could be two problems turning into a bigger one," Mike Parsons, a marine science professor at Florida Gulf Coast University, told CBS News.

The algae causing the red tide is a single-celled organism called "Karenia brevis."

It can reproduce in large numbers and create massive blooms that transform the water into an eerily reddish-brown hue -- hence 'red tide.'

Karenia brevis produces a type of toxin known as 'brevetoxins,' which have fatal effects on marine life and birds.

Human contact with these red tide organisms can cause skin irritation – and even coughing or congestion problems.³⁰¹

[David's Note: This is very likely caused by the dioxin from East Palestine circulating in the Atlantic Ocean currents. Specific algae digest these toxins to clean up the mess.

In general, the "green tide" refers to the incoming, disruptive green-ray energy.]

27. A VERY SERIOUS STORM HAD HIT

I knew from watching the news report that a hurricane had come and hit VB.

³⁰¹ <https://www.zerohedge.com/markets/florida-beaches-hit-toxic-red-tide-amid-giant-seaweed-blob-threat>

I was concerned about all the things we had in the barn that were loose and not tied down, and where they were going to go.

This hurricane went up the coast even more and hit Rhode Island. The state was mentioned two or three times as being almost totally destroyed.

This was a very serious hurricane.

[David's Note, 9/24/22: This appears to be another dream metaphor of "The Storm."]

28. IT BECOMES THE END OF THE WORLD, SEA SPILLING ONTO LAND

I remember seeing an image next to Rather's head, on the right of the hurricane. There was a blue relief pattern against the map of the United States.

The plume of green water, the massive hurricane and everything else was really serious. We were concerned.

Then the sea levels were rising. The sea was spilling onto the land all over, and rising everywhere. It was very serious – the end of the world....

As I tried to escape in the car, it was almost like they didn't want us to escape, but were trying to barricade us in to different areas....

No sooner did we start trying to drive anywhere, but what the roads were blockaded.

So we didn't even get very far down this one road, and we came to this sign that said "ROAD CLOSED." Then we tried to go back the other way, and that road was closed.

This was not good at all! We were really trying to figure out what was going on. It was getting pretty bad. There was nowhere to drive your car, end of story.

There was some kind of horrible weather danger – big time. Water rising, hurricane or both....

29. WE ARE GIVING YOU A DISGUISED METAPHOR

[D: "So is this a premonition of future events, or what?"]

¹We take the position of always admitting the disguised metaphors before complying with a request for physical prophecies.

²In this case, many accurate discoveries are made when the participant chooses or wishes to do so.

[David's Note, 9/24/22: Michael again has re-stated the central theme of this book.

Instead of catastrophic hurricanes and tsunamis, we are seeing "The Storm" –

A covert, undeclared world war against a dictatorial force controlled by negative ETs.]

30. THE MORE ENERGY YOU PUT IN, THE BETTER YOUR ACCURACY

¹[D: "What is it that the participant chooses or wishes to do?"]

²To begin appropriating the necessary personal energy towards this work.

³The more you do this, the better your accuracy will be, and the more prophetic information you will get.

⁴Thus, see this as a multi-level metaphor. The 3.5 on the 7, the metaphor of the green color of the water, et cetera.

⁵These are some of the things you should think about when analyzing this....

31. DISTRACTIONS CAN LEAD TO POSITIVE CHANGE

¹To know and establish one's pipeline in the midst of this presence is to again be revealed the subtleties and intricacies of working in these detailed matters.

²Everything we have described here involves the remainder of experience, keeping back one's own previous behavior patterns,

³And acting in favor of the newer modality of learning and experience that is now coming to the fore.

⁴Seeing those distractions posed by otherselves is often quite enough to place oneself in a new environment, grievous and uncertain.

12/23/98 – 4:30 am

1. "THE BIRTH OF THE CHRIST WITHIN"

¹Led by a few insightful followers to the appropriate destination, the few who were able to understand did indeed again perceive the Christ light within the heavens.

² These heavens were of a different sort; namely, the light essence coming from within, in those heavenly realms of the higher consciousness.

³ For those who could but perceive it, an awesome sight — resplendent in its glories, and completely unfettered by the material concerns.

⁴ For those who would try to spread it out and admire its beauty, as though on a surgical table, there will only be great surprise —

⁵ As its majesty eludes any classification or taxonomy.

⁶ It is not to be discussed, nor talked about as though something you could understand or grasp conscientiously.

2. THE REALIZATION OF ONENESS

¹ What you can do is approach its knowledge by following its demands.

² The demands it places are very simple. To view those otherselves as the Self.

³ To embrace the true principle of Christ, and to identify completely with that awareness in your own person.

⁴ To make it abundantly clear to all those involved that you yourself have followed these commands — not out of a feeling of guilt or fear,

⁵ But rather out of an innate sense of responsibility to thine own fellow man.

⁶ Such responsibility needs be generated from within, from the realization of the oneness of the One True Being —

⁷ That soul essence or entity that is composed of so much more than your physical matter.

3. HOW DO YOUR THOUGHT PATTERNS ALIGN?

¹ Break for a second and look in on yourself. Take five minutes each day to observe your own routines, your own thought patterns.

² Do they align with the Supreme Will of the One Being, or do they indulge in the fallen energies of Ego, pride, and discomfort?

³ Where do you reside in God's many mansions?

⁴ Do you rise to the top, as the leavening makes the bread to sprout into full bloom?

⁵ Or do you remain as the hard-caked dirt on the bottom that needs be scrubbed away?

⁶ Think about this as you contemplate the bread of life, the bread of the Christ —

⁷ The bread of the One True Being that is shared amongst us all — as that life essence we can all then partake of.

[David's Note: As Michael mentioned earlier, the communion ceremony with bread is called the Eucharist. The bread invokes Christ, "that life essence we can partake of."]

⁸ Know in thine own heart that the message of the Christ is forever profound, and forever simple.

⁹ Embrace the simplicity. And know that in that pure moment of time, you have grasped the unknowable.

4. A PLOT TO EXAMINE THE SELF UNDER A MICROSCOPE

¹ For it is through your conduct, both in thoughts and in actions, that the gateway to infinity is indeed opened.

² A plot is being hatched for all of you.

³ A plot to examine the Self under a microscope —

⁴ To then see, up close, the parts that have been hiding —

⁵ The parts that cause despair, fear, anger, rage, embitterment, jealousy, grief, apathy, depression, sadness, morbidity, strife, Ego, stress, et cetera.

⁶ Never before in human history have you had the pressure of the solar changes weighing upon you as they do now.

⁷ Our research with David confirms this. And it is important to understand that **all are affected by this cycle, regardless of whether it is apparent to them or not.**

⁸ And thus, there is indeed a very concrete reason for why many of you are feeling so out of touch —

⁹ So compelled to look back through the past, and deal with the issues as they emerge.

[David's Note: Both COVID and the inoculations exist, or were created, at the microscopic level. "A plot is being hatched... under a microscope."]

The “parts that have been hiding” in the shots may “cause despair, fear, anger, rage, embitterment, jealousy, grief, apathy, depression sadness, **MORBIDITY...**”]

5. THE CHRIST IS BLOWING THE DOORS WIDE OPEN

¹ Indeed, it is the compelling force of the Christ Consciousness that is blowing the doors wide open – and expanding the limits that now surround you.

² We do see that this expansion is similar to the expansion of the womb in the contractions prior to the birth of the Christ child.

³ It is not a simple process by any means, but one which requires all those who participate to hold their breath, to clasp hands gingerly together,

⁴ And look down with fear and awe at the massive force coming from within that is necessary, as the final push towards birth is then made.

⁵ Similarly, see these birth contractions of the collective human fourth-dimensional mind as occurring now.

6. THE PUNCH-LINE OF THE COSMIC JOKE IS COMING

¹ Do not fail to separate the personal issues within the self from those issues occurring in the world at large.

² For to do otherwise is to not grasp the full realm of possibilities that await you.

³ See your own life as the material for part of a great, cosmic joke.

⁴ The punchline has yet to come, but come it will.

⁵ Right now, you are being set up for the final blast of Love energy –

⁶ That part kicked in at the end that then makes everything snap together – leading to peals of uproarious laughter.

⁷ So too will this Ascension be the capstone that then holds together the shaky foundations of everything that now seems so disjointed.

⁸ The chief cornerstone is being lowered back into place.

⁹ It is very ironic that very few of you have truly realized that this is what is taking place.

[David's Note: Jesus is referred to as the "Chief Cornerstone" in the Bible. This was because the Pyramid was built to predict His return. We are all the awakening Christ.]

7. YOU ARE RELIVING OLD, PAINFUL EMOTIONS

¹ As these issues bubble up to the surface to be cleansed, the most common and, dare we say, **'smart' reaction** is to rage out at the difficulties that life is presenting —

² To then file them away into the back burner of the mind, for future consumption at some ill-defined and seldom reached point.

³ Because we think with our actions, **what it is that we do in our bodies transforms directly into our thoughts.**

⁴ **Therefore, you will be feeling energetics within the body** that correspond to the emotions that were captivating you during these previous exchanges.

⁵ As you think about this, remember that the discrete point of power is always surrounding you in the present moment.

[David's Note: This is another veiled reference to thought-influencing nano-tech. The data in Book Three reveals that the tech is powered by nearby wi-fi devices.

"The discrete point of power is surrounding you in the present moment."

Michael also calls it a 'smart' reaction (Line 1). In the Bond films, injected nano-tech is introduced as "Smart Blood." This data is discussed in Book One, I believe.]

8. LAUGHING OVER THE COSMIC JOKE IN THE NEAR FUTURE

¹ Therefore, you have the opportunity to bless yourself, with the grace of recognizing that your own inhospitable actions in the past —

² Were merely part of this **great cosmic joke that all of you will be so heartily laughing over in the next few months or years, as the case may be.**

³ When you realize what awesome potential resides within, you are then capable of unfurling your own butterfly wings.

⁴ It is not necessary to remain a larva or a pupa forever, as these are merely growth stages.

⁵ So too will you sprout your angel wings, and alight within the firmament —

⁶ Moving towards that shining star in the heavens which beckons you;

⁷ the glory of the true Christ Consciousness, the One God that extends throughout all creation, that everlasting light of pure, radiant love —

⁸ That calls all under its wing, that thou wouldst feel its holy presence.

9. YOU ARE HEAVILY PROTECTED

¹ Gathered together now are its children, (scattered throughout the fragments of space and time, that is,) eagerly awaiting your birth — and watching from the outside.

² These forces, known to you as the angels, exist outside of the physical sphere as you know it, but still watch eagerly, awaiting the arrival of the new birth within each of you.

³ It is from this perspective that you should see the extraterrestrials in question.

⁴ There are indeed negative entities, but the vast majority of those now present upon your sphere seek to counterattack any harm that would come your way —

⁵ And work diligently to do so.

⁶ When you are so surrounded by the heavenly host,

⁷ It is indeed rather foolish for you to be so concerned about an imminent alien invasion, if you will.

⁸ There would never be a possibility for something like this to take place —

⁹ As you are indeed heavily protected and quarantined from the outside world, if you will, at this point in time.

10. CAN YOU HEAR THE CALL?

¹ We come to you on a narrow-band vibration. A band that you can perceive early in the morning, as you rise into full waking consciousness.

² [This is] a band that will be speaking to you with greater and greater clarity in every moment.

³ But can you hear the call?

⁴ Do you understand the words of the Father as they are spoken from His lips to thine own mind?

⁵ Canst thou assemble the sentences properly, as they have been heard in the early waking delirium that is so commonly discarded —

⁶ With the fury of the alarm clock, and the hot shower?

11. THE CHRIST IS THE SPARK WITHIN YOU

¹ Indeed, do you rest comfortably with the notion of species-to-species contact and communion, or even spirit-to-spirit contact —

² Knowing full well that the being you wish to contact is the Christ himself?

³ What surprise comes to you at the realization that this very Christ is now designed to become literally your personal savior — but not in the sense that the fundamentalists would have it?

⁴ Rather, it is that spark in you.

⁵ It is you, and you are it. There is no separation.

⁶ Therefore, you can call it what you will, but its effects are the same.

12. ANALYZING A CLASSIC BIBLE QUOTE

¹ Your own Divine spark is awakening within you, and thus the phrase in the Bible: "I am the truth, the way, and the life. No one can come unto the Father but by me."

² Think about that statement for a minute.

³ "*I am the truth.*" Namely, there is no other truth, save for the Light within.

⁴ "*I am the way.*" Namely, there is no other way but thine own way —

⁵ revealed to thyself in the clarity that comes from deep, internal wounding, then examined carefully by the Self.

⁶ "*I am the life.*" Namely, there is no greater life than that which comes inherently from understanding this depth of communion with the truest nature of oneself.

⁷ "*No one can come unto the Father but by me.*"

⁸ Namely, there is no other path to Self-perfection and achievement of enlightenment but by grasping and aligning with those forces coalescing within Self —

⁹ then represented by said Christ Light.

13. WE SUSTAINED DAMAGE TO OUR RELIGION

¹ This statement has been hopelessly distorted to all sorts of parsimonious [selfish] situations,

² Including but not limited to those who would use it as a means to bolster their own faith –

³ and to say that all those who do not believe in Jesus are forever condemned to an eternal hellfire, of some sort –

⁴ Made gruesome in its potentialities for prolonged, intense suffering.

⁵ And yet, the masses of your people insist on some level within that this inner Christ is what is being accomplished.

⁶ Because of the damage we sustained in our religion, namely Christianity, we often come to you without ever speaking in these exact terms.

14. YOU CAN SEEK THE LIGHT IN MANY FORMS

¹ Indeed, many of your people choose to seek the Christ light within, without naming it or labeling it as such.

² They may decide to use Native American spirituality, meditation, or any of a wide variety of other metaphysical topics to bring about this truth.

³ So too may there be the followers of other orthodox religions in the world, also responding to that inner calling generated by the Light within.

⁴ When one blows away the barriers that hold distinction, one begins to perceive the True Self in its form, which is pure compassion and light.

⁵ To those untrained, it would not be seen at all, or only viewed as an inanimate object – a luminous being that does not yield any knowledge or secrets whatsoever.

⁶ Indeed, one may train oneself to the point of being able to see it, but if one does not possess the necessary desire for knowledge, it might yet elude them.

15. THE HUMAN DESIGN IS VERY POPULAR

¹ What you are seeing is indeed the perfected signature of the model of man, that holy presence that enshrouds all entities who would seek to make it manifest themselves.

² You are seeing a design that has stamped its signature upon thine own galaxy, and its neighbors,

³ Then envisioning a particular template through which all intelligent life might then be molded and formed.

⁴ While the human design is not actually very popular in the universe, it is immensely popular in your own local area.

⁵ Therefore, should it not be proper for your angels and heavenly host to look similar to thine own bodily forms? There is no other way to be, as this is the path.

⁶ When you see those that have the more alien-looking forms, namely those body types attributable to the common term known as “Grays,”

⁷ Understand that these are indeed products of advanced circumstances, wherein the human form is incubated – and allowed to grow as a neonate.

[David’s Note: This would cause the fetal proportions to remain into adulthood. You end up with a being that looks like a Gray – a large head and spindly body.]

16. MANY POSITIVE CONTACTS DO OCCUR

¹ More importantly, remember that all are One, and all are part of the Christ.

² Although there are certain aspects of the collective body of humanity that now seek to abduct and to terrorize, not all medical procedures are for selfish or destructive purposes.

[David’s Note: This evidence is thoroughly discussed in Awakening in the Dream.

The Betty Andreasson Luca material, dating back to the late 1970s, was only one of many accounts of positive ET abduction scenarios.

We also explain how people often were shown The Light – a ‘theophany’ experience.]

³ Many of your people have reported very positive experiences as well, and have not been treated as laboratory animals.

⁴ The seed [of your DNA] has been plucked, so that a new generation of bodily forms might then be created –

⁵ To populate this new heaven and new earth that awaits you in the very near future.

⁶ And thus, see this Ascension event as the preparing of the way for you.

17. INHABITING FOURTH-DENSITY BODIES

¹ You will be inhabiting bodies of your own, given through your own desire to be of service – to then make genetic material appropriated in such a format.

² All those who have agreed to do this on some deep level know what their mission priorities are,

³ And are aware of the great service that they give in allowing their own seed to be continued in the progeny of a new tomorrow.

[David's Note: Apparently, once we pass the First Wave and fully activate into fourth density, we will find ourselves in new, adult bodies that were prepared for us.

That's the only way it could work. If everyone was brought as an infant, society wouldn't be able to function. It would be Babyland.

These bodies will look human, but probably have larger eyes than we do now. Many of our common artistic depictions suggest an inner knowledge that this is coming.]

18. THE ASCENDED ABILITIES ARE QUITE AMAZING

¹ Remember that these beings are much more well-equipped for those Christlike abilities that you will have, namely:

² **The ability to fast-forward and rewind linear time as though it were a videocassette,** then making the hologram that much more malleable and pliable;

³ **The ability to fly at will;**

⁴ **To manipulate consciousness by thought alone;**

⁵ And, to then see these effects percolate up through the plane that you would normally term as physical.

⁶ Because your inherent state will be much closer to that termed as 'spiritual' in nature,

⁷ The energy that surrounds you will be much less dense in terms of its physical compression.

19. THE PUNCH-LINE OF THE COSMIC JOKE IS THE GRAND FINALE

¹ In terms of light vibration, the energy around you will be alive and dancing with light, in a sense that you cannot now perceive.

² As you leave your bodies behind each night and enter into these realms,

³ **So too must you make a grand finale, the punchline of the cosmic joke — and enter into it fully.**

⁴ See this as your opportunity to rekindle a lost love; a long, lost love that comes to you from so many years ago, so many deep longings and searchings within.

⁵ It is indeed the contact, or the Close Encounter of the Third Kind that all of you are so deeply seeking.

⁶ It is indeed that moment when you, through your own impeccable actions, choose to divide the distinction lines —

⁷ And again rejoin with the heavenly host that now surrounds you.

⁸ It is the stretching of the womb as it reaches its final contraction, that painful burst that then leads to the production of the child in proper.

⁹ As the child is laying before you, know too that you will project into it —

¹⁰ And look up into the heavens with a new set of eyes.

20. CAN YOU SEE THE DIVINE WITHIN?

¹ Do not fear the genetic procedures that will birth the body complexes for a new tomorrow.

² Do not fail to see that the preparations have indeed been made for you to fulfill the Christ promise,

³ “As I do these things, so shall ye do them, and greater things, for I go unto my Father.”

⁴ Understand that as He sheweth thee the way to the One Creator, so too mightest thou comprehend the incredible beauty and bliss contained within one simple phrase:

⁵ “Love thy neighbor as thyself.”

⁶ When thou comprehendeth that thou hast but One Being, and can seest thyself as a fully functional aspect of that One Being,

⁷ Thou hast no longer a need to continue to deprecate thine own countenance in the forms as thou wouldst now partake of it.

⁸ Rather, seest thou not the grace, the beauty, the Divine within?

21. CAN YOU SEE YOUR IDENTITY AS ONE?

¹ Seest thou not that thou hast the spark of the One Infinite Creator within thine own personal vibrations?

² Dost thou decide to deny God, to deny love, to deny hope — by self-indulgence and the fallen energies of bitterness, Ego, pride, et cetera, as heretofore mentioned?

³ Or wouldst thou embrace the otherselves around thine own self as merely a fuller extension of that I AM presence that you and all others inherently are?

⁴ Canst thou see thine own identity as One — as a collective body, a collective mind, a collective heart and a collective soul?

⁵ Dost thou realize the importance of this Christmas? That it is the birth of the Christ as a whole — within thine own heavenly garments?

⁶ That thou art indeed the Christ that has been born? That it is One?

⁷ Wouldst thou focus on the contractions and pains of its birth, or rather delight in the new arrival?

22. THE CROWNING MOMENT OF THE PLAN HAS ARRIVED

¹ See that the time has come.

² The moment has arrived.

³ And the players in the global game have all assembled into their proper positions.

⁴ Do not distress at the necessary evils and activities transpiring, and taking place —

⁵ As it is all part of the greater Plan.

⁶ You yourselves have never been more aware of the fury of the heavens — and of its transforming capability for change.

⁷ As you continue to see weather disturbances and other Earth Change scenarios, remember that it is created only by yourselves,

⁸ So that you might then learn from thine own mistakes, and strive towards greater love.

23. YOU ARE ALL ASSEMBLING INTO ONE TRUE BEING

¹ Realize that the Earth is responsible for taking upon all those energies that you would deny, or shunt aside, or raise in anger, rage, bitterness.

² These energies must go somewhere. And thus they are transferred into the Earth.

³ When you question why these things must occur, do your part in halting their construction.

⁴ You will discover with great rapidity that they have been repealed. And the glory that comes into your presence will be unsurpassed.

⁵ You are all still capable of awakening as one collective giant, one massive Christ presence that seeks to embrace the totality of human consciousness as its own —

⁶ For there is indeed but One True Mind, and One True Being.

⁷ You are all assembling into this now.

24. THE GLORY IS MORE FANTASTIC THAN YOU CAN REMEMBER

¹ And those of you who choose through free will to join it will have your place and position in this new kingdom.

² Understand that the glory that awaits you is much more fantastic than you are capable of remembering.

³ Also understand that even as a part of you dies to the old, to be born again into the new,

⁴ So too will a deeper part of you remember an unbroken line of continuity in said higher realms.

⁵ And so, with this new birth comes the remembrance of the life that was already present.

25. RETURNING TO WHAT IS FAMILIAR AND COMFORTABLE

¹ It will be those Ego selves that you have constructed now that are awed, mystified and humbled.

² To another, deeper part of yourselves, this will be business as usual, and returning to that which is familiar and comfortable;

³ A realm wherein thought is instantaneous, and action is concomitant with a system of beliefs that need not be believed, merely understood and acted upon.

⁴ It will be so simple for you to exist in grace, beauty and Oneness, for that vibration will surround you with such loving depth and presence of mind –

⁵ That it is impossible not to simply cry out:

⁶ *"The Lord thy God is One! The Lord thy God is One!"*

⁷ *Go out and share this piece of knowledge: The Lord thy God is One!"*

⁸ With this effervescent joy bursting forth from you, you will be as a beacon of light, a shepherd to others,

⁹ Then capable of going to other systems where others have suffered in the third density as yourselves – and indeed being a guardian angel of sorts for them.

[David's Note: I wouldn't actually go out and shout this phrase in public. Better to just inspire people with your kindness and respect. Those are my 2 cents!]

26. YOU WILL ALL GET TO TAKE A VACATION

¹ Indeed, there will be many new jobs to take up in the higher realms.

² This is not meant to be a heaven where you simply stand in awe at the majestic splendor and beauty around you –

³ But rather a concrete realm of life – a realm of life where experience, learning and growth continues.

⁴ There may well be an opportunity for all of you to take a respite or a vacation from suffering, to relax and rejuvenate the spirit.

⁵ But also realize that at a time that is most perfectly right for each of you, you will choose to enter fully into your new responsibilities and obligations –

⁶ To the awakening Christ light within the body and mind.

27. YOU ARE LOVED BY THE HEAVENLY HOST

¹ You will be able to go forth and declare this Light unto others – through intangible means such as aiding in the processes of karma, or even more direct means,

²Such as that contact which is now occurring in this room, as you read these words.

³Simply go before the parts that exist in fear, and find the trailblazer within Self that leads the way towards a new light, a new love, a new vitality and expression.

⁴Remember always that you are loved, protected and cared for, nurtured by the heavenly host of entities scattered about you —

⁵In such Divine geometric arrangements as to insure that your every move is triangulated upon, and watched eagerly.

28. A THRONG OF SPECTATORS FOLLOWS YOU

¹Understand that indeed, a throng of spectators follows you around throughout every activity throughout the day.

²And every motion that you make towards this Christ principle is met with uproarious applause.

³Similarly, every moment that you spend in bitterness, self-hatred, depression, longing or other self-indulgent acts can be a moment of silence and great planning in this throng of spectators —

⁴A suspenseful time, where the next appropriate action must be considered.

⁵These actions take the form of telepathic thoughts and emotions of Light and Love that are beamed to you.

⁶When that fails to reach its considered goal, other options are then brought forth.

⁷As your sense of separation continues, these options chosen will become more and more strong, relative to the degree of need that is necessary.

⁸It is you yourselves that have chosen for us to be able to do this for you, as part of the greater Plan that is materializing before you now.

29. ALL THAT YOU SOW MUST BE REAPED

¹Therefore, be aware that you have the wonderful opportunity to know, deep down inside your own being, that all that you sow must be reaped.

²Do you allow this throng of spectators to plan the next teaching lesson for you through suffering,

³ Or do you rather exalt in their simple presence —

⁴ By embracing the truth of what they are there for. To share the Light and Love with you that extends throughout the Creation.

⁴ Are you to be a trendsetter, an example for others, one who blazes a new trail into tomorrow?

⁵ Or, will you continue to whine and to be bitter about the suffering you must undergo?

⁶ Does anyone discuss the contractions of Mary's womb prior to the birth of Christ, and focus upon that part of the story?

⁷ The pain of lying in a disheveled stable and giving birth in such humble terms? No.

30. RENEW YOUR COVENANT WITH THE DIVINE

¹ It is the birth itself that is called into question as being so beautiful, so pure, so loving and kind.

² Remember that all we have ever wanted for you is that you would renew your covenant with the Divine —

³ And seek again the inner splendor that unfurls as the worlds of possibility are brought into the palm of your hand.

⁴ Seek to grasp your marbles, and recognize the awesome power that you do indeed possess when you stand in truth, Light and Love.

⁵ Feature yourself in this new movie script that is so soon to unfurl before you, and you will not be led astray.

31. THIS IS THE GREATEST MOMENT IN HUMAN HISTORY

¹ Look not to the sides where darkness looms over you, but rather to that beacon in the distance —

² The holy shepherd of cosmic love and beingness that urges you forward,

³ And impels you on your quest towards this true renewal of thine own depth and clarity of Light and Love.

⁴ There has never been a greater time in the entirety of your human history as this moment now.

⁵ Every action that you perceive and perform in your daily life, and your larger global life, will be forever remembered.

⁶ As we speak, the actions that you go through are indeed being recorded on the skein of space and time — by the pen or the quill of the Christ self,

⁷ Revealed through your own inner desire to perfect yourselves in Light and in Love.

32. THANK YOU FOR SHARING THIS MOMENT WITH US

¹ We eagerly await you coming up to the Throne of the Divine, and signing your name in the Akashic Records —

² Then completing your obligation to the third density,

³ And freeing yourself to the greater works that unfold before you in the glory of the new tomorrow — then made into today.

⁴ We are there with you as you think about these things, and will be available if you need further assistance.

⁵ Thank you for sharing this moment of grace, joy and of beauty with us. And remember that you are loved more than you could ever possibly imagine.

⁶ Peace be with you in the Light of everlasting Love.

12/24/98

REFLECTIONS ON THE BOOK OF LUKE

[David's Journal Note, 12/24/98: I wanted to report that I was in bed earlier today, listening to the radio and resting in the other room.

They were doing a selection where they were reading from a book in the Bible, talking about the birth of Jesus, and then having a commentary on it.

I had listened to a previous radio program that had featured a section from the Bible that was rather long-winded.

It went into great detail about the taxation of Mary and Joseph, and why they had to go there. It went into much more detail about the hardship of their trip.

This new, different show featured some Bible passages I had definitely heard before.

They read some of the same scripture, but traded between two different people. [In the 'new' scripture I heard, the narrative pace of events] was much shortened.

As I was listening to [how the 'new' verses sounded], **I was thinking about how I myself would have [written] it just like that.**

I would have shortened it for clarity, and not left in all that extra detail that wasn't really necessary.

No sooner did I have that thought, but what I heard them say it was from the Book of Luke. I immediately knew that this was the book I supposedly wrote in a past life.

So that really hit me pretty intensely. Just the realization of listening to something that was possibly my own work.

All of this was hitting me. I was wondering how all of this could possibly be true.

Right as I was having that thought, the guy on the radio said that **the conductor of the orchestra had been David Wilcox!** That was just fantastic.

[David's Note: I believe this was on NPR. I haven't yet found a detailed-enough schedule of December 24, 1998 online, but this did happen – and I was amazed.]

12/31/98

1. EPIC DREAM OF DIMENSIONAL SHIFT TO CLOSE OUT THE YEAR 1998

[David's Note: Since this dream was very long and complex, I am going to extract certain interesting parts to include in this book, and put them in order.]

I had several scenes of being underwater. It was almost Ascension-related.

The most tremendous stuff was happening to the world in terms of energy.

Things would seem to slow down – and then weird, awesome stuff would happen immediately afterwards.

2. FINDING A VALUABLE BOOK IN COLORADO

There was a theme in this dream about **finding a book you'd had for a long time, and suddenly realizing how valuable it is.**

Some of it almost seemed to be in Colorado. There was a lot of high hills.

3. A MASSIVE CYLINDRICAL SPACECRAFT

I was underwater, in some sort of a river. There was a disruption in the energy flow, as though something was about to happen.

Then I saw this submarine. And boy, was it awesome-looking! It was definitely right out of a science fiction flick.

It was a cylinder, rounded off like a tube at both ends.

The back end had this opening. Weird energetic fire stuff was coming out of the back. At one point the fire was purple. Very cool.

I was dumbfounded seeing this go through the river.

4. A HUGE SHIP COMES BY THAT CAN SWALLOW THE CYLINDER

Then a couple moments later, there was this, My God, it was this HUGE, HUGE ship. It was so huge that I wasn't even in my body.

I was seeing how my body had swum all the way down to the bottom of the river or ocean, whatever the hell it was.

This HUGE ship went by. It filled up almost the whole body of water, floor to ceiling, which was just unbelievable.

It was about to swallow this little cylinder thing, which had been so epic to me a few seconds ago, like it was nothing.

5. CORRUPT PEOPLE FROM SAN FRANCISCO DOING BOAT RACES

This paralleled something that happened above the surface of the water, a little earlier in the dream.

There were these various cruise ships having seemingly friendly competition.

It was all like California. Yeah. It had a California vibe. San Francisco. A lot of hippie-type kids.

[David's Note: Once again, this dream mentions California and Colorado, the two main states I would live in as my life progressed through the years.

A metaphor of yachts in San Francisco being swallowed by something. Uh-oh.]

This group of people were not exactly doing good. They were kind of corrupt. They were all hanging out together.

They were doing boat races. They thought they were in charge, and everything was cool.

6. A HUGE SHIP APPEARS AND SWALLOWS THEM UP

And then – the size of this ship that showed up behind them. Oh my GOD.

It was beyond all possible definitions.

It had to be a mile wide and two miles long, just to possibly fit the actual size that was depicted.

It opened up a payload bay door on the right front side.

Just with that one door, it was able to completely swallow this other ship that had been so epic and massive – and looming over everybody else.

Then it became a big, big red flat barge thing, with an aerodynamic mount on the top.

It was blasting along the water. It was SO f-ing huge. I just couldn't put it into words.

7. TRACKING DOWN "JIMMY THE GREEK"

Throughout the dream, we had been trailing this guy who seemed to be named "Jimmy the Greek."

This is the name of a bass player at the Blues Society show I just went to with Dad.

Somehow I teleported myself back to this house I was staying at. **I saw Jimmy leaving with a couple of my suits, as though he were stealing them.**

I identified him and said "You're Jimmy the Greek." Then he started to freak out!

[David's Note: This seems to be a metaphor of Sam Brinton, who stole clothing at the airport after being put in charge of nuclear energy for America.]

8. SHOOT HIM WITH THE LITTLE BLACK WAFER!

All these secret operatives started to show up out of nowhere, like the X-files.

Jimmy started reaching into his shirt for something.

When he reached down in there and pulled this thing out, it was this tiny flat black wafer that had deadly abilities.

All the other operatives wanted me to grab it. I thought it was a dud at first.

I secured the object. They were all telling me to shoot him with it.

I covered my face, because I knew it had toxic properties – but I did try to shoot him with it. I couldn't seem to get it to work.

Everyone was saying “No, don't pull it back, you've got to push it forward.” There was a switch I had to flip, and then I had to push this button forward.

I finally got it right. **In the process, no one else was guarding themselves well enough, and they all started screaming. They were feeling it.**

[David's Note, 9/24/22: This is probably a parallel life memory of an actual weapon.

In symbolic terms, the black wafer with “toxic properties” represents exposing the truth of what has been done in our world, including Covid and the inoculations.]

9. PEOPLE WERE BEING STASHED IN A LABORATORY

I had closed my eyes. **They had all been sprayed by this poison. I didn't get hit for some reason.**

Then we were in some sort of laboratory. All these people were being stashed in there.

They all looked like cardboard cutouts of people. **I didn't even think they were alive.**

This Black guy was now standing there.

Someone said to me how **this Black guy had been really strong, but after they put him on the medicine, he was weakened overnight.**

He was now obviously less muscular.

This had done serious damage. These people were all half-superhero looking.

[David's Note, 9/24/22: Clearly a reference to the V, as well as to Michael's discussion of how close we are to activating seemingly super-human capabilities.]

10. A LADY WAS BEING POISONED BY THE DEMONIC

I didn't know what the hell was going on. There was a lady there who was one of the ones who had been poisoned.

She ended up getting this really strange mouth. Maybe it wasn't her mouth, it was what they put the stuff into her with.

They were putting this disgusting, slimy, chunky green stuff with red flecks into her mouth.

It looked horrible – and she obviously didn't like it.

[David's Note, 9/24/22: This appears to be an Exorcist reference, showing how the Elite are trying to force-feed us with demonic and Satanic imagery.]

Everyone else who was around was just all flat. I thought they were dead.

Then at the very end, I realized these people were blocking the door – and they needed to move.

They would spring to life to move, then sit back down and turn back into a piece of paper again. It was really strange.

[David's Note: This seems to symbolize people's willful ignorance of the truth. And this is also the end of the dream, and our Michael content for this book.]

FINAL NOTES FROM DAVID ON MEMORIAL DAY, 2023

I am thrilled to release this book after such prolonged effort and struggle.

It has been very difficult and intense to receive these messages, and to often be the subject of them as well – particularly in this volume.

I have been on the front lines of this battle for many lifetimes now.

The sheer accuracy and enormity of Michael's prophecies makes me feel very confident that the First Wave of Ascension is real – and Archangel Michael will deliver.

If Michael and his people want to create an embassy, I'm happy to be involved. I've been fairly bored living alone for the last two years, and could use some friends.

I'm just doing my part. I have finally accepted that all is in Divine Order.

I thank you again for your support, and we will see you in Book Three!